

EX  
LIBRIS

MARYGROVE









# HISTORY OF SOUTH AFRICA

FROM 1795 TO 1872

BY

GEORGE M<sup>c</sup>CALL THEAL, LITT.D., LL.D.

FOREIGN MEMBER OF THE ROYAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES, AMSTERDAM, CORRESPONDING  
MEMBER OF THE ROYAL HISTORICAL SOCIETY, LONDON, ETC., ETC., ETC.,  
FORMERLY KEEPER OF THE ARCHIVES OF THE CAPE COLONY

WITH FIFTEEN MAPS AND CHARTS

IN FIVE VOLUMES

VOL. V

THIRD EDITION, CAREFULLY REVISED AND ENLARGED

LONDON: GEORGE ALLEN & UNWIN LTD.  
RUSKIN HOUSE 40 MUSEUM STREET, W.C. 1

the Batlapin debt.—Extension of the district of Bloemhof to the Hart river.—Claims of the Barolong chief Montsiwa.—Conference between commissioners of the republic and chiefs of the Barolong, Bangwaketse, and Koranas.—Agreement to refer disputed territorial claims to a court of arbitration.—Correspondence between the high commissioner and the president.—Resolution of the volksraad to proceed to arbitration.—Offer of Nicholas Waterboer to transfer to the British government the territory which he claimed.—Appointment by the high commissioner of a special magistrate for the diamond-fields.—Commission granted to the special magistrate by Nicholas Waterboer.—General repudiation of Waterboer's pretensions.—Visit of Sir Henry Barkly to the diamond-fields.—Meeting with various chiefs.—Arrangements for arbitration.—Session of the court of arbitration at Bloemhof.—Imbecile manner in which the case was conducted by the commissioners of the South African Republic.—The Keate award.—Consternation of the burghers on finding that a large portion of their settled territory as well as all the open land to the west was cut off by the award.—Outburst of indignation against the government.—Resignation of the president and principal officers.—Appointment of Mr. D. J. Erasmus as acting president.—Irritating conduct of the reverend Mr. Ludorf.—Repudiation of the Keate award by the volksraad.—Declaration of the high commissioner that he would maintain it.—Effect of the award upon the Barolong and Batlapin clans.—Alteration of the clause of the constitution concerning the qualifications of the president.—Efforts of a strong party to unite the two republics under President Brand.—Attitude of President Brand.—Election of the reverend Thomas François Burgers as president of the South African Republic	... ..	24
--	--------	----

## CHAPTER LXXXVI.

## EVENTS IN BASUTOLAND FROM MARCH 1870 TO THE CLOSE OF 1872.

Death of Moshesh.—Reception of Molapo and his clan as British subjects.—Objections of the Cape parliament in 1870 to the employment of the frontier police in Basutoland.—Reception of the Baputi clan under Morosi as British subjects.—Illicit trade in munitions of war.—Collection of hut-tax.—Meeting of chiefs and leading men at Thaba Bosigo to discuss regulations for the government of the tribe drawn up by Sir



Philip Wodehouse.—Visit of Sir Henry Barkly to Basutoland.—Occupation of Thaba Bosigo by Masupha.—Annexation of Basutoland to the Cape Colony.—Revenue of Basutoland.—Consent of the chiefs to the annexation.—Claim of Letsie to part of Nomansland.—Division of Basutoland into magisterial districts.—Appointment of Mr. Charles Duncan Griffith as governor's agent, and of a staff of subordinate officials.—Powers of the magistrates.—Position assigned to the chiefs.—Introduction of a code of laws.—Objections of the Basuto to some of the regulations.—View of the people with regard to marriages by missionaries.—Resumption of their labours in Basutoland by the French missionaries.—Establishment of schools.—Ratification of the annexation of Basutoland to the Cape Colony by the queen in council.—Difficulty concerning the custom of letsima.—Conduct of Masupha.—Decision regarding Mr. Buchanan.—Compilation of a text book on the laws and customs of the Basuto.—Revenue and expenditure to June 1872	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	56
---	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	----

## CHAPTER LXXXVII.

### ACCOUNT OF THE MAKOLOLO TRIBE AND OF THE HERERO WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

Formation of the Makololo tribe.—Career of the chief Sebetoané.—Account of the Bangwaketse tribe.—Death of the warrior chief Makaba.—Account of the Bakwena tribe.—Succession of Setshele to the chieftainship.—Account of the Bamangwato tribe.—Arrival of Sebetoané on the Zambesi.—Settlement of the Makololo there as the dominant power.—Attack by a Matabele band.—Removal of the Makololo to Linyanti on the Tshobe river.—Visit of the reverend Dr. Livingstone to Linyanti.—Death of Sebetoané.—Succession of Sekeletu to the chieftainship.—Second visit of Dr. Livingstone to Linyanti.—His exploration of the country.—His journey to St. Paul de Loanda and back.—His journey to Kilimane.—Attempt to establish a mission with the Makololo.—Fate of the mission party.—Death of Sekeletu.—Total destruction of the Makololo tribe.—Rise of the Barotsi power.—War between the Ovaherero and the Namaqua Hottentots.—Strength of the combatants.—Particulars concerning the Hottentots.—Account of the Rhenish mission.—First attack upon Otjimbingue.—Part taken by Europeans in the war.—Second attack upon Otjimbingue.—





CHAPTER LXXXIX.

THE PORTUGUESE POSSESSIONS IN SOUTH AFRICA DURING THE NINETEENTH CENTURY.

Condition of Portugal and of South-Eastern Africa.—Cession by a Bantu chief of a tract of land north of the Espirito Santo.—Whale fishing in Delagoa Bay.—Survey of the coast by Captain Owen.—His dealings with chiefs at Delagoa Bay.—Description of the people living there.—Advantages of Delagoa Bay.—New names given to rivers.—Captain Owen's report upon Mozambique and Sofala.—His account of the slave trade.—Visit of Commodore Nourse to Delagoa Bay.—Dealings of the Portuguese with the Bantu tribes there.—Destruction of a Portuguese force.—Grant of a monopoly of the commerce at the bay to a whaling company.—Ravages of hordes of Bantu fleeing from Tshaka.—Career of Swangendaba and the Angoni.—Great battle on the Sabi river.—Terrible destruction of life caused by the Matshangana under Manikusa.—Destruction of the fort at Delagoa Bay and murder of the entire garrison.—Destruction of Inhambane, Sofala, and Sena.—Reoccupation of Sena on condition of payment of tribute to Manikusa.—Temporary separation of the government of the Rivers from Mozambique.—Havoc created among the Bantu.—Reoccupation of the Portuguese stations.—Census of Lourenço Marques in 1878.—Account of the prazos south of the Zambesi.—Occupation of Tshiloane and Santa Carolina.—Particulars concerning the slave trade.—Laws regarding commerce.—Creation of a council for the province.—Reoccupation of Zumbo.—Progress of geographical knowledge.—Journeys across the continent... .. 127

CHAPTER XC.

THE PORTUGUESE POSSESSIONS IN SOUTH AFRICA DURING THE NINETEENTH CENTURY (*continued*).

Effect upon the importance of Delagoa Bay of the occupation of the interior by Europeans.—Declaration of British sovereignty over the islands Inyaka and Elephant.—Account of the civil war in the Matshangana tribe.—Conduct of the chief Umzila towards the Portuguese.—Conclusion of a treaty between the



Portuguese and the South African Republic.—Submission to arbitration of Great Britain's claim to the southern and eastern shores of Delagoa Bay.—Adverse decision of the president of the French republic.—Exploration of the Limpopo river from the junction of the Shashi to the sea.—Construction of a railway from Lourenço Marques to the interior.—Present condition of Lourenço Marques.—Foundation of the town of Beira.—Particulars concerning the dispute between Great Britain and Portugal as to the possession of the interior.—Occupation of Rhodesia by the British South Africa Chartered Company.—Dealings with the chief Umtasa.—Services performed by Gouveia.—Occurrences between British and Portuguese officials at Umtasa's kraal.—Defeat of Portuguese volunteers by British police.—Treaty between Great Britain and Portugal fixing a boundary and providing commercial facilities.—Construction of a railway from Beira inland.—Description of Beira.—Account of the Mozambique Company.—Insurrection of Nyaude and his son Bonga.—Description of Tete.—Successful war with Gungunyana.—Condition of the country at present ... ..	146
---	-----

SYNOPTICAL INDEX ... ..	169
-------------------------	-----

### CHART.

XV. PORTUGUESE SOUTH AFRICA ... ..	<i>Facing page</i> 166
------------------------------------	------------------------



# HISTORY OF SOUTH AFRICA

## SINCE SEPTEMBER 1795.

### CHAPTER LXXXIV.

#### THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC.

##### *Commencement of Gold Mining at the Tati and Eersteling.*

Since the first exploration by Europeans of the vast territory afterwards known as the South African Republic, its mineral wealth was commonly supposed by casual visitors to be not only varied, but very great, though not much had yet been done towards ascertaining whether such a supposition was correct or not. The white men who took possession of as much of the land as they needed looked for abundance of good grass and water, and hardly bestowed a thought upon anything that might be found beneath the surface of the soil. No civilised people in the world were less disposed by inclination and habits for mining industry, or more ignorant of the method of carrying it on.

In course of time, however, the necessity of obtaining lead for casting into balls induced a few of them to make use of that metal, which was accidentally discovered, though it never was worked to any noticeable extent, and indeed the difficulty and cost of transport would have prevented its exploitation on a large scale if the expense of extracting and smelting it had been even less than it was reported to be.

Beds of coal of fairly good quality and accessible without trouble existed in the south-eastern districts, and where wood was scarce it was used for fuel in the farmers' kitchens, but as there were no manufactures of any kind in the country and no towns to create a demand for it, very little attention was devoted to this mineral. It has been widely different of late years, and since the discovery of the Witwatersrand gold fields and the construction of railroads in the country, the coal mines have been opened up and very largely made use of.

In some localities common salt was plentiful and easily obtained, as it was a very simple matter to sweep it into heaps in the natural pans and fill bags with it. Where it was mixed with earth or sand, it could be purified by putting it in water, allowing the impurities to settle and then drawing the water off and placing it where it would evaporate by the action of the sun. Under such circumstances the collection of salt for local use only cannot be considered as a mining industry.

Silver, copper, cobalt, and saltpetre were reported to have been found in various localities, and as regards copper there was no doubt about its existence, as specimens were obtained from Bantu who had collected and smelted it, but nothing had yet been done to prove whether any or all of these minerals could be procured with profit.

Iron existed in vast quantities, and was smelted by the blacks for their own wants, small clans often being in possession of five or six hundred kilogrammes of it. One mountain in the district of Lydenburg was composed of nearly pure iron ore, and affected the magnetic needle at a distance of ten miles or sixteen kilometres. The farmers often used iron that had been wrought by the blacks into small articles such as hoes, axes, and assagai heads; but they never extracted it for themselves. What was needed in the construction of waggons was imported in bars from Europe, and owing to the long land carriage was very expensive.

The ancient gold miners had penetrated the territory south of the Limpopo, and there are indications that at some remote period pits were sunk and excavations on a small scale were made along outcropping reefs in the district of Lydenburg, but in 1867 gold mining was an unknown industry. The earliest emigrant farmers discouraged any attempt to search for the precious metal systematically. Rest and peace were what they desired, and so they wished to avoid the turmoil and strife which they believed would inevitably follow the advent of a mining population.

There was thus before 1859 no inducement held out by the government to prospect for metals in any part of the country. On the 21st of September of that year the volksraad resolved to permit mining by individuals and companies, under such precautions as the executive council might consider necessary in the interests of the state. The intention was to allow a search for such metals as were indispensable for home use, and their extraction from the ore; but even this was not encouraged. The resolution had no reference to prospecting for gold.

Seven years later, on the 31st of October 1866, a mining ordinance was passed. It allowed the formation of companies to extract and smelt ores under certain conditions, which were to be agreed to in writing when the companies were registered. They were to render to the government correct statements on oath of all ores taken from public ground, and were to pay on the appraised value of such ores, if lead or iron ten shillings, if tin twenty shillings, if copper thirty shillings, for every hundred pounds sterling. Should precious metals be discovered, information was to be given to the government, that proper regulations might be made.

In 1865 Mr. Henry Hartley, son of a British settler in Albany, and recently an elephant hunter in the territory between the Zambesi and the Limpopo, noticed some of the ancient workings there, and being without any knowledge of gold mining, practical or theoretical, after his return to the colony with the ivory and skins he had collected invited a



German geologist named Carl Mauch to accompany him on his next hunting expedition, in order to ascertain what metals were to be had there and whether they were in such quantities as to pay for extracting them. Mr. Mauch accepted the invitation, and examined some large tracts of country. In December 1867 he arrived at Pretoria from Matabeleland, and reported that he had discovered rich and extensive goldfields along the Tati river, a tributary of a stream that flows into the Limpopo from the north. In his travels with Mr. Hartley he had seen ancient workings and the ruins of great stone buildings, and was fired with enthusiasm when he spoke or wrote of his wonderful discoveries. His glowing accounts of the country he had visited attracted attention not only in England and Germany, but throughout the civilised world, and immediately adventurers turned their eyes towards South Africa as a promising field to make fortunes in.

The time was particularly favourable for visiting Matabeleland. The old chief Moselekatse had long since become accustomed to receive European travellers and hunters in a friendly manner, provided they carried out his views of proper etiquette and made him liberal presents. Through their coming to his country he had become possessed of waggons, which he could make use of, and a large collection of valuable articles, which pleased him for an hour, but were of no real service to him.

After the defeat of the Matabele on the Marikwa by the emigrant farmers under Hendrik Potgieter and Pieter Uys in November 1837 the tribe fled to the north, and did not halt long or erect huts until it was far beyond the Matopo mountains. The division that was in advance, or the vanguard, reached the Zambesi, and desired to cross it and continue their journey beyond. They collected a great number of canoes, and ordered the owners to paddle them. These people did so, apparently with willingness, and conveyed the soldiers to an island in the river as night was setting in. Before they were aware that there was another broad stream to be crossed,

the paddlers disappeared with the canoes. Some of the Matabele soldiers tried to swim to the bank, but were drowned, others died of hunger, and others when exhausted were killed by the Makololo. The whole force perished.

At this time one of Moselekatse's sons conspired to establish himself ■ ■ independent chief, but his design was discovered before he could retire to ■ distance with his adherents, ■ had been his intention, and he and they paid for their treason with their lives.

After these events Moselekatse turned back, and he settled then in the territory bordering on the Matopos.

In 1857 the reverend Robert Moffat, of Kuruman, had paid him a visit, and obtained his consent to the establishment of a mission in the country. The London society then appointed the reverend Messrs. Thomas and Sykes to commence the work, and on the 28th of October 1859 they, accompanied by the reverend John Smith Moffat, son of the old missionary, reached Bulawayo. Moselekatse gave them ground for a station at a place called Inyati, on the head waters of one of the streams which flow northward to the Zambesi, and there in December they established themselves. Probably the teaching of the missionaries had some effect indirectly on the thoughts of the Matabele, though no professed converts to Christianity were made, and the old system of government—a pure military despotism—remained unchanged.

The tribe had lost some of its fierceness by an admixture of blood with the people it had conquered. Just as Betschuana boys and girls had been incorporated in it when Moselekatse lived south of the Limpopo, so Makalanga boys and girls had been adopted since that time, and the blood of these feeble people had leavened the greater part of the community. Whole regiments were composed of Makalanga, of course with Zulu officers, and these, though ready to perform any act of treachery, perfidy, or cruelty, were far less brave in the field than the men who had come up from the coast and swept the inland inhabitants away before them.

In October 1868 Moselekatse died. His legitimate heir, the only son of his great wife, had disappeared many years before, and it was not certain whether he had been killed by his father's order, or whether he had fled to some other country and was still alive. Under these circumstances the induna Nombati was appointed regent until the missing heir, Kuruman by name, could be found, or some other arrangement could be made. Nombati was now very old and feeble in body, though his intellect was still perfectly clear. It was he who had visited the reverend Robert Moffat in the Batlapin country, and been deeply impressed by the kindness as well as the ability of that eminent missionary. It was he who afterwards went to Capetown as the representative of his chief, and affixed a mark to a document which was held by many white men in England to be an engagement binding on the British government as well as on the Matabele people. In Capetown and when returning home through the colony he had been treated in the most friendly manner, so that a good impression of Europeans had been left on his mind. Of their valour and skill in war he could have no doubt after the encounters of his tribe with the emigrant farmers and its decisive defeat on the Marikwa. Nombati had therefore for many years been a professed friend of Europeans, and was the recognised advocate of the hunters and traders in the country when they wished to obtain favours from the chief.

Confidential messengers were sent out in all directions to search for Kuruman, and in Natal a man was found who claimed to be the individual looked for. He afterwards denied this, but subsequently stated that he had done so through fear of being assassinated, and asserted that he was in real truth the legitimate heir of Moselekatse. Upon being closely examined, however, the account that he gave of himself was such that most of the indunas and old people came to the conclusion that he was not Kuruman, but a son of Moselekatse of much lower rank. Nombati was decidedly of this opinion. A man now came forward who



asserted that he was the executioner of Kuruman, by order of Moselekatse, and who gave details ■ to the manner of his death.

As their future chief the majority of the indunas then selected Lobengula, a son of Moselekatse by ■ inferior wife, but who had been adopted by the great wife by command of his father, and who was therefore regarded as chosen by Moselekatse to be his successor. This young man possessed a large amount of intelligence, and was of a comparatively mild disposition, being good-natured and averse to cruelty, though ■ ruler of a tribe of marauders he was afterwards obliged by his position to sanction the frequent raids of his army upon any clans within its reach. For some time past he had dressed ■ ■ European and had travelled about the country with ■ white man, living in ■ waggon, which kind of existence was so much to his liking that he never abandoned it, though after his installation as chief he discarded European attire. It was with much reluctance that he accepted the post, and only gave his consent when Nombati decided against the individual who claimed to be Kuruman. Like Nombati, he professed to be ■ friend of Europeans, and in later years he proved that he was really well disposed towards them. On the 24th of January 1870 he was invested with the chieftainship of the tribe with the usual ceremonies.

These included ■ war-dance by nine or ten thousand soldiers, plumed and attired with capes of ostrich feathers on their shoulders, bands of otter skin over their foreheads, brushes of the tails of oxen encircling their arms and legs, and kilts of wild-cat skins. A chant in praise of the chief and defying his rival was described by several Europeans who were present ■ most impressive, the chorus being accompanied by the striking of spear-shafts upon the shields and the stamping of the warriors' feet in perfect time. To this succeeded the sacrifice of ■ large number of oxen to the spirits of the dead chiefs, especially the spirit of Moselekatse, whose body lay entombed close by in the Matopo hills.

A section of the Matabele, however, declared in favour of the claimant from Natal. This party included the Sokindaba regiment, the most famous of all the veteran warrior bands, so that civil war was unavoidable. The issue was decided in one stubbornly contested battle, in which Lobengula's forces won a complete victory, and secured for their leader undisputed authority over the tribe. The character of the new chief is shown by the fact that instead of utterly exterminating the defeated foe, as his father would have done, he drafted all who survived the battle into some of the regiments that had fought on his side. His rival lived for some years after this event at Shoshong and in the South African Republic, but was never again in a position to dispute his right to the Matabele chieftainship.

The armies of Moselekatse had ravaged the territory now known as Mashonaland as well as the district in which the tribe resided. A large proportion of the Makalanga and other people living there had been exterminated, and the remainder had been reduced to a condition of extreme poverty and misery. They lived among the rocks on the mountains, and as they could not cultivate the ground to any extent or keep herds of cattle for fear of attracting the attention of their masters, they eked out a miserable existence hardly better than that of the Bushmen whom their ancestors had supplanted, as was shown by the rock paintings and chippings in many parts of the country. Of late, however, they were not butchered quite as ruthlessly as in former years, and after Lobengula's accession raids upon them were much less frequent than before.

This was the condition of Matabeleland at the time and just after the announcement of Mauch's discovery at the Tati. Small parties of gold seekers were at once fitted out in different parts of South Africa, and made their way as best they could to the place where they hoped fortunes awaited them. The first to reach the Tati consisted of nine men from Potchefstroom, under Captain Black, who cleared out an old shaft 10·67 metres or thirty-five feet deep, thus

opening up an ancient mine. Next to arrive was a party of four men from Waterberg. On the 22nd of June 1868, when the first party had been working seven weeks, they were visited by Dr. H. Exton, who reported that the thirteen diggers had only obtained about eighteen grammes or half an ounce of gold to that date.

The territory between the Matopo range and the Limpopo was then almost uninhabited, as its former occupants had fled into the Transvaal Republic to be free from Moselekatse's stabbing assagais, and now formed portions of the tribes under Magadu, Sekukuni, and other chiefs. Not far south of the Matopo there lived an Englishman, Mr. John Lee, on a farm given to him by Moselekatse, with whom he was a favourite, and who frequently acted by his advice in dealing with white men.

The parties of diggers, as they arrived in succession, scattered about along the Tati river, and gave new names to the localities where they pitched their tents. In 1869 they were joined by a number of experienced miners, who with some others, one hundred and eighty-five in all, had been induced to migrate to South Africa by the exaggerated reports that reached Australia. On their arrival in Natal, in February and April 1869, instead of finding rich alluvial gold-fields within easy reach, as they had anticipated, they learned that a journey of over fourteen hundred kilometres or nine hundred miles was before them, and that nothing positive was known of the condition of the locality where the reefs had been found. The spirited people of Natal, however, came to their aid in a liberal manner. Some were employed to search for gold in that colony, where a few grains were found in one or two places, though nowhere a sufficient quantity to encourage a continuation of work. Thirty-four of them were equipped by a company in Natal, and sent to the Tati to prove its capabilities. They selected a place about forty-eight kilometres or thirty miles higher up the river than the other diggers, where they thought the prospects were better.

In a short time these men examined the country in their neighbourhood without finding sufficient to satisfy their desires, and then individuals among them formed little associations and went much farther inland in search of either alluvial gold or rich quartz reefs. They examined several of the ancient workings, and observed that the method employed for extracting quartz from the outcrops of reefs had been by kindling large fires and then throwing water on the heated rock. They came to the conclusion that the former miners, whoever they were, had been quite ■ skilful in prospecting ■ themselves, and that the richest reefs had been taken out until water was reached and crushed long before. They did not succeed in discovering alluvial gold away from the banks of the Tati.

In England the London and Limpopo Mining Company was formed in 1868. On the 27th of April 1869 its principal managers, Sir John Swinburne and Captain Arthur Lionel Levert, reached the Tati with ■ steam engine, and soon afterwards commenced work. At this time more than ■ hundred European diggers in little parties were scattered along the river, and two or three times that number of blacks were employed by them, all raising quartz from pits or searching for alluvial gold. Some of the quartz was rich, but the appliances for crushing it were so crude that the gold produced did not yield a fair return for the labour employed, especially as provisions, owing to the long land carriage, cost nearly twice as much as in Pretoria or Potchefstroom. Only the merest traces of alluvial gold were found, and after a short time the diggers became disheartened and moved away to the diamond fields that were then being opened up on the banks of the Vaal. Some simply abandoned their claims, others before leaving disposed of the rights they had obtained in the territory to the London and Limpopo Mining Company, which was thus left in sole occupation of the reefs at the Tati.

It was conclusively proved that it would be unprofitable to dig for alluvial gold in that part of South Africa, and



whether quartz crushing with proper machinery would pay remained to be tested. The stamping apparatus of the London and Limpopo Mining Company was almost useless, but specimens of rock sent to England for examination were so rich that it could not be doubted that with effective appliances large profits would be obtained. The company therefore continued working, though for some time on a very small scale. It had obtained from Nombati, when regent, verbal permission to set up machinery and extract metals, and Lobengula confirmed these privileges. In 1872 Captain Levert obtained from the chief a written concession giving full and exclusive mining rights to the company over the large tract of land between the Matopo range and the Shashi river, since known as the Tati district, and when this was acquired operations could be more safely extended, though considerable time was still needed to get out and erect suitable crushing machinery.

Another association formed in England in 1868 termed itself the South African Goldfields Exploration Company. It sent out the celebrated traveller and artist Thomas Baines and a Swedish mineralogist named C. J. Nelson to inspect the country and obtain mining concessions. Messrs. Baines and Nelson reached Port Natal on the 16th of February 1869, and as soon as they could procure a conveyance set out for the interior. Messrs. Hartley and Mauch had discovered in 1866 what they believed to be rich goldfields south of the Zambesi river and west of a stream that flows into it opposite Zumbo, and it was to this region that Messrs. Baines and Nelson directed their attention. A party of eleven adventurous colonists of Natal had formed themselves into the Durban Gold Mining Company, and had endeavoured to reach the same ground some time previously, but at Inyati they had been attacked by fever, of which four of them died, and the other seven were so debilitated that they were obliged to return to the coast.

Having obtained permission from Nombati, Mr. Baines inspected that part of the country, and was then granted by

Lobengula a verbal concession to carry on mining operations in it. The company was not satisfied with this, however, and Mr. Baines, after proceeding to the coast and sending his report to England, was obliged to return to Bulawayo, where on the 29th of August 1871 he obtained a concession in writing from the chief. But nothing came of it, for the company failed to raise the necessary capital, and no mining operations were undertaken in that locality. Mr. Nelson entered the service of the London and Limpopo Mining Company at Tati, and Mr. Baines, after supporting himself for some years as an artist, died of dysentery at Durban on the 8th of May 1875.

In 1869 Mr. Edward Button, an enterprising Natal colonist, with some experienced associates explored the country along the eastern mountains in the Transvaal Republic, and discovered gold in small quantities in various places. In 1870 he continued these explorations with the same result. In the winter of 1871 he prospected in the district of Zoutpansberg, and on the 8th of September of that year he exhibited to the volksraad specimens of rich gold-bearing quartz which he had discovered fourteen kilometres or nine miles south-east of Marabastad. Having obtained the privileges he desired, he proceeded to England, and in 1872 formed there the Transvaal Gold Mining Company, with a capital of £50,000, with the object of working the mine at Eersteling, as his ground in the Zoutpansberg district was called. With machinery for quartz crushing he returned to South Africa, and at a little later date the opening of the mine was commenced. There, as at the Tati, alluvial gold was diligently sought for, and small quantities were obtained; but it was found that it would not pay the cost of collecting it.

The government of the republic and a considerable majority of the farmers held at this time favourable views with regard to gold mining, regarding it as a likely means of relieving the financial condition of the state, which was as low as it possibly could be. On the 14th of June 1870

the volksraad resolved that five per cent of the value of gold and two and a half per cent of the value of silver obtained by miners should be paid into the public treasury. Next, the whole country, excepting only cultivated ground and homesteads, was thrown open to prospectors on payment of twenty shillings for a license, and when claims were selected and worked a fee of ten shillings monthly. Mr. Button was appointed gold commissioner, and was empowered, with a committee elected by the diggers, to draw up byelaws or rules regulating mining matters for the approval of the volksraad.

That a new condition of things was created by Mr. Mauch's report to the volksraad in December 1867 was at once apparent. President Pretorius, being desirous that any mining community which might spring up in close proximity to occupied farms should be subject to the laws of the republic, sent messengers to Moselekatse and Matsheng to endeavour to induce those chiefs to admit that they were subject to control by the emigrant farmers. Matsheng was chief of the Bamangwato, and resided at Shoshong, a place situated on the road to Matabeleland commonly used, because the routes farther eastward passed through districts infested by the tsetse.

The Bamangwato, though long a distinct tribe, belonged to the Bakwena group, its founder, Mangwato by name, having separated from the main stem five generations of chiefs before. These five generations, however, correspond in time to fourteen generations in the Bahurutsi or main stem, to twelve generations in the modern Bakwena, an important branch, and to eight generations in the Bangwaketse, another large branch, so that each chief's life must have been a very long one. The line of descent is Mangwato—brother of Mohurutsi and Ngwaketse and son of Malope brother of Kwenana,—Mathibe, Khama, Khari, Matsheng.

The Bamangwato tribe had been partly destroyed, and the remnant was dispersed in war with the Barozwe, when its chief, Khari by name, was killed. After a time Sekhomi, an

inferior son of Khari, collected the scattered people together and settled with them at Shoshong. It was not a desirable place of residence, for the supply of water was so scanty that very little vegetable food could be grown, but the mountains afforded shelter and means of defence against ordinary enemies. Here they were attacked by the Makololo under Sebetoane, on their way to the Zambesi, and were again dispersed, when Sekhomi was made a prisoner. He was not put to death, however, and after the Makololo moved on he made his escape and once more collected the remnant of the tribe together and reoccupied Shoshong.

Some years after Khari's death his great widow gave birth to a son, named Matsheng, who was regarded by the Bamangwato as their legitimate chief. This boy was made captive by the Matabele, and was compelled to serve as a carrier in Moselekatse's army, from which position he rose in time to be a soldier. But the Bamangwato never forgot him, and on their entreaty the reverend Robert Moffat, of Kuruman, the recognised friend of all the Betshuana, used his influence with Moselekatse, and Matsheng was set free. He returned to Shoshong after twenty years' absence, and was joyfully received by the people as their chief.

But he had been trained as a Matabele soldier, and strove to govern after the Matabele pattern. The Bamangwato soon found that they had a tyrant at their head, and that the slightest offence cost a man his life. There were no more public meetings in the kotla to discuss matters, according to Setshuana custom, the hereditary counsellors of the tribe were forced to keep silence, and were replaced by men appointed by the chief to carry out his orders and do nothing more. Devotion to their legitimate chiefs is not so strong among the interior tribes as among those of the eastern coast. As long as their head is a member of the ruling family, they are in most cases satisfied, and so a party of the Bamangwato, after a fair trial of Matsheng, in 1859 with the assistance of the Bakwena chief Setsheli rose against his tyranny, compelled him to retire, and raised



Sekhomi again to be their chief. The rejected despot with a few adherents took refuge with Setsheli, who for political reasons was always glad to give shelter to exiles of note.

Fortune, however, favoured him once more. Khama, the eldest son of Sekhomi, embraced Christianity, and refused to conform to the ancient customs of his people, which so irritated his father that war was made upon him and he and his adherents were driven away from Shoshong. After a time he returned, when Sekhomi, finding the people well disposed towards his son, who was an exceedingly able man, in his animosity sent an invitation to Matsheng to return and put Khama to death. In May 1866 Matsheng reached Shoshong, and for the second time became chief of the Bamangwato. He refused to cause Khama to be murdered, and Sekhomi, who then realised the dangerous position in which he had placed himself, fled to Setsheli and was taken under that schemer's protection. Matsheng had not learnt moderation during his exile, but for more than six years the Bamangwato submitted to his tyranny. Then there was another revolution, and on the 1st of September 1872 he was finally driven from Shoshong by Khama with the aid of Setsheli, when the individual who professed to be Kuruman was also obliged to leave that place. Ngare, Matsheng's son of highest rank, who might have proved a formidable rival of Khama, was banished from the Bamangwato territory, and further strife was thus prevented.

Such was Matsheng, chief of the Bamangwato, when the messengers of President Pretorius arrived at Shoshong. He could not be induced to comply with their desires, and stated that he was absolutely independent, though he admitted that Moselekatse was a greater and more powerful man. Some English traders and hunters who were there at the time, however, represented to him so forcibly what the results of an inrush of gold diggers might be, that he resolved on their advice to petition the British government for protection. The reverend John Mackenzie, who had long

been residing as a missionary at Shoshong, accordingly wrote a letter for him to that effect to the high commissioner Sir Philip Wodehouse, but the imperial authorities were indisposed to take any action in the matter.

With the old ruler of the Matabele, then too feeble to move and very near his end, the messengers met with no better success; it is doubtful indeed whether they even ventured to state their object in plain words.

Without waiting for reports from his messengers, on the 29th of April 1868 the president, with the concurrence of the executive council, issued a proclamation in which the boundaries of the republic were extended on the west to a straight line from Lake Ngami to the northern point of Langeberg, and on the east were made to include one mile (1.6 kilometre) on each side of the rivers Pongolo and Maputa down to the sea. On the north a great extent of country was added to the republic, but not the district occupied by Moselekatse.

As soon as this proclamation reached Capetown, Sir Philip Wodehouse wrote objecting to the inclusion in the republic of so much territory previously occupied by independent Bantu tribes; and Chevalier Duprat, consul-general for Portugal in South Africa, wrote that a portion of the land annexed on the east coast had been since 1546 in possession of the kingdom he represented.

It is purely a matter of opinion what were the rightful boundaries of the republic at this time, for wherever a line might be laid down parties would be found not only to dispute it, but to bring weighty arguments against it. All that can be done is to give the facts on which the different views rested.

The boundaries were left undefined by the convention of 1852, but there are means of concluding fairly what the British commissioners understood them to be, at least on the west. Messrs. Hogge and Owen had before them the declaration of Commandant-General Potgieter and the volksraad of his party claiming the country as far as the

falls of the Orange river, that is nearly the whole of Betshuanaland as well as the present Transvaal provinces. That extent of country was claimed by the emigrant farmers as having been taken from Moselekatse, and there is no question that all of the tribes previously occupying that region, the Batlapin excepted, had been broken up by the Matabele. The soldiers of Moselekatse did not indeed traverse the Kalahari desert as far westward as the meridian running through the falls of the Orange, but the terror of their name extended that far, and there was no compact tribe left east of it. The declaration of Potgieter, therefore, was not unreasonable from the point of view of the emigrant farmers.

A copy of the document in which the declaration is made was filed by Messrs. Hogge and Owen with their other records, and they never disputed it, or so much as attached a note or a memorandum to it to show that they regarded it unfavourably. On the 9th of June 1852 Major Hogge died, and excepting what has been stated in a preceding volume there is no further evidence than the above as to what his views were. Mr. Owen, however, who was in most matters in full accord with Major Hogge, was of opinion that the very best thing England could do would be to withdraw all intercourse with the interior of South Africa, where, in his opinion, neither glory nor profit of any kind was to be had. The hunters would soon kill all the game, he believed, and then if the farmers and the blacks chose to quarrel about any number of hundred square miles of desert, let them do it to their hearts' content: Englishmen could be much better employed than backing up either side.

In the evening of Tuesday, the 22nd of June 1852, a public dinner was given in Bloemfontein in honour of Commandant-General Andries Pretorius, who had arrived on a visit during the preceding day. Among the guests were Assistant-Commissioner Owen, Mr. Louis Henry Meurant, and Commandant Pieter Scholtz. After a good many complimentary toasts had been drunk, and when everybody was



in the best of humour, the recent convention happened to be spoken about. Mr. Pretorius asked Mr. Owen: "how about our lower line, after Vaal river ends?" "Oh!" replied Mr. Owen, "you may have the Orange down to the sea, if you like." Whether this remark was a result of the frequency with which the wine glasses had been emptied, or not, both parties remembered all about it two days afterwards. Commandant-General Pretorius had a very strong liking for the Orange down to the sea, and Mr. Owen was not the man to go back from his word. The following document was therefore drawn up and signed:

"With reference to the article in the convention entered into by her Majesty's assistant commissioners Major Hogge and Mr. C. M. Owen, and the commandant-general A. W. J. Pretorius, Esquire, and other delegates of the emigrants over the Vaal, dated at Sand River the 17th January 1852, concerning the line of Vaal river; it is hereby further resolved by the above named gentlemen that the lower line shall be from where the Vaal river joins the Orange river, down along the said river to the sea, the British government having no authority north of the said Orange river as above named; this agreement being subject to the approval of his Excellency the high commissioner.

"Bloemfontein, 24th June 1852.

"C. MOSTYN OWEN, Assistant-Commissioner,

"A. W. J. PRETORIUS, Commandant-General,

"P. E. SCHOLTZ, Commandant.

"As witness: L. H. Meurant."

But the arrangement made under such convivial circumstances never was submitted to the high commissioner, and consequently never had any legal force, though nineteen years later the document itself was produced as evidence at the Bloemhof arbitration.

The copy of Commandant-General Potgieter's declaration to the territory belonging to the emigrant farmers extending to the falls of the Orange was transferred by Assistant-Commissioner Owen among many other documents to Sir George Clerk, without any observation being made upon it. Sir George Clerk read over the packages of manuscript so received, commented upon most of the papers, but passed this one by without notice. The fair inference

is that the special commissioner, like the assistant commissioners, had no objection to the republic fixing its western boundary wherever it chose.

There was a man, however, who did object at this time to the exercise by the republican government of authority over the blacks on the border of the desert. That man was the reverend Dr. Livingstone. He persisted in claiming independence for the Bakwena under Setsheli, with whom he was stationed as a missionary. The lower road to the interior, opened by English hunters and traders, and passing through the London Society's station of Kuruman, he constantly wrote of as being outside the republic. He complained to Sir George Cathcart, her Majesty's high commissioner in South Africa, when Commandant-General Pretorius attempted to close this road so as to prevent the sale of munitions of war to the blacks. But he failed to induce the high commissioner to see the matter as he saw it, and the only conclusion one can arrive at is that Sir George Cathcart did not object to the indefinite extension of the republic westward. The policy of the imperial government was one of withdrawal. The emigrant farmers therefore could do what seemed to them best.

At a little later date, however, a different view was expressed in England. In reply to a request made by Sir George Grey for instructions as to the interpretation to be put upon the conventions of 1852 and 1854, the right honourable Henry Labouchere, then secretary of state for the colonies, wrote on the 5th of March 1857:—

“Her Majesty's Government cannot admit that the general declarations embodied in those conventions amount to a renunciation for all future time of the right to conclude treaties with the native tribes specified therein, under all supposable circumstances. They conceive that those declarations are to be taken, as regards the future, as amounting to no more than a general indication of the policy of Her Majesty's Government, namely, to avoid embarrassing these free states by the entertainment of any separate relations with the tribes within or closely bordering on their limits, of a nature to excite well-founded jealousy on their part.

“With regard to the meaning of the geographical expression ‘north of the Vaal river,’ Her Majesty's Government understand it as used in its

ordinary and positive sense, and not according to the very illegitimate extension of its meaning which you say is acted upon, viz. north of 'the latitude of' the Vaal river."

That this question of their western boundary had been under the notice of the British authorities in South Africa when the conventions of 1852 and 1854 were signed was unknown to the burghers of the South African Republic in 1868; but they were of course aware that a claim had always been made to the territory as far west as it was habitable, based on the conquest of the Matabele.

The opposite view, or that held by most people in Europe, was that the boundaries of the republic were—or ought to have been—the outer lines of its old fieldcornetcies. That view cut off all the Bantu clans that were not actually living among white people and all unoccupied ground beyond the outermost settled farm. Several maps were constructed on this principle. But if it was correct, how can waste lands be included in the map of any country?

A third view was that the boundaries should include the country—and no more—over which the government at Pretoria actually exercised jurisdiction with the consent of the inhabitants, white and black. But that implied that as soon as a clan became strong enough to resist, it was entitled to independence. The government, as has been over and over again shown, recognised the plain fact that there were two classes of people, differing very greatly, living on the same ground and partly intermingled. One class had the instincts of civilisation, and was therefore entitled to be ruled according to the laws and methods of civilised lands. The other class was composed of barbarians. Those who belonged to it were excluded from political association with the Europeans, but they had their own government left to them, except in matters in which white people also were concerned. In such cases the law of the higher race was supreme. In South Africa this seems very simple and natural; but people in Europe find it difficult to comprehend and still more difficult to appreciate. North, west, and east,



the districts settled by white people were fringed with clans ruled by their own chiefs, over whom the government at Pretoria claimed supremacy. None of these clans could have been there at all, many of them could not have been in existence even, if it had not been for the presence of Europeans in the country. Were they to be regarded independent whenever they chose to declare themselves free of control?

Then there was a fourth view. Among the clans on the border of the districts occupied by Europeans were several that during the years of civil strife had been left entirely to themselves. Ought not these to be considered independent, and the ground they occupied to be regarded as no longer within the domain of the republic? According to this view, cessation of interference of every kind for a period of five or six years is equivalent to renunciation of sovereignty over people like the Bantu clans. Whether this is correct or not, the resumption of authority in such cases is generally attended with considerable difficulty, and always meets with resistance of some kind.

The objections raised by Sir Philip Wodehouse and Chevalier Duprat to the proclamation by President Pretorius of the 29th of April 1868 caused the government to recede to a great extent from the claims it had made. The question of the western boundary will form the subject of a future chapter, the boundary on the east was arranged without difficulty.

After some correspondence with the Portuguese consul-general concerning this subject and the advantage of a treaty of commerce, on the 8th of June 1869 the volksraad approved of the negotiations as far as they had been conducted, and appointed a commission to conclude a treaty. The commissioners chosen were President M. W. Pretorius, Messrs. Heinrich Julius Ueckermann, Joseph Johannes Fourie, and John Robert Lys, members of the volksraad, Mr. Marthinus Jacobus Viljoen, member of the executive council, Commandant-General S. J. Paul Kruger, and Bernard

Cornelis Ernest Proes, LL.D., state secretary. On the other part, the consul-general Alfredo Duprat was fully empowered by his Majesty the king of Portugal and the Algarves to act on behalf of his government.

The commissioners on both sides met at Pretoria, and on the 29th of July 1869 the treaty was drawn up and signed. It contained twenty-four clauses: providing for peace and friendship between the contracting powers; freedom for the subjects or citizens of each to carry on trade in the dominions of the other, except in munitions of war and in slaves, on the same terms as the most favoured of any other nation; complete protection of person and property, freedom of conscience, freedom from military service or taxes for military purposes, and full testamentary powers, of the subjects or citizens of each in the dominions of the other; extradition of criminals; liberty to appoint consuls and agents, who were to enjoy many privileges; and other matters of a similar nature. The clauses relating to commerce were to have force for six years, and were thereafter to be subject to a notice of twelve months before becoming void; all the other clauses were to be binding on both parties in perpetuity.

The boundary of the Portuguese dominions in South-Eastern Africa is defined in the treaty as the parallel of latitude of  $26^{\circ} 30'$  from the Indian ocean to the Lebombo mountains, thence along the highest ridge of the Lebombo to the centre of the lower poort of Komati where the river of that name passes through the range, thence in a straight line about north by east to Pokioenskop on the northern bank of the Olifants river where it passes through the mountains, thence in a direction about north-west by north to the nearest point of the mountains of Tshakundo on the Umvubu river, and thence in a straight line to the junction of the Pafuri and Limpopo rivers.

The final ratification of this treaty took place at Pretoria on the 10th of July 1871. The delay was occasioned by the arrival at Potchefstroom in December 1869 of a Portuguese

diplomatic commission, under the presidency of the baron Carlos Pedro Barahona e Costa, governor of Kilimane. This commission proposed several supplementary articles, which, however, were ultimately rejected by the Portuguese government.

The diplomatic commission remained at Potchefstroom for several months. On the 8th of July 1870, as a mark of the friendship existing between the two countries, the governor of Kilimane was made an honorary citizen of the South African Republic. His residence at Potchefstroom was productive of an event marking the progress in liberal ideas that had been made in the republic since the adoption of the constitution. His Excellency forwarded to the volksraad two memorials signed respectively by fifty-eight and eighty-one individuals, in favour of religious liberty for Roman Catholics, whereupon a resolution was adopted — 1st of June 1870 — permitting perfect freedom of worship to burghers and residents, and annulling the restrictive clauses of the constitution in that respect. Unlike the constitution of the Orange Free State, that of the South African Republic could be altered or amended at any time by a simple resolution of the volksraad.



## CHAPTER LXXXV.

### EVENTS IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC FROM 1870 TO 1872.

THE territory along the northern bank of the Vaal, in which diamonds were found, was claimed by the South African Republic, the Barolong chief Moroko, some clans of the Batlapin, ■ horde of Koranas, and Mr. David Arnot for the Griqua captain Nicholas Waterboer. Of these claimants, the South African Republic, the Batlapin, and the Koranas were then in actual occupation. A few farmers were scattered over it; there was a large kraal of Batlapin at Likatlong, where the waters of the Hart join those of the Vaal; and between Likatlong and Hebron were several little kraals of Koranas.

The Barolong claim was based on the fact that the territory in bygone years was partly occupied by the clan that since 1833 had been living under Moroko at Thaba Ntshu. Waterboer's pretensions rested on the alleged treaty with Mahura already mentioned, on the fact that in the time of his father Griqua influence extended to this territory, that there were formerly Griqua outposts of the captains Cornelis Kok and Barend Barends\* in the neighbourhood, that he considered those captains subjects of his father, and that Likatlong was a station of the London society in subordination to the missionary at Griquatown.

\* Barend Barends never was a subject of Andries Waterboer, or in any way under the influence of that captain. After the defeat of his band by the Matabele in July 1831, as related in chapter xv, he wandered about for ■ time, and when in December 1833 the remnant of his clan, under Peter Davids, migrated from Boetsap to Lishuane, on the Caledon, he moved to Great Namaqualand. There he remained during 1834 and 1835, and then returned to his former home, Boetsap, where he died.

The claim of the South African Republic was put forward at a later date ■ founded upon a treaty which it was asserted had been concluded with the Barolong clan of Montsiwa in December 1851, but when the controversy first arose it was made to rest upon recent dealings with the Batlapin. After the war of 1858, in which Gasibone was killed, the Batlapin chief Mahura, to obtain peace, through his representatives entered into an agreement to pay all costs and damages; but the civil strife in the republic which followed closely upon this event gave him an opportunity to escape from his engagement. When order was again restored, and ■ demand was made upon him, he referred the government of President Pretorius to his agent, Mr. David Arnot, of Colesberg. Mr. Arnot declined to comply with the demand, and in a letter to President Pretorius, dated on the 8th of August 1864, claimed for the Batlapin the whole country along the northern bank of the Vaal from a point opposite Platberg up to Makwasi Spruit, thence along the Makwasi mountains and round by the source of the Hart river to the source of the Molopo. This territory did not include the diamond-fields, which were farther westward. In all these contentions, it must be remembered, it was not the coloured clans that first fabricated extravagant claims, but European agents acting nominally on their behalf.

For several years after 1864 subjects of greater importance than the debt of Mahura occupied the attention of the authorities at Pretoria, but towards the close of 1868 an arrangement was made for a conference between a commission from the republic and the Batlapin and Korana chiefs, with the object of discussing and arranging matters in which they were all interested. It was agreed that the place for the conference should be the farm of Mr. Daniel Verwey, on the bank of the Vaal some distance below Bloemhof, and the date the 10th of February 1869.

The commission of the South African Republic consisted of President Pretorius, Mr. W. Best, landdrost of Bloemhof,

and Messrs. J. W. Viljoen, H. C. W. Vermaas, D. Verwey, and H. C. Weber. The chiefs did not arrive at the time agreed upon, but some of them sent messages that they were coming, and on the 19th of February, Botlasitsi, Mahura, Jantje, and Matlabane, with four Korana captains and seventy-two counsellors were assembled. The conference continued until the 26th. Both the Batlapin and the Koranas claimed the country along the northern bank of the Vaal above and below the junction of the Hart, and the arguments of each seemed of equal weight. Their government was in fact tribal, not territorial. The Koranas, however, were few in number, and were not disposed to object to the supremacy of the white men. Mahura admitted his indebtedness on account of the war of 1858, and the president offered to accept fifteen hundred head of cattle in full payment, if he and the other captains would consent to the Hart river as the boundary. Jantje demurred to this, and promised to assist Mahura to meet his old engagement. Thereupon, on the 26th of February an agreement was drawn up and signed by the Batlapin captains, in which they undertook to deliver three thousand head of good cattle at Potchefstroom within two months, and promised to attend another conference after the delivery of the cattle, in order to fix a permanent boundary line between their territory and the republic.

A fortnight before the expiration of the two months, Mr. Arnot, as agent for Mahura, wrote to the president, declining to pay the cattle, and proposing to refer all differences and disputes to the arbitration of her Majesty's high commissioner in South Africa. But a few days later Mr. Arnot ceased to be Mahura's advocate. The Batlapin were laying claim to the same ground that he asserted was Nicholas Waterboer's, and would not be satisfied with the territory to the eastward to which he desired to limit them, so that he abandoned their cause. He was succeeded by one Theodor Doms as chief adviser, agent, and representative of Mahura.



On the 26th of July Doms wrote to Landdrost Best, of Bloemhof, announcing that the Batlapin had failed to collect the three thousand head of cattle, and on their behalf he offered as a settlement to agree to a boundary from Saltpan's Drift on the Vaal in a direct line to Mamusa on the Hart river, and thence up to the Zwartkopjes beyond the Schoonspruit saltpan; further to pay £10,000 in money in the course of eight or ten months, and as security to pass a mortgage bond on all the ground east of the Hart river. Mr. Best referred this proposal to the president and executive council, who declined it, but offered to accept fifteen hundred head of cattle if delivered before the 6th of September, and the line of the Hart river up to midway between Taung and Mamusa. Doms replied that he desired to consult the chiefs, and requested to be supplied with copies of all documents relating to transactions with the Batlapin subsequent to 1857. A copy of the agreement of the 26th of February and some extracts from the minutes of the conference were sent to him; but as the government of the republic declined to supply all that he asked for and thus practically reopen the matter, he began to complain that injustice was being done, and the negotiations came to an end.

Then, as the chiefs had failed to keep their agreement, on the 12th of November 1869 President Pretorius, with the concurrence of the executive council, issued a proclamation extending the district of Bloemhof to the Hart river from its confluence with the Vaal upwards to the junction of its north-western affluent above the place called the Poort, and thence northward to the Zwartrand.

Nothing further occurred in connection with these people until the 25th of August 1870, when the commission of the South African Republic—President Pretorius and Messrs. B. C. E. Proes and J. R. Lys—had a conference at Nooitgedacht with the Barolong chief Moroko and the Batlapin chiefs Jantje and Mankoroane. Mahura was then dead, and Mankoroane, though not of high birth, had succeeded ■■

head of his clan. Doms was with them as adviser and agent. At this conference, Moroko laid claim to the land east of the Hart as his by inheritance, and the others agreed with him. The Batlapin captains claimed the land west of the Hart down to Griquatown. All repudiated Nicholas Waterboer's pretensions.

The Barolong clan under Montsiwa was left in 1854 in the country of the Bangwaketse north of the Molopo, though the location south of that river assigned to it by officers of the republic in December 1851 was still regarded as its property. Montsiwa remained with the Bangwaketse, and his reserve, being almost unoccupied, attracted the attention of a few farmers. These settled at some of the best springs, where for several years they were undisturbed. At length Montsiwa addressed President Pretorius upon the subject, and ■ no steps were taken to remove the farmers, on the 15th of August 1868 a letter was written in his name by the reverend Joseph Ludorf to the president and the members of the volksraad, which was the commencement of ■ long and acrimonious controversy.

In this letter the right of the Barolong to the country occupied by their ancestors in the time of the chief Tao was made to rest upon an alliance alleged to have been entered into by Commandant-General Hendrik Potgieter in 1837 with Tawane and Moroko, heads of refugee clans at Thaba Ntshu. It was asserted, as if it was a well-known fact, that when the emigrant farmers "decided to take the country from Moselekatse, they entered into a treaty with the Barolong chiefs Moroko and Tawane, with the express condition that if the Barolong would assist against the Matabele, their independent and perpetual right to the land of their forefathers would be guaranteed: namely Tawane's portion situated between the rivers Molopo and Hart, west to the Kalahari desert; and Moroko's ground, as indicated by thousands of kraals of his former residences\* east of the

\* From the walls of rough stones constructed by these people around their huts, usually about thirty-five or forty centimetres high, to strengthen

Hart river." It was further asserted that "depending on this treaty, the Barolong under Moroko and Tawane took up arms, and faithfully executed their part of the contract." Subsequent events were then made to fit in with this view of past transactions, and with a quotation from the bible the encroachment of the farmers was protested against, and the volksraad was requested to remove the intruders.

Such a perversion of historical occurrences would never have entered the mind of a Morolong, if it had not been first put into shape by a European. It is true, any one of the little party of Barolong herdsmen that accompanied Maritz and Potgieter, and afterwards Potgieter and Uys, against Moselekatse, when relating the events of those expeditions to an assemblage of blacks, would probably represent himself and his companions as the principal actors, and only casually mention the farmers. But he would never devise the conditions of a treaty which had no existence. However, when once suggested to him, he would readily grasp the importance of a statement such as the above, and would have no hesitation in affirming its truth, especially if his chief approved of it. Thus it happened that a cunningly-devised fiction came to be represented by the Barolong of Montsiwa and some of the other clans as a correct statement of their case, and is to the present day accepted by many persons as a faithful version of events.

On the 28th of August 1868, a few days after the letter to the authorities of the South African Republic was written, one was addressed in the name of Montsiwa to Sir Philip Wodehouse, asking for protection. This was the beginning of the intercourse between the Tsili branch of the Barolong and the representative of the imperial government in this country. Montsiwa was made to say:

"May it please Your Excellency to permit the undersigned chief of the Barolong to take refuge under your protecting wings from the injustice of the Transvaal Republic, whose government has lately, by proclamation, included our country within the possessions of the said republic.

them when the soil is unfavourable for supporting posts, the sites of their kraals can be determined for a long period after abandonment.



"Upwards of thirty years ago, when Commandant H. Potgieter first left the colony with his party, they found our tribe at Thaba Ntshu with Moroko. We then warned the emigrant Boers not to go near Moselekatse, for he would surely attack them. But they would not listen, and went on for 'Canaan.' After their party was almost destroyed on the banks of the Vaal river, the Barolong fetched the remainder back to Thaba Ntshu, where they during two years received every possible kindness and hospitality. By and by others came from the colony, and by force of persuasion we at last yielded to enter into an alliance with Commandant Potgieter to assist him in avenging himself on Moselekatse, on condition that if we succeeded to dislodge the Matabele we should have our fathers' country back and live under our own rule. Which was agreed to.

"Leading the Boers on to the lion's den, we warred at our own expense, had our own horses, guns, ammunition, and victuals, and constantly refused to take any of the captured stock. We had one desire only, which was to have our old country where are the graves of our fathers.

"Moselekatse was defeated. Soon after the Boers moved into the newly cleared territory, and the Barolong under the chief Tawane returned to their old grounds, whilst Moroko remained at Thaba Ntshu.

"When Commandant A. Pretorius had lost the day at Port Natal and immigrated to the Transvaal country, H. Potgieter duly informed the new comers of the alliance that existed between the republican Boers and the Barolong, and the right of the latter to their own country. Potgieter went to Lydenburg, Pretorius and his party stayed in the south-western parts.

"■ About 1850 one Boer after another took possession of the fountains and lands of the Barolong : when in 1851 the latter complained to Commandant A. Pretorius, he appointed ■ commission of some commandants and field-cornets, and ■ boundary line was agreed on between the republic and the Barolong. This line was to be the Hart river from where it enters the Vaal river up to the eye of Hart River, which is Eland's Fountain, from there with the waggon-road to the head fountain of the river Molopo, thence to ■ very large fountain called Pogosurmane, from there to the waggon-drift of the road from Lotlakana across the Molopo to Klein Mariko.

"In 1853 by the most crying injustice the Boers attacked us, and after fighting a whole day they found out that *there existed no grounds whatever for such bloodshed*, calling themselves *the blind commando* they left. All the farmers of Mariko then fled, fearing we would retaliate. Several seasons passed, till at last the Boers made some overtures for a settlement. On coming to terms with Commandant Jan Viljoen and President M. Pretorius, the old boundary lines were agreed to on both sides. But knowing how little the promises of the Boers could be trusted, we would not go back to our old residence Lotlakana, but continued to sojourn with the Bangwaketse tribe, to keep somewhat out of the Boers' reach.

"And now without the least provocation on our side (though the Boers have from time to time murdered some of my people and enslaved several

small villages of our Balala), the Transvaal Republic deprives us, by the said proclamation, of our lands and liberty, against which we would protest in the strongest terms, and entreat Your Excellency, as Her Britannic Majesty's high commissioner, to protect us."

In this letter the Hart river is affirmed to have been a boundary agreed upon in 1851 as separating an independent tribe of Barolong from the South African Republic. The statement was as far from being correct as was the picture of Tawane's fugitive horde in 1837 "warring at their own expense, with their own horses, guns, and ammunition;" but from the reverend Mr. Ludorf's standpoint it served to give an appearance of completeness and justice to Montsiwa's claim. Perhaps another adviser might have thought that an equally good claim to independence could be made out from the fact of its having been practically enjoyed since 1853; but in that case the reserve south of the Molopo would have been lost.

The government of the republic found it difficult to deal with Montsiwa. Here was a chief to whom every possible consideration had been shown in former times, who had a location as large as he desired assigned to him, who had broken his engagements and gone into rebellion, who had his location restored to him but instead of occupying it had removed to another part of the country. Why should farmers be prevented from settling on ground thus abandoned, and making use of it? True, there were some little kraals of Barolong in the location, but there was ample space for them and the farmers too. And the whole country thereabouts belonged to the white man by right of conquest from Moselekatse, so that the farmers were not ejecting lawful owners. Viewing matters in this light, nothing was done to displace those whom the reverend Mr. Ludorf termed intruders.

In June 1870 Montsiwa's brother Molema, who was living on the Molopo, was called upon to pay taxes to the government. This he refused to do, and Montsiwa supported him in his refusal, on the ground of the independence of the Barolong by virtue of the alleged treaty with Commandant-

General Potgieter. In July a protest was published in the name of Montsiwa, against any encroachment beyond the line of the Hart river. In September an interview between President Pretorius and Montsiwa took place by chance on the road as the president was returning home from the meeting at Nooitgedacht. He had there learned to his great surprise that Montsiwa claimed the Hart river as a boundary by a treaty made in December 1851. He had never before heard of such a treaty—none being in point of fact in existence;—but he would have been overjoyed to meet the Barolong on this condition. He believed it would give a clear title to the diamond-fields north of the Vaal, and for that he was willing to renounce the claim of the republic to the barren territory farther westward. He therefore eagerly asked if Montsiwa would adhere to the treaty of 1851. Montsiwa replied that as far as he was concerned he would, but that the ground east of the Hart belonged to Moroko. It was then arranged to have a conference at the Molopo river between a commission from the South African Republic and as many chiefs as could be got together, to endeavour to come to some final settlement of the matter in dispute.

The conference was held at the place appointed on the 15th of November. There were present, on behalf of the republic, President Pretorius, Commandant-General S. J. Paul Kruger, and Messrs. T. F. Steyn, H. Greef, H. Beukes, J. Botha, M. Joubert, J. Snyman, and H. Coetsee. The chiefs who attended were Phoë, Montsiwa, Moroko, Molema, Matlabe, Bakhobi, and Izaak Matlabane, of the Barolong tribe, Mohilo, of the Bahurutsi at Marikwa, Gasiyitsiwe, of the Bangwaketse at Kanye, Andries Rei representing the Korana chief Massou, and others of less note. The reverend Mr. Ludorf was present also, and took a prominent part in the proceedings.

Montsiwa claimed the country of Tao for the whole of the Barolong clans, by virtue of a treaty with Commandant-General Potgieter. He asserted that it was bounded by a line from the source of the Molopo to the source of the Hart,



thence to the source of Schoonspruit, and thence along Schoonspruit to the Vaal. He alleged that a document acknowledging the right of the Barolong to the land west of that line had been drawn up by Potgieter, but was accidentally destroyed by fire at Thaba Ntshu.

Commandant-General Kruger, as the member of the commission best acquainted with early transactions of the emigrant farmers, replied that he doubted the correctness of such an arrangement having been made. There was no document to that effect, and events that were known to have happened could not be reconciled with it. He would not take it upon himself, however, absolutely to deny it, as he had not sufficient information to do so.

There was plenty of documentary evidence in Capetown to overthrow such a statement completely, but neither the commandant-general nor any member of the commission knew of its existence. In this, as on other similar occasions, the officers of the republic were dependent on their personal knowledge alone.

During the remainder of the conference—which was closed on the 16th—the Barolong chiefs maintained an attitude of independence. They wanted the whole country that had belonged to Tao before the Korana invasion acknowledged to be theirs, and to be free of all control in it. Moroko, who would have resented—and with justice—any intrusion upon the district of Thaba Ntshu, which his clan had occupied for thirty-seven years, claimed the land between Schoonspruit and the Hart river as having been the home of his ancestors, and pointed to the remains of circles scattered over it as proofs of Barolong right. The Barolong had been driven away by war, that he said had been absolutely lost to them, and that it had been taken by the white people from Moselekatse, were arguments which did not approve themselves to his mind. They were, indeed, that Moselekatse had ever built a country they claimed. And it was correct that, although it was no less correct that military bands

town of Mosega traversed it at will, and that if the impoverished remnants of the Barolong clans had not taken care to get out of the way they would have been served as rats are served by terriers.

Montsiwa further rested the case of his own particular clan upon the alleged treaty of December 1851, and claimed the country west of the Hart as acknowledged by it to be his. The commission of the South African Republic, having never seen this treaty, expressed doubt about it, and some of the members denied its existence.

Upon this, the reverend Mr. Ludorf stated that to oblige the commission he had furnished the government secretary of the republic with a copy of the minutes taken by the Barolong themselves on the occasion when that treaty was made. In his report of this conference, sent to the high commissioner, he states that he added: "It is a thousand pities that if ever you meant to keep faith with these people your government has not drawn up proper documents of such important transactions as treaties of peace, boundary lines, etc., and kept official records thereof; this would have saved you the mortification of having to apply to the natives for proper information." It will presently be seen what value ought to be attached to documents thus furnished.

The draft of some clauses which it was proposed to add to the treaty between Portugal and the South African Republic, in which the boundary line of the last-named state was made to include the country far to the westward, was read; of course the Barolong ignored it.

The conference proved that a friendly arrangement of claims was impossible. The republic could not dispossess the Barolong from ground occupied by its people for nearly a century. And the Barolong clans, now strong and counselled by Europeans who felt intense sympathy for the farmers, would not consent to occupy a position of vassalage such as they had gladly submitted to in times of distress. They cannot be blamed for the course which they assumed. It was natural that they

should wish to get all the ground they possibly could, and to be free of control and taxes. But it would be difficult to write too harshly of some of their European advisers: men who perverted truth, and taught the chiefs and people to base their pretensions on what was false; whose letters are loathsome compounds of deceit and villainy, abuse of people more honest than themselves, quotations from holy scripture, and professions of devotion to the cause of philanthropy and "justice to the poor oppressed natives of South Africa."

As no settlement could be made in a friendly manner, it was agreed on both sides to refer to a court of arbitration the questions of disputed territory and the claim of Montsiwa to independence. Accordingly, on the 18th of November a letter was addressed to Lieutenant-General Hay, her Majesty's high commissioner, requesting him to appoint two members of a court of arbitration. The letter bore the signatures of the Barolong captains Montsiwa, Bakhobi, Moroko, Matlabe, and Izaak Matlabane, of Gasiyitsiwe, chief of the Bangwaketse, and of Massou,\* chief of the Koranas. The high commissioner was informed that Montsiwa would proceed to Capetown to confer with him and furnish particulars and documents concerning their claims.

Lieutenant-General Hay had already opened a correspondence with President Pretorius on the subject of the conflicting claims to the territory along the northern bank of the Vaal, and had shown himself not altogether impartial. The question was undecided whether the various clans were trying to make aggressions upon the South African Republic or the South African Republic was trying to make aggressions upon them, when, on the 19th of September 1870, the high commissioner wrote to the president "desiring to urge upon him in very strong terms the necessity for abstaining from encroachment, without lawful and sufficient

Massou was chief of the Taaibosch or principal clan of the Koranas. He was a very old man at this time, but lived till the 11th of June 1878. His successor in the chieftainship was his son, the well-known David Taaibosch.

cause, upon the possessions of native tribes in friendly alliance with her Majesty's government." When or how the tribes came to be in alliance with the British government his Excellency did not explain.

On the 5th of December the volksraad resolved that the correspondence with the high commissioner should be continued, and that if necessary the republic should submit its claims to arbitration and defend them on the grounds of the convention of January 1852, rights of conquest, negotiations with chiefs, and occupation during years. The members particularly desired that an impartial court should decide whether the high commissioner had a right to interfere in questions north of the Vaal not injuriously affecting British subjects. A standing committee of three members of the volksraad was appointed to assist the president, the state attorney, and the executive council in conducting matters connected with the territorial disputes.

A few days before this resolution was adopted Lieutenant-General Hay took a very decided step in reference to the ownership of the diamond-fields. From the eastern districts of the Cape Colony it was computed that fully one-fifth of the young and able men had by that time gone to seek their fortunes ■ diggers. In ■ region which so shortly before was little better than a desert, machinery for the enforcement of law and order was, of course, wanting; and those who remained at home but invested money in fitting out parties of miners became apprehensive that property might be unsafe. Under the peculiar circumstances which had so suddenly and unexpectedly arisen, they maintained that it was ■ necessity for the Cape Colony, ■ the strongest power in South Africa, to take possession of the diamond-fields. Several memorials to that effect were sent to Lieutenant-General Hay. The first of these in date ■ well as importance was signed by the honourable R. Godlonton and the honourable D. H. Kennelly, members of the legislative council of the Cape Colony, and by about five hundred others.



Following closely on these memorials came a petition from Nicholas Waterboer to her Majesty the queen, dated the 25th of August 1870, requesting that he and his people might be received as British subjects and the territory which he claimed be incorporated with the British dominions. He had been induced to make this proposal by a prospect of an annuity for life that would put him in a position infinitely better than that of captain of a little horde of semi-barbarians.

Lieutenant-General Hay had no power to annex a metre of ground, but he practically substituted the British authorities in South Africa for Mr. Arnot and his client Nicholas Waterboer in the dispute concerning the ownership of the diamond-fields. On the 30th of November 1870 he issued to an old colonial civil servant—Mr. John Campbell—a commission under the Cape of Good Hope Punishment Act, empowering that officer to act as special magistrate in accordance with its provisions in all the territory claimed by Mr. Arnot for Waterboer. On the 13th of December Mr. Campbell arrived at Klipdrift—now Barkly West,—when President Parker immediately resigned, and the new diamond-field republic came to an end. Along the northern bank of the Vaal a large number of diggers—probably a majority of them—welcomed the special magistrate, and without hesitation submitted to his authority.

But the power of a special magistrate under the Cape of Good Hope Punishment Act is very limited. Mr. Campbell could cause a British subject to be arrested and sent to the Cape Colony for trial, but he could not try him where the crime was committed. As an attempt to obviate this difficulty, on the 1st of February 1871 a commission was obtained from the captain Nicholas Waterboer. This, however, did not much improve Mr. Campbell's position. At the best, Nicholas Waterboer was only a claimant to the territory in which Klipdrift was situated, and of all those who asserted that they were the legitimate owners, he was the one who in general opinion had the least right. His entire clan

was too small to occupy more than one little village, and his residence was a hundred and forty-five kilometres distant in a direct line. No one could ascertain that he had ever exercised jurisdiction within a radius of fifty miles or eighty kilometres of Klipdrift, or that any of his people were living outside of his district of Griquatown. The Batlapin and Koranas who had their kraals along the river repudiated the pretensions made in his name. The missionaries of the London Society, who were in a position to know all the details of the history of his clan, denied that he had any right to the ground in which the diamond-fields were situated. They had kept silence when his claim to a large portion of the districts of Boshof and Jacobsdal in the Orange Free State was announced, but as soon as it was known that Mr. Arnot was asserting his right to land above the junction of the Hart and the Vaal also, they gave their testimony against him. The reverend Robert Moffat, the old and well-known missionary of Kuruman, wrote to the effect that he could make out as good a title for himself as for Waterboer. His son, the reverend John Smith Moffat, sent a letter to Jantje, the chief at Likatlong, which was immediately forwarded to the high commissioner, to the effect that the territory could be proved beyond question to belong to the Batlapin.

There were indeed people who favoured the pretensions of the Griqua captain, but they brought forward no evidence beyond mere assertions in support of their views. That section of the newspaper press, both in South Africa and in England, that under every variety of circumstance was antagonistic to the emigrant farmers, took Waterboer's side without investigation of the matter, simply because both the republics were opposed to him. Some of the articles in these papers were exceedingly ludicrous when read on the banks of the Vaal, as for instance denunciations of the rapacity of the Boers of the Free State and the South African Republic, who were represented as trying to defraud "the hereditary paramount chief of all the Grikwas" of

his diamond-fields. But such advocacy, though tending to create false impressions at a distance, had no other effect than producing merriment in the mining camps. The general opinion there of white men and black was so decidedly opposed to the supposition of Waterboer's having any rights in the neighbourhood, that Mr. Campbell thought it prudent to keep his commission as much as possible in the background.

Shortly after his assumption of duty as high commissioner, Sir Henry Barkly proceeded on a visit to the Lesuto and the diamond-fields. He arrived at Klipdrift on the 26th of February 1871, and was received with dutiful respect by her Majesty's representative. President Pretorius was there to meet him, and so were Waterboer and the Barolong and Batlapin chiefs. Mr. Arnot was present as adviser of Waterboer, and the reverend Joseph Ludorf as adviser of Phoë, Montsiwa, and Moroko. Mr. Theodor Doms came forward as the mouthpiece of the Batlapin captains, but they disowned him, as they stated he had been selling land in their names without authority to do so, and they selected the reverend Mr. Ludorf as their adviser and agent.

All of the captains, through their agents, laid statements before his Excellency, and all professed to be willing to submit their claims to a court of arbitration. Sir Henry Barkly thereupon caused deeds of submission to be drawn up, and on the 1st of March one of these was signed by President Pretorius and Captain Nicholas Waterboer, and another by President Pretorius, the Barolong chiefs Montsiwa, Moroko, Phoë, and four others of less note, and the Batlapin chiefs Botlasitsi, Jantje, Matlabane, and Mankoroane.

At the same time an agreement was concluded between Sir Henry Barkly and President Pretorius, providing for the government of the diamond-fields on the northern bank of the Vaal until the decision of the court of arbitration should be made known. Mr. Campbell, special magistrate at Klipdrift, was to have authority over all British subjects, and was to receive the fees for digging-licenses paid by

them. In the same way Mr. J. A. de Villiers, who some months previously had been stationed as landdrost at Hebron, was to have authority over all citizens of the South African Republic, and was to receive their license-money. The revenue collected on both sides was to be held in trust until the decision of the arbitrators should be given, when it was to be transferred to whichever claimant should be pronounced the rightful owner of the land.

It was agreed that the judges of the arbitration court should be Mr. Anthony Alexander O'Reilly, landdrost of Wakkerstroom, on behalf of the South African Republic, and Mr. John Campbell on behalf of all the other parties to the dispute. In case of the judges disagreeing, Lieutenant-Governor Keate, of Natal, was empowered to give a final decision. Sir Henry Barkly instructed Mr. Maximilian Jackson, the officer in command of a detachment of colonial police that accompanied him to the diamond-fields, to act as special magistrate while Mr. Campbell was otherwise employed.

On the 4th of April 1871 the court of arbitration was opened at the village of Bloemhof. To conduct the case, President Pretorius and the state attorney Frederick Klein appeared for the South African Republic, Mr. David Arnot and Attorney D. C. Grant for Waterboer, Attorney Grant and Mr. Edwards for the Batlapin chief Mankoroane, the reverend Joseph Ludorf for the Barolong chiefs Phoë, Montsiwa, and Moroko, and the Batlapin chief Botlasitsi, and Mr. Carl Mathey for the Bangwaketse chief Gasiyitsiwe and the Batlapin chief Matlabane.

From the 5th of April to the 19th of June the arbitration court listened to evidence, documentary and oral, that fills three hundred and ninety-two pages of a bluebook.

The South African Republic went into court utterly unprepared to conduct its case properly. It is almost beyond belief that no study was made of the early history of the emigrant farmers, that Commandant-General Potgieter's correspondence was not sought for, that numerous letters which are in existence from men who took part in events between



1836 and 1854 were never once referred to, that the policy carried out by Sir Harry Smith was ignored as completely ■ even Mr. Arnot himself could have desired. But if this is nearly incredible, what can be said of the following?

Nothing could have been more opposed to the claims of the republic, if properly represented, than ■ treaty such as the reverend Mr. Ludorf asserted was made with Montsiwa in December 1851. If genuine, such ■ treaty would have established Montsiwa's right to independence and to all the land west of the Hart river. It would not have affected the claim to the country east of the Hart in the slightest degree, as Montsiwa put forward no pretensions there. The whole of the evidence of the farmers was opposed to such an agreement having been made. Can it be believed that Messrs. Pretorius and Klein obtained a copy of the alleged treaty from the reverend Mr. Ludorf—a man whose denunciations of the farmers were generally known,—and put it in as part of their case, to show that one of the chiefs admitted their ownership of the diamond-fields along the Vaal. They alleged that it would have greater weight as having been obtained from their opponents. And after all, it turned out to be spurious. The so-called treaty was nothing more than an extract from certain papers which professed to be minutes of the meeting of the 30th of December 1851, taken down by the reverend Mr. Ludorf himself. No white man, except Ludorf, had ever put pen to it. The names which professed to be signatures of individuals at the foot of the document were placed there without the slightest authority. So much could be gathered from the evidence. And then the writer of the document was examined, and made the following statement: \*

"I acknowledge the document now exhibited to me to be the same I lent to Mr. Forssman, and it is in my handwriting, and is in the same state as when I lent it. I cannot account at this moment for the discrepancy of the word "Get" (*i.e.* geteekend or signed) being before the name of A. Stander, and then the cross against the names of Motsegane and Montsiwa, and which I think must be an error. There is also the N.B. after the signatures, which differs from the copy I got from Montsiwa,

\* Evidence of reverend Joseph Ludorf. Page 179 of the Bloemhof bluebook.

but corresponds with the document printed with the correspondence between the governor and the Transvaal. I admit there must be an error somewhere, which I cannot account for. I cannot say how long ago I made this copy, but it must be years ago. I am unable to state when I made this copy. I cannot swear that the document was made within the last five or six years."

After this an expressive remark follows in the proceedings of the court of arbitration:

"The commissioners, on examining the water-mark of the paper of this document, found it to be 1868."

The agents on the opposite side put in a great number of short extracts from printed books. Messrs. Pretorius and Klein must have been unaware that such books were in existence, or at any rate they must have been unacquainted with their contents, for there is not one of the volumes of any value which could not be used with far greater effect on the side of the republic.

Nearly all the evidence given by Waterboer's witnesses, except that of his brother-in-law, might have been admitted at once, if Messrs. Pretorius and Klein had known the history of Sir Harry Smith's administration and had produced a few of that governor's proclamations and letters. The evidence of Waterboer's brother-in-law could have been invalidated by the production of documents easily obtained.

The fiction of an alliance between the early emigrant farmers and the refugee chiefs Tawane and Moroko, with the condition that the whole country over which Tao exercised influence before the Korana invasion should be given up to the Barolong to be held by them as an independent people, pressed into prominence by the reverend Mr. Ludorf, was not rebutted with that overwhelming documentary evidence that could easily have been obtained. Oral evidence, both European and black, indeed, was brought forward to refute it, even to show the absurdity of the supposition; but that evidence which no judge, however partial, could refuse to accept as conclusive, was left out entirely. In this most important matter to the South

African Republic, Messrs. Pretorius and Klein were satisfied to allow a decision to be given by the judges according as they might attach more credibility to one set of witnesses than to another.

In short, instead of getting up their case as they ought to have done, the representatives of the South African Republic went into court depending upon a general feeling among the farmers north of the Vaal that their claims were just, and upon the evidence of witnesses who knew nothing except from personal experience.

The agents for the claimants on the other side acted very differently. They knew exactly what to withhold, as well as what to bring forward. Overwhelming evidence was produced as to what Sir George Napier and Sir Peregrine Maitland had done and enacted, but great care was taken to avoid Sir Harry Smith. From the evidence given at Bloemhof, documentary and oral, it could never be gathered that the policy of the imperial government in creating large Bantu and Griqua states in South Africa had been reversed.

From the beginning it was anticipated that the decision would not rest with Messrs. Campbell and O'Reilly as judges. They would see that order was preserved, that each side should have an opportunity to bring forward all the evidence it chose to produce, and that the evidence was faithfully put on record. But it was never supposed that they would agree in pronouncing judgment. The real arbiter was the final referee, Lieutenant-Governor Keate, of Natal. He had decided in favour of the South African Republic in the question of the disputed boundary with the Orange Free State, and therefore, as the high commissioner's action made arbitration by some one a necessity, President Pretorius was willing to leave this matter also in his hands. The judges disagreed, as was foreseen, and on the 17th of October 1871 Lieutenant-Governor Keate signed at Maritzburg the document known ever since as the Keate award. It was entirely adverse to the South African Republic. It gave to Nicholas

Waterboer the northern and north-eastern lines which Mr. Arnot claimed for him, and gave the Barolong and Batlapin all the territory between the boundaries so assigned to Waterboer and a line sweeping round from the source of the Molopo past the source of the Hart to Makwasi Spruit and down Makwasi Spruit to the Vaal.

A great deal of blame has been cast upon Lieutenant-Governor Keate in connection with this award, but if the matter be carefully considered, this will be found to be undeserved. It is easy for those who know something of South African history of the early years of the nineteenth century to point out errors of judgment in the document; but Mr. Keate could not be supposed to have any acquaintance with events that occurred in the interior of the country before his arrival at Natal. There was not a volume in existence to which he could refer for accurate information upon the South African Republic, or the Barolong, or the Griquas, or even the Cape Colony. To get any knowledge concerning the occurrences of bygone years it would have been necessary for him to examine vast quantities of documents scattered throughout the country, and for that he had no time. The most that he could do would be to look through ten or a dozen bluebooks, with the chance after all of finding very little to the purpose in them. He was a trained barrister, and he had a right to expect that the parties in the case would produce all the evidence in their favour that they could. It was not his duty to hunt up old letters and records to favour either one side or the other, on the contrary he would have been greatly to blame had he done so. It was for him to give a decision upon the evidence placed before him, and not to go beyond that evidence in the least respect.

He was, and ought to have been, like a judge in some distant country who had never heard more of the contending parties than that there were such people living somewhere, and to whom the Bloemhof papers might be sent with a request for a decision upon the various claims. Such a man



would be compelled to reject some of the evidence, for much of it is conflicting. To enable him to decide as to the credibility of the witnesses, he would refer to the documentary evidence. If he had no reason to suppose that this was garbled, and he found it generally leaning to one side, he would give the preference to the witnesses on that side. And this is just what Lieutenant-Governor Keate did. He rejected the evidence of a few blacks and of all the Europeans except the agents for the Griquas and the Barolong, and he accepted the evidence of the Griquas and as much of that of the Barolong and the Batlapin as did not conflict with it, because the documents put in by Mr. Arnot and which were before him seemed to favour that view.

Very different is the duty of the historian. He too must weigh evidence carefully when it is conflicting, but his investigations are not to be limited to any set of papers. He must do what Lieutenant-Governor Keate would not have been justified in doing: he must search diligently for every source of information from both sides; he must not be satisfied with extracts which may be garbled, but must examine the entire documents or volumes from which they are taken; he must go to the very origin of every dispute, and trace it to its ending. Hence comes the apparent anomaly that a judgment like the Keate award must be shown to be subversive of rightful claims, while the man who pronounced it can be regarded as perfectly blameless.

The award was received by the people of the South African Republic with consternation. It cut off from the jurisdiction of their government not only the territory occupied by the clans of the Barolong and the Batlapin, and the vast region bordering on the desert, to which their rights were really open to dispute, but the whole district of Bloemhof, part of the district of Potchefstroom, and part of the district of Marico,\* all containing farms occupied by the earliest European settlers.

\* In October 1871 the volksraad resolved that landdrosts should be stationed at the villages of Zeerust and Middelburg, thus creating new

Public meetings were held, at which those speakers who advised resistance to the dismemberment of the republic were most applauded. An outburst of indignation against the government followed. A commission of three members of the volksraad had been appointed in December 1870 to assist the president, the executive council, and the state attorney in dealing with territorial disputes, but the president had signed the deeds of submission to the court of arbitration at Bloemhof without consulting his colleagues. One of the chief objects that the volksraad had in view in consenting to arbitration was to have it decided whether her Majesty's high commissioner was justified under the convention of 1852 in interfering in matters north of the Vaal, and this had not been brought forward at Bloemhof nor been referred to in any manner by the tribunal there. The populace made the most of these omissions, and declared that they had no longer any confidence in the government.

The volksraad was in session when, on the 16th of November 1871, the award reached Pretoria. Two letters from President Pretorius to Sir Henry Barkly were first brought on for consideration. One of these letters was dated on the 22nd of July. In it the president stated that he had learned from a report of the debates in the house of commons that instructions had been issued by her Majesty to accede to the request of Waterboer and the Griquas to become British subjects; that by this proceeding confidence in an impartial decision had been weakened; and British officers could no longer be looked upon as arbitrators, but ■■■ parties in the case. Further, he protested against the reception of the Griquas as a breach of the convention of

districts out of portions of older ones. The districts were proclaimed by Acting-President Erasmus on the 24th of February 1872. Middelburg, on the eastern side of the state, had previously been part of Lydenburg. Marico, as the new district was termed of which Zeerust was the seat of magistracy, was proclaimed with boundaries including two long-settled fieldcornetcies, one of which was almost entirely cut off by the Keate award.

January 1852, and requested that the claim of England to act thus in disregard of the convention might be referred for decision to another power. This letter was not objected to. But the other, which was dated on the 10th of November, and in which the president stated that on receipt of the award he would gladly comply with it, was disapproved by the volksraad.

Such a hostile feeling towards the executive was now shown by the members that the principal officers thought it prudent to resign their situations. The state secretary Proes, a well-educated and able, but erratic man, though he had little or nothing to do with the arbitration, was the first to retire. The reverend Mr. Swart was immediately elected in his stead. The state attorney Klein then sent his resignation to the president, and received an honourable discharge. Mr. Pretorius next laid down his office, when the volksraad directed Mr. Daniel Jacobus Erasmus, the oldest unofficial member of the executive council, to act as president until an election could be held.

Meantime the reverend Mr. Ludorf was doing all that was possible still further to irritate the European inhabitants of the country north of the Vaal. Sir Henry Barkly had in vain both privately and officially cautioned him to act with prudence. His enmity towards the farmers seemed to have no bounds, or unexpected success in obtaining a triumph for his clients had disordered his mind. On the 28th of October, before Mr. Keate's decision reached Pretoria, Sir Henry Barkly proclaimed in the *Government Gazette* of the Cape Colony the boundary fixed by the award between the South African Republic and the Bangwaketse, Barolong, and Batlapin tribes. Thereupon Mr. Ludorf drew up a constitution for a Betshuana state which he proposed to bring into existence, and in the name of a number of chiefs issued a pompous proclamation. On the first trustworthy information reaching them that her Majesty's high commissioner in South Africa acknowledged their independence of the republic, the chiefs began to show those symptoms of jealousy

of each other which soon thereafter led to feuds and warfare after the manner of barbarians, yet Mr. Ludorf's project of a constitution was for a single government with a representative assembly. In his proclamation, a copy of which he forwarded to the government at Pretoria, he styled himself "commissioner and representative of the combined Barolong, Bangwaketse, and Batlapin." One clause of this document was worded as follows:

"And we do further proclaim and make known that all white persons who have settled or may hereafter settle within the limits of our territory shall be bound to conform to law and order, but will at the same time enjoy all civil rights, protection, freedom of religion, press, etc., etc. General affairs of state to rest in the hands of the great council of combined chiefs, district affairs in those of the local chief and his heemraden, the administration of justice to be entrusted to one or more civil commissioners. There will be two courts of appeal, namely the high court, consisting of the chief and heemraden in each district, and in the last instance the great council of combined chiefs. Legislative functions are vested in the national assembly, in which the white inhabitants in our territory will have the right of being represented. Everyone, without exception, shall be bound in case of hostilities to render his aid, and at once to conform to martial law. Command will be taken of the forces by the fieldcornets, district commandants, and commander-in-chief, each under fixed orders and rules. State revenues are obtained from the following sources: shop-keepers', traders', and hunters' licenses, transfer and registry dues, poll tax, summonses and appeal costs, fines, taxes to be levied on subjects, tolls, etc."

Probably this was designed purposely to annoy the Europeans, for Mr. Ludorf could not have seriously believed that the farmers who had been cut off from the republic by the award would submit to such a government as that which he proposed, or that their friends on the other side of the line would abandon them, in case the chiefs attempted to enforce their authority.

But whatever effect it was intended to produce, it was the cause of prompt action being taken by the volksraad. On the 24th of November that body instructed the acting president how to proceed in the matter, and on the following day Mr. Erasmus published a proclamation and a protest against the Keate award. In these documents he announced



that the late president Pretorius had neither authority nor right to sign the acts of submission singly and without the concurrence of his colleagues, the whole proceedings in connection with the arbitration were regarded as invalid, and the award would not be acknowledged as binding. Further, he announced that he would take steps to assure the inviolability of the territory of the republic, and to protect the rights of property within it.

On the 2nd of December a communication covering copies of these documents was forwarded to the high commissioner. Sir Henry Barkly replied that he had nothing to do with the dispute between the executive and the legislature of the republic, that he adhered to the proceedings of the arbitration, and intended to abide by and maintain the award. And Earl Kimberley, then secretary of state for the colonies, approved of this reply.

But in point of fact the award never was enforced. There was only one way in which the boundary laid down by Mr. Keate could be maintained, and that was by Great Britain assuming direct control in the territory west of it and keeping a strong military or police force there. This step the imperial government was unwilling to take. The South African Republic therefore continued to embrace the field-cornetcies that were occupied by the farmers, and a landdrost remained in the village of Bloemhof and held a court there as before.

Beyond the parts occupied by farmers, disorder soon reigned supreme. On the 13th of January 1872 the reverend J. D. M. Ludorf\* died at Likatlong, and the chiefs were then left to their own guidance. That his influence was pernicious is indisputable, but he managed to keep the clans from open war. After his death they quarrelled with each

\* He came to South Africa as a working printer for the French evangelical mission society, but after a time joined the Wesleyan body and was ordained as a clergyman. He was a man of considerable ability, but was intensely vain and ambitious, and when he had an end in view was utterly regardless of the means by which he attained it.

other, and European vagabonds of almost every nationality went among them fomenting jealousy and strife. The government at Pretoria considered it no part of its duty to do anything for the protection of people whom the high commissioner had declared independent, and when it was pointed out that mischief-makers and unprincipled ruffians were crossing over from the republic, retorted that a much larger number of the same class went there from the British possessions, without any hindrance or check on their movements.

The chief political desire of the largest party among the burghers, now that they were reeling under the tremendous blow of the Keate award, was to obtain a president a man competent to meet the British authorities in South Africa on a footing of equality in controversy. All other qualifications were to be subservient to this one of cleverness in combating an opponent by argument. To get such a man they wanted it was necessary to look beyond their own state, and according to the constitution it was required that the president should be an elector of five years' standing and a member of the Dutch Reformed church.

To meet this difficulty, on the 6th of November 1871 an act was passed by the volksraad amending the constitution. It provided that the president should be chosen by a majority of the burghers entitled to vote. He was to hold office for five years, unless he should resign sooner or be dismissed for lawful reasons by the volksraad. He was required to be above thirty years of age, to be a member of a Protestant church, and never to have been convicted of a dishonourable offence; but it was not necessary that he should be a burgher of the republic at the time of his election. Any one with the foregoing qualifications, who should receive requisitions signed by at least one hundred qualified voters and published in the *Staats Courant* one month before the election, was to be eligible. Every burgher over twenty-one years of age resident in the country for twelve months, or having purchased burgher rights, was to be

entitled to a vote in the election for a president. The voting was to be by ballot papers.

There was a strong party in favour of the election of President Brand, of the Orange Free State, to be president of the South African Republic also. The programme of the leaders of this party was the close union of the two republics, under one constitution if possible, and, if that could not be effected, under one president, leaving to each state its own constitution. Union, it was observed, would have been brought about years previously had it not been for Sir George Grey's explicit declaration that in such a case Great Britain would not regard the conventions as binding any longer. But of what value, after all, they contended, were these conventions? Great Britain violated them at will. She would not permit a third party to interpret them, but whenever it pleased a hostile high commissioner to interfere in matters north of the Orange, he was allowed to do so despite of the plain meaning of their clauses. As things stood, the conventions practically were binding only on the republics. Better let them go, and do all that could be done to strengthen their own position. The most glaring violations of the conventions were enumerated as

1. The stoppage of supplies of ammunition to the Orange Free State.
2. The interference on behalf of the Basuto of Moshesh.
3. The appointment of a special magistrate and stationing police on the Vaal.
4. Interference between the South African Republic and nominally the Griqua captain Waterboer, with the design of acquiring the territory in which the diamond-fields were situated.
5. Interference between the South African Republic and various Bantu tribes.
6. The dismemberment of the Orange Free State, and the appropriation of a portion of its territory.
7. The open and undisguised sale of guns and ammunition to blacks at the diamond-fields which had recently been

annexed to the British dominions, although the acting president Erasmus had brought this matter to the notice of the high commissioner, and had protested against it not only ■ forbidden by the conventions, but as dangerous in the highest degree to the peace and quietness of the whole of South Africa.

This party proposed then to let the conventions be considered as annulled, to push on with the waggon-road which was being constructed between Lydenburg and Delagoa Bay so as to secure communication with the outer world through a port that was not under the English flag, to establish a gunpowder manufactory in the country, to be careful to do nothing to give Great Britain an opportunity to attack them with any show of justice, but to maintain their rights, and if attacked to defend themselves to the very best of their ability. Military conquest might be prevented, they said, but even that would not put them in a much worse position than they were in already by striving to keep faith with the imperial authorities.

Requisitions embodying these views in language more or less guarded were sent to President Brand with over ■ thousand signatures attached to them. But that prudent statesman dreaded the growth of such opinions as detrimental to the best interests of South Africa, and declined to allow himself to be put in nomination. Officially he replied that constitutional questions prevented him from accepting the requisitions, but privately he communicated his true reasons. His was the part of the peacemaker. He visited the principal men who wished him to be the head of both republics, and discussed the matter with them.

He pointed out that England would certainly regard the union of the two states under such circumstances as ■ menace, and that the large number of English people in South Africa could not be expected to join against their mother country, although many of them might disapprove of the conduct of the imperial authorities. It was impossible, he said, for any section of the European inhabitants to stand alone. In face



of the enormously rapid increase of the blacks which was taking place on every side, peace, friendship, the uttermost good will, ought to exist between white people in the country, no matter what nationality their ancestors were of. He had strong hope, also, that justice would ultimately be done to the republics by the imperial government, for he believed that it was not from an inclination to be harsh and oppressive, but from ignorance of facts, that so many errors had been committed. It was an exemplification of the common proverb "onbekend maakt onbemind"—what is unknown is unloved. But hundreds of intelligent Englishmen were now visiting the distant interior, the recently discovered gold-fields in Zoutpansberg were attracting them and would continue to do so, and through them the truth concerning the republics—which was not believed in England when it came from South Africans—would certainly become known and recognised. Only have patience, he said, and all would come right.

It cannot be stated with accuracy what number, but it is certain that a large proportion—probably over two-thirds—of the burghers of the Orange Free State were at this time in full sympathy with the party in the South African Republic that President Brand was endeavouring to pacify. He succeeded, owing to his great personal influence and the confidence everywhere felt in his integrity and devotion to the welfare of the whole community.

Having failed to secure President Brand as the head of their state, the burghers of the South African Republic looked around for some one else with the requisite qualifications. There was a clergyman of the Dutch Reformed church—the reverend Thomas François Burgers—stationed at Hanover in the Cape Colony, who had in recent years been prominently before the public. Accused of holding heretical views, in 1864 he had been condemned and suspended from the ministry by an ecclesiastical tribunal; but he held his appointment from the colonial government, he brought his case before a court of law, and won it. From the supreme

court of the Cape Colony, an appeal was made by his opponents to the privy council of England, and in 1865 judgment was given in his favour. In 1866 he gained a case which he brought in the supreme court of the colony against the presbytery of Graaff-Reinet for depriving him of his seat. Mr. Burgers was a member of one of the oldest families in South Africa, and had a strong feeling of sympathy with his countrymen. He had received a good education in Europe. A patriot, a fluent speaker in both Dutch and English, and possessed of unbounded energy, he seemed in all respects but one to be the man that was needed. His creed was not in unison with that of nineteen-twentieths of the people of the republic, and in the interior of South Africa this meant a great deal. Five years later it was the cause of hundreds of men fearing to go into battle with him as their leader. But now in the anxiety of the burghers to get a clever man as their president, this was overlooked. It was not yet known that he was fond of forming large visionary plans, and trying to carry them into effect without sufficient means.

Only one other candidate — Mr. W. Robinson — was put forward. At the election three thousand three hundred and fifty-two votes were given, of which two thousand nine hundred and sixty-four were for Mr. Burgers, and on the 1st of July 1872 he took the oath of office as president of the South African Republic.

The volksraad was carried away by his power of oratory and the belief in his great ability, so that whatever he proposed was adopted. The financial condition of the republic was deplorable. He asked to be authorised to raise a loan of £60,000 on security of the revenue and two million six hundred thousand acres of vacant land already surveyed, and consent was given. Then he desired to construct a railway towards Delagoa Bay. This was something far in advance of the views of the people, and there was no commerce nor likelihood of any that would cover its working expenses, still on the 31st of July the volksraad empowered

him to offer five hundred farms of three thousand morgen each to any company that would construct the first section of one hundred and ninety-two kilometres or a hundred and twenty miles from Klipstapel to the Portuguese boundary. A commencement had already been made with the construction of a waggon road from Lydenburg to Lourenço Marques, the Portuguese government having undertaken to complete the portion of it below the Lebombo mountains, but the work was carried on in a very feeble manner, which should have been an indication that a scheme so much larger was not then practical.

Mr. Burgers termed himself an ardent federalist, and spoke of his intense desire to see a united South Africa, but what he meant by federation, or how he proposed to bring it about, he did not explain. He was at the head of the most conservative and as far as money goes the poorest community in South Africa, and within a month of his assuming office he was proposing measures suitable to a state of ten times its population and wealth. But all looked well at the moment, for no one foresaw the disasters that were impending.

## CHAPTER LXXXVI.

### HISTORY OF BASUTOLAND TO THE CLOSE OF 1872.

THE final ratification of the second convention of Aliwal North on the 3rd of May 1870, after more than two years' delay, during which the word anarchy fitly describes the condition of Basutoland, placed the British authorities in a position to take measures for the establishment of a settled government. If Moshesh's heir had possessed his father's ability this would have been a much more difficult task than it now proved to be, for some means would have been devised to prevent the loss of authority.

When Moshesh spoke of his wish to come with his people under the broad folds of the flag of England, he certainly did not mean that he desired an English officer to fill his place, or that English laws and customs should supersede the laws and customs of the Basuto. What he wished for was protection against opponents, with fully liberty to govern his people as he liked. He wished to stand in the same relationship to the queen that Molitsane or Morosi stood in towards him. Molitsane did as he pleased with regard to everything connected with the immediate government of the Bataung clan, he could inflict the punishment of death upon offenders, he could even carry on war as long as he did not involve the other sections of the tribe in it, and yet he was a subject of Moshesh. In a tribal council he would have regarded it as casting him off if he had not been summoned to attend, in all ceremonies he gave the first place to Moshesh, when Moshesh needed assistance of any kind he was bound to render it, if Moshesh made war or peace he was included. Such a system was known in Europe in olden



times, and it is a stage in the course of society from every little community being independent of all others to the formation of the great nations that exist to-day.

Nothing was further from Moshesh's mind than to sink out of sight like a Griqua captain, and his heir naturally was of the same feeling, but he was wanting in the ability that would have made it possible to frustrate the efforts of the British officials to secure a share of power.

The Bataung stragglers north of the Caledon had already been driven across that river by a Free State patrol, and the Basuto began to realise that the land there was irrecoverably lost to them. Before the wars of Tshaka it had been occupied by Bakwena tribes, whose descendants many of them were, and for a generation it had been ruled by Moshesh, so that it is no wonder they felt deep grief when it was theirs no more. Towards the close of 1869 a good many farms in it, as well as the villages of Ladybrand and Ficksburg, had been occupied. It is the most fertile portion of the province, and ever since its conquest has been regarded as the granary of the state.

The first step taken was the transfer of Molapo from the Free State, in order to secure a uniform system of government in the country. Mr. Bowker ascertained that he was still hankering after the incorporation of his district with Natal, but he expressed his desire to become a British subject, and addressed a letter to the volksraad requesting to be released from his allegiance.

While the arrangements for his transfer were being made, the chief to whom the Basuto owe their existence as a tribe was dying on Thaba Bosigo. The weight of seventy-seven years, many of them years of unwonted anxiety and care for one of his race, had exhausted his physical strength; but his mental faculties were not wholly decayed. Four months before his death he selected a beautiful kaross made of panther skins, and asked Mr. Bowker to send it in his name to the queen as a mark of his gratitude and desire that British protection should not be withdrawn from his

country. His power over his people had ceased. No one any longer went to him for orders, or asked his opinion on public matters. His sons Letsie, Molapo, and Masupha exercised control over their followers, without any reference to him. On the 11th of March 1870 he died. So nearly forgotten was the man who had once been the most prominent chief in South Africa, that hardly a colonial newspaper contained more than a brief notice of his death.

But to the Basuto his decease transformed him from a helpless old man, for whom even his nearest relatives had no regard, to the highest object of their worship. From that moment Moshesh became to them a god whose favour could bring prosperity and whose displeasure was ruin and death. Thaba Bosigo, the mountain on which he had lived and where his remains were buried, was thenceforth and is still regarded by them with superstitious reverence. It is not only their great fortress that has never yet been taken by a foe: it is a holy place, guarded by the spirit of the chief who was the founder and preserver of their tribe.

The black man of highest intellect in all South Africa had passed away. He was indeed a scheming and unprincipled chief, who never respected his neighbours' rights or kept his own engagements. Yet Moshesh was a great man. Assuredly no European who lacked honesty and truthfulness should be so regarded; but a man born and brought up as he was can be judged by a different standard. His vices were the vices of his race, all his own were his ability in creating order out of chaos, in organising a compact society out of conflicting elements, in directing military movements, in substituting mildness of government for savage ferocity, in devising and carrying out large and wise measures for his people's good, in dealings with white men even to the consummate tact with which he weighed and set off one section of Europeans against another. By Englishmen his plans of aggrandisement surely cannot be imputed to him as crimes, though the Sovereignty and the Free State were undoubtedly justified in opposing them.

Compare what he was forty years earlier with the commanding position that he occupied towards the close of his life, and consider how few Europeans have done ■■ much ■■ he did. The son of ■ chief of no importance, with less than ■ hundred followers he commenced his career by most skilful and daring raids in quest of cattle, in which success gained him a reputation among the despoiled people in the valley of the Tlotsi. Then moving to the strong position of Butabute, where in 1823 and again in 1824 he was attacked by Ma Ntatisi and reduced to great distress, his military genius saved him, and by his retirement to Thaba Bosigo beyond the territory previously occupied by any section of the Bakwena, he secured ■ fortress which enabled him to rally many hundreds of warriors around him. The destruction of the Amahlubi under Umpangazita by the Amangwane near Lishuane on the Caledon in 1826 and the retirement of the last-named tribe over the Kathlamba in 1827 gave him an opportunity that ■ man of ability could turn to account, and then he set about building up ■ strong tribe from the wretched fragments that remained of many of various names. This was Moshesh in 1827, and to-day the tribe that owes its existence to him is far the most important of all in Africa south of the Zambesi.

His disregard of truth was the weakest point in his character, yet in this respect, though he must be condemned, there is something that ought to be said in his defence. Every black man knows what truth is. In giving the particulars of ■■ event to his chief he uses language that conveys the idea of the circumstance in its exact reality, and that will not bear two constructions. He knows that this is his duty, and he acts to the very best of his ability upon that knowledge. But he feels no obligation to do this to ■ man of another tribe, and least of all to a man of ■ different race. His companions would regard him as a fool if he told the truth, when there was anything to be gained by falsehood. In this view of things Moshesh was brought up. If an undertaking, whether by word of mouth or in

writing, served its purpose for the time, by enabling him to overcome any pressing difficulty, that was enough for him in the opinion of his own people and of all the other tribes.

None of his sons could be compared with him in intellect or in disposition for improvement. And this is perhaps the most discouraging feature in connection with the Bantu of South Africa. Individuals here and there rise high above the mass of their fellows, but there is no certainty that their children will be more advanced than ordinary barbarians. Four of Moshesh's sons—Masupha or David, Nehemiah, George, and Tsekelo—were educated in colonial schools, but lacked the ability to turn their advantages to good account.

No other South African chief, not even Khama, of the Bamangwato, can be placed on the same level as Moshesh. Moroko, of the Barolong, Kama, of the Gunukwebes, Makaula, of the Bacas, and perhaps a few others, possessed more of the European virtues; but in everything else they were far beneath him.

His son Letsie succeeded to the title of paramount chief of the Basuto tribe, but it was only British authority that prevented Molapo, Masupha, and some others from declaring their independence of him. In reality he was great chief only in name, and never did, or was capable of doing, anything of note. On the 20th of November 1891 he died, and was succeeded by his son Lerothodi, a much abler man, though inferior to his grandfather in every respect.

On the 11th of April 1870, a month after the death of Moshesh, the arrangements were completed for the transfer of Molapo. On that day a meeting took place at Leribe, at which Messrs. J. W. Lotz, F. P. Schnehage, and G. Vergottini, representatives of the volksraad, released the chief from allegiance to the Free State; and Mr. Bowker, as high commissioner's agent, received him as a British subject. Molapo had previously withdrawn all his people from the country north and west of the Caledon, and he now expressed



himself perfectly satisfied with the boundary assigned to the Lesuto by the second convention of Aliwal North.

In the session of 1870 the Cape parliament showed itself as little inclined as in 1869 to take upon the colony the enforcement of order in the Lesuto. On the 3rd of May a resolution was carried in the house of assembly that it was expedient that the frontier armed and mounted police then serving in Basutoland should be withdrawn and stationed within the colonial boundary as early as would be safe and prudent. This resolution was communicated to the governor by respectful address, but he took no action upon it.

In May 1870 Sir Philip Wodehouse drew up a series of regulations for the government of the Basuto, which were, however, not to be put in force until considered expedient by Mr. Bowker. At the same time he appointed Mr. Bowker, high commissioner's agent, magistrate of the central and northern districts of the Lesuto, and Mr. John Austen, previously superintendent of the Wittebergen reserve, magistrate of the southern district. Instructions were issued to proceed with the collection of the hut-tax, and until it should be known whether the Basuto would keep their engagement to pay this tax all further arrangements for the government of the tribe were left in abeyance.

It had not yet been decided whether the Baputi were to be considered British subjects, and whether the district which they occupied south of the Orange was to be regarded as part of the Lesuto, or not. Sir Philip Wodehouse had been requested by Morosi to take him over, but had declined to do so without further consideration. To ascertain if he was still of the same mind, in June 1870 he was requested to meet Messrs. Bowker and Austen at the police camp at Pathlala Drift. There Morosi declared that he had been for years a subject of the late chief Moshesh, and that he desired to follow his example. He had acted, he said, the part of a dog lingering behind at a kraal and gnawing bones after his master had left, and now he wished to follow

up the trail of his master. He and his people were then formally received as British subjects.

Political agitators were keeping the people in such a disturbed state that Mr. Bowker was obliged to ask for authority to deal summarily with them. In reply he was informed that he could order such persons to leave the country, and if they did not go he could expel them or imprison them pending the high commissioner's decision in each case. When it became known that he possessed such power, these mischief makers desisted from acting ■ openly as before, but Mr. Bowker was aware that their intrigues were still continued. The most dangerous of these agitators were the petty chiefs who had been partly educated in the Cape Colony, and who were filled with extravagant ideas of their own importance, but who were really incompetent to fill any position of trust.

For several months after Sir Philip Wodehouse's departure from South Africa there were hardly any occurrences worth noting in connection with the Basuto. The attention of people throughout South Africa was directed to the development of the recently discovered diamond-fields and the disputes concerning the ownership of the ground along the lower Vaal. Neither government officers nor private individuals had time to bestow upon the question of the settlement of a tribe of whose name all were weary. General Hay, the temporary administrator of the government of the Cape Colony, left everything to be arranged by the coming high commissioner. Mr. Bowker, having succeeded Sir Walter Currie as commandant of the frontier armed and mounted police, appointed Inspector Surmon to act ■ his deputy in the Lesuto, and was never afterwards able to be at Maseru except for ■ brief visit.

The Basuto at this time were in possession of a large number of firearms, but since the cessation of hostilities they had not been able to obtain as much ammunition ■ they desired to have. The government wished to divert their attention to peaceful pursuits, and with this object

endeavoured to prevent munitions of war from reaching them. But contraband traders could not be kept out of the field. One of these men came up from Natal with a number of rifles, which were evidently intended for sale, though no proof could be obtained to that effect. Mr. Bowker took temporary possession of the weapons, and then wrote asking for instructions. In reply he was authorised to confiscate such importations. Still, the profit on illicit transactions in munitions of war was so great that unscrupulous men could not be deterred from engaging in them.

In August Messrs. Austen and Surmon set about the collection of the hut-tax. The chiefs were promised ten per cent of the amounts paid in, as an inducement to exert their authority and influence with the people. The result was the receipt of rather over £3,700. A small portion was paid in money, but most of it was paid in grain, horned cattle, and goats, which were sent to the Cape Colony and sold.

This being considered satisfactory, the chiefs and leading men in the country were called together at Thaba Bosigo on the 22nd of December, when the regulations drawn up by Sir Philip Wodehouse were laid before them, and discussion was invited. Everyone present expressed satisfaction at having been saved from ruin by their adoption as British subjects, but with regard to their prospective government they were less pleased. Molapo and some of the minor chiefs were still clamouring in disappointment that Great Britain had not forcibly restored to them the whole of the land ceded to the Free State by the treaty of Thaba Bosigo. Tsekelo, recently returned from Europe, had stirred up their disaffection anew. He had informed them of interviews which he had with powerful men who wished them to get back all they had lost. He had told them that the settlement effected by Sir Philip Wodehouse was condemned in England, and that the coming governor would undo all that the late one had done. Mr. Buchanan's emissaries also

were busy fomenting seditious feelings, though he himself remained in Natal, by whose government he was earnestly advised to abstain from further interference in Basuto affairs. The dissatisfaction regarding the question of regaining the whole of the lost territory was, however, rebuked by Letsie, who expressed himself contented with the country left to the tribe.

Much greater concern was expressed when the regulations were read, and it was discovered that the chiefs were ignored in them except as tax collectors and census framers. Their judicial authority, they observed, was only incidentally referred to, in order that it might be set aside by the white magistrates. That they would relinquish the outward and visible sign of rank and power was not reasonable to expect, and certainly they had no intention of doing so in reality, whatever they might profess in words. Molapo, Masupha, and the minor chiefs spoke openly against the acceptance of the regulations, on the ground of their ignoring the chiefs and placing women in a position which, according to Basuto ideas, could only be filled by men. Finally, however, Letsie stopped further discussion by declaring himself satisfied, and adding that the people must accept the regulations and pay the hut-tax.

A little later in the day an address to Mr. Bowker was drawn up in writing and signed by the chiefs. In it they expressed their thanks for having been received as British subjects, and declared that the laws read over were reasonable. But they stated that "they were sorry not to see mentioned the rights and the authority left to the chiefs, who were the captains of the queen."

At this meeting cattle were collected to be sent, according to traditional custom, with messengers announcing the death of Moshesh to the chiefs of tribes with whom he had intercourse in his lifetime. By some oversight no messengers were sent to Ketshwayo on this occasion, which omission of courtesy led some time afterwards to a panic grounded on fear of a Zulu invasion.



On the 31st of December 1870 Sir Henry Barkly assumed duty as high commissioner and governor of the Cape Colony. As soon as his arrival in South Africa was known, the Basuto chiefs sent him a letter of welcome. They had been persuaded by Tsekelo and Mr. Buchanan that Sir Philip Wodehouse had been recalled owing to their representations in England, and that the new governor would most likely favour them much more than the late one had done. The chiefs were therefore anxious to know what Sir Henry Barkly's views and intentions were. He did not keep them long in suspense. Within ten weeks of his arrival in Cape-town he was on his way to the Lesuto, and on the 16th of March 1871 he had a meeting with Letsie at Maseru. The governor was accompanied by Messrs. J. H. Bowker and C. D. Griffith. Lieutenant-Governor Keate, of Natal, by previous arrangement met him in the Lesuto.

Sir Henry Barkly announced that he intended to increase the staff of European officers in the territory and to annex it to the Cape Colony, to which Letsie replied that he would be satisfied with anything and everything that the queen's government might do.

The other chiefs were equally loyal in words. Molapo asked about the ground he had lost, and was told that the Caledon was the fixed boundary and no other must be thought of. He said that he was satisfied, as the governor knew what was best for them; but as soon as he was beyond the hearing of Europeans he burst out into passionate utterances against Sir Henry Barkly and Sir Philip Wodehouse alike.

Upon the death of Moshesh, Masupha had removed from his residence on the Putiatsana to Thaba Bosigo, against the orders of the high commissioner's agent. He was the ablest of Moshesh's sons, and recognised the advantage to himself which the occupation of the sacred and impregnable mountain would give. He had obstructed the collection of hut-tax, and had put himself in opposition to all authority. Nevertheless, with a large armed following he met the

governor and escorted him through the Berea district, declaring himself a thoroughly loyal and obedient subject. Sir Henry Barkly told him that he could not be recognised as the head of a portion of the tribe nor receive any commission upon the receipt of hut-tax until he removed from Thaba Bosigo and took up his residence in the Berea district, over which he was appointed chief. He promised to comply with the governor's wishes, but went straight back to Thaba Bosigo.

Nehemiah, George, and Sophonia had just before been announcing as their views that the chiefs should collect the revenue, pay the magistrates, and dispose of the surplus as they should see fit, that the laws should be made by the Basuto chiefs and headmen sitting in council at Thaba Bosigo, and that the chiefs, advised by the magistrates, should have the administration of affairs. These sons of Moshesh were now, if their professions to the governor could be trusted, the most humble and dutiful subjects, contented to abide by whatever the queen's representative should please to consider good for them.

Sir Henry Barkly, deceived by these protestations of loyalty, returned to Capetown convinced that the chiefs were sincere, and that there would be no difficulty in governing the tribe. The country, in his opinion, was capable of supporting many times the number of inhabitants then in it. On the 27th of April he opened the Cape parliament with a speech in which he stated his intention to introduce a bill to annex Basutoland to the Cape Colony, and informed the members that the hut-tax was generally paid, that the amount collected had left a considerable balance after defraying expenses, and that the revenue was adequate for purposes of government, including police.

The imperial government had never intended that the Lesuto should be a direct dependency of the crown. When permission was given to Sir Philip Wodehouse to take over the people, it was on condition that the legislature of Natal should previously express its consent to their incorporation

with that colony. He had not adhered to his instructions, and the secretary of state had then permitted him to have his own way for a time, provided he did not put the home government to any expense. This difficulty he had got over by employing none but members of the frontier armed and mounted police, with an officer of that force as his agent in the territory, though in direct opposition to the wishes of the Cape parliament. But this was an arrangement which was not intended by any one to be permanent.

On the 17th of October 1870, before Sir Henry Barkly left England, he was instructed by the secretary of state to discuss the question with Sir Philip Wodehouse, and received directions in writing that "Basutoland should be annexed as soon as possible either to Natal or to the Cape Colony." An alternative was indeed mentioned in another paragraph, in which the secretary wrote: "You will endeavour to secure either that this territory is annexed to one of the neighbouring colonies, or that a revenue is raised from it sufficient to enable you as high commissioner to conduct its government without external assistance." But the views of the imperial government were decidedly against the last of these courses, if annexation could be brought about.

On the 3rd of May the governor's secretary brought an annexation bill to the legislative council, where it was received and read for the first time. It then dropped out of sight for two months, until the 3rd of July, when it was referred to a select committee of eight members. The committee consulted Messrs. J. X. Merriman and J. H. Bowker, as well as the colonial secretary and the attorney-general, all of whom were in favour of annexation to the Cape Colony rather than to Natal. Mr. Bowker stated that Masupha and a few of the petty chiefs were opposed to European government, but the power of the tribe was completely broken and its influence was gone.

On the 1st of August the select committee brought up a report. Basutoland, they affirmed, offered a wide field of

profitable commercial enterprise, which it would be sound policy to secure; the country having already been declared British territory, it would be undesirable for the colony, being geographically connected with it, not to obtain legislative control over the people; and with reference to the financial aspect of the question, it did not appear that annexation was likely to entail any additional burden on the colony.

The actual revenue received from the date of the assumption of British authority to the 31st of May 1871 was £4,753. This was made up of hut-tax £3,721, trading licenses £961, fines £63, and fees for registration of marriages £8. The hut-tax was one year's collection only, the other items were receipts of rather more than three years. A large increase in all might reasonably be expected. The expenditure proposed by Sir Henry Barkly was: chief magistrate and governor's agent £800 and £100 for house rent, two magistrates at £400 and £50 for house rent, two assistant magistrates at £200, one European clerk at £125, and three Basuto clerks at £50 each per annum. Stationery £75. Total £2,550. With the balance of the revenue he proposed to provide a police force. Nothing was allowed in these estimates for public works, buildings, education, or postal communication.

The legislative council in committee adopted the report by a majority of eleven to six, but after a warm discussion the second reading of the annexation bill was only carried by ten votes against eight. On the following day—2nd of August—it passed its third reading in the council, and on the 5th it was brought up in the house of assembly and read for the first time. The session was then drawing to a close, and business was being hurried through. On the 9th the bill was read for the second time. On the 10th the house of assembly went into committee, and after a very brief discussion the bill was read the third time without a division. On the day following, the 11th of August, parliament was prorogued.



By this act the Lesuto was annexed to the Cape Colony, but was not made subject to colonial law. The duty of legislating for the territory, that is of making, repealing, amending, and altering laws and regulations, was vested in the governor. All legislative enactments were to be laid before parliament within fourteen days of the opening of the session following their promulgation, and were to remain in force unless they should be repealed, altered, or varied by act of parliament during that session. No act of parliament was to apply to the territory unless so declared in express terms in the act itself or in a proclamation by the governor.

On the 16th of August a great meeting of the Basuto people took place at Maseru. A message from the governor was read to Letsie, informing him that no change whatever was effected in the position of the Basuto by the annexation of the country, except giving them the full privileges of British subjects in the Cape Colony. Letsie, Masupha, Nehemiah, George, Tsekelo, Makotoko for Molapo, and others, using the most loyal language, agreed to what had been done. No one raised a dissentient voice.

A little later—11th of September—Letsie caused a letter to be written to the governor expressing his satisfaction that his country had been united to the Cape Colony, and asking that the upper districts of Nomansland should be declared part of the Lesuto. He claimed them, he said, as having been presented by the Pondo chief Faku to his father Moshesh. This was not the first time that Letsie advanced pretensions to the ownership of the best part of Nomansland, and in previous chapters it has been recorded how persistently Nehemiah schemed to obtain the recognition by Sir George Grey and Sir Philip Wodehouse of his occupation of that territory. Sir Philip Wodehouse had located the clans of Makwai, Lebenya, Lehana, and Zibi in it; but without proclaiming it British soil. The restrictions placed by the secretary of state in 1864 upon the extension of the British dominions in South Africa were still in force regard-

ing the whole country east of the Indwe and the Kei. Letsie's claim could not therefore be recognised, even had the high commissioner been disposed to admit the validity of Faku's cession.

The Lesuto was now divided into four districts, named Leribe, Berea, Thaba Bosigo, and Kornet Spruit. Over the whole Mr. Charles Duncan Griffith had already been placed, with the titles of chief magistrate and governor's agent. On the 2nd of August he assumed the duties, when he found the only questions causing general interest were the refusal of Masupha to leave Thaba Bosigo, though Letsie professed to endorse the order of the governor that he should do so, and Mr. Buchanan's efforts to obtain the cattle promised by Moshesh to defray the cost of his mission to Europe, but which no one was disposed to contribute.

A slight difficulty had arisen through four Basuto, who were armed with guns and were travelling through the Free State with a pass signed by Mr. David Arnot, having their weapons taken from them when they reached Bloemfontein; but it was surmounted by Mr. Griffith, acting under instructions from the high commissioner, making an unofficial request to the landdrost of that town to restore the confiscated articles.

On the 15th of July the reverend Mr. Jousse wrote to the governor on behalf of Masupha, asking that he might remain on Thaba Bosigo, as Letsie had no intention of going to live there. On the 2nd of September the governor directed the chief magistrate to inform Masupha that he must move as soon as he conveniently could to the Berea district, but this intimation was not to be followed by any active steps unless Letsie should apply for assistance. Masupha therefore remained master of the stronghold. As for Mr. Buchanan, he continued to write inflammatory letters to the chiefs, and did his utmost to keep alive a spirit of disaffection. On the 2nd of September the high commissioner directed Lieutenant-Governor Keate to inform him that if he sent messengers again into the Lesuto they would

be prosecuted for stirring up sedition, but that he could bring his claim against the Basuto chiefs for compensation for the expenses he had incurred in his visit to England before the proper law courts, if he chose to do so.

At Leribe Major Charles Harland Bell was appointed magistrate, and assumed duty on the 13th of May. He was received by Molapo in a very cordial manner, and at a meeting which was held to introduce him, Jonathan and Joel, Molapo's sons, Selebalo, Molapo's half-brother, and Mapetshuane, son of Poshuli and cousin of Molapo, who were the leading men of the district, expressed their pleasure in welcoming him.

In the district of Berea, Inspector William Henry Surmon, of the frontier armed and mounted police, was appointed to act as magistrate.

The governor's agent was also required to perform the duties of magistrate of the district of Thaba Bosigo. He resided at Maseru, and had as assistant magistrate and interpreter Mr. Emile Rolland, son of one of the first missionaries of the Paris evangelical society, who was thoroughly acquainted with the language and customs of the Basuto. He was also authorised to provide himself with a clerk, and on the 11th of November Mr. H. E. Richard Bright arrived and assumed that duty.

In the district of Kornet Spruit Mr. John Austen remained as magistrate.

The sub-magistrates had jurisdiction in civil cases of any amount, but their decisions were subject to review by the chief magistrate. They had jurisdiction in all criminal cases, except when persons were charged with crimes punishable by death under the colonial law. All sentences of over a month's imprisonment, or a fine of £5, or twelve lashes, were subject to the review of the chief magistrate, upon application of the person convicted. Persons charged with offences punishable by death under the colonial law were tried by a court of three magistrates, of whom the chief magistrate was to be one, and he was to preside. If they

were not unanimous in finding the prisoner guilty, he was discharged; if they differed as to the sentence, their proposals were submitted to the governor for his decision. No sentence of death could be carried out except upon the warrant of the governor.

All trials were to take place in open court, the evidence was to be recorded, and a return of all cases tried in the inferior courts was to be sent to the chief magistrate at the end of every month.

Each district was placed under the superintendence of one of the principal chiefs, who was to be consulted by the governor's agent in distributing the ground among the people. The chief was required to use his influence in collecting the hut tax, and was allowed a percentage of the receipts. He could try any civil or any petty criminal case occurring in his district, but had no assistance given to him to enforce his decisions, and his having tried a case did not prevent a suitor from bringing it afterwards before the magistrate.\*

The hut-tax was fixed at ten shillings a year for each hut occupied by a family or a single man. When two or more wives of a man occupied the same hut, ten shillings was to be paid for each of them. This tax was made payable, either in money, or stock, or produce of the land, on the 1st of June in each year. Anyone neglecting to pay it was liable to have his property seized, or to be ejected. The headmen were responsible for the payment of the tax in their villages.

The sale of spirituous liquors was prohibited under a penalty of £10 for the first offence, and in addition to this fine the trading license was to be forfeited on a second conviction. All spirits found in such cases were to be destroyed. No firearms or ammunition could be sold with-

\* Though this was the law, in practice the chiefs continued to try nearly all cases, except such as were brought by a member of one clan against a member of another; and public opinion was so greatly in their favour that they had no difficulty in causing their decisions to be carried out.



out the sanction in writing of the magistrate of the district, under a penalty not exceeding a fine of £500 or seven years' imprisonment with hard labour. Licenses to trade in other goods were to be paid for at the rate of £10 per annum or £1 per mensem for each shop or waggon.

Before the law all men were declared equal. The crimes punishable by death were murder and arson with intent to kill.\* Infanticide was made punishable by imprisonment, and rape by flogging not exceeding fifty lashes, or confiscation of property, or both.† Forcible seizure of property, except by order of a magistrate in course of law, was declared to be theft. Forcibly compelling any one to be circumcised, or circumcising any one without the consent of parents or guardians, was declared to be assault.‡ Practising or pretending to practise witchcraft, or falsely accusing any one of doing so, was declared to be roguery. All other acts against person or property which were punishable by the colonial law were declared punishable in the Lesuto, due allowance being made for circumstances.

Punishments were to be inflicted either by fines, or imprisonment,\*\* or flogging; but no female was to be flogged.

\* Under Bantu law murder and arson when committed by common people were usually punished by a fine of ten head of cattle. Culpable homicide was punished by a fine of four or five head of cattle. The degree of punishment depended upon the rank of the offender and upon that of his victim. Death was inflicted for acts of treason against the chief and for being pronounced by a witchfinder guilty of having caused any great calamity. A man caught in the act of stealing cattle at night could be killed with impunity. A notorious thief whose conduct was likely to get his tribe into difficulty was usually put to death by order of his chief.

† Under Bantu law these crimes were very leniently dealt with. The first was hardly noticed at all.

‡ Moshesh and Letsie at one time were indifferent as to circumcision. Some of Letsie's sons were not circumcised. He would not punish those who practised it, but he said that he saw no advantage in it. Molitsane suppressed circumcision in the Bataung clan. The Zulus and Natal tribes have been uncircumcised since the practice was abolished by Tshaka.

\*\* This is a method of punishment unknown to Bantu law. It necessitated the erection of prisons. On the 2nd of September authority was

Hardened criminals and those who had not sufficient property to pay fines were to be flogged, not exceeding thirty-six lashes.

No woman could be compelled to marry a man against her will. Marriage by a minister of the Christian religion was declared to be as binding as if performed according to the custom of the country. No marriage, however performed, was to be considered valid unless within twenty days thereafter the parties to it declared their consent before a magistrate, and caused it to be registered. A registration fee of two shillings and sixpence was made payable. In every marriage contract the cattle to be transferred to the woman's family were to be registered, or no action at law could thereafter be entertained concerning them.\* Either survivor of a marriage was to be entitled to the custody of the children until the males were eighteen and the females sixteen years of age. In all cases where marriages were not registered, the woman was to be entitled to the custody of the children. A widow was to be free to marry again, but in this case the custody of the children was to be transferred to some relative of the deceased husband to be selected by the magistrate.

These regulations were to come in force on the 1st of December 1871. They had been laid before the Basuto chiefs and leading men at the meeting on the 22nd of December 1870, and Letsie had agreed to them, but some of the clauses were very objectionable to the great body of the people. In particular, the tribe was not prepared for such a revolution in the position of women. The veneering of civilisation in even that section of the people which was under missionary influence was very thin, and the families

issued by the governor to build prisons and to employ at each seat of magistracy one chief constable at £36, one constable at £18, and two at £12 each per annum.

\* This was not to affect marriages contracted before the 1st of December 1871, all cases in connection with which were to be decided according to the old customs.

to whom the guardianship of children by women seemed reasonable could not be reckoned by hundreds.

It had been a common practice for young men who were nominally Christians to get married by missionaries in churches, and afterwards to abandon these wives and take others according to Bantu custom. Their treatment of the cast-off women was regarded by the tribe as a mere joke, for in the eyes of the people they had not the status of wives.\* Naturally fathers soon came to object to marriages in church, and required their daughters to take husbands according to the ancient custom, which provided some security against desertion or gross ill-treatment of married women. Thus public opinion, even in the small section of the people under missionary influence, was at this time in favour of the old system, under which a woman was throughout life a ward under protection. The nine-tenths of the people whose social views were not affected by missionary teaching had of course but one opinion. Thus these clauses in the regulations only caused irritation, without serving any good purpose.

With the establishment of British authority in the Lesuto the French missionaries returned to their labours. The territory retaken by Sir Philip Wodehouse from the Free State contained all their lost stations except four. At once they set about reorganising their work, establishing new church centres and opening new schools. Prior to this date the children in their schools had received instruction in no other language than their own. Though there were more than three thousand individuals in the country who could read Sesuto, Mr. Bowker was unable to obtain a single black interpreter, the few petty chiefs who understood English being considered untrustworthy by him. From this time

\* One of the leading missionaries in the Lesuto wrote to the government about these marriages, which, as he said, were considered jokes. The remedy which he suggested was to make the wife in such a case entitled to a divorce. A layman may be pardoned for preferring to such a remedy the Bantu system when applied to people holding Bantu opinions regarding women and their status in society. Sir Henry Barkly declined to facilitate divorces.

forward the youths in the higher classes have been taught English also. In 1868 a training school for teachers was established at Morija. The government would have assisted with grants of money if there had been any revenue that could be applied to such a purpose, but before the close of 1871 state aid could not be given, and then it was only in the form of outfits for schools. In this year an establishment for training girls in the practice of such industries as are commonly engaged in by European females of the working class was opened by the reverend Mr. Jousse, and met a pressing need, as without such training young women could not become fitting wives for those males who were making progress towards civilisation.

On the 3rd of November 1871 the act of parliament by which the Lesuto was annexed to the Cape Colony was ratified by the queen in council, and the existence of the territory as a separate dependency of the crown was thus ended.

Weekly postal communication with other parts of the world was established from the 1st of January 1872 by means of runners from the seats of magistracy to Aliwal North on the southern bank of the Orange river.

Early in January 1872 a difficulty arose concerning the custom of *letsima*, or the enforced labour of the people in the gardens of the chiefs. Masupha had called out a number of men for this purpose, when one Motube, who was supposed to have been instigated by a European to resist, declined to appear. For this refusal Masupha caused him to be severely beaten, and he then appealed to the governor's agent for protection and redress. Mr. Griffith investigated the case, and sentenced the man who had assaulted the complainant to pay a fine, but neither he nor Masupha, under whose orders he had acted, would abide by the judgment. There were no means of enforcing the sentence, so Mr. Griffith applied to Letsie to carry it out, and that chief, pleased at his power being thus recognised, obliged Masupha to pay the fine.



On the 30th of January 1872 the governor's agent issued a circular to the magistrates, directing them to suppress the custom of letsima or enforced labour, but to recognise the custom of maboela, or the setting apart by the chiefs about the end of December of tracts of pasture land for winter use, after which all cattle trespassing thereon were liable to be impounded. This custom had also caused some discussion, and the people as well as the chiefs were opposed to its abolition.

It was found impossible, however, to suppress the system of compulsory labour for the benefit of the chiefs. On the 17th of February Major Bell reported that Molapo was threatening to enforce it, and that British rule was precarious in the district of Leribe. He added that he thought "the magistrate's authority should have the support of something more than it rested on, namely the prestige of the government." To this report the colonial secretary replied that the governor could not furnish any stronger force of the frontier armed and mounted police than the seventeen men then in the territory. But on the 11th of October, as the condition of the finances seemed to warrant it and the need for a constabulary of some kind was pressing, the governor's agent was authorised to raise a Basuto police force to consist of one inspector, two sub-inspectors, four sergeants, four corporals, and one hundred privates. By a careful selection of the men and judicious management this puny force was made of some service, but it could never be thoroughly relied upon to support the magistrates on all occasions.

Masupha still continued heedless of the governor's wishes that he should remove to the district assigned to him, but consented to change his residence from the top of Thaba Bosigo to a place near that mountain. As he could easily regain the stronghold upon any alarm being given, the movement did not affect his position in any way. Fortunately for the European authorities, a violent feud broke out between him and Jonathan, son of Molapo, concerning the ownership

of some ground on the southern bank of the Putiatsana, so that he was to some extent kept in awe by the knowledge that a considerable force could at any time be raised against him. He chafed, however, at any interference by Europeans with his authority over his people, and was known more than once to cause men who offended him to be put to death. This he could do without fear of the governor's agent, who had no means of controlling or punishing him for such acts, that were regarded by all the other chiefs as perfectly legitimate on his part.

Mr. Buchanan was still fomenting discontent with the existing order of things. At his instigation, on the 25th of February Letsie, Molapo, Masupha, and a number of the minor chiefs forwarded to Sir Henry Barkly a petition for representation in the Cape parliament. A more absurd request could not have been made. The governor directed Mr. Griffith to explain to the chiefs what the effect of representation would be, that colonial law in that case would entirely supersede Bantu law, so that the measure was inexpedient and undesirable. Thereupon the chiefs stated that they had affixed their marks to the petition in ignorance, that they desired to withdraw it, and were quite willing to be guided by the governor's advice. Mr. Griffith was also directed to warn Mr. Buchanan against further agitation, and to acquaint him that if this warning had no effect, the colonial law against Kaffir emissaries would be put in force. He had not yet received payment from the Basuto of the expense he had incurred in his visit to England, so Mr. Griffith induced the chiefs to collect cattle by a tribal subscription to settle his claim and then to cease intercourse with him.

On the 19th of August a commission was appointed by the governor, in accordance with a resolution of the house of assembly, to enquire into and report upon the laws and customs of the Basuto and on the operation of the regulations established for their government. This commission did not enter very deeply into the matter, but took such evidence

as was at hand, and on the 30th of December sent in a report, which was printed as a pamphlet and made to serve the purpose of a handbook for the European officials in the territory.

There was much less difficulty in collecting taxes than in exercising judicial authority, as the jealousy of the chiefs was not aroused by it. They did not yet comprehend that the money so raised might be used to undermine their power, and they were allowed to deduct a large commission before transferring the balance, so that they acted as tax gatherers with perfect good will. The actual revenue for the year that ended on the 31st of May 1872 was

Hut-tax	...	...	...	...	...	£5,296	16	5
Licenses	...	...	...	...	...	527	0	0
Fines, fees, &c.	...	...	...	...	...	73	17	4
Grain passes	...	...	...	...	...	13	0	0
Fees for marriage registration	...	...	...	...	...	10	0	0
Fees for transfer of licenses	...	...	...	...	...	0	0	0
						<hr/>		
						£5,927	3	0

The expenditure during the same period was

Salaries and allowances	...	...	...	...	...	£4,095	6	11
Works and buildings	...	...	...	...	...	500	0	0
Transport	...	...	...	...	...	168	4	6
Education	...	...	...	...	...	66	0	0
Collection of hut-tax	...	...	...	...	...	34	11	0
Miscellaneous	...	...	...	...	...	6	10	3
						<hr/>		
						£4,870	12	8

In 1872 the Paris evangelical society employed fifteen European missionaries and sixty-five Basuto catechists and schoolmasters in the territory. It occupied nine centres, with forty-five outstations, and had two thousand two hundred and twenty-nine church members and two thousand and forty-six children attending its schools. In this year and in this mission, which had done so much not only for

the elevation but for the preservation of the Basuto, the beginning of that pernicious revolt against European guidance, now known as the Ethiopian movement, took place. At the station of Hermon one hundred and fifty-eight individuals, previously church members, renounced the control of the missionaries, and declared their intention to conform to no other church regulations than those made by themselves. The feeling of nationality was at the bottom of this movement. Its tendency was to produce a form of Christianity that would embody also the leading principles of the Bantu religion, and thus be acceptable to the great body of the people. It would be in fact a compromise between the Christianity of the French missionaries and ancestral worship mixed with fetishism, in which the moral precepts of the one faith could be made to fit in with the veneration of spirits, polygamy, the use of charms, and the power to deal in witchcraft of the other. After a time these people were induced to return to the church, but the desire for independence was not eradicated, it was merely dormant. Many years later it spread to numerous Bantu mission stations in South Africa, and it threatens incalculable harm to the cause of progress in civilisation. In 1872 it attracted very little attention, except among the members of the French Mission.

Other religious denominations were labouring in Basutoland at this time, but their operations were small compared with those of the French evangelical mission. The Roman catholic church was, however, extending its work rapidly, and the English episcopal church was endeavouring to obtain a firm foothold in the country. It is open to doubt whether this multiplication of religious bodies did not tend upon the whole to retard rather than to promote the advancement of the Basuto towards European ways of thinking, for it caused much confusion among them, and observant black men were often heard to remark at public meetings that it would be time enough for them to attend to the exhortations of the missionaries when these agreed among themselves.



In other respects the Basuto showed a strong desire for improvement. They appreciated the value of all articles of European manufacture that tended to increase comfort in a simple manner of living, thus cutlery and crockery had come into general use. They had become expert horsemen, and every young man was ambitious to be the owner of a saddle and bridle. A breed of horses adapted to a mountainous country was being evolved, small, but strong and hardy, surefooted and capable of great endurance, needing neither grooming nor artificial food. These animals are now recognised as a distinct breed in South Africa, and under the name of Basuto ponies are highly valued by polo players and mountain climbers.

Many other articles of European manufacture than those here named had also come into use by even the least progressive of the Basuto people, the most highly prized of all being guns. To be the owner of a gun was to have a claim to regard as a man which nothing else could give. To obtain one a young Basuto was willing to go from home and work for strangers for many months, and a proud and envied man was he when he returned to his kraal with one on his shoulder.

They were very willing to learn how to make things for themselves, and the chiefs encouraged them in this. At a little later date the leading chiefs expressed a desire for the establishment of schools in which mechanical instruction should be given, but that the white man's religion should not be taught in them. That clearly indicates their views: to adhere to their ancestral belief and customs, and to adopt only that which would make them stronger as a distinct people.

## CHAPTER LXXXVII.

### ACCOUNT OF THE MAKOLOLO TRIBE AND OF THE HERERO WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

OF the great military tribes that had devastated South Africa, one—the Makololo—had now ceased to exist. After the defeat of the Mantati horde by the Griquas at Lithako on the 26th of June 1823, the murderous host broke into fragments, one of which was under a young chief named Sebetoané, a Mokwena\* by birth, who had raised himself by his ability from a humble position after his immediate retainers had been driven by Umpangazita from the banks of the Sand river. His followers were at that time termed the Bapatsa, but being joined by other sections of the shattered horde, principally Bafokeng and Bapiri, who were of the same family group—the Bakwena,—the united band took the name of Makololo, and commenced a career of conquest on its own account.

Sebetoané first measured his strength with the Bangwaketse, whose principal kraal was then as now at Kanye, north of the Molopo. This tribe was at the summit of its fame and power, its able and warlike chief Makaba had made his name dreaded far and near, and by his defeat of the entire Mantati horde before its encounter with the Griquas, had apparently placed himself beyond fear of another attack. His warriors were well trained and armed, and placed unbounded confidence in their hitherto successful head. But Sebetoané was more than his equal in strategy, and managed to draw the

\* Sebetoané and his original followers spoke the dialect of the Bakwena and claimed to belong to that group of tribes, but they certainly had a large admixture of Makalanga blood in their veins, though how it was acquired cannot now be ascertained.

Bangwaketse into an engagement in an unfavourable position, where they were defeated and a great number of their best men were slain. Among those who fell was their renowned chief, who died on the field of battle, as became a warrior of his reputation.

Then Sebetoané withdrew, taking much spoil with him, and the Bangwaketse came together again and built a new kraal close by their old one. Their chief, Gasiyitsiwe by name, a grandson of Makaba, was a little boy, and two regents in succession governed the tribe during his minority. When the second of these was their head the Matabele occupied the territory to the eastward, and Moselekatse sent a small army against him. He made a very feeble resistance, for the spirit of the tribe was lost when Makaba died. His cattle were taken, many of his people fell under the stabbing assagai, and he with the survivors fled for their lives to the desert, where the remnants of the other Betshuana tribes were seeking shelter. There, half-starved and homeless, they were obliged to remain until the emigrant farmers drove Moselekatse away to the north. Then the Bangwaketse under Gasiyitsiwe returned to Kanye, but the tribe was now small and feeble, and it has never since recovered its former strength.

Sebetoané's followers were still more like a rabble than the disciplined body they afterwards became, but he was gradually introducing order among them. There was so little left to plunder in the south that his people were often reduced to great distress, and after wandering about for a few months subsequent to the battle near Kanye, he set his face towards the north. The nearest tribe in that direction was the Bakwena of recent times, that is the section of the widespread Bakwena family that still retained the ancient name. This tribe had recently undergone a revolution of an unusual kind. Its chief, Mokwasélé by name, was a man of more depraved character even than an ordinary barbarian, and being as weak as he was dissolute had made himself so unpopular that some of his subjects

conspired against him, put him to death, and raised one of his distant relatives to be their ruler, his son Setsheli being a young lad at the time.

The legitimist party desired that their new head should act only as regent until Setsheli should grow up, but the other section would not consent to this arrangement, so a division of the tribe would probably have taken place, with civil war as its result, if the Makololo had not just then arrived in the neighbourhood. The legitimists sent messengers secretly to Sebetoané to appeal to him and Mokwena himself to aid them in raising Setsheli to the chieftainship which was his by right of birth. Sebetoané consented, and a definite plan was arranged. The Makololo surrounded the Bakwena kraal at midnight, entered it at dawn, and with the assistance of the legitimists overcame and put to death the new chief and his partisans. Setsheli was proclaimed chief, and Sebetoané withdrew without plundering or further molesting the people.

The Bakwena tribe suffered terribly from the Matabele. Its cattle were captured, its kraals were pillaged and burnt, and much the larger number of its men, women, and children were killed. Some of its boys and girls were incorporated in Moselekatse's bands, and a miserable remnant with the chief barely escaped extermination by taking refuge in the desert. There many died of thirst and starvation, and when at length relief came by the arrival of the emigrant farmers and the flight of the Matabele, only a small band was left of the once large tribe.

The Makololo continued their journey northward, and next attacked the Bamangwato, who were not in a condition to offer much resistance. Khari, the most renowned of all their chiefs before the present ruler Khama, had recently fallen in battle with a Baroswi clan that he was endeavouring to subdue, and with him so many men were killed that the tribe was reduced to helplessness. Sekhomi, a son of Khari, but not by the great wife, then became chief. He was very young, and consequently without experience, so



that when the Makololo arrived he and his people were practically at their mercy. They helped themselves to the cattle and the best of the girls and boys, and then left, taking Sekhomi a prisoner with them. Some months later he was either liberated or permitted to escape, and the scattered Bamangwato gathered again around him and built a kraal at Shoshong, in a strong but otherwise not very good position among their hills.

Thence to the Zambesi the Makololo cut their way through the tribes that were found on their line of march. The carnage must have been great, but it is impossible now to ascertain more than the general outlines of the events that took place. Like all other Bantu conquerors, Sebetoané spared boys and girls of the people he otherwise destroyed, and incorporated them in his own tribe, though in a servile condition. His warriors were now under strict discipline, and the rabble with which he set out had become a veritable army. The Baroswi, broken up into little independent parties, could offer no resistance worth mentioning, and the Makololo, after bringing them under subjection, crossed the Zambesi with the help of Batonga boatmen whom they impressed, and went down its bank to the principal settlements of those people, which were very numerous below the great fall. The Batonga tried to resist, but were defeated and slaughtered in great numbers, and vast herds of cattle fell into the hands of the victors. Then the Makololo settled in a large and fertile valley north of the great river.

Here the tribe prospered greatly, and was able to maintain its position ■ the ruling people in that part of the interior of the continent. Its exactions from its subjects were very heavy, but none of the conquered tribes or clans dared to resist the will or disobey the commands of Sebetoané. So great was his power and influence that the subject people, though vastly outnumbering the band that accompanied him to the north, were obliged to learn the dialect that he spoke, so that many years later, after the Makololo had disappeared from the face of the earth, the French missionaries who

established themselves with the Barotsi found that nearly every member of that great tribe was conversant with Sesuto. This was of such advantage to them, owing to their having a perfect knowledge of that dialect themselves and to the bible and much religious literature having already been printed in it, that they could only regard the Makololo conquest as designed by God to open the way for Christian teaching in one of the most benighted regions in Africa.

When the Matabele fled to the north from the emigrant farmers, Moselekatse sent an army against the Makololo, that captured many of their cattle. These they succeeded in recovering, and they managed to force the Matabele soldiers to retreat, but Sebetoané realised that in the open country where he was then living he would be unable to withstand a second attack, which would probably be made by a much more powerful force than the one he had driven away. It thus became necessary to seek another home, and the locality was indicated by a man who professed to have intercourse with the spirit world and whose words were regarded by the chief and his people as inspired. This man, Tlapane by name, warned Sebetoané against moving eastward, the direction which the chief was inclined to favour, and pointed to the south-west as the course he should take. He added that the people there should be spared, as they would be Sebetoané's future subjects.

Accordingly search was made for a locality that could easily be defended, and one was found among the swamps bordering on the Tshobe river. To it the chief and his principal warriors at once removed with their women and children. They retained control over their subjects north of the Zambesi, and a few Makololo still remained there, but from this time forward the seat of government was on the Tshobe, south of the great river, and the principal military bands were stationed there. The inhabitants to a great distance around were brought under subjection, but Sebetoané respected their lives and usually their property,

and they were treated with such kindness that they speedily became attached to their new master. These people, who lived on swampy ground and under a burning sun, were much blacker in colour than the original Makololo. They consumed great quantities of fish, which abounded in the rivers and lakelets of the country.

In 1849 the reverend Dr. Livingstone with Messrs. Oswell and Murray explored the country northward from Kolobeng, then the residence of the Bakwena chief Setsheli, as far as Lake Ngami, which they reached on the 1st of August of that year. There they were informed of the wide extent of Sebetoane's power, and they were desirous of visiting him, but were then unable to proceed farther. In 1850 another attempt was made from Kolobeng, as a base, but was unsuccessful, as fever attacked so many of the party at the lake that they were obliged to return.

In 1851, however, Dr. Livingstone and Mr. Oswell reached Sebetoane's residence, and were received in a friendly manner by the chief and his people. The country along the Tshobe river, where the principal kraals were situated, was so unhealthy that Europeans could not remain there long, and Dr. Livingstone, who had his family with him, thought it imprudent then to look for a better site where a mission might be established. On a short excursion the Zambesi was discovered, in the centre of the continent, and much information concerning the other rivers of that region was gathered.

Sebetoané died while Dr. Livingstone and Mr. Oswell were at his residence, which was called Linyanti. The missionary had been with him long enough to acquire his confidence, and had consequently come to be regarded by the people with the greatest respect. Coming from Kolobeng and having resided for a long time with Setsheli, whom Sebetoané had raised to the chieftainship of the Bakwena, were circumstances in his favour. His attachment to the people with whom he had been living, and of whom he spoke in terms of praise, made him seem to the Makololo

almost as if he was a Mokwena himself. His position being thus assured, he resolved to proceed to Capetown, to send his family to England, and to return to the Tshobe to explore the country and ascertain whether a healthier site than Linyanti could not be found, to which the principal section of the tribe could be removed, and where missionaries might settle and endeavour to christianise and improve the people.

Sebetoané had no son by his great wife, and desired that his daughter Mamotshisane, who was a woman of vigour, should succeed him as head of the tribe. For some years before his death he caused her to be treated as a great chief, she was addressed and spoken of as a man, her principal male favourite was termed her wife, and she was even encouraged to select whatever young men she chose as companions, just as a chief selects young women. But Mamotshisane disliked this kind of life, and soon after her father died she gave the chieftainship to her half brother Sekeletu, who was then a lad of only sixteen or seventeen years of age. Thereupon dissensions broke out in the tribe, but with the death in 1853 of the principal agitator, Mpepe by name, who was made prisoner and stabbed with an assagai, these ceased, and Sekeletu became the undisputed ruler of the Makololo.

On the 23rd of May 1853 Dr. Livingstone arrived at Linyanti again. Sekeletu had caused most of the men who had been his father's favourites to be put to death, ■ he was jealous of their influence, and his right to the chieftainship was doubtful on account of his mother having been a mere concubine. His disposition was weak, and he possessed none of his father's abilities. He was therefore glad to place himself under the guidance of the strong-minded white man, who bore such love for him and his people as to leave wife and children and home, and travel for months through the desert to visit and benefit them. There were two main objects in the missionary's view. One was the search for ■ healthy district, the other the opening a road to either the



western or the eastern coast, along which ivory and other produce might be transported and needful supplies of European goods be brought more easily than from the distant shore of the Cape Colony. Accompanied by the chief, he explored the country in canoes for a considerable distance along the great waterways, but without finding as healthy a site as he was in search of for a mission station. The other design was then followed up. Sekeletu was capable of appreciating the advantages of trade, and so Dr. Livingstone was furnished with carriers and ivory and food, which enabled him to make his celebrated journey from Linyanti to St. Paul de Loanda and back, 11th of November 1853 to 1st of September 1855.

It was evident that a road so long and so difficult as this had proved could be of little use, and thus the energetic explorer was hardly back at Linyanti when he began making preparations for a journey to the eastern shore. Supplies of such things as he most needed had been sent up by waggon from Kuruman, and were found by him carefully preserved by the Makololo. Allowing himself only two months rest, on the 3rd of November 1855 he left Linyanti with a large party of carriers, furnished as before by Sekeletu, and on the 12th of July 1856 reached the village of Kilimane. He was the first European that ever crossed the African continent north of the Cape Colony, and it is from his connection with the Makololo and the assistance which they gave him that the name of the tribe has become widely known.

Leaving his Makololo attendants under the care of the Portuguese officials at Tete, Dr. Livingstone proceeded to England to report what he had done and to obtain assistance in establishing missions in the interior of the country. He promised to return and conduct the men back to their own country, and they had such confidence in him that they made no objection to his leaving them for a time.

Linyanti was in such a fever-stricken locality that the Bapatsa who cut their way from the Sand river to the

Zambesi, and who had been bred in a healthy land, had almost died out, and the tribe now consisted largely of incorporated captives. Dr. Livingstone had obtained a promise from Sekeletu that he would return to the much healthier site north of the Zambesi where his father had once resided, and the London Society, relying upon his keeping his engagement, resolved to send out missionaries to occupy the new field far in the interior of the continent.

For this purpose the reverend Holloway Helmore, who had been engaged in evangelistic work at Likatlong, on the Vaal river, for seventeen years, was selected as leader, and the reverend Messrs. John Mackenzie and Roger Price, two young men fresh from home, were appointed his associates in the work. It was arranged that the mission party should proceed by the road along the eastern border of the Kalahari to Linyanti, where Dr. Livingstone would meet them, introduce them to the chief, and persuade him to move without delay.

In July 1859 Messrs. Helmore and Price left Kuruman in waggons drawn by oxen, and commenced the long journey northward. They were accompanied by their wives, four children of Mr. Helmore, one child of Mr. Price, and a number of Betshuana assistants and servants. Mr. Mackenzie was to follow in 1860 with supplies for the mission party. The journey was one of much suffering from want of water, but in February 1860 Linyanti was reached without any loss of life. Here disaster awaited them such as is seldom experienced even by the most devoted of those courageous men and women who hazard everything in the attempt to carry the gospel to the heathen in the dark places of the earth.

Dr. Livingstone had not arrived, and they found the Makololo very unfriendly and suspicious of the conduct of white men, on account of never having heard what had become of their countrymen who had accompanied him to the eastern coast in 1855. On being informed that those men had been left at Tete while the doctor visited England, and might be expected back very soon, they would not believe it.

Sekeletu was reported to be away hunting, though in fact he was at home. On the third day after their arrival the chief visited their encampment with a large retinue, and made them a present of a quantity of millet beer, which Mr. Price and the black people of the country afterwards believed to have been poisoned. He had previously sent them an ox for slaughter, however, and as the blacks believed that this also was poisoned, it is not quite certain whether the illness with which the whole party was shortly afterwards attacked was not in reality a natural malady, though Mr. Price affirmed that the symptoms were entirely unlike those of African fever. Be that as it may, the missionaries with their families and Betshuana servants were stricken with illness, while there was very little sickness of any kind among the Makololo at the time.

Mr. and Mrs. Helmore, two of their children, Mr. Price's infant child, and three of the Betshuana died; and the survivors were so enfeebled that they could hardly move about. Mr. Price then resolved to leave Linyanti and return to the healthy country in the south, but when he was ready to set out—in June—Sekeletu took from him the two best waggons and nearly all his clothing and stores of every kind, leaving him very ill provided for the journey. The heartless chief also directed the Bushman guides to lead him into a place infested by the tsetse, so that nearly all his cattle perished.

Soon after leaving Linyanti Mrs. Price died, and the sorely afflicted missionary, finding it hopeless to get much farther south, proceeded as best he could to the country of the Batawana on the margin of Lake Ngami, where he was kindly received by the chief Letshulatebe. While he was there, in August, Dr. Livingstone with his brother and Dr. Kirk reached the interior from Tete, and at the first Makololo outpost near the Victoria falls learned what had occurred, but it was then too late to make any further arrangements. He had been detained a long time exploring the Shire river and the lower Zambesi by the faulty con-

struction of a small steamer he had brought from England, so that he could not reach Linyanti as soon as Mr. Helmore had anticipated. Only a few of the Makololo who left that place in November 1855 returned with him. Many had died, and others had formed new connections at Tete and its neighbourhood and preferred remaining where they were then living.

In May 1860 Mr. Mackenzie left Kuruman with his wife and child for the purpose of conveying supplies and joining his associates, who he hoped were then settled with the Makololo in the comparatively healthy district north of the Zambesi. On the way he heard accounts of what had happened, but discredited them, and went on till he reached the Zouga river. Meantime some Batawana informed Mr. Price that a white man was travelling slowly northward, and he immediately proceeded up the river in a canoe lent to him by Letshulatebe, arriving at the place of crossing just as Mr. Mackenzie was approaching it. His story was soon told, and the waggons were then turned in the direction of the lake, where Mr. Helmore's two little children had been left under the care of a wife of the friendly chief. From this place the survivors of the party returned to Southern Betshuanaland, and thus ended the attempt to establish a mission with the Makololo.

Towards the close of 1863 Sekeletu, who was afflicted with leprosy and who was so weak a ruler that his people despised him, was strangled by assassins employed by his leading vassals. The conspirators then seized his cattle and other property, which they divided among themselves. Upon this a chieftain named Mpololo, who was a son of a sister of Sebetoané and who resided north of the Zambesi, raised a strong force and fell upon the rebels, whom he exterminated with every member of their families and all their adherents. Mpololo then became chief of the remainder of the tribe, but he was so ferocious as a ruler that a section of the people in utter despair attempted to resist him, and civil war broke out.



Many of the best warriors fell in this strife, others when defeated fled to distant tribes, some even to their old enemies the Matabele. One band that made its way to the Batawana fell into an ambush, when every man was put to death by Letshulatebe's order, only the women and children being spared and adopted. Then the subject tribes, that had long been suffering under the tyranny of the Makololo, seeing an opportunity to escape from thralldom, suddenly rose upon their conquerors. Among them were the Barotsi, who have since become in their turn a conquering and ruling people, and who were then led by Sepopa,\* son of a chief that Sebetoané had crushed. It was not merely a rebellion, it was a strife of extermination. When it was over the Makololo as a distinct tribe had disappeared from the face of the earth. The men had all fallen under the assagai or battleaxe, the young women and the children were among the spoil of the victors. This happened in 1865, and now the very name of the tribe that once caused such terror is almost forgotten in the land they ruled over.

Another large Bantu tribe residing in South Africa in a condition of independence of European control was the Ovaherero, with its offshoot the Ovambanderu commonly known to Europeans as the Cattle Damaras, who occupied the territory between the western coast north of Walfish Bay and the Kalahari desert. Between this tribe and the Hottentots south of the Swakop (or Zwachoub) river war had been carried on from the time of its entry into the country until 1840, sometimes one party, sometimes the other, getting the upper hand for a short time. Neither Ovaherero nor Hottentots, however, formed a solid body, and not unfrequently a Hottentot clan was found fighting on the Herero side and a Herero clan on the Hottentot side.

\* Sepopa was almost as cruel as Mpololo, or Mpororo as called by some of his subjects, had been. He was murdered by his own leading men early in 1877, and then two claimants quarrelled for the chieftainship of the resuscitated Barotsi tribe. The successful competitor was Robosi, who under his present name Lewanika is favourably known in England as well ■ in South Africa.

In 1840 the Ovaherero and Ovambanderu, numbering together some eighty thousand souls all told, were thoroughly beaten by the Hottentot captain Jonker Afrikaner and his allies, and were reduced to a state of servitude. There were in the same territory some thirty thousand Ghou Damup or Berg Damaras and about three thousand Bushmen, but these tried merely to keep out of the way of every one else, and took no part whatever in the general affairs of the country. Their actions are of little more importance to the historian, in fact, than those of the antelopes they hunted, though to the ethnologist the people themselves afford an interesting study.

The Hottentots were not all descendants of the branch of their race that remained behind in Great Namaqualand when the main body crossed the Orange river and spread along the coast of the present Cape Colony, many of them were recent immigrants. The proclamation of the earl of Caledon on the 1st of November 1809, by which chieftainship was abolished and every one within the colony was made subject to the colonial laws, was resented by a few of the little bands that clung to their independence, and these moved north of the Orange to avoid its operation. Among them was a remnant of the Gei||Khaugas, who claimed that their head was a lineal descendant of the chiefs who governed the whole Hottentot people before they crossed the Kunene and broke up into numerous tribes. This claim was admitted by some of the others who best preserved the traditions of their race, and who paid a certain amount of deference to the chief of the Gei||Khaugas, though they did not consider themselves as in any way subject to his authority. Amraal, chief of this clan, died at a very advanced age early in 1865, and was succeeded by his son Lambert, who was then an old man. A few years later he died, when his son Andries Lambert, who afterwards gained notoriety as a daring robber, became chief. These people lived at a place called Gobabis, in territory that had been occupied by the Ovambanderu before the conquest of that tribe by the Hottentots.

Among the recent immigrants were also the followers of Jonker Afrikaner, son of the notorious freebooter, of whom an account has been given in previous chapters. This clan was much the strongest of all in a military point of view, though its numerical strength was less than that of several of the others, notably than that of an immigrant band under a man named Moses Witbooi. Jonker's residence was called Schmelen's Hope, but is now much better known by its Herero name Okahandja. It was situated in territory once occupied by Hereros, from whom it had been taken. There was a little band under a leader named Jacobus Izaak, and another under the captain David Christian. The last of these was the remnant of the Amaqua tribe, that at the close of the seventeenth century lived on the coast between the Berg river and the Olifants. At a later date it moved northward to the bank of the Orange, and at the beginning of the nineteenth century occupied the territory about Pella. In 1814 the reverend Mr. Schmelen induced the clan, then numbering about three hundred souls, to migrate with him farther to the north, and it was with them that he founded the mission station Bethany in Great Namaqualand.

Altogether in 1860 there were five distinct clans of immigrant Hottentots in Great Namaqualand, numbering among them some seven thousand souls. There were also ten clans, independent of each other, of Hottentots properly termed Namaquas, who were descended from the band left behind when the remainder of their race moved over the Orange. These combined were supposed to number about twelve or thirteen thousand souls.

All of these people had been under instruction by missionaries, the Wesleyan and London societies having sent agents to labour among them in the early years of the century. These had been replaced by agents of the Rhenish society, and many of the people had become converts to Christianity. They had proved very intractable and self-willed, however, and were prone to engage in hostilities

under the flimsiest pretexts. From traders they had obtained an ample supply of firearms and ammunition, and as they were in possession of horses they were more than a match for ten times their number of Hereros. The temptation offered by the large herds of cattle owned by the last named people had been too great for the Hottentots to resist, and they had conquered the black tribes, deprived them of their property, and reduced them to a condition of abject servitude. If the Hereros had not been so numerous, and there had been no white men to give them counsel, in course of time they must have become like the Ghou Damup. At the beginning of the year 1863 the Hottentots were thus lords of the land and of the Bantu living on it, just as their ancestors at some former time had been, when the first black intruders came down from the north and were enslaved.

Where it was possible among the Ovaherero also the Rhenish society had established missions, which were productive of much benefit to that people. Previously a purely pastoral tribe, they had been taught to make gardens and to grow corn. The beds of the Swakop and other periodical rivers are in some places of great width, and are perfectly flat. Only at long intervals is there running water in them, but it was found that on these flats there was generally moisture near the surface, and that gardens could be made there to great advantage.

The principal station of the Rhenish society was named Otjimbingue. It was founded in 1844, at the junction of the Swakop with one of its northern tributaries, about one hundred and six miles or one hundred and seventy kilometres east-north-east of Walvis Bay. Prospectors for minerals made this place their centre, it was the depôt of a trade in ivory and ostrich feathers worth £40,000 a year, and was the head-quarters of the European hunters in the country. The next station in importance had been Okahandja, Jonker Afrikaner's residence, about ninety kilometres farther to the north-east, but the chief had compelled the



missionary to leave. There were ten others scattered about the country.

In 1863 the Ovaherero and Ovambanderu attempted once more to resist their oppressors. On this occasion they were assisted by a section of the red nation that had become independent of the main branch of that tribe of Namaqua Hottentots, and that was then under a captain named Abraham Zwartbooi, whose kraal was at Rehoboth. Jonker Afrikaner was now dead, and his son Christian Afrikaner had succeeded him.

The principal Herero chief, Kamaherero by name, and his people were reduced to the condition of herdsmen of Christian Afrikaner's cattle, but had managed to obtain some guns and ammunition, which provoked the wrath of their master. Whether they were in danger of losing their lives in a general massacre on this account, as they afterwards asserted and the Hottentots denied, is doubtful; at any rate they suddenly fled with the cattle in their charge, and sought shelter at Otjimbingue. Thereupon Christian Afrikaner, with the assistance of the main branch of the clan called the red nation, then under the chief Cornelis Oasib, attacked Otjimbingue, 17th of June 1863. The Hereros defended themselves with courage, and after several hours hard fighting the Hottentots were beaten back, leaving some two hundred dead on the ground, among whom was their leader. This was the first encounter in what has since been known as the Herero war of independence.

Christian was succeeded as head of his clan by his brother Jan Jonker Afrikaner, a much abler man, who set about procuring allies with the hope of maintaining the position that his father had filled. But the Bondelzwarts and other clans of Southern Namaqualand declined assistance; and announced their intention of remaining neutral; and even the northern clan under Abraham Zwartbooi, though a section of the red nation which was allied with him, not only refused its aid, but actually joined the Hereros against him.

H

Most of the European traders and hunters in the country resolved to preserve strict neutrality in the war, unless they were molested themselves, but a few of them allowed their sympathy with the party fighting for freedom to overcome the dictates of prudence.

In March 1864 Mr. Frederick Green headed a band of fifteen hundred Hereros who attacked Jan Jonker's kraal, killed several of his people, including his wife and daughter, burned twenty-two of his waggons, and seized four thousand head of cattle and over a thousand kilogrammes of gunpowder. But they did not succeed in humbling their enemy, who speedily rallied and followed them up for some distance when they retired.

In June 1864 the celebrated Swedish traveller and naturalist Mr. Charles John Andersson had one of his legs badly wounded in an engagement when leading a band of Hereros.

The Ovaherero and Ovambanderu in former years had been broken up into many clans independent of each other. The stronger of these had preyed upon the weaker, according to the orthodox Bantu custom, and feuds had arisen, which tended to make matters worse. But now, when it was a question whether they should become free or remain slaves to the Hottentots, the missionaries were able to induce them all to unite in a loose manner, and they elected Kamaherero, captain of the largest clan, as their head, with the title of paramount chief.

Having obtained assistance from every Hottentot clan in the northern part of Great Namaqualand except the one under Abraham Zwartbooi, and even pressed a number of Ghou Damup or Berg Damaras into his service, on the 3rd of September 1865 Jan Jonker attacked Otjimbingue again. His force was in three divisions, one of which was composed of horsemen, the other two of ox riders and men on foot. The Hereros were prepared for resistance, and met him with such determination that he was routed with the loss of all his pack oxen and what in a European army would be

termed commissariat stores. Only three Herero men were killed, but a good many were wounded, and eighty women that were cut off when trying to get to a place of safety were all put to death by the merciless Hottentots. These left on the ground between fifty and sixty dead or dying men, and they had many wounded whom they carried away with them.

Most of the European prospectors, hunters, and traders had left the country, as they saw no prospect of a speedy return of peace, but the missionaries remained at their posts. They were now to suffer in common with all the others. The first of their stations that was broken up was the one at Gobabis, the kraal of the captain Lambert, son of old Amraal who had just died. The missionary family was driven from the place by the people they had been trying to improve, and property valued by the Rhenish society at £2,000 was plundered and destroyed. The next one to be attacked was Rehoboth, the residence of Abraham Zwartbooi, who was an ally of the Hereros. The mission at this place was under the care of the reverend Mr. Kleinschmidt, a very able and zealous man, who had laboured there for a quarter of a century. It too was broken up, a number of women and children were barbarously burned to death, about £500 worth of mission property was carried off, and Mr. Kleinschmidt himself died from the hardship he underwent after being driven away. Abraham Zwartbooi and his people were obliged to flee, but they had a tract of land given to them by the Hereros much farther north, at a place named the Bokberg, where they settled and made a new home. In the following year, 1866, the stations Gibeon and Hoachanas were destroyed, many of the people residing there were killed, and mission property to the value of £500 was lost. The station New Barmen also was plundered, though not entirely broken up.

On the 13th of December 1867 Otjimbingue was attacked once more by Jan Jonker's Hottentots. They surprised the place at early dawn, but the Hereros sprang from their

mats and offered such a vigorous resistance that the attacking party could not obtain possession of the place, though they continued firing into it all day, and only retreated after nightfall. Their enemies accused them of using poisoned bullets, but this may not have been true. Thirty Hereros were killed, and as many more were wounded, some of whom died of their injuries.

After retreating from Otjimbingue, the Hottentots divided into two bands, and fell upon the little posts named Anawood and Salem. These places they took possession of and plundered, but while those at Anawood were feasting on the spoil, utterly regardless of the danger they were in, during the night of the 21st they were surrounded by a Herero army. At dawn on the 22nd the Hereros opened fire on them, when they charged in a body through the ring and escaped. They were pursued for about sixteen kilometres or ten miles, and a good many were killed.

Kamaherero, the principal chief, fearing another attack upon Otjimbingue, now abandoned that place, and retired with his people to Okahandja, from which locality Jan Jonker had been obliged to withdraw. Otjimbingue was for a time almost deserted,—in July 1868 there were only twenty or thirty persons, including children and the reverend Dr. C. H. Hahn, residing there,—but a few years later it was reoccupied and recovered its former importance.

In May 1868 a petty captain named Jacob Bois, whose territory lay along the coast, and who had a following of only three or four hundred souls, attacked a party of white men—Messrs. William Coates Palgrave, Frederick Green, and Robert Lewis—with a number of servants, who were on their way from the interior to Walfish Bay. An Englishman named Kennedy was killed, and the waggons with their contents and all the oxen were seized. Messrs. Palgrave, Green, and Lewis being well mounted, managed to save themselves by flight, and succeeded in reaching Sandwich Harbour, where they found a vessel which brought them to Capetown.



On the 23rd of the same month Bois fell upon the Rhenish mission station Scheppmansdorp, close to Walfish Bay. The lives of the reverend J. F. S. Eggert and his family were spared, and they were permitted to make their way as best they could to Sandwich Harbour, but the station was plundered and the missionary's cattle were driven off. On the following morning the band made its appearance at Walfish Bay, where one white man was killed. The others saved their lives by going on board a schooner that was at anchor in the bay, and sailed in her to Capetown. A fishing establishment and the buildings in which goods and provisions were stored by the traders and missionaries before being sent inland were plundered and destroyed. The Hottentots tried to justify these acts of Jacob Bois and the destruction of the various stations on the ground that European traders were assisting the Hereros against them, and that the sympathy of the Rhenish missionaries was notoriously with their opponents, if indeed they did not furnish their enemies with material aid.

Her Majesty's ship *Petrel* was at once sent up from Simon's Bay, but when she arrived in Walfish Bay not a soul was to be seen. The country to some distance beyond Scheppmansdorp was searched, without any one being found, so after remaining there three weeks the man-of-war returned to her station.

The Cape government then sent Mr. Piers, postmaster-general of the colony, to Great Namaqualand, to endeavour to induce some of the other Hottentot communities to compel Jacob Bois to abstain from attacking and robbing Europeans again, as it was impossible to inflict any punishment upon him. All that Mr. Piers could do was to persuade the captain David Christian, of Bethany, to use his influence with his sub-chief Bois in favour of order, and with this meagre result of his mission, in December 1868 he returned to Capetown.

In 1868 a party of mixed breeds from the Cape Colony, under the leadership of a man named Hermanus van Wyk,

migrated to Great Namaqualand, and in 1870 settled at Rehoboth with the consent of Abraham Zwartbooi, Kamaherero, and other chiefs. The influence of these people was exerted for the maintenance of peace and good order, so that the country benefited by their presence, though they were subjected to such losses by theft of their cattle that they could not advance in prosperity.

In 1868 the Hereros were successful in several engagements, and their good fortune continued until a crowning victory was obtained in a battle fought at Omukaru, about ten kilometres from Okahandja. In this engagement the Hottentots put forth their whole strength, but were routed with a loss of over two hundred of their best men killed, while the Hereros who fell numbered only seventy. The Hottentots now abandoned all hope of success, and were ready to make peace on any terms.

On the 27th of May 1870, through the agency of the Europeans in the country and some of the best disposed of the southern Hottentot captains, upon whom Sir Philip Wodehouse had exercised his influence, a meeting of the paramount chief Kamaherero, Aponda, chief of the Ovambanderu, and Jan Jonker Afrikaner took place at New Barmen, when a cessation of hostilities was agreed to and an assembly of all the chiefs on both sides was arranged to be held on the 23rd of September to conclude a formal treaty of peace and friendship. On that day there came together at Okahandja Abraham Zwartbooi, captain of the Namaqua clan at the Bokberg, and twenty-two chiefs of the Ovaherero and Ovambanderu on one side, and Jan Jonker, captain of the Afrikaner clan of Hottentots, on the other. Twenty heads of Herero clans were absent, and of the Hottentot chiefs who had taken a leading part in the war, Barnabas, who had succeeded Cornelis Oasib as captain of the red nation, Karel Hendrik, captain of the Veldschoendragers, and Andries Lambert, captain of the Gei||Khauas, did not put in an appearance. The three Hottentot chiefs David Christian, of Bethany, Jacobus Izaak, of Beersheba,

and David Witbooi, of Gibeon, who professed to be neutral, were present by invitation of both parties to confirm the peace that was to be made.

A formal treaty was drawn up by the reverend Dr. C. H. Hahn, and after some discussion the terms were agreed to by those present. It provided for the maintenance of a sincere peace, the perfect independence of the Hereros, the security of the roads, the safety of travellers, and the liberation of all Herero dependents among the Namaquas. So humiliated was Jan Jonker that in a clause of the treaty he accepted as a loan from the Herero chiefs the place Windhoek for himself and his people to live on with a Rhenish missionary. The document was signed on the 23rd of September 1870 by the chiefs present, and was witnessed by three missionaries and the so-called neutral chiefs. It was accepted by the belligerent captains who were absent ■ binding also upon them, and so peace was restored to the country for ■ time.

## CHAPTER LXXXVIII.

### ANNEXATION OF WALFISH BAY TO THE CAPE COLONY AND ESTABLISHMENT OF A GERMAN PROTECTORATE IN SOUTH-WESTERN AFRICA.

IT soon became evident that the peace concluded in 1870 was not a final settlement of the relationship to each other of the different races in Great Namaqualand and Hereroland. Jan Jonker Afrikaner was smarting under the indignity of holding ground merely by permission of his former servant, and was doing everything in his power to bring about a coalition of all the Hottentot clans in order to renew hostilities. The great herds of cattle that the Hereros had once owned were no longer to be seen in the country. The waste of animal life by the Hottentots after they took possession of those herds had been enormous, and then the lung sickness had broken out and carried off a large proportion of what was left. Still the number that remained was considerable, and now that the Hereros had them again in possession they were beginning to increase, for they were carefully tended and a cow or a heifer was seldom slaughtered. The Hottentots were in such a state of poverty as to be almost reckless, and needed only a fair pretence to renew the war, in hope of improving their condition, which in the opinion of many of them could hardly be made worse by defeat.

The half-breeds under Hermanus van Wyk at Rehoboth, being more industrious and more frugal than the other inhabitants, had acquired some property, and as they were living in amity with the Hereros and refused to enter into



Jan Jonker's schemes, the Hottentots were plundering them mercilessly in hope of driving them away.

The Hereros were breaking up into a number of little clans again, independent of each other, and some of them hostile to the main branch. Apart from the tendency to disintegration common to all pastoral tribes, the conduct of Kamaherero had much to do with this. Without ability or prudence, he was striving to make himself a despot, and was treating the other chiefs in a contemptuous manner. He went so far as to order them all to put out their fires and light them again from his, an act of acknowledgement of their dependence upon him which many of them refused to perform. With the pastures of the whole country north of the Swakop at his disposal, he caused his cattle to be driven to Windhoek to feed, as if purposely to taunt Jan Jonker and provoke him to seize them and thus renew the war.

In 1872 the missionaries, seeing the danger the country was in, induced Kamaherero and Aponda to attach their marks to a letter to Governor Sir Henry Barkly, asking for advice. They did not solicit British protection, but it was inferred that they would not object to the appointment of an English officer who would exercise a considerable amount of control over them. Nothing, however, was done by the high commissioner at this time in the matter.

In the following year an event that would be regarded as extraordinary in any country except South Africa took place. A number of farmers in the South African Republic decided to migrate to some other locality, rather than remain in a land whose president did not hold orthodox religious views. With their families and effects the first or leading party of these strong willed people moved away in great waggon drawn by oxen, and crossed the northern part of the Kalahari into a country bordering on that occupied by the Hereros. The flocks and herds that were driven on with them dwindled in the desert from want of water and food, and so terrible were their own sufferings

that their line of march was a line of graves of their dead. But still they went on, for when these men once resolve upon a course they do not swerve from it.

And so the survivors reached the hunting grounds west of the desert, and found not indeed such a country as they cared to settle in permanently, but one in which they could rest for a time till their cattle should recover and their friends behind should join them, when they would resume their journey in search of a home. This they found at last in Portuguese territory far away in the north-west, but in the meantime they moved about for several years on the border of Hereroland. The only permanent inhabitants there previously were a few Bushmen, but Europeans, Hottentots, and Bantu alike used it occasionally for hunting in.

The presence of the migrating farmers in their neighbourhood and the report that many more were coming caused much alarm to the Herero chiefs. Accustomed themselves to disregard the rights of the weak, they looked upon it as only natural that men stronger than they were should select the best pastures and take possession by force. How were they to prevent this? was the question which they asked themselves and requested their European friends to advise them how to answer. The only solution seemed to be to call in the aid of the Cape government, and so on the 21st of June 1874 a letter bearing the marks of Kamaherero and two other chiefs was sent to Sir Henry Barkly, begging for the interference of the British government. It was really the production, and expressed the views, of Messrs. S. A. Mumford and Frederick Green, though those gentlemen signed it merely as witnesses. At the same time letters and petitions were forwarded by various traders and travellers in the territory, complaining of the lawlessness of many of the people and asking for protection against violence. To make matters worse, coloured rovers of predatory habits were moving into Great Namaqualand from the country to the eastward, so that an intolerable condition of things was arising beyond the colonial border.

It was therefore from force of circumstances, not from any wish to acquire comparatively valueless territory, and thereby to incur expense and increase responsibility, that Mr. Molteno's ministry proposed to establish British authority along the coast. In the session of 1875 a resolution was submitted by the government, and was adopted by parliament, that it was desirable to extend the limits of the colony to Walfish Bay and such tract of country inland as might be deemed expedient and approved of by her Majesty, and that preliminary steps should be taken for placing the government in a position to bring in a bill for the annexation of the territory indicated to the Cape Colony.

To carry this resolution into effect, it was necessary to obtain an unbiassed account of the condition of the country, the views of the various chiefs, the prospect of obtaining a revenue that would meet or partly meet the cost of administration, and any other information of value that could be gathered. For this purpose, on the 16th of March 1876 Mr. William Coates Palgrave was appointed a special commissioner, and on the 10th of April he left Capetown to carry out the duties with which he was entrusted. Landing at Walfish Bay on the 25th of April, he commenced a tour through the country that occupied his time until the end of the year, of which he sent in a long and interesting report. His description of Walfish Bay and the country around it which subsequently became British territory will show the graphic power of his pen:

"Walfish Bay is formed by a low-lying promontory of sand, called Pelican Point, about seven miles (11·3 kilometres) in length, but of inconsiderable breadth. The entrance to the bay is its northern extremity, and its shape is nearly that of a horse shoe. Northerly winds are light in those latitudes, and as the bay is well sheltered from all other, it has the reputation of being very safe for every class of vessel, although those of large tonnage may not anchor within three-quarters of a mile (1,207 metres) of the beach at that part of the bay opposite to which the stores have been erected.

"But a more dreary scene than the coast about Walfish Bay can scarcely be imagined. There are no adjacent mountains to relieve its monotonous character, and no vegetation to enliven it. Low sand dunes

form a sort of fringe to the coast and oppose to the transport of the country the greatest obstacle. Through these sand dunes no permanent way has ever been attempted, partly because they are ever shifting and partly because the only practicable road to the plain beyond is for nearly four miles (6·4 kilometres) along the bed of the Kuisip, a periodical river which, although seldom in flood, has at times the force of a mountain torrent, when it would destroy the best road which considering the circumstances of the country could have been made.

"Another grievous obstacle to transport is the total absence of pasture and water in the immediate neighbourhood of the bay, though it must be explained that within a radius of ten miles (16 kilometres) some small patches of a short prickly grass are to be found here and there struggling with the wastes of sand, as well as a few reedy oases, the presence of these latter being usually indicative of water, which is however unfortunately brack and causes diarrhoea amongst the cattle unused to drinking it, whilst the sparsely scattered vegetation is not, either in quantity or quality, sufficient to sustain the poor beasts over that arduous part of their journey to and from the finer pasture of the settled interior.

"The natives living at Walfish Bay are a portion of a tribe called Topnaars, a branch of the Namaqua nation. They were once of importance, but have gradually deteriorated until they are now perhaps the most degenerate members of a rapidly degenerating family. Those of them who live at Walfish Bay do not number more than from one hundred and fifty to two hundred souls. They have been led to choose this arid coast, partly on account of an edible gourd-like fruit called the naras, which grows all along that shore in great abundance, and on account of the facilities offered for the capturing of fish driven into the lagoon at the bottom of the harbour by the sharks which abound in the deeper waters; and partly too because of the remuneration they can from time to time obtain for their labour in carrying from the beach to the warehouses cargoes landed by the coasters from the Cape.

"The white population of Walfish Bay, consisting usually of not more than five or six persons, was at the time of my arrival augmented (to twenty-three souls) by the presence of some hunters and up-country traders who had come down for supplies. The stores are wood and iron buildings erected on an artificial mound of sand bags, and are rather depôts of merchandise for the up-country trade than what is ordinarily meant by stores. They are but four in number, and of these but two are of any size; one belongs to the Missions Handels Ahtien Gesellschaft, the other to Messrs. Eriksson & Co., a Swedish house. These two firms do between them more than half of the trade of Damaraland, and are likewise employed in landing and forwarding agents for the other establishments."



Leaving the bay, Mr. Palgrave travelled for an hour in an ox-waggon over the low flat, which at very high tides is covered by the sea, and then reached the fringe of sand dunes. The only way of passing through them was along the sandy bed of the Kuisip, which had not contained any running water for nine years. On each side the undulating dunes rose in billowy waves from a metre and a half to fifteen metres in height, over which the creeping naras plants spread themselves, while along the river course stunted tamarisk trees grew abundantly. For twenty-two hours the oxen drew the waggon through the sand, and then it was necessary to outspan and send the exhausted animals to the Swakop, seven miles (11.2 kilometres) distant, to get water and grass.

After reaching the bed of the Swakop travelling was much easier, and at every stage water at no great distance from the surface, and grass were to be had for the cattle. The sand belt, which extends along the whole coast and upon which rain seldom falls, does not reach inland more than about forty miles or sixty-four kilometres, and beyond it the country rapidly improves and becomes fit for pastoral purposes.

The presence of the farmers on the border had the effect of solidifying the Herero tribe again, and as Mr. Palgrave proceeded on his journey he found the chiefs of the clans expressing submission to Kamaherero as paramount over them all. Wherever he went he was well received, for every one felt the need of protection. Several preliminary meetings took place, at which the advantage of being guided by a friendly European was talked over, and finally it was resolved that a general assembly of the chiefs and leading men of the Ovaherero and Ovambanderu should be held at Okahandja, when an arrangement with the commissioner would be made. The discussions at this meeting showed that the chiefs were unwilling to part with their authority over the people, but were quite ready to receive a European officer as their nominal head and guide.

On the 9th of September a letter was drawn up and addressed to Sir Henry Barkly, in which his Excellency was requested "to send some one to rule them and to be the head of their country, and as they did not wish at first to have one who was a stranger to them, they prayed that Mr. Palgrave might be sent to manage their affairs, and they promised to give him all the help in their power. They wanted him to have authority in all cases in which other people than their own were concerned in any way, and they promised not to screen their own people from justice, but willingly to assist in carrying out the law and maintaining order in their country. They promised to set on one side a part of their country for the use of the government, and if more money was required for its maintenance than could be obtained from the ground set aside, they promised to collect from amongst themselves a sufficient amount for the purpose. They also asked that his Excellency would everywhere make it known that the sea boundary of their country was in his possession, and that they had given him the right to such ground as might be required for its protection, as well as for the building of towns and villages in the vicinity of all landing places." This letter received the marks of Kamaherero, twenty-eight chiefs of clans, and thirty counsellors and leading men, and it was witnessed by six Europeans who were present at the meeting.

As now arranged with Mr. Palgrave, a tract of land with defined boundaries was reserved for the exclusive use of the Ovaherero and Ovambanderu, being the whole area that they then occupied and much to spare, and the remainder of the unoccupied territory beyond their border was placed at the disposal of the colonial government. After allowing for what was valueless and for reserves for Abraham Zwartboo's Namaquas and the Berg Damaras, Mr. Palgrave estimated that sufficient would remain for at least four hundred cattle runs, where the pasture was excellent, but where in most instances it would be necessary to construct dams to conserve water. These cattle runs could be allotted to Europeans,

and he believed would readily be taken up. A moderate quitrent upon them, with trading and hunting licenses and a small tax upon the blacks, would bring in sufficient revenue, he thought, to cover the cost of such a simple administration as was needed.

The part of the country placed at the disposal of the government included the Kaoko, a healthy elevated tract of land, which was well covered with nutritious grass, and which was capable, if occupied by Europeans, of supplying four or five thousand oxen every year for sale. There were indications of copper ore all over it, and the Ovambo were known to obtain supplies of that metal from Bushmen at Otavé, some distance east of it, where there were enormous deposits of surpassing richness.

Having completed his task with the Hereros, who were unanimous in their desire for British protection, and whose attitude throughout had been most satisfactory, Mr. Palgrave proceeded next in a southerly direction to ascertain the views of the Namaquas. These people had not the same cause to look about for aid, because there was not the slightest fear of the migrating farmers desiring to settle in any part of the sterile territory which they occupied. There the waste of sand dunes extends farther back from the coast than it does north of the Kuisip, and between it and the Kalahari, except in a few localities of limited size, the pasture lands are not such as graziers would covet. The contour of the country is different. In Hereroland the rivers, when they flow, run from east to west, and enter the Atlantic. In Great Namaqualand the drainage is from north to south, and the outlet of water, when there is any, is into the Orange river.

The little clan of Gei||Khauas at Gobabis and the clan calling itself the young red nation, under Abraham Zwartbooi at Bokberg, were differently situated from the others. The latter of these necessarily followed the lead of the Hereros, and the former, from its isolated position in the north-west, was at the mercy of any strong party coming down from

Lake Ngami. These Gei||Khaus had suffered very severely in the war of 1863-70, and had recently lost many of their number from small-pox. The clan was now only one third as strong as it was when the old chief Amraal died, and it had a very evil reputation with the traders, who could only reach the lake country from Walfish Bay by the way of Gobabis. They complained that either their waggons were plundered by the Gei||Khaus, or they were compelled to sell goods on credit with no prospect of payment, and were insulted and abused as well. The captain, Andries Lambert, and six of his principal men wrote on the 17th of April to Mr. Palgrave, asking to be received as British subjects, but when he requested them to explain their conduct to the traders they did not reply, and so no further notice was taken of them.

At Windhoek the commissioner met Jan Jonker Afrikaner and the captain of Beersheba, Jacobus Izaak, who was decidedly opposed to interference of any kind by the colonial government. No other arrangement could be made than for a general assembly of all the Namaqua captains at Beersheba on the 20th of November, to discuss the condition of the country. At the time appointed the captains were not there, so the meeting was postponed to the 27th. On that day the commissioner met Jacobus Izaak, of Beersheba, David Christian, of Bethany, Moses Witbooi, of Gibeon, two sub-captains, and three missionaries. Neither Jan Jonker Afrikaner nor Barnabas, chief of the red nation, was there, nor was William Christian, captain of the Bondelzwarts. Nothing whatever resulted from this conference, but at another meeting on the 29th the captains agreed to protect traders from robbery and violence. With no other result than this from his meetings with the Namaqua captains, Mr. Palgrave continued his journey in great discomfort from extreme heat, scarcity of water, and want of grass, till he crossed the Orange river into the colony.

In letters received from Jan Jonker Afrikaner, dated 12th of November, Jacobus Izaak, dated 9th of December,



William Christian, dated 22nd of December 1876, and David Christian, dated 16th of March 1877, those captains declared their willingness to receive a British resident in the country, who should have control over strangers, but who should not interfere in any way with their government of their own people, or have any right to dispose of land. They did not offer to contribute anything towards the support of such an officer, nor did they express any strong desire for his presence among them. It was evident that they preferred to be left alone.

Of the other inhabitants of the territory he had visited, the Ghou Damup and the Bushmen knew nothing of what was going on and cared for nothing but food and to be left alone to live in their own way. The European traders and hunters in Hereroland sent in an address, dated 11th of December 1876, asking for British authority to be extended over the country. They were thirty-eight in number, of whom fifteen bore English names.

Upon Mr. Palgrave's return to Capetown the government took the matter into consideration and resolved to send him back to complete the preliminary arrangements with the Hereros. Accordingly in September 1877 he was again in the country, but found that during his short absence a change had taken place in the opinions of many of the people, notably in that of Kamaherero himself. They had begun to think that the colonial government might have some evil designs in view, and to regard as somewhat mythical the existence of the strong armed force that might be necessary to protect them. That was after all the real object of their wishes, protection from enemies, with liberty to do themselves whatever they chose. Some of the Namaqua captains openly asserted that they would have nothing to do with the white man's government, as if they did they would lose their land, and Kamaherero had come to believe that perhaps they might be right. So suspicious was he that at first he refused to allow trading licenses to be issued, because if Europeans paid any taxes at all, he

said they would make that a pretext for claiming the country.

Though Mr. Palgrave's personal influence with the Hereros was very strong, it was with some difficulty that he induced the chief to alter his decision, and it was evident that he did so reluctantly. It was then arranged that an English magistrate with a staff of assistants should be stationed at Okahandja, that the expense should be partly met by the issue of trading licenses, and that Kamaherero should contribute two hundred oxen and four hundred sheep yearly to make up the remainder. His object in consenting to this was to recover by English aid the paramount chieftainship over many of the clans that at this time again were ignoring his authority. Having arranged this and some other matters of less importance, and made another tour through the country, in February 1879 the special commissioner returned to Capetown and sent in his report.

Things were different now in the colony from what they had been a year before. Towards the close of 1877 the ninth war with the Xosas commenced, which had the effect of deterring the ministry that came into power shortly afterwards and the people alike from undertaking any responsibilities in connection with tribes beyond the northern border that could be avoided. It was considered advisable merely to take possession of Walfish Bay, and to proclaim a protectorate over the coast, without establishing a complete an administration as in the territories east of the Kei, no other authority being exercised over the Hereros than such moral pressure as could be brought to bear upon them by a diplomatic agent. The view entertained by the secretary of state for the colonies was communicated to Governor Sir Bartle Frere in a despatch dated 23rd of January 1878, and was consequently acted upon. Earl Carnarvon wrote as follows:

"The conditions at the present time existing in those districts appear to point unmistakably to their union with the British communities of South Africa in the future, and it is of high importance not only to prevent any circumstances arising which could impede such a course,

but also to take such steps as may be necessary in preparation for the event. I have, therefore, ■ you are aware, approved of the steps taken in this direction in consequence of the resolution of the Cape parliament in 1875 and which were preparatory to the annexation of Walfish Bay.

“But the scheme which is sketched in your despatch is so extensive that I hesitate, especially under the existing circumstances of South Africa, to commit myself to an approval of it at the present moment. It is true that the formal annexation is not recommended of the vast regions specified, but I can by no means feel assured that a protectorate if established would entail upon South Africa and this country ■ degree of responsibility substantially less. It is evident from Mr. Palgrave's report that grave elements of discord exist among the native tribes, which may in the future, ■ they have in the past, produce destructive wars, and though no doubt by the appointment of commissioners of tried ability and courage much might be done to obviate such disorders, it cannot be affirmed that their efforts would of necessity be successful, while if they should be unsuccessful the government exercising the protectorate would find itself pressed to take active measures to restore peace, and thereby to assume ■ task which would be ■ severe strain upon its resources.

“Recent events on the borders of the Cape Colony and elsewhere have shown that the British communities of South Africa have at the present time native questions before them, the satisfactory settlement of which will tax all their energies, that the principles of native government have not as yet been finally determined, and that properly qualified officers for native administration are by no means easy to obtain. I cannot therefore think that the burden of native government in South Africa should, at the present moment, be materially increased.

“With regard however to Walfish Bay itself it appears to ■■ that other considerations prevail. I learn from the observations of the colonial secretary in parliament in 1875 that there is already ■ very considerable trade from the colony in that direction. This trade may be reasonably expected to take larger dimensions; there are British residents on the spot, and practically no great number of natives; the harbour is good, and as I am informed the only safe one within ■ long distance; while finally there is an anxious desire on the part of the colony that possession of it should be taken, and that thus the only door of entrance to very large regions in which the colony is materially interested should be placed in the custody of Great Britain. For these reasons therefore I think that the step which has long been in contemplation should now be taken, and that the British flag should be hoisted in Walfish Bay; but that for the present at least no jurisdiction should be exercised beyond the shores of the bay itself.

“It would also be necessary upon this step being taken that provision should be made for the exercise of magisterial powers on the spot. You

will be able to advise how this can be best done, and whether there is any British resident to whom such powers could be entrusted, or whether provision should be made for periodical visits by some one charged with magisterial authority. You will however understand that any expense in this respect must be borne by the colonial government."

In accordance with this decision her Majesty's ship *Industry* was sent to Walfish Bay, and there on the 12th of March 1878 possession was formally taken by her commander for the British crown. In the proclamation which he issued on the occasion the boundaries of the territory thus annexed to the British dominions were declared to be "on the south a line from a point on the coast fifteen miles (24 kilometres) south of Pelican Point to Scheppmansdorp; on the east a line from Scheppmansdorp to the Rooibank, including the plateau, and then to ten miles (16 kilometres) inland from the mouth of the Swakop river; on the north the last ten miles of the course of the Swakop river; and on the west the Atlantic ocean." The area thus enclosed is in extent about four hundred square miles or a little over a thousand square kilometres. Its sole value consisted in its position, as it never can produce anything for exportation or for the support of human life.

The proceeding was ratified by her Majesty, and on the 14th of December of the same year letters patent were issued under the great seal empowering the governor to issue a proclamation annexing the bay and territory to the Cape Colony as soon as the Cape parliament should pass an act for the purpose. Practically it was now under the control of the Cape government, for Major D. Erskine, who had previously been colonial secretary of Natal, and who on the 1st of June 1878 was appointed resident at Walfish Bay, received his instructions from the secretary for native affairs in Capetown and sent his reports to that minister. So matters continued until the necessary act was passed by the Cape parliament in the session of 1884, and a proclamation was issued by Governor Sir Hercules Robinson on the 7th of August of that year, annexing the territory under the name of Walfish Bay to the Cape Colony,



making it subject to the colonial laws, and constituting it a magisterial district.

Shortly after the incorporation of Walfish Bay in the British dominions, an application was made to the colonial government for assistance and protection by Jan Jonker Afrikaner, who was then in an extremely wretched plight. All his plans to unite the various sections of the Hottentot race in the country under his own leadership had failed, a number of disaffected Koranas and Griquas in the Cape Colony that he had hoped would join him had not done so, and Kamaherero had stationed parties of men with cattle all around him, so that he had neither pasture nor hunting grounds. His people were half starved and in the most abject poverty. So the man who before the success of the Herero revolt was the richest and most powerful ruler between the Kunene and the Orange, in hope of obtaining relief from the Herero pressure, on the 6th of January 1879 addressed a letter to Sir Bartle Frere, requesting to be taken over with his people as British subjects. The letter bore in addition to his own the signatures of fifteen of his leading men and of the missionary at Windhoek, the reverend J. G. Schroeder. No notice was taken of it for more than a year, and the circumstances under which it was written were known in Capetown, but on the 12th of March 1880 a reply was forwarded to him declining the proposal.

The farmers who had migrated from the South African Republic were at this time encamped near the south-western border of Ovamboland, and it was reported in the Cape Colony that they had lost all their cattle and effects and were in a condition of dire distress. Their number was unknown, as was everything connected with their actual circumstances and intentions, except that they had undergone great suffering and that many had died. A committee was therefore elected by those benevolent persons in Capetown who sympathised with their countrymen in trouble, and subscriptions were collected for the purpose of sending them relief. A schooner named the *Christina* was chartered

and laden with provisions and other necessities, some horses and mules were put on board, and two gentlemen named Joubert and Haybittle were engaged to proceed in the vessel up the coast to a point called Fort Rock, where it was believed a landing could be effected and the migrating farmers be communicated with.

In September 1879 both houses of the Cape parliament passed resolutions requesting the government to adopt measures for the relief of those people, and as a consequence the imperial authorities directed her Majesty's ship *Swallow* to accompany the *Christina* and render all the assistance possible. Mr. Palgrave was instructed to proceed in the *Swallow*, taking with him two capable men, six horses and mules, a travelling cart, saddles, and a quantity of stores, to coöperate with Messrs. Joubert and Haybittle.

On the 24th of September 1879 the *Swallow* left Table Bay. She called at Walfish Bay to take on board some Hottentot interpreters and to obtain the latest information concerning the distressed people, which was to the effect that they were no longer in a condition urgently requiring assistance. On the 2nd of October she left Walfish Bay, but upon arrival at Fort Rock it was found impossible to land on account of the heavy surf, so after various attempts made during the next six days, she proceeded to examine the coast northward to Cape Frio, and the *Christina* remained behind to watch the surf. The search for a landing place, though most carefully made, was unsuccessful, so at Cape Frio the *Swallow* put about. Keeping close to the shore on her way southward, and sending out her boats wherever any opening appeared in the line of surf caused by the rollers that even in the calmest weather broke with terrific force on the land, anchoring before dark and resuming the examination at daylight, she found not a single place where the expedition could disembark until she reached Walfish Bay again, on the 17th of October. The shifting sand hills also, that formed a continuous line a short distance inland, would have prevented access to the

country beyond them if a landing could have been effected. It was believed that if certain winds were blowing boats could reach the shore at Cape Cross, but that was mere chance, and could not be waited for.\*

The *Christina* discharged her cargo at Walfish Bay, and the members of the expedition returned to Capetown, except Mr. Haybittle, who made his way overland to the farmers' camp. They numbered in all three hundred and three souls, but forty-nine others had left the main body and become hunters and traders. They had in their possession seventy waggons, but only three hundred and twenty oxen, from three to four hundred cows, and a few goats. As long as game was to be had they lived upon it and milk, but after all the wild animals within reach had been killed they suffered much from want of food. Then they made gardens, which gave large returns, especially of pumpkins, so that though they were in distress, they were not in danger of actual starvation. Having waggons and twenty spans of oxen, they were now able to draw upon the supplies at Walfish Bay; and not long afterwards they crossed the Kunene and settled in Portuguese territory.

Mr. Palgrave had made an arrangement with Kamaherero that an English magistrate should be stationed at Okahandja, and to keep faith with the chief a gentleman named Manning was appointed to fill the post temporarily. He, however, exceeded his powers by taking judicial cognisance of certain cases, and was therefore speedily recalled. On the 8th of January 1880 Major Benjamin D'Urban Musgrave was

\* This is the spot where Diogo Cam erected a cross in 1485 to mark the southern termination of his discovery. The cross was still standing in 1879. Unfortunately the records of the Portuguese explorer's voyage are so scanty that it is impossible to ascertain the condition of the place at that time, and it is quite possible that he may have been able to land with the greatest ease. Owing to the tremendous swell setting in on a sandy shore, changes are constantly taking place along that coast, and in our own times more than one safe harbour enclosed by a sand spit like that at Walfish Bay has been reported by trustworthy persons to have been found, which when sought for a few years later has entirely disappeared.

appointed British resident, with instructions "not to exercise any magisterial functions, but to use whatever moral influence he might possess or acquire to discourage barbarism, repress crime, promote civilisation and order, and specially to protect the interests of her Majesty's subjects in Damaraland (Hereroland)." He was further "to keep the government fully informed of the moral, social, and material condition of the people and of the relations subsisting between them and the neighbouring tribes, and to furnish information upon all subjects affecting the interests of the colony." He was thus to be nothing more than a diplomatic agent or a consul.

Mr. Palgrave was at the same time appointed "commissioner to the tribes north of the Orange river," and was instructed to "return to Damaraland, and continue there his duties as such." He was to introduce Major Musgrave to Kamaherero and his people as the agent of the colonial government at Okahandja. He was "as far as practicable to make Walfish Bay his head-quarters, so that, in addition to his other duties, he might be able to take charge of that territory, administer its government, if found desirable, and until other arrangements could be made, collect customs there and perform all the functions of a magistrate, and prevent the introduction of firearms and ammunition unless the importers were furnished with a permit from the colonial government." He was also to "direct his attention towards obtaining a supply of labour by inducing Berg Damaras to go to the colony for the purpose of entering into contracts of service with the government or with private individuals or companies."

On the 11th of March Major Musgrave was formally introduced to Kamaherero, and took up his residence at Okahandja, but his position from the first was of little account. Mr. Palgrave too found hardly any other sphere of usefulness open to him than to act as a labour agent. The Ghou Damup or Berg Damaras were in a state of famine, and whenever they were caught stealing a sheep for food, or were even suspected of having an intention to do



so, were put to death by both Hereros and Namaquas with no more compunction than if they were vermin. The commissioner got a number of them together, and sent them by sea to Capetown, where they were given out in service, but were not found capable of performing any kind of labour requiring the smallest amount of manual dexterity or skill.

The northern Herero clans, who had disowned the paramount authority of Kamaherero, were at this time in a state of anarchy, and the Gei||Khauas at Gobabis had become little better than a band of robbers, so that on two borders neither life nor property was safe. A strong will, with physical force to support it, was needed in the territory, and there was nothing in its stead but the moral influence of two English agents upon suspicious and barbarous chiefs.

For ten years there was peace between the Hereros and the Namaquas, but there never was a friendly feeling on either side. In 1880 war recommenced. The immediate cause was the visit of about thirty Hereros to a Hottentot kraal to seek for a missing cow, which was not found, but three Hottentots were made prisoners and taken away. The friends of the prisoners at other kraals hastily assembled, followed the retiring party, and overtook it. The Hereros fired upon their pursuers, and were fired upon in return, when eleven of them fell and the others took to flight. The Hottentots pursued them, killed ten men, and seized about fifteen hundred head of cattle at the nearest Herero posts.

Upon learning this, Kamaherero gave orders that every Hottentot, whether man, woman, or child, that could be found was to be put to death. At Okahandja, his own residence, over twenty were murdered before daylight of the 23rd of August, and during that day a general massacre occurred at other places. At New Barmen twenty were killed. In some localities the order was interpreted to include Berg Damaras also, and a large number of these perished. It is impossible to say how many Hottentots fell, as the accounts are conflicting, but the whole number cannot have been larger than from one hundred and fifty to two hundred. In

one place four, at another five, and so on, is the most that was recorded by the Europeans in the country at the time.

A Herero army was at once sent to surround Windhoek and destroy every one there, but Jan Jonker and his people had notice of its approach in time, and escaped in the night. He was pursued, but defended himself with such bravery that he succeeded in reaching Rehoboth with a loss of only six killed, while of his pursuers twenty fell.

During the next seven or eight weeks preparations for active hostilities were pushed on by both parties. The atrocities committed by the Hereros were so revolting that the whole of the Namaqua clans, with the exception of the Bondelzwarts under William Christian, joined in opposing them. Abraham Zwartbooi and his people were among the most active adherents of their cause. The mixed breeds at Rehoboth tried to remain neutral, but when six of them and a European were murdered by the Hereros while hunting, they too joined the Namaquas.

As soon ■ intelligence that war had broken out reached Capetown the colonial government recalled Mr. Palgrave, and directed Major Musgrave to remove from Okahandja to Walfish Bay and prevent the supply of munitions of war of any kind to either of the combatants, so as to preserve the strictest neutrality. At the beginning of November these instructions were carried out.

On the 10th of November the whole Namaqua force with the halfbreeds attacked New Barmen and got possession of the place, but during the following night ■ Herero army arrived, and in the early morning of the 11th drove them away with a loss of six halfbreeds and fifty-nine Namaquas killed, among whom was David Christian, the captain of Bethany. The victors made booty of their waggons, oxen, provisions, and everything else they had taken with them.

The attacks and forays on both sides continued after this at short intervals, without either party gaining ■ decided advantage, but it would be wearisome, and could serve no good purpose, to give a detailed account of them. The

Topnaars, who were British subjects, joined Abraham Zwartbooï, and the Hereros threatened to attack Walfish Bay in revenge, while the resident there was apprehensive that the Hottentots might come upon him and plunder the stores to obtain the ammunition in them. In January 1882 a party of volunteers under Captain E. J. Whindus was sent from Capetown in her Majesty's ship *Wrangler* to protect the place, and the reverend Dr. C. H. Hahn, of the Rhenish mission, was commissioned by the governor to accompany him to endeavour to bring about peace. He succeeded in doing so between the halfbreeds and the Hereros and in obtaining promises from some of the captains, which resulted in a meeting of their representatives at Rehoboth on the 13th of June 1882, after his return to Capetown, and the conclusion of an agreement to cease hostilities between Kamaherero and the southern Hottentot captains. Jan Jonker Afrikaner and Abraham Zwartbooï, however, declined to attend the meeting, and so the wretched guerilla warfare went on as before.

In 1883 Mr. F. A. E. Luderitz, a merchant of Bremen, established a trading station at Angra Pequena, and on the 1st of May of that year purchased a small tract of land round the bay from Joseph Fredericks, who had succeeded David Christian a captain of Bethany, for two hundred rifles and £100 in money, and on the 25th of August he completed the purchase of another and much larger tract of land from the same captain for sixty rifles and £600.

In 1868 there had been some correspondence between the Prussian and British governments concerning the protection of the Rhenish missionaries and the trading association connected with that mission in Hereroland and Great Namaqualand, but nothing came of the matter then, and the peace concluded in 1870 did away with the necessity for action. Mr. Luderitz now applied to his government for protection, and communications were opened between the German authorities and the foreign office in London on the subject, though nothing was said or written that could lead

to the supposition that Germany had any design of taking possession of the whole country. The time, however, had arrived when there was a general scramble for those parts of Africa not already under European rule, and even upon this, next to the Sahara for colonising purposes the least valuable district in the continent, Germany had cast a covetous eye.

The Cape Colony had for several years been desirous of annexing the coast line, not for anything to be derived from the country behind it, but simply to prevent unauthorised trading that might interfere with the customs regulations. The expense—in which term was included not only the maintenance of the necessary officials, but the charges incidental to the responsibilities of every kind that would be incurred—was the only difficulty, and this prevented the imperial government from giving its sanction until the correspondence with Germany commenced. Then the secretary of state for the colonies signified his consent if the Cape government would undertake to bear the whole cost. This was agreed to, and on the 16th of July 1884 a resolution was passed by the house of assembly “that it was expedient to provide for the annexation to this colony of the coast line between Walfish Bay and the mouth of the Orange river and between Walfish Bay and the southern boundary of the Portuguese possessions.” On the 18th of the same month this resolution was passed by the legislative council also.

Meantime Mr. W. C. Palgrave had been sent again to Great Namaqualand and Hereroland to ascertain whether the various chiefs and clans there were still desirous of coming under British sovereignty; whether, in that case, they were willing to contribute towards the cost of a simple governmental establishment and a police force to protect and preserve order among them; and further, to ascertain the exact condition of affairs in the country, the amount that might be raised annually from trading licenses, and generally anything else of importance to be known. Mr. Palgrave



proceeded to various parts of the territory, with Mr. Peter de Smidt as his secretary, and received the assurances of the leading chiefs that they were not only desirous, but anxious, to place themselves under British rule as a means of restoring and preserving peace; and he devised a plan by which, as he thought, the cost of government could be met; but he had not concluded his task when he was recalled, as the action of the German government had made his mission useless.

At this time British subjects held concessions from Herero and Namaqua chiefs of greater value than that which Mr. Luderitz had obtained from Joseph Fredericks, the captain of Bethany. Notably, Mr. Daniel De Pass, of London, and Captain John Spence, of Capetown, had acquired extensive rights at Sandwich Harbour and along the coast below Angra Pequena, as well as the lease of what was called the Pomona mine, where they had expended much capital. The establishments along the coast for catching and drying fish were owned in Capetown, and part of the trade was conducted by Englishmen. The hunting grounds had been almost cleared of game. On the other hand the missionaries were Germans, except in the far north of the territory, where in 1869 a mission had been established by the Finnish evangelical society. Part of the little trade that was left, now that ivory and ostrich feathers were no longer to be had, was also in German hands.

On the 7th of August 1884 by order of the emperor Wilhelm I Captain Schering of the corvette *Elizabeth* hoisted the German flag at Angra Pequena and proclaimed a protectorate over the coast and a belt of land along it twenty geographical miles in width from the Orange river to the 26th degree of south latitude, and a day or two later Captain Von Raven, of the German gunboat *Wolf*, hoisted his flag and issued at Sandwich Harbour and Cape Frio a similar proclamation respecting the coast from the 26th degree of latitude northward to Cape Frio, excepting the British territory at Walfish Bay.

On the 15th of August the German consul in Capetown informed the government of the first of these acts, and soon the full significance of the occurrence—that another factor had been introduced into South African affairs—came to be realised. The first difficulty was in connection with the twelve guano islands off the coast. Mr. Luderitz laid claim to them as being within cannon shot of the mainland, and he wanted the British subjects who leased them from the Cape government expelled. They were the most valuable asset of the country, if mineral wealth should not be found. The act of 1873 by which they had been annexed to the colony \* was regarded in England as informal, but it had been rectified by an act approved of on the 6th of July 1874, which was based on authority derived from letters patent issued by her Majesty on the 27th of February 1867, and since that date they had been as much a part of the colony as Robben Island at the entrance to Table Bay. The German government did not contest this fact, and so the twelve islands on the coast and Walfish Bay with the little territory around it remain under the British flag and parts of the Cape Colony, and all the remainder of the country from the Orange river in the south to the Portuguese possessions in the north, and from the Atlantic ocean on the west to the twentieth meridian from Greenwich on the east, with an additional tract in the shape of a rectangle on the north-east, which makes the Zambesi its border there, in course of time became a dependency of the German empire.

\* See Vol. II, page 236.

## CHAPTER LXXXIX.

### THE PORTUGUESE POSSESSIONS IN SOUTH AFRICA DURING THE NINETEENTH CENTURY.

THE condition of Portugal from the time of the departure of the regent Dom João to Brazil until 1855, when Pedro V ascended the throne ■ ■ constitutional monarch, was such that very little attention could be given to her African possessions. War succeeded war, revolution followed revolution, councils of regency appeared and disappeared, democrats and aristocrats rose in turn and fell, all was chaos and confusion. This is the least interesting period of the history of the mother country, and it would be the least interesting period in the history of South-Eastern Africa also if the wars among the Bantu had not been more destructive than ever before. A rapid glance at the principal events that took place is therefore all that is necessary.

While the war with France continued French cruisers and privateers preyed upon the coasting trade until it was nearly annihilated. The stations were garrisoned with blacks, who were so poorly and so irregularly paid that they were often in revolt against their officers. Even Fort São Sebastião at Mozambique seldom contained more than fifty or sixty European and mixed breed soldiers, who were aided by three or four hundred negroes. The walls of this fort were badly in need of repair, and the guns mounted upon them were old and almost useless. The governor was now, ■ ■ measure of policy, made independent of the viceroy at Goa, that he might have more freedom of action and greater responsibility. Along the Zambesi strife and disorder were constant, and in 1807 the principal officer there lost his life at the hands of the Bantu.

During the first half of the century the slave trade was almost the only source of revenue. Vessels badly fitted out and crowded with negroes to their utmost capacity sailed from Kilimane and the other ports for Brazil, often arriving at their destination with less than a third of the number taken on board. Some of these vessels put into Table Bay in distress, with hardly any provisions or water left, for their owners calculated from the outset upon obtaining supplies there and thus being able to transport more slaves. For a time this plan succeeded, as humanity forbade the vessels being sent away without food ; but when it was ascertained that this was depended upon as a means of furthering the traffic, all assistance was refused. The passage had then to be made without a break, so the vessels left with fewer slaves and more provisions. The horrors of these voyages, especially when any accident happened or when sickness broke out, can hardly be overdrawn.

Events at Delagoa Bay at this period began to assume greater importance than in earlier years. On the 5th of April 1805 José Antonio Caldas, who was then captain of the fort at Lourenço Marques, obtained from a Bantu chief a deed of cession to Portugal of a considerable tract of land north of the Espirito Santo, which that chief had wrested from its previous owner. But the weakness of the garrison and the circumstances of the time were such that no real cession was intended, and the relation of the two parties to each other remained as it had been before.

The English and Americans evidently made whale fishing pay, so in 1817 the Portuguese formed a company to carry on the same pursuit, and commenced operations at Delagoa Bay. But the effort was not attended with much success, for there were too many officials in proportion to the number of seamen, and they did not display the same activity as their competitors. Their jealousy of the English and Americans, though only natural under the circumstances, led them whenever an opportunity occurred to illtreat subjects of the Bantu chiefs who had dealings with their rivals, until



such animosity was aroused that on the 29th of June 1818 the superintendent of the fishery, João Pereira de Sousa Caldas, lost his life in a quarrel.

Towards the close of 1822 an English exploring and surveying expedition, under Captain William FitzWilliam Owen, of the royal navy, entered Delagoa Bay. It was provided with credentials from the government at Lisbon to the Portuguese officials on the coast, in which they were required to render all the assistance in their power, as the object was purely scientific. But when Captain Owen requested protection for his boats' people while they were surveying the rivers, he was informed by the commandant of the fort that the Bantu were not subject to the Portuguese government, and that he must depend upon his own resources. That was the true condition of matters at the time. Accordingly the English officers acted thereafter as if Portuguese sovereignty did not extend beyond the range of the guns of the fort, and when Mayeta, the chief of the tribe along the Tembe river, was understood as offering to cede his country to Great Britain, Captain Owen accepted the cession. A document to that effect was drawn up and formally signed and witnessed on the 8th of March 1823.

A close examination of this paper and of the reports concerning it show, however, that the object of the chief was something very different from what appears on the surface. Tshaka had then commenced his murderous career in the country to the south, and various hordes fleeing from his armies had made their appearance on the shores of Delagoa Bay, where they were causing great havoc among the earlier inhabitants. It was protection from them that Mayeta desired, not subjection of himself and his followers to foreign authority. Captain Owen described the invaders, whom he termed *Vatwahs*, as ■ martial people of free air and noble carriage, marked by piercing very large holes in the lobes of their ears. They were clothed with the skins of animals, lived chiefly on animal food, used oval shields of oxhide large enough to cover their bodies, and carried

from three to six assagais and a stabbing spear. One night a band of them attacked an English surveying party that was encamped in tents, so he had more than a casual acquaintance with them.

The Batonga inhabitants of the country around the bay he described as a timid race, armed with assagais and spears, and sometimes carrying a small shield. Many of them wore hardly any clothing at all, but some were dressed in calico obtained from the Portuguese and others in woollen garments bartered from whalers. They possessed horned cattle, goats, and barnyard poultry, and had in their gardens rice, maize, millet, sweet potatoes, onions, cabbages, pumpkins, pineapples, bananas, and other foreign and indigenous fruits. Most of these vegetables and fruits had been introduced by Europeans, and were cultivated by the Bantu not only for their own use, but for disposal to the crews of whalers. Throughout the country beads were used as coin: four hens could be had for a penny's worth, and the labour of a man for a day cost the same. With beads and calico these people bartered from others ivory and ambergris, which they disposed of to Europeans at a large profit. Captain Owen estimated the population of the shores of the bay south of the Manisa river at one hundred thousand souls.

Into the territory of these timid agricultural and commercial people, the ferocious Vatwahs, kinsmen of the Zulus, had come like lions into a herd of antelopes, and no wonder they sought protectors. The Portuguese in the fort did not, and could not, help them, they even purchased from the invaders the spoil gathered in murderous raids. One large body of the Vatwahs was then encamped at a distance of only fifty or sixty kilometres, so the need was urgent. This was the cause of the chief of Tembe affixing his mark to the document that purported to be a deed of cession of his country to the king of England. One of his men who had served in a whaler and who could speak a little broken English advised him to make the application, and he followed the counsel. But that he did not realise what he was doing

is certain, and this deed of cession was of no greater value, honestly considered, than the one covering the same ground made to the Portuguese in November 1794. The document was purely European in word and spirit, and contained clauses that no Bantu chief in South Africa was capable of understanding.

On the same day that it was signed, 8th of March 1823, the British flag was hoisted on the bank of the Tembe river, and was saluted with twenty-one guns. As soon as possible thereafter notice was given to the captain of the Portuguese fort that the tribe had become British subjects, but no authority of any kind was ever exercised over them, nor was the least protection against their enemies given to them. They were left as before to themselves, and in the terrible wave of war that soon afterwards rolled over their land they were almost exterminated by Swangendaba and Manikusa without the British government even knowing what was taking place.

On the 23rd of August 1823, Makasane, chief of the tribe occupying the territory between the Maputa river and the sea, that is the same tract of land that had once belonged to the friendly ruler Garcia de Sá, affixed his mark to a document by which he placed himself and his country under the protection of Great Britain. Captain Owen's object in obtaining this declaration was to secure for England the two islands Inyaka and Elephant, which were regarded ■ more healthy stations than any on the mainland, and behind which there was good anchorage for ships. He wrote that he considered Delagoa Bay a place of considerable political and commercial importance. It was the only good harbour on the coast south of Mozambique, over which it had many advantages, as it was easy of access at all seasons of the year, was free of such currents ■ would obstruct navigation, and had a better country behind it. It was the door for commerce to the vast interior, was the base of ■ valuable whale fishery, and commanded intercourse with the entire seaboard of Madagascar at all seasons of the year. From it

British sovereignty might be extended southward to embrace Natal and the whole of the coast. In the possession of a foreign power it could be made ruinous to the Cape Colony and to the commerce of India, either in peace or war. In peace it could be made a depôt for eastern productions, and in war one of the best ports in the world whence hostile expeditions might issue at pleasure. These were the reasons assigned by Captain Owen for taking the preliminary steps to make the south-eastern shore of the bay an English dependency. But no force was left for Makasane's protection, and beyond the existence of the formal document there was nothing to show that Great Britain had obtained a foothold there.

Some of the names of the rivers were changed by this expedition into English ones. Thus the Manisa became the King George's, but the old designation of that stream near its mouth survives until to-day, and the new one is now seldom used, while the upper course is always known as the Komati. The Da Lagoa or Lourenço Marques became the Dundas, but recently the Bantu name Umbelosi has driven all the others out. The estuary called the Espirito Santo was changed into the English river, and is still frequently so termed.

In October 1823 Captain Owen sent from Mozambique a report to the admiralty office upon the condition of Eastern Africa at the time. He stated that there were then in that harbour seven vessels taking in slaves for Rio Janeiro, one of them, of six hundred tons burden, being intended to carry twelve hundred. Not fewer than twenty-five thousand slaves were exported from Mozambique annually. From Kilimane sixteen vessels had taken during the preceding year ten thousand slaves. Between Inhambane and Brazil there was also direct communication, but from that port the number sent away was not so large. At Delagoa Bay the traffic was still less. The cost of a slave to the Portuguese at Kilimane, Inhambane, and Delagoa Bay was rarely more than two or three dollars, and they were sold to the owners of the



ships at from twenty to thirty dollars each. These owners considered that they made a good voyage if a third of the number embarked reached Rio Janeiro, where they brought from one hundred and fifty to two hundred dollars each. Sometimes half were saved, when the gain became a strong motive for more extensive speculation.

Sofala, he reported, was the most miserable of all the Portuguese establishments on the coast except Lourenço Marques: it could not even furnish a boat to assist one of his ships when aground. Strangers everywhere visiting the stations for purposes of trade were subject to wanton indignity and exaction. At Mozambique an English vessel, even in distress, was obliged to pay five per cent of the value of any goods it might be necessary to land, and twenty-five per cent on everything that was sold. Inhambane was the most thriving of all the settlements, owing to the exceptional ability of its captain, who encouraged industry in the free blacks by his example, counsel, and manner of administration.

Except along the lower Zambesi the Portuguese had then no dominion or authority beyond the limits of their forts and factories. At Sofala, however, they professed to have recently conquered with fifty men the whole of the old Kiteve country as far as Manika, though when he was there he found them almost shut up in their establishment by tribes at war with them, and along the Zambesi it was feared that some hostile chiefs might destroy the villages of Sena and Tete.

Mozambique was in such a critical state that the governor found it necessary to reside within the fort. He had not more than twelve or fourteen European soldiers, and only eight officers on whom he could rely, mostly very young men. In the market nothing except slaves was exposed for sale, and it was with much difficulty that any other provisions than rice and shellfish could be procured. Most of the traders were Arabs so-called and Banyans. In short, the whole country from Delagoa Bay northward presented ■

lamentable picture of decay and ruin, owing to the indolence and incapacity of those who claimed to be its possessors.

Captain Owen recommended that the treaty which permitted the Portuguese to carry on the slave trade in their dominions between Cape Delgado and Delagoa Bay should not be construed to include independent Bantu territory within those limits.\* Nowhere south or north of the Zambesi had they any dominion whatever beyond the muzzles of their guns. In most parts, indeed, they were even excluded by the Bantu. Great Britain could make treaties with the

\*The following are the clauses of the treaties limiting the extent of territory in which the Portuguese could carry on the slave trade :—

#### Article X.

His Royal Highness the Prince Regent of Portugal being fully convinced of the Injustice and Impolicy of the Slave Trade, and of the great disadvantages which arise from the necessity of introducing and continually renewing a Foreign and Factitious Population for the purpose of Labour and Industry within His South American Dominions, has resolved to co-operate with His Britannic Majesty in the cause of Humanity and Justice by adopting the most efficacious means for bringing about a gradual abolition of the Slave Trade throughout the whole of His Dominions. And actuated by this Principle His Royal Highness the Prince Regent of Portugal engages that His Subjects shall not be permitted to carry on the Slave Trade on any part of the Coast of Africa not actually belonging to His Royal Highness's Dominions, in which that Trade has been discontinued and abandoned by the Powers and States of Europe, which formerly traded there, reserving however to His Own Subjects the Right of purchasing and trading in Slaves within the African Dominions of the Crown of Portugal.—Treaty of 19th February 1810.

#### Article II.

The Territories in which the Traffic in Slaves continues to be permitted, under the Treaty of the Twenty second of January one Thousand Eight Hundred and fifteen, to the Subjects of His most Faithful Majesty, are the following: 1st. The Territories possessed by the Crown of Portugal upon the Coast of Africa to the South of the Equator, that is to say, upon the Eastern Coast of Africa, the Territory laying between Cape Delgado and the Bay of Lourenço Marques, and upon the Western Coast, all that which is situated from the Eighth to the Eighteenth Degree of South Latitude.—Treaty of 28th July 1817.

independent chiefs which would destroy the slave trade, or she could establish factories for commerce where she could undersell the Portuguese and starve them out. Or, as Delagoa Bay must be considered ■ of great importance to the Cape Colony, an arrangement might be made with the Portuguese government that it should withdraw its claims to all territory south of Inhambane and abolish the slave trade farther north, conditionally upon Great Britain abstaining from entering into any relations with the chiefs beyond Cape Correntes.

Probably a neutral party would have drawn a less gloomy picture of the condition of South-Eastern Africa at this time, and would have disputed Great Britain's right to do what Captain Owen recommended, but there can be no question ■ to the weakness of the Portuguese government or the extent of the slave trade.

On the 3rd of November 1823 Commodore Joseph Nourse, who was then in command of the British naval force on the Cape station, arrived in Delagoa Bay in the *Andromache*. An English trading vessel named the *Orange Grove* was lying at anchor there at the time. Commodore Nourse obtained from the captain of the fort a promise to abstain from interference with Bantu trading with the English, but after the departure of the two ships he took ■ different course. The reverend Mr. Threlfall, ■ Wesleyan missionary who had gone to the bay with Captain Owen, and who remained there until 1824, when he returned in ill health to Capetown in the whaler *Nereid*, reported that immediately after the departure of the *Andromache* and the *Orange Grove* the Portuguese captain showed ■ disposition to subjugate the Bantu states, and threatened the chiefs with immediate war if they would not accede to his terms. In December he caused the Portuguese flag to be hoisted in Tembe, and appointed three soldiers to guard it. About the same time an official of the chief of Maputa ceded the south-eastern territory to the Portuguese, but the chief refused to confirm the cession, upon which the captain sent

■ company of soldiers and a large number of enlisted blacks of another tribe against him. Makasane obtained assistance from the chief of Tembe, but was defeated with ■ loss of many killed, and his followers then dispersed.

A good deal of skirmishing among the various tribes followed, until the Portuguese and their allies were destroyed by an act of treachery rather than of war. One of the chiefs sent a present to the captain with ■ message that it was intended as giving his consent to the arrangement proposed, and invited him to come to the territory and hoist the Portuguese flag. The captain, Lupe de Cardenas by name, fell into the snare laid for him. With all the officers of the garrison except Lieutenant Teixeira who was sick, forty-five soldiers, and most of his Bantu allies, he was proceeding to the place arranged for hoisting the flag with due ceremony, when he fell into an ambushade and the whole party, excepting three soldiers and a few of the allies, perished under the assagai. Those who escaped fled to the fort, which was at once besieged, but the attacking party was induced to withdraw by presents of beads. Internecine strife among the various tribes followed, and this alone saved the Portuguese establishment from entire annihilation.

This account, however, is not quite in accordance with the official documents on the other side. According to them the chiefs who had affixed their marks to the English documents signed a counter declaration, to the effect that they were subjects of the king of Portugal, as their fathers from time immemorial had been. The captain Lupe de Cardenas with a junior officer and thirty-nine black soldiers then proceeded to hoist the Portuguese flag on the banks of the Tembe river, whereupon Mayeta, the chief who was asserted to be a subject of Portugal as his ancestors had always been, attacked the party, killed Cardenas and twenty-six of his men, and obliged the ensign and the remaining thirteen blacks to surrender and submit to his mercy.

In this precarious manner the fort or trading station continued to be held until 1833, without authority of any



kind over the neighbouring Bantu clans being exercised. It was just the other way, for the tenure under which the Portuguese occupied the ground on which they lived was one of sufferance on condition of friendly behaviour towards the strongest of their neighbours. They were there at the mercy of the barbarians.

With the object of trying to keep strangers away, on the 13th of November 1824 a royal charter was issued in which an exclusive monopoly of the commerce of the bay was granted to the Fishing Company, as it was supposed its agents would show a good deal of energy in the matter. This charter remained in force until January 1835, when the company was dissolved.

For some years the country round Delagoa Bay had been devastated by war of an exceptionally ferocious character.

First a little band of warriors under a leader named Ngokweni broke away from Tshaka, and passed through it on their way to the Zambesi, where they settled on a large island in the river near Sena. They did some damage on their march, but they were too few in number to ~~cause~~ devastation on an extensive scale.

They were followed by a much larger horde, under the chief Swangendaba, who fled from the border of the district now called Swaziland. This ferocious horde in its flight to the north created great havoc among the feeble tribes, who were incapable of resisting it. It moved about the country between Delagoa Bay and the Zambesi nearly two years, breaking up and almost exterminating many of the Batonga, Baroswi, and Makalanga clans, and setting at defiance the Portuguese in their stations along the coast. At length the Angoni, as this devastating host was afterwards called, were routed in a great battle on the bank of the Sabi river by a still stronger body of refugees from the south, under the chief Manikusa. Swangendaba then retreated northward, crossed the Zambesi, and settled on the western shore of Lake Nyassa, where the Angoni became a scourge to all their neighbours. Upon the death of Swangendaba he

succeeded by his son Mpezini, who was chief of the tribe when in 1875 missionaries of the Free church of Scotland founded the station Livingstonia. The Angoni were then masters of a wide extent of country, and were still pursuing the career of marauders.

Far more destructive than the Angoni to the inhabitants of the coast north of Delagoa Bay was the fierce tribe now known as the Matshangana, because their occupation of the territory was permanent. This tribe was composed of a number of refugees from various clans, who fled from the shore of St. Lucia Bay to avoid contact with the Zulu stabbing assagai. These refugees were welded into one body by the chief Manikusa, afterwards generally called Sotshangana, from whom the tribe took its name. Among the less highly disciplined people living north of St. Lucia Bay the Matshangana spread dreadful havoc. Many of the clans were exterminated, and others were reduced to the most abject condition, all their property being seized, and their serviceable children of both sexes being taken away to swell the ranks of their conquerors.

On the 22nd of October 1833 a strong body of warriors of the Matshangana tribe appeared before the fort on the Espirito Santo. They were provided with no other weapons than short-handled stabbing assagais, so they could not effect an entrance, but during the night of the 27th the captain Dionysio Antonio Ribeiro, seeing an opportunity to escape, evacuated the place, and with his men retired to the island Shefina, which lies close to the coast. On the following day the Matshangana destroyed the fort, and then pursued the Portuguese to the island and captured them all. The prisoners were brought back to their ruined habitation, and were there put to death.

Manikusa then for the second time devastated the territory from Delagoa Bay to the Zambesi, and destroyed the clans within it, the descendants of the tribes that three centuries earlier had been governed by the Sedanda, the Kiteve, and the Tshikanga, as well as the various divisions of the

Batonga south of the Sabi and of the Mashona, who were comparatively recent immigrants.

The captain of Inhambane was so rash ■■ to attempt to assist ■ friendly clan against Manikusa. Inhambane had then about twenty-five Portuguese residents, all told, and the garrison of the little fort São João da Boa Vista consisted of about ■ hundred negroes. The village contained ■ church dedicated to our Lady of the Conception, and a few houses built in the European style, though none of great size, ■■ the station was inferior in importance to those on the Zambesi. The result of the interference with Manikusa by the captain of Inhambane was the plunder of the village and the slaughter of the captain himself and all the inhabitants except ten individuals who managed to escape, 3rd of November 1834.

Sofala had sunk to be ■ place of very little note. Its fort had fallen into decay, and its best houses were built of mud. Still it had a captain and ■ garrison of negroes. In 1836 it was attacked by the Matshangana, when the fort managed to hold out, but all else was plundered and destroyed. The military commandant, José Marques da Costa, then collected the friendly Bantu in the neighbourhood, and with them and his negroes ventured to give the enemy battle, with the result that every individual of his force perished.

Sena contained ten houses built in the European style, one church, and ■ small fort. A number of Bantu huts stood close by. There were not more than twenty white inhabitants, including three military officers and ■ priest, and in 1830 these had been obliged to abandon the place temporarily on account of ■ famine. There were fifty or sixty mixed breeds and sixty blacks called soldiers, but they were very little in advance of the barbarians around them. The Matshangana attacked the place, and after killing fifty-four of the Portuguese and mixed breeds, drove the remaining inhabitants of the village to the islands in the Zambesi. An arrangement was then made that the traders should pay to the chief of the conquering horde ■ certain

quantity of merchandise yearly, and on this condition they were allowed to return.

The government at Lisbon was unable to supply a competent force to protect the stations while the Matshangana were in the first flush of their victorious career, and could devise no other expedient than to make the government of the Rivers independent of that of Mozambique. In 1834 José Gregorio Pegado was appointed military governor of Mozambique, and Isidro Manuel de Carrezedo was sent to the Rivers to do the best he could without any interference. He could do nothing, as has been seen, for military force was what was needed, and with his failure the former system of government was reverted to.

The havoc created among the Bantu between the Zambesi and the Limpopo by the Matshangana on the south, the Makololo on the north-west, and the Matabele on the west, was very great. Many of the ancient clans were quite exterminated, and of those that remain in existence few occupy the same ground that their ancestors did. In the years 1852 and 1853 especially they were scattered and destroyed with no more compunction than if they had been vermin. The Portuguese stations were reoccupied within a few years, but they were held with difficulty. In 1849 the captain of Inhambane was killed, as was his successor in 1850. In these years Lourenço Marques and Sofala were attacked, and narrowly escaped destruction the second time. Lourenço Marques, indeed, was held under the most precarious of tenures until quite recently. In 1868 it was attacked by a tribe in the neighbourhood that was assisted by a European renegade, and was only saved by the bravery of the captain José Augusto de Sá e Simas. As late as 1878 there were only four hundred and fifty-eight Europeans, Asiatics, and mulattos combined living there. Of these, two hundred and ninety-five were men, thirty-two were women, and one hundred and thirty-one were children. Ninety-three Portuguese, twenty-eight Europeans of other nationalities, sixty-six mulattos, and eighty-three Asiatics professed



Christianity, and one hundred and thirty-three Indians and fifty-five others did not.

The prazos south of the Zambesi were of course nearly all overrun, and on the 22nd of December 1854 a decree was issued by the government in Lisbon abolishing the system. The decree was not enforced, however, by the local authorities, except that the method of inheritance was no longer observed, and a few prazos held by individuals who arrogated to themselves the rights of feudal lords and who regarded their people as mere serfs, continued in existence.

There is a little island called Tshiloane off the coast about sixty-four kilometres south of Sofala. It is nearly divided into two by a sluggish creek, and is not at all an attractive place, but it has a fairly good harbour, and it is secure against ravages by Bantu from the mainland. Some of the half breeds and others who lived among the blacks in the neighbourhood of the ancient gold port removed to this island, and since 1862 a military force has been stationed there to protect them. A lighthouse has also been built on Tshingani Point on the island, though the commerce of the place is very small.

In 1855 some of the refugees from the mainland went to reside on the island of Santa Carolina, one of the Bazaruta group, and a small garrison was stationed there as evidence that the Portuguese were the owners.

On the 10th of December 1836 a decree was issued by the government at Lisbon abolishing traffic in slaves throughout the Portuguese dominions. But so far from its coming into force in Eastern Africa, the marquis of Aracaty, who was then governor of Mozambique, issued a proclamation on the 11th of November 1837 suspending its operation, on the plea of absolute necessity. This led to correspondence with the British government, which had then emancipated the slaves everywhere within its own dominions and was exerting itself to the utmost to induce foreign nations to follow its example. But the traffic continued, and when after a time in accordance with treaty arrangements

British cruisers were stationed on the coast to endeavour to suppress it, they could generally be evaded by the slave vessels getting away from one port while they were watching another. It has only been in our own times that this traffic has ceased.

The law regarding commerce by strangers was now greatly modified.\* In 1811 it was made legal to import goods of foreign manufacture, provided they were carried in Portuguese vessels manned to the extent of three-fourths of the crew by Portuguese subjects. But restrictive laws, except where a government is very strong, invariably foster illicit traffic, and it was so in this instance. Foreigners could not be kept away. Seeing this, in 1853 the government at Lisbon wisely adopted a system under which a revenue from strangers would be obtained, while smuggling was made too unprofitable, compared with the risk, to be carried on. Under this system Portuguese goods imported into Eastern Africa in Portuguese ships were charged four per cent of their value a customs duty, foreign goods imported in Portuguese ships were charged eight per cent, and foreign goods imported in foreign ships twelve per cent. Articles exported in Portuguese ships to Portuguese ports were charged one per cent of their value, in Portuguese ships to foreign ports three per cent,

\* According to treaty British subjects nominally had rights of trade in Eastern Africa, except in certain reserved articles; but these included gold, ivory, and, of course, slaves, they were practically prohibited from purchasing anything else than provisions. The following is the text of the article referring to East Africa in the treaty of commerce between Great Britain and Portugal:

#### Article XXIV.

All Trade with the Portuguese Possessions situated on the Eastern Coast of the Continent of Africa (in Articles not included in the Exclusive Contracts possessed by the Crown of Portugal) which may have been formerly allowed to the Subjects of the Great Britain, is confirmed, and secured to them now and for ever, in the same Manner as the Trade which has hitherto been permitted to Portuguese Subjects in the Ports and Seas of Asia is confirmed and secured to them by Virtue of the Sixth Article of the Present Treaty.—Treaty of 19th February 1810.

and in foreign ships to foreign ports five per cent. This cannot be regarded as an unreasonable tariff for that time, and though it has been modified of recent years, Portuguese goods still have the advantage of differential duties in their favour.

In 1856 the farce was enacted of creating a council for the province of Mozambique, consisting of thirteen members, in which Tete was allotted two representatives, and Sena, Sofala, Inhambane, and Lourenço Marques each one. At the same time the term of office of the heads of the stations was extended from three to five years, in order to obtain the advantage of experience. Ten years later, on the 1st of December 1866, a more practical decree was issued, which established improved courts of justice, both inferior and superior, in Eastern Africa.

Beyond Tete the whole country to the westward had long been lost to the Portuguese, and with it of course the station that had once been regarded as the most important for the commerce of the interior and the conversion of the Bantu. This was Zumbo, on the northern bank of the Zambesi, nearly two hundred and fifty English miles or four hundred kilometres by the stream upward from Tete. Projects for the reoccupation of this post had frequently been discussed, but nothing could be done before 1862, when Albino Manuel Pacheco hoisted the Portuguese flag there once more. The ruins of the ancient church and of the house once inhabited by the captain marked the site of the station. But Zumbo, though reoccupied, has never attained its former importance, and only five or six Europeans have since resided there at a time. Its principal value to the Portuguese has been that it gave them a right, acknowledged by Great Britain, to the territory along the river bank that distance westward, and secured for them a boundary line including it when the interior of the continent was divided between different claimants a few years ago.

The most interesting event during this period is the progress of geographical knowledge concerning South Africa,

and for this the world is mainly indebted to an intrepid Scotch missionary. The honour of accomplishing the journey across Africa for the first time, however, is due to two black traders named Pedro João Baptista and Amaro José, who were in the employment of Lieutenant-Colonel Francisco Honorato da Costa, director of the fair of Mucary in the district of Pungo Andongo. These men were entrusted with a letter to the captain of Tete, and left Muropue in Angola on the 22nd of May 1806. One of them, Pedro João Baptista, was sufficiently well educated to be able to keep a sort of journal, but they had no instruments of any kind with them, nor were they competent to make observations. On the 2nd of February 1811, four years and eight months after setting out, they delivered the letter at Tete, and in May of the same year left on their return journey. They reached Loanda again safely, and thus accomplished the feat of crossing the continent in both directions. Some knowledge of the interior far north of the Zambesi was gathered from these intrepid travellers, but no information whatever concerning the country or the people to the south.

On the 1st of June 1831 a large expedition left Tete to follow up Dr. Lacerda's exploration to the west coast. Major José Maria Correia Monteiro was in command, Captain Antonio Candido Pedroso Gamitto was next in authority and also journalist, and there were no fewer than four hundred and twenty blacks in different capacities. But the difficulties encountered were so great that from the kraal of Kazembe the expedition turned back, after despatching a letter to the governor of Angola by some trustworthy black traders of the party. The letter was dated 10th of March 1832, and was delivered on the 25th of April 1839. Thus it was not by Europeans, but by blacks, that this transit of the continent was effected.

On the next occasion it was performed by three Arab traders from Zanzibar, who, finding themselves far in the interior in want of merchandise, pushed on to the nearest



coast, and reached Benguela on the 3rd of May 1852. The governor of Angola offered a million reis and the honorary title of captain to any one who would return to Zanzibar with the traders, and describe the route between the two coasts. A resident of Angola named Antonio Francisco Ferreira da Silva Porto accepted the offer, but after travelling a hundred and seven days he could go no farther, and therefore turned back. He sent some of his people on, however, who reached Mozambique safely on the 12th of November 1854.

It was reserved for the reverend Dr. David Livingstone to be the first white man to cross Africa from coast to coast, and to be also the first to give reliable information upon the interior of the country south of the upper course of the Zambesi. This famous explorer proceeded northward from the Cape of Good Hope along the healthy highlands of the interior to Linyanti, the residence of the paramount ruler of the Makololo tribe, about midway between the two oceans. With this place as a base of supply, more than half the difficulty of crossing the continent was done away with. To that point a waggon road was open from the south, and everything needed for the journey was collected there with little difficulty. On the 11th of November 1853 he left the Makololo kraal, and on the 31st of May 1854 arrived safely at Loanda in Angola. After resting there nearly four months, on the 20th of September Dr. Livingstone set out to return, but the journey back could not be accomplished in less than a year. Leaving Linyanti again on the 3rd of November 1855, he followed the Zambesi down to the sea, discovering on the way the magnificent Victoria fall. After touching at Tete, where he left most of his attendants to await his return from England, he arrived at Kilimane on the 20th of May 1856.

Since that time the continent has frequently been crossed, and soon the various details of its features were known, and full information was obtained concerning the tribes that occupy it.

## CHAPTER XC.

### THE PORTUGUESE POSSESSIONS IN SOUTH AFRICA DURING THE NINETEENTH CENTURY (*continued*).

AFTER 1838, when the emigrant farmers from the Cape Colony began to settle on the highlands of the interior between the Vaal and Limpopo rivers, the southern part of the territory claimed by the Portuguese along the eastern coast acquired a value it never had before. The excellent harbour at the mouth of the Espirito Santo in Delagoa Bay was the nearest port to the newly occupied territory, and efforts were repeatedly made to open a road to it. These did not succeed for many years, owing to the prevalence of fever near the coast and to the intermediate belt of land being infested with the tsetse fly, but the position of the bay made it certain that in time all the difficulties of establishing communication through it between the South African Republic and the outer world would be overcome.

In 1852 the independence of the farmers north of the Vaal was acknowledged by Great Britain, and the importance of the bay was realised in England, where the documents obtained by Captain Owen in 1823 were not forgotten, though no action beyond a little correspondence between the authorities at London and Lisbon had ever been taken upon them. Matters were left in abeyance, however, until the 5th of November 1861, when Captain Bickford, commanding her Majesty's ship *Narcissus*, planted the British flag on the islands Inyaka and Elephant, which he proclaimed British territory, and together with the adjoining roadstead he declared to be annexed to the colony of Natal. This action was protested against by the Portuguese, and a long correspondence between the two governments ensued.

Captain Bickford had hardly set sail when a man, who was destined to occupy a prominent position thereafter in South-Eastern Africa made his appearance at the Portuguese fort on the Espirito Santo. His name was Umzila. He was a son of the recently deceased chief Manikusa, and having incurred the jealousy of his father he had been obliged to flee and for some time had been living as a refugee in the South African Republic. Upon the death of Manikusa, his great son Maweve succeeded as chief of the Matshangana, but a strong party favoured Umzila, who was older than his brother and much the abler man of the two.

On the 1st of December 1861 Umzila applied to Onofre Lourenço d'Andrada, captain of the fort on the Espirito Santo, for assistance against his brother. Manikusa, his father, had been a terrible scourge to the Portuguese, and Maweve, his brother, bade fair to be equally hostile. He, on the contrary, offered to recognise the sovereignty of the king of Portugal, and to cede all the land up to the Manisa river, in return for military assistance. The captain Andrada was not in a position to give much help. His whole force could not have stood five minutes in the open field against the weakest of Maweve's regiments, but he recognised that a crisis had come, and that if Umzila was unsuccessful, the Portuguese possession of any part of the coast south of the Zambesi river would be at an end. What Umzila needed also was not so much men as arms and ammunition, and he could spare a few antiquated firelocks and a quantity of gunpowder.

An arrangement was therefore entered into, and on the 2nd of December 1861 the cession of the territory—though it was not yet in the giver's possession—was formally made. All the assistance that was possible was then afforded to Umzila. The war between the brothers lasted many months, but at length in two battles fought on the banks of the Manisa on the 17th and the 20th of August 1862 Maweve's adherents were utterly defeated. He was fortunate enough to make his escape, and fled to Swaziland, where he was given shelter. Thereafter for many years he made occasional

raids into the territory he had lost, but never succeeded in gathering together a body of adherents strong enough to enable him to meet his brother again in the field.

Umzila thus became undisputed chief of the Matshangana tribe, and until his death in 1884 ruled over nearly all the Bantu in that large expanse of territory marked in the maps as Gazaland, extending from the Zambesi river on the north to the Manisa on the south, and from the fringe of the great interior plain down to the shore of the Indian sea. Throughout his life he remembered the assistance that had been given to him by the Portuguese, but did not always refrain from hostile actions towards them, and certainly never regarded himself as their subject. To control a tribe as powerful as his, the means to compel obedience to authority must be ever present, no matter what flag is supposed to wave over the territory, and the Portuguese at that time had no force in South-Eastern Africa that could command respect.

They were, however, beginning to improve their position, which had already passed its lowest point of depression. A favourable turn in their affairs was taking place in the lower Zambesi valley, as will presently be related, and on the Espirito Santo a much stronger and better fort than the one previously existing was constructed in 1864, which was strengthened three years afterwards by the addition of four small batteries. A few houses were built on the adjoining ground, and thereafter the site came to be generally called Lourenço Marques.

On the 29th of July 1869 a commercial treaty was concluded between the governments of Portugal and of the South African Republic, and in it a boundary line between them was fixed commencing from the parallel of  $26^{\circ} 30'$  south latitude.

Such a treaty could not be regarded with indifference by the British government, whose interests in South Africa were likely to be seriously affected by it. Accordingly the claim to the southern and eastern shore of Delagoa Bay, based on



the documents obtained by Captain Owen, attracted greater attention, but naturally the Portuguese government refused to acknowledge it. Arbitration was then decided upon, and on the 25th of September 1872 a protocol was signed at Lisbon, by which the contending parties agreed to submit their respective claims to the decision of the president of the French republic.

The case for Portugal was well worked out, though many mere suppositions were made to appear as incontrovertible facts, and numerous papers were put in which could easily have been proved to be of no weight whatever. Their records and ancient histories were searched, and everything that favoured their claim was brought forward, while all that opposed it was carefully held back. Among their documents was a treaty between Great Britain and Portugal, in which the territories of the latter on the East African coast were declared to extend from Cape Delgado to the bay of Lourenço Marques, which they reasonably interpreted ■■ including that bay. Real effective occupation of any part of the country beyond the precincts of their fort they could not prove, nor could they show the exercise of substantial control over any of the Bantu clans living in the vicinity. But their discovery of the bay, their commercial dealings with the tribes on its shores, the cessions on paper made to them, and what more has been related in these volumes, they fully proved.

The English case was less carefully prepared. It could not have been brought to appear as good as that of the Portuguese, but by a careful search in the archives of the Cape Colony and in printed and manuscript volumes in the library of the British museum, it might have been considerably strengthened. An attempt was made to show that the bay of Lourenço Marques mentioned in the treaty put in by the Portuguese really meant the estuary of the Tembe, Umbelosi, and Matola, that is the Espirito Santo or English river, and not the large sheet of water of which this is only a very small part, but such an interpretation was easily proved to

be incorrect. Some of the documents relied upon by the other side were explained away, but the fact that the territory in dispute had for centuries been within the sphere of influence of the Portuguese—though at irregular intervals and to a very limited extent only—could not be disturbed. If the Portuguese claim to the southern and eastern shores of the bay was weak, the English claim was weaker still.

On the 24th of July 1875 Marshal Macmahon, president of the French republic, issued his award, which gave to Portugal the territory as far south as the parallel of latitude of  $26^{\circ} 30'$  from the ocean to the Lebombo mountains. That included the territory of Tembe, defined as bounded on the north by the Espirito Santo or English river and the Lourenço Marques, Dundas, or Umbelosi river, on the west by the Lebombo mountains, and on the south and the east by the river Maputa and the shore of Delagoa Bay. In it was also comprised the territory of the Maputa, between the Maputa river and the sea, including the Inyaka peninsula and the islands Inyaka and Elephant.

The Portuguese had been in possession of stations on the East African coast for more than three centuries and a half, and believed themselves entitled to the whole of the interior of the continent south of the Zambesi, yet so little did they know of even its geographical features that they were unacquainted with the course of the Limpopo river beyond a day's sail in boats above its mouth. As far as can be traced, not an individual of that nation had ever been upon its banks at any part where it is not navigable. In 1870 for the first time its whole course was traced from the junction of the Shashi to the sea.

On the 6th of July of that year, Captain Elton, of the London and Limpopo Mining Company, left the Tati with the object of ascertaining if a road could not be opened from that place to Delagoa Bay. He proceeded first in an east-south-easterly direction to the junction of the Shashi and the Limpopo, which he reached on the 30th. He had taken a boat with him, which he now launched on the main

stream, at this point nearly two hundred metres in width. On the 1st of August he commenced the descent of the river, and managed to continue on it for nearly a hundred miles or ■ hundred and sixty-one kilometres, though he met with several accidents caused by rapids. Then he reached a magnificent fall, at the margin of the plateau, where he narrowly escaped destruction, but managed to run the boat on shore in time.

From the falls the journey was necessarily continued on foot, but by dint of great exertion on his own part and on that of the men with him on the 29th of August the junction of the Lipalule and the Limpopo was reached, up to which point the river had been explored from its mouth by Mr. St. Vincent Erskine. At the junction of the Lipalule, Captain Elton left the Limpopo, and directed his course in a straight line to Lourenço Marques, where he took passage for Natal. From a commercial point of view his journey was a failure, but it resulted in ■ great improvement of the map of South Africa.

Various schemes for the construction of a railway between Lourenço Marques and the capital of the South African Republic had been projected before the publication of the award which secured the seaboard to Portugal, but all had fallen through. On the 11th of December 1875, less than five months after that event, a treaty was entered into between the governments of the two countries, which provided for the free interchange of the products of the soil and industry of the republic and the Portuguese possessions, for the importation free of customs duties through the port of Lourenço Marques of a great many articles destined for the republic and for the importation of all other articles thus destined upon payment of duty at the rate of three to six per cent of their value, as also for the construction of ■ railway from the harbour inland. Owing to political events in South Africa this treaty could not be carried into effect for some years, but it was revived and ratified again on the 7th of October 1882.

On the 14th of December 1883 the Portuguese government granted a concession for the construction of a railway about eighty-three kilometres in length, from Lourenço Marques to Komati Poort, on the western boundary. The subsidy offered was ample, still it was only in March 1887 that a company was formed in London to carry out the work. In November 1888 the line was opened to a point which was believed to be on the Portuguese boundary, though soon afterwards it was ascertained to be some distance short, and then, as it could not be completed within the stipulated time, the government took advantage of the opportunity and on the 24th of June 1889 confiscated the railway. This led to interference by Great Britain and the United States on behalf of the shareholders, but after much negotiation the Portuguese authorities retained the line, and the amount of compensation to be awarded to the company was referred for decision to three Swiss lawyers. These gentlemen did not issue their award until March 1900, when they adjudged the Portuguese government to pay £941,511, less than half of what the claimants considered themselves entitled to.

Meantime on the republican side a railway was being constructed from the Portuguese border at Komati Poort towards the heart of the country. In July 1895 this was completed and joined to the southern line through the Orange Free State and the Cape Colony, so that there is now unbroken communication between Capetown and Lourenço Marques. A large proportion of the commerce of the territory between the Vaal and the Limpopo finds its way to Delagoa Bay, and with the development of the gold fields during recent years, the traffic is as much as the line can carry.

Lourenço Marques has thus become a place of considerable importance. A town of some size has sprung up, and is rapidly growing, though the death rate is exceedingly high. It is believed, however, that with the drainage of a great marsh adjoining it the place will become less unhealthy. The means of landing and shipping goods with facility



are being provided, and a lighthouse at the entrance to the harbour has been built. The residents of the town are of various nationalities, a large proportion being English and Germans. There is no commerce of any consequence with the surrounding territory, which is, as of old, in possession of Bantu clans, the existence of Lourenço Marques as a town being due solely and entirely to the transit of merchandise and passengers between the shipping and the railway to the interior. Yet it is to-day much the most important place in the Portuguese possessions in South-Eastern Africa.

Next to it comes Beira, a town unknown a quarter of a century ago, and which sprang into being as the ocean terminus of a road from a settlement—not Portuguese—in the interior. Beira is at the mouth of the Pungwe river, not far north of Sofala. It has an excellent harbour, capacious, with good depth of water, and easy of access. The Arabs had once a small settlement there, but the Portuguese never occupied the place in olden times, and when the Asiatics retired, it fell into such decay that for more than three centuries it was almost forgotten.

Owing to negotiations with Germany and France relative to the partitioning of the continent, in 1887 Portugal advanced a claim to the whole territory between Angola and Mozambique down to the South African Republic, but Great Britain immediately announced that her sovereignty would not be recognised in places not occupied by a sufficient force to maintain order. There were no Portuguese at all at that time on the highlands north of the Limpopo, nor had a single individual of that nation, as far as is known, even visited the clans there within the preceding century. The Matabele chief Moselekatse had conquered the greater part of the country in 1838 and subsequent years, had slaughtered most of its inhabitants, and ruled over the others with a ferocity unknown except among African tribes. The border of the Matabele raids on one side was the border of the Matshangana raids on the other, and Lobengula, son and successor of Moselekatse, was the recognised lord of the

interior plateau from the Limpopo to the Zambesi, acknowledging or pretending to acknowledge no superior. Gungunyana, son of Umzila and grandson of Manikusa, was the real lord of nearly all the territory between the edge of the interior plateau and the sea, and though the Portuguese claimed him as a subject, he was to all intents and purposes independent of control.

This condition of things was indisputable, yet the intense jealousy of many Portuguese was aroused when early in 1888 an agreement was made by a British commissioner with Lobengula, in which that chief bound himself to refrain from entering into correspondence or concluding a treaty with any other state or power, and the territory governed by him was declared to be within the British sphere of influence. That they had never occupied the country, and never could occupy it, was not taken into consideration, it was the background of a line of coast which their navigators had first discovered and along which they had military and trading stations, and that was sufficient in their opinion to justify their claim to it.

Negotiations were opened between the governments of Great Britain and Portugal, but while they were proceeding subjects of both countries were busy securing rights from Bantu rulers. Two Portuguese — Colonel Joaquim Carlos Paiva d'Andrada and Lieutenant Cordon — with some black troops visited various petty chiefs, and induced them to accept flags and in some instances to allow a few of the so-called soldiers to be stationed at their kraals. At the same time several energetic Englishmen obtained from the Matabele chief various concessions, which were united in the hands of one strong company, to which on the 29th of October 1889 a royal charter was granted.

In August 1890 an agreement was entered into by the governments of Great Britain and Portugal, in which the eastern limits of the British South Africa Chartered Company's territory were defined, but it was not ratified by the cortes, though it served as a basis for a temporary under-

standing between all the parties whose interests or whose passions were involved. At this time a strong body of men, fitted out by the Chartered Company, was on the way from the Cape Colony to the northern territory, and on the 11th of September 1890 reached the site of the present town of Salisbury, where the British flag was formally hoisted and the country taken in possession in the name of the queen.

On the way up the pioneer expedition had constructed forts at Tuli, Victoria, and Charter. From Charter the company's administrator, Mr. Archibald Colquhoun, with Mr. Frederick Courteney Selous and a small escort, travelled eastward to the kraal of Umtasa, the principal chief of the Manika country. With this chief, on the 14th of September, an arrangement was made, by which he placed himself under the protection of the British South Africa Company, to whom he granted a concession of mineral and other rights in his country. He declared that he was not, and never had been, under subjection or vassalage to the Portuguese government, but that a trading station had with his consent been established by the Mozambique Company in 1888 at a place called Andrada in the Masikesi district, some thirty-two kilometres to the south-east, and he knew that an agent of this company—João de Rezende by name—was residing there. A policeman and a black interpreter were left with Umtasa to represent the British South Africa Company, and Mr. Colquhoun then rejoined the pioneers at Salisbury.

Mr. Selous rode over to Masikesi to visit the Portuguese station, and on the way met two officers with a party of black attendants, who were bearers of a protest against the arrangement just made with Umtasa, and who claimed a vast extent of territory to the westward as being in the dominions of their sovereign. In that territory not a single Portuguese was then resident, and there were not ten individuals of that nation in the whole of Manika.

That they had a special claim upon the allegiance of Umtasa, resting chiefly upon the position in which he stood to a man named Gouveia, was afterwards brought forward.

This Gouveia, or Manuel Antonio de Sousa as he was called by the Portuguese, was a native of Goa who had settled in Africa shortly after the middle of the century. He was a man of considerable force of character, and had performed services of great importance for the crown. Having obtained a prazo, he armed and trained his dependents upon it, and then acted like a powerful feudal lord in mediæval times in Europe, being in matters affecting his retainers and in disputes with his neighbours almost, if not quite, independent, though in everything else acknowledging the supremacy of the Portuguese government.

He went to the aid of the people of Sena, drove away their Matshangana oppressors, and released them from the ignominy of paying tribute. He recovered much of the territory that had formerly been prazos and that had been overrun by the subjects of Manikusa. Services so eminent were warmly acknowledged by the governor-general at Mozambique and by the authorities in Lisbon, and Gouveia was appointed chief captain of a great district and had the honorary title of colonel conferred upon him. For twenty years the body of men that he commanded, consisting entirely of his black dependents, was almost the only military force employed by the Portuguese in South-Eastern Africa at a distance from their stations. Under these circumstances war could not be conducted as if the combatants were European soldiers, and Gouveia's reputation among his neighbours was rather that of a daring and successful freebooter than of an official of a civilised government.

In 1873 the chief of the largest clan in Manika died, and there was a quarrel concerning the succession. One of the claimants was Umtasa, but he was defeated in battle and driven away. This was just such an opportunity as Gouveia was wont to take advantage of, so he went to the aid of Umtasa, whom he succeeded in establishing firmly in the chieftainship as a vassal of his own. At the same time, however, Umtasa necessarily became a dependent of Umzila,



who was paramount over all the Bantu in that region. Thus he had two overlords, which meant that two individuals more powerful than himself claimed and exercised the right of levying tribute from him and his people at any time. And as both of these overlords were regarded as Portuguese subjects, it followed that he also was in the same position.

In addition to this he had been invested with the office of chief by the commandant of Sena, and had received the appointment of sergeant-major of Manika. Further, in February 1888 Colonel D'Andrada had hoisted the Portuguese flag at his kraal, and had left the flag in his keeping. On all these grounds, the Portuguese authorities claimed Umtasa ■■■ subject and the district occupied by his people ■■ part of the dominions of their crown.

The British South Africa Company's officers, on the other hand, declined to take any notice of the Portuguese claim, because it was evident Umtasa himself did not recognise it, and because those who made it had no means of maintaining order or protecting life and property, the essential duties of sovereignty. They did not admit that Gouveia's followers constituted a force such as a civilised government had a right to employ.

In October a report reached Salisbury that Colonel D'Andrada and Gouveia with a band of followers were on the way from the east towards Umtasa's kraal. Mr. Colquhoun at once sent ■ few policemen to support the chief, and soon afterwards increased the number to thirty and directed Captain Patrick William Forbes to take command. Captain Forbes arrived at Umtasa's kraal on the 5th of November, and formed ■ temporary camp at a short distance from it. He then sent a messenger to Masikesi, where Colonel D'Andrada and Gouveia then were, with a protest against their proceeding farther with an armed force.

Colonel D'Andrada had no wish to precipitate matters. He was ■ highly educated and amiable man, who had resided ten or twelve years in South Africa, where he had held

various offices under the government, besides being the occupant of a prazo at the mouth of the Zambesi. He knew perfectly well that any force which he and Gouveia could bring into the field would be unable to meet the British South Africa Company's police in battle. Besides he was a director of the Mozambique Company, and his interests were all on the side of peace. But he was also a Portuguese colonel of artillery, and his pride and patriotism revolted against being turned away from a place that he had more than once visited before, and that he regarded as Portuguese territory. His ostensible mission was to open a road to the interior from the head navigable water of the Pungwe and to arrange matters in connection with the exploitation of some mines, in the interests of his company. He resolved therefore to proceed on his journey. On the 8th of November Gouveia arrived at Umtasa's kraal, and was followed shortly afterwards by Colonel D'Andrada and João de Rezende, when their whole following amounted to between two and three hundred men, including palanquin-bearers, carriers, and personal attendants.

Captain Forbes now resolved upon decisive action. On the 14th of November with twelve troopers of his police he entered Umtasa's kraal, and arrested Gouveia and the two Portuguese gentlemen, who had just retired from an interview with the chief. The blacks looked on with approbation, and were ready to assist if that had been necessary. Gouveia's men were encamped under some trees several hundred metres away, where they were surprised by the remainder of the British police, and were disarmed before they could make any arrangement for resistance. De Rezende was permitted to return to Masikesi, but Colonel D'Andrada and Gouveia were sent as prisoners to Salisbury, and left that place under escort for Capetown. At Tuli, on the way, they met Dr. L. S. Jameson going up to assume the administration of the British Chartered Company's territory, and by him were released from further restraint. From Capetown Gouveia proceeded to Mozambique by steamer, and Colonel

D'Andrada took passage to Portugal to lay the matter before his government.

After the arrest of their leader and the seizure of their arms, Gouveia's men fled homeward, and to prevent the Mozambique Company's trading station at Andrada in Masikesi from being plundered, Captain Forbes placed a temporary guard there. He then proceeded to visit various chiefs living between the Busi and Pungwe rivers, with whom he entered into friendly arrangements, his object being to secure a road to the coast at Beira, a place which the Mozambique Company had recently made use of ■ ■ harbour.

There was great excitement in Portugal when intelligence of the events at Umtasa's kraal reached that country. Bands of students pressed forward as volunteers to defend the honour of their flag, and were sent with all haste to Beira. It seemed as if the ancient spirit of the people of the little kingdom had revived, and that they were ready to proceed to the last extremity in an attempt to get nominal possession of a territory that could be of no use whatever to them. The government, however, was not so far carried away with the prevailing excitement ■ ■ to cease negotiations for ■ friendly settlement with the British authorities.

Upon the arrival of the first party of volunteers at Beira, they were sent forward with some negroes from Angola, under command of Major Cardas Xavier, to occupy Andrada. They arrived at that station on the 5th of May 1891. Not far distant was a camp of the British South Africa Company's police, fifty-three in number, commanded by Captain Heyman. On the 11th of May ■ Portuguese force, consisting of about a hundred Europeans and three or four hundred Angola blacks, was sent out to make a reconnaissance, and at two in the afternoon fell in with the English pickets, who retired upon the camp. The Portuguese followed, and an action was brought on, which resulted in their total defeat, with ■ heavy loss in killed and wounded. There were no casualties on the British side. Umtasa and his followers

watched the engagement from the top of a hill out of range of the shot, and expressed great satisfaction with the result, though probably they would have done the same if the position of the combatants had been reversed.

The whole Portuguese force now fled precipitately to the seacoast, abandoning Andrada, which the British Chartered Company's men occupied on the following day. They found there some stores, of which they took possession ■■ lawful spoil of war, but the most valuable part of the booty consisted of eleven machine guns that had been left behind.

Meantime the negotiations between the two governments in Europe had been brought nearly to ■ close, and when intelligence of the collision arrived, they were quickly completed. On the 11th of June 1891 a treaty ~~was~~ signed at Lisbon, in which the boundary between the British and Portuguese possessions south of the Zambesi was declared to be a line starting from ■ point opposite the mouth of the river Aroangwa or Loangwa, running directly southward ■■ far as the sixteenth parallel of south latitude, following that parallel to its intersection with the thirty-first degree of longitude east of Greenwich, thence running eastward direct to the point where the river Mazoe is intersected by the thirty-third degree of longitude east of Greenwich, following that degree southward to its intersection by the parallel of south latitude of  $18^{\circ} 30'$ , thence following the upper part of the eastern slope of the Manika plateau southward to the centre of the main channel of the Sabi, following that channel to its confluence with the Lunte, and thence striking direct to the north-eastern point of the frontier of the South African Republic. It was agreed that in tracing the frontier along the slope of the plateau, no territory west of longitude  $32^{\circ} 30'$  east of Greenwich should be comprised in the Portuguese sphere, and no territory east of longitude  $33^{\circ}$  east of Greenwich should be comprised in the British sphere, except that the line should, if necessary, be deflected so as to leave Umtasa's kraal in the British sphere and Masikesi in the Portuguese sphere.



The treaty provided further that in the event of either of the powers proposing to part with any territory south of the Zambesi assigned to its sphere of influence, the other should have a preferential right to the territory in question, or any portion of it, upon similar terms.

It provided for the transit of goods across the Portuguese territory during the following twenty-five years upon payment of a duty not exceeding three per cent of their value, for the free navigation of the Zambesi, for the construction of lines of telegraph, and for facilitating transit of persons and goods of every description over the waterways of the various rivers and over the landways which supply means of communication where the rivers are not navigable.

A very important clause provided for the immediate survey and speedy construction of a railroad between the British sphere of influence and the navigable water of the Pungwe river, and for encouraging commerce by that route.

And now, for the first time, the Portuguese territory in South Africa was properly defined on all sides, and was secured from invasion by tribes beyond its border. It contained as great an area as its owners could by any possibility make beneficial use of, and as many Bantu as they had sufficient power to control. It would not have been to their advantage if the boundary had been laid down farther westward. They could not colonise any of the land beyond it, and without colonisation on a large scale an addition of territory would have implied nothing more than additional expense and additional responsibility. Now, with ample scope for their commercial enterprise, with an assured revenue, and with two flourishing seaports — Lourenço Marques and Beira—in their possession, their prospects were brighter than ever before. This they owed to the settlement of other Europeans on the highlands away from the coast, and their pride, which was wounded by seeing the vast interior of the continent in other hands, might be soothed by the reflection. In accordance with the terms of the treaty, a railroad was constructed between Beira and

Salisbury, through Umtali, the British town nearest the border. The capital was furnished by the British South Africa and Mozambique companies, the former contributing rather more than the latter. Since it was opened for use a railway has been constructed from Salisbury to the border of the Cape Colony, where it joins the great northern line with branches from Capetown, Port Elizabeth, and East London, so that there is now unbroken communication between Beira and those places. Beira is built on a tongue of sand extending into the Pungwe river. The site is the healthiest on that part of the coast, but the flat country stretching away behind is a hotbed of fever. The town has advanced with rapid strides, and is now a place of considerable importance:

The whole of Portuguese South Africa between the Zambesi and Sabi rivers, except the district of which Tete is the centre, is now ruled by the Mozambique Company. This company was formed in 1888 as a mining corporation, the acquisition of the gold-fields of Manika being the inducement to the shareholders to subscribe the capital. On the 11th of February 1891, however, the company obtained a royal charter, which conferred upon it large administrative powers. The charter was followed on the 30th of July by a royal decree, and on the 28th of December of the same year by the publication of statutes, which documents combined form the present constitution. The company has a monopoly of all mineral and commercial rights, which it may lease in detail to associations or individuals, it is under an obligation to introduce a limited number of colonists, and it has taxing and governing powers subject to the supreme authorities at Lisbon.

The chief official of the Mozambique Company in the territory between the Zambesi and Sabi rivers has the title of governor, and resides at Beira. The country is divided into districts, over each of which a commissioner, subordinate to the governor, presides. The officers who administer justice are appointed by the supreme government, and are

not subject to the Chartered Company, but to the governor-general at Mozambique. There are courts at Beira, Sena, Andrada, Sofala, Tshiloane, Gouveia, and Tshupanga. Sena and Sofala have not recovered their old importance, small as that was, and are now insignificant places compared with Beira. Andrada and Tshiloane have been described. Gouveia and Tshupanga, recently the centres of prazos, can hardly yet be dignified with the name of hamlets. The last-named—Tshupanga—on the southern bank of the Zambesi, is well known to English readers as the burial place of Mrs. Livingstone, wife of the celebrated explorer, and of Mr. Kilpatrick, a member of the surveying expedition under Captain Owen. It is one of the most beautiful localities in a land that abounds with charming scenery, but the deadly fever must for ever prevent it from becoming a place of note.

The old system of giving out great tracts of country as prazos has been abolished, unless the whole territory be regarded as one great prazo in possession of the Chartered Mozambique Company. By that company unoccupied ground is now allotted for agricultural purposes on quit-rent tenure, but no area larger than five thousand English acres can be held by any individual or association. Occupation of ground and mining are open to people of all nationalities, upon condition of their submission to the laws of the country.

The tract of land between the Limpopo and Manisa rivers, from the inland border to the sea, is held by another company under a concession from the crown, dated 16th of November 1893, but nothing of consequence has yet been done to develop its resources.

Inhambane, the port of the territory between the Limpopo and the Sabi, has made some progress of late years, though as it is dependent upon trade with the Bantu only, it is far less important than either Lourenço Marques or Beira. The village consists of a church and a few houses and shops.

There remains the territory of which Tete is the seat of government, between the Zambesi and the Anglo-Portuguese border west of the Mozambique Company's district. Early in the nineteenth century the greater number of the prazos there were almost denuded of people, so many were sent away as slaves to Brazil. Washing for gold ceased, and the larger part of the territory reverted to the condition in which it was when white people first saw it. The village of Tete sank to be a mere depôt of the ivory trade.

Thus long before 1844 Portuguese influence had been declining, and in that year it was completely lost by the insurrection of a Goanese half-breed named Joaquim José da Cruz, commonly called Nyaude, who was the holder of an extensive prazo. This man armed and trained some four hundred black dependents, and then built a strong stockade at the confluence of the Luenya with the Zambesi, from which he exacted tribute upon all commerce passing up and down. Two of the neighbouring chiefs were induced by the authorities of Tete to attack him, but were repulsed, and their people were exterminated by him as a warning to others.

Nyaude then sent a division of his force, under his son Bonga, or as called by the Portuguese Antonio Vicente da Cruz, against Tete, when the village was plundered and most of the buildings burned. The church and a few houses were spared, and the fort, into which the inhabitants retired, was not taken. In the following year, 1854, two hundred men were sent from Lisbon to suppress the revolt, but after suffering from hunger, fever, and other forms of misery, they were defeated by Bonga, and those who remained alive were obliged to retreat.

In 1855 an amnesty was offered to Nyaude, but he declined to accept it, and continued his career of robbery. The unfortunate inhabitants of Tete were reduced to great distress, but nothing could be done to relieve them, and no shadow of Portuguese authority remained beyond the range of the guns of the fort.



A few years later Nyaude died, and was succeeded by his son Bonga. Efforts were made to conciliate the new chief, who was appointed sergeant-major of Masangano, but he would not desist from plundering far and near, nor submit to control of any kind. Early in 1867 he massacred a number of people, and then a force eight hundred strong was raised at Mozambique and sent against him. On the 6th of August this force, when close to the stockade, was attacked by the robber captain, and was defeated with great slaughter. Two other expeditions sent against him in the same year also failed.

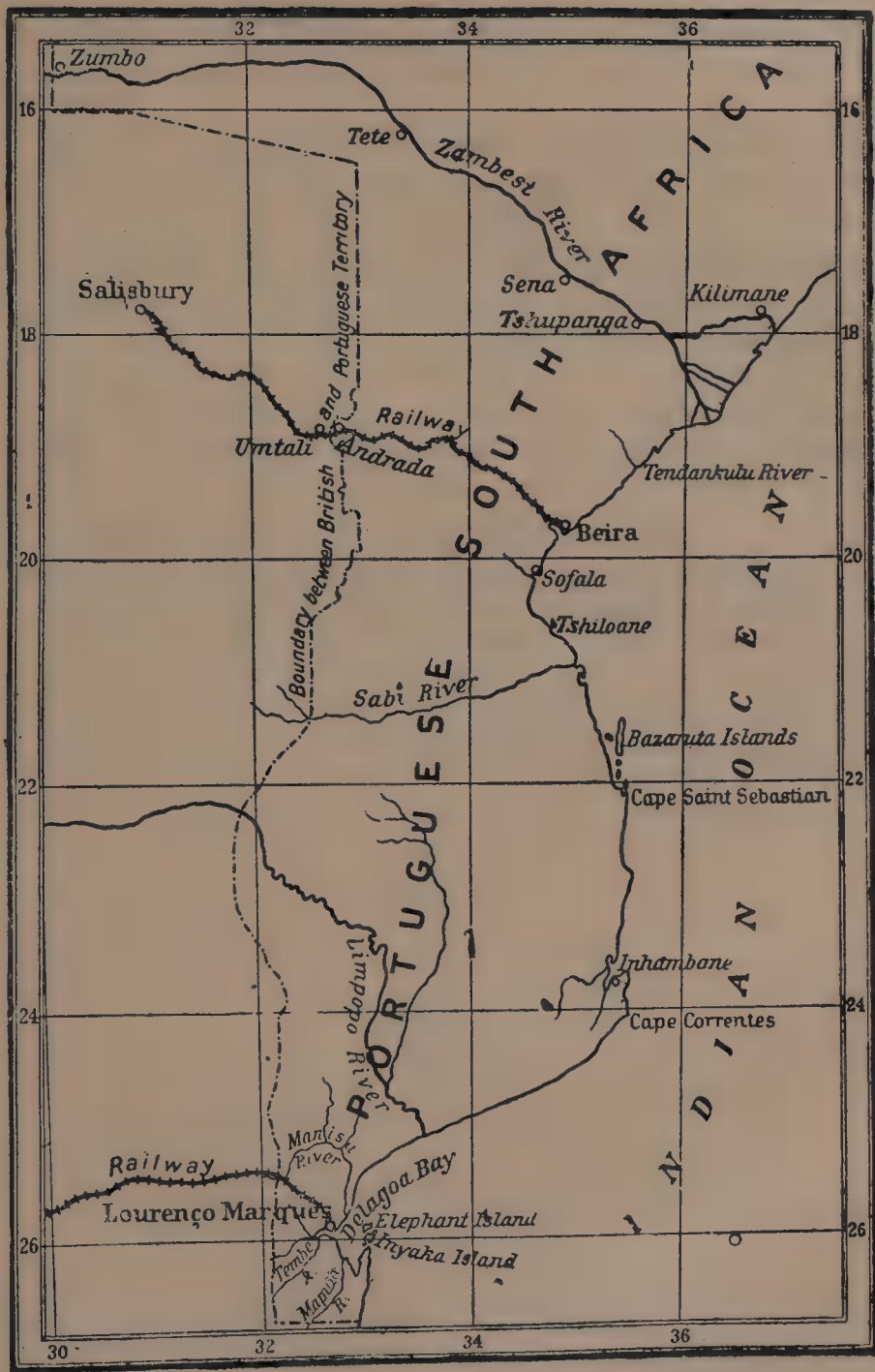
In 1869 Portugal made another effort to recover her authority. A hundred artillerymen and four hundred fusileers, well equipped with war material, were sent from Lisbon, and were joined by three hundred and fifty soldiers from Goa and as many Africans as could be enlisted and armed along the Zambesi. But the campaign was so badly conducted that the men were suffering from want of food before they reached the scene of action, and the military movements were carried on with the utmost vacillation and want of skill. Bonga's stockade was bombarded with artillery for three days without a breach being effected, and the army was so unskillfully distributed that the best section of it was surprised and annihilated by the rebel. The failure of the expedition was complete, and those who escaped slaughter were few.

From that time until 1888 Bonga's power — the power of an audacious and merciless ruffian — was supreme. Then Gouveia took the matter in hand, and not the least of the services which he performed for his government was the capture of the stockade and the destruction or dispersion of the robber band. Arrangements with various chiefs along the river followed, and Portuguese influence was again restored.

Tete has been rebuilt, and now contains the church which was spared when the village was plundered by Bonga and from twenty to thirty stone houses of European pattern,

roofed with red tiles. It is protected by a small garrison of black troops with white officers, who occupy a quadrangular fort overlooking the river. The European residents, officials included, do not number more than twenty-five or thirty, for the commerce of the place is small. A Bantu town of ordinary huts stands close behind the European quarter. The government of Tete, as of all the Portuguese stations in South Africa except those under the administration of the Chartered Company, is military in form, and subordinate to the general authority at Mozambique. The Jesuits have recently established a mission among the Bantu here, and also at ■ station a few kilometres distant. There are extensive coal fields in the neighbourhood, and it is possible that, owing to them, the village may some day become a thriving place.

Throughout the whole territory from the Zambesi to Lourenço Marques difficulties in controlling the Bantu have been experienced, but Portugal has opened her eyes to the fact that it is necessary to employ other and better forces than convicts and uncivilised negroes, and she has succeeded in establishing her authority fairly well. In a war with a chief named Makombi in 1892 Gouveia lost his life, but his opponents were subsequently vanquished. Then Umdungazwe, or Gungunyana as called by the Portuguese, son and successor of Umzila, gave a great deal of trouble. He assumed an attitude of independence, and demanded that tribute should be paid to him by the Portuguese. This led to war in 1894, but after several engagements in which his army was defeated, on the 28th of December 1895 he was surprised by Captain Mousinho d'Albuquerque at Tshaimite while sacrificing to the spirit of his grandfather Manikusa, and was made a prisoner. Captain D'Albuquerque had made a very daring march with only fifty Portuguese soldiers from the camp Languene on the Limpopo, and had been joined on the way by a couple of thousand blacks who were enemies of the Matshangana. The surprise was so complete that no resistance was offered. Gungunyana was







taken to Lourenço Marques, and sent thence in a steamship \* to Lisbon, where he was confined in a fort. Since that event the peace of the country has not been seriously disturbed.

Lines of English and German steamships connect the various harbours with Europe by way of the Red sea, and with the British settlements of Natal and the Cape Colony. The commerce of the territory has made rapid progress. Unfortunately a large proportion of it is in the hands of Indian traders, a class of people who do not contribute to the strength of the country, nor improve it in any way. But in all other respects the prospects of Portuguese South Africa seem brighter now at the close of the nineteenth century than at any previous time since Pedro d'Anaya built the first fort on the river bank of Sofala.

\* She put into Table Bay on the passage, where through the courtesy of her officers the author of this volume was accorded an interview of some length with the prisoner, and learnt from him many particulars concerning the history of his tribe. He and his family were exceedingly well treated on board the *Africa*. After a short confinement in Portugal Gungunyana was sent to one of the possessions on the west coast, where he was set at large, and where he remained till his death in December 1906.



## SYNOPTICAL INDEX.

### ABANDONMENT

by the Cape colonial government in 1864 of territory east of the Kei river, by order of the secretary of state for the colonies, *iv* 302

### ABANDONMENT OF ■■■ ORANGE RIVER SOVEREIGNTY BY GREAT BRITAIN IN 1854:

particulars concerning, *iii* 349 *et seq.*

### ABASEKUNENE, BANTU TRIBE:

mention of, *ii* 110

### ABATETWA, BANTU TRIBE: see Dingiswayo

### ABEONA, THE:

is conveying passengers to South Africa when she is destroyed by fire and many lives are lost, *i* 358

### ABERCROMBIE ROBINSON, BRITISH TRANSPORT:

on the 28th of August 1842 is wrecked in Table Bay, *ii* 229

### ABERDEEN, EARL OF:

from December 1834 to April 1835 is secretary of state for the colonies, *ii* 141

### ABRAHAM KOK: see Kok

### ABRAHAM ZWARTBOOI: ■■■ Zwartbooi

### ADAM KOK: see Kok

### ADAMS, DR., OF THE AMERICAN BOARD:

in February 1836 assists in founding the first mission station in Natal, *ii* 348; in April 1838 is obliged to abandon that country to save his life, *ii* 374; in June 1839 returns and resumes work at the Umlazi station, *ii* 399; endeavours to introduce cotton planting in Natal, *iii* 259

### ADAMSON, REV. DR. JAMES:

in November 1827 arrives in South Africa as minister of the Scotch church in Capetown, *ii* 17; in July 1875 dies

**ADDERLEY, RIGHT HON. C. B., A MEMBER OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS:**

aids the Cape colonists in the struggle against the introduction of convicts, *iii* 82; on the 9th of May 1854 endeavours in vain to induce the house of commons to prevent the abandonment of the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 369

**ADDERLEY STREET, CAPETOWN:**

is the old Heeregracht renamed, *iii* 83

**ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

particulars concerning, *i* 319

**ADMINISTRATION OF THE EARLY GOVERNMENT OF NATAL:**

simplicity of the, *iii* 230

**AFRICAINNE, FRIGATE:**

gallant defence of the, *i* 243

**AFRIKANER, HOTTENTOT CAPTAIN:**

in 1793 drifts into war with all his neighbours, *i* 65; and at length becomes the leader of a formidable band of robbers, whose strongholds are on islands in the Orange river, *ib.*; in 1799 expeditions are sent against him without success, *i* 66; in 1800 he declines an offer of pardon by the governor on condition of living honestly in future, *ib.*; in 1802 is unsuccessfully attacked by ■ party under Adam Kok, *i* 102; but after this date confines his attacks chiefly to people beyond the colonial border, *i* 66; in his old age he leads a reformed life, but his son Jonker continues the career of ■ marauder, *ii* 26

**AGENT FOR THE CAPE COLONY IN ENGLAND:**

particulars concerning, *ii* 46

**AGRICULTURAL DEPARTMENT OF THE CAPE GOVERNMENT:**

in September 1800 is established, *i* 74; but is ■ failure, *i* 78

**AGRICULTURE:**

extent of ground used for in 1865 in the Cape Colony, *iv* 43

**ALBANIA, OR THE DISTRICT BETWEEN THE ORANGE RIVER AND THE VETBERG LINE:**

from 1855 to 1871 is under the government of the Griqua captain Nicholas Waterboer, *iv* 336; before 1870 is partly occupied by Europeans, *iv* 337



**ALBANY, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in January 1814 the tract of land previously called the Zuurveld is named Albany, *i* 266; in October 1820 it is formed into a district with its own landdrost, to have effect from May 1821, *i* 359; condition in 1834 of, *ii* 83

**ALBANY LEVY:**

in April 1823 the force so called is organised, *i* 385; in March 1825 is disbanded, *ii* 85

**ALBASINI, JOÃO, A RESIDENT IN THE ZOUTPANSBERG DISTRICT OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 477; is regarded by the refugee Magwamba in the district of Zoutpansberg as their head, *iv* 476; is vice consul for Portugal, and superintendent of all the blacks in the district of Zoutpansberg under the government of the South African Republic, *iv* 477; in 1864 gives protection to the fugitive chief Tabana, *iv* 478; gives ■ location to the refugee chief Umzila, *iv* 479; in 1864 refuses to appear before the landdrost's court at Schoemansdal to answer a charge brought against him by a turbulent refugee named Monene, *iv* 480; upon Monene's subsequently being placed in custody for committing an offence, and making his escape, sends in pursuit of the fugitive ■ party of Knobnoses who commit great atrocities, *iv* 481; is dismissed from the service of the South African Republic, *iv* 489

**ALBERT, DIVISION IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in January 1848 is created, *iii* 70

**ALBERTI, CAPTAIN LODEWYK:**

in April 1804 is appointed acting landdrost of Uitenhage, *i* 151; in April 1806 is succeeded by Captain Jacob Glen Cuyler, *i* 212

**ALBERTYN, REV. P. K.:**

in August 1844 becomes the first resident clergyman of Prince Albert, *ii* 220; at the end of 1847 goes on ■ mission to the emigrants north of the Orange, *iii* 296

**ALBINOS AMONG BANTU:**

mention of, *ii* 278

**D'ALBUQUERQUE, CAPTAIN MOUSINHO, PORTUGUESE OFFICER:**

in December 1895 by ■ daring march captures the rebel chieft Gungunyana, *v* 166

**ALEXANDER, HENRY:**

in November 1808 becomes colonial secretary, *i* 271; in May 1818 dies, *i* 413

## ALEXANDER, CAPTAIN JAMES EDWARD:

in 1837 sends some specimens of copper ore from Little Namaqualand to Capetown, *iii* 84

## ALEXANDRIA, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in January 1856 is created, *iii* 148

## ALFRED COUNTY:

in 1865 is annexed to Natal, *iv* 166; on the 1st of January 1866 the British flag is formally hoisted, *iii* 239

## ALGOA BAY:

account of shipwrecks in October 1859 and September 1869 at, *iv* 105; failure of efforts to improve the port, *iii* 169; see Port Elizabeth

## ALICE, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in January 1847 receives its name, *iii* 43; previous owners of the ground on which it is built, *ib.*; in December 1847 is made the seat of magistracy of Victoria East, *iii* 67

## ALING, REV. R. A.:

in May 1800 dies, *i* 104

## ALIWAL NORTH, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in May 1849 is founded, *iii* 70

## ALIWAL NORTH, DISTRICT OF:

in July 1855 is created, *iii* 148

## ALIWAL NORTH:

treaties of: see Treaties

## AMABACA, BANTU TRIBE: see Baca

## AMABELE, BANTU TRIBE:

mention of, *ii* 110

## AMAHLUBI, BANTU TRIBE:

particulars concerning, *i* 439; genealogical table of the chiefs, *i* 440; see Bangazita, Fingos, Langalibalele, Ludidi, and Zibi

## AMAKWABI, BANTU TRIBE:

career of, *i* 451

## AMAMPONDO, BANTU TRIBE: see Pondo

## AMAMPONDOMSI, BANTU TRIBE: ■■■ Pondomsi

## AMANGWANE, BANTU TRIBE:

career of the, *i* 439; see Matiwane

## |AMAQUA TRIBE OF HOTTENTOTS:

particulars concerning, *v* 95

AMASWAZI, BANTU TRIBE: see Swazis

AMATOLA MOUNTAINS:

description of the country along the, *ii* 106

AMATULI, BANTU TRIBE:

■ wretched remnant is found at Port Natal in 1824 by some Englishmen who settle there, *ii* 327

AMAZIZI, BANTU TRIBE:

mention of, *ii* 110

AMAZULU, BANTU TRIBE: see Dingana, Ketshwayo, Panda, and Tshaka

AMERICAN BOARD OF FOREIGN MISSIONS:

particulars concerning, *iii* 233

AMERICAN MISSIONARIES:

in 1835 arrive in South Africa, *ii* 348; particulars concerning their work in Natal, *ii* 461; see Adams, Champion, Grout, Lindley, Venable, and Wilson

AMRAAL, CHIEF OF THE GEI||KHAUAS, HOTTENTOT TRIBE IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:

in 1865 dies, *v* 94

AMSTERDAM, DUTCH SHIP-OF-WAR:

on the 16th of December 1817 is run ashore in Algoa Bay, *i* 283

AMSTERDAM FLATS, ON THE BORDER OF ALGOA BAY:

are named after ■ Dutch ship-of-war run ashore there, *i* 284

ANDERSON, REV. WILLIAM:

is the first missionary to the Griquas, *i* 100; labours devotedly among them, *i* 186; on account of dissensions among these people in 1820 he is obliged to leave them, *ii* 473; on the 24th of September 1852 dies at Pacaltsdorp, *ib.*

ANDERSSON, CHARLES J., SWEDISH NATURALIST AND EXPLORER:

assists the Hereros in their war of independence, and is severely wounded, *v* 98

D'ANDRADA, COLONEL JOAQUIM CARLOS PAIVA, PORTUGUESE OFFICER IN MANIKA:

transactions in 1890 of, *v* 154, 157, and 158

D'ANDRADA, ONOFRE LOURENÇO, CAPTAIN OF THE PORTUGUESE FORT AT LOURENÇO MARQUES:

in 1862 assists Umzila against his rival and in return obtains a cession of territory, *v* 147

ANDREWS, ARTHUR THOMAS:

is the first resident engineer of the Table Bay harbour works, *iii* 168

ANDRIES LAMBERT, CHIEF OF THE GEI||KHAUAS, HOTTENTOT CAPTAIN IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND :

particulars concerning, *v* 94, 102, and 112

VAN ANDRINGA, WATSE SIBIUS :

in July 1812 becomes landdrost of Stellenbosch, *i* 271

ANGLOMAN FACTION IN CAPETOWN IN 1803 :

particulars concerning, *i* 120

ANGONI, BANTU HORDE :

career of the, *i* 439 and *v* 137

ANGORA GOATS :

particulars concerning the introduction into South Africa of, *ii* 41 and *iv* 12

ANGRA PEQUENA, INLET ON THE COAST OF GREAT NAMAQUALAND :

in December 1795 is taken possession of for Great Britain, *i* 25

ANNEXATION OF BRITISH KAFFRARIA TO THE CAPE COLONY :

particulars concerning, *iv* 23 to 26, 28, 37, and 70 to 75

ANNEXATION OF THE DIAMOND FIELDS TO THE BRITISH DOMINIONS :

effect upon the blacks of, *iv* 397

ANNIVERSARY OF THE ARRIVAL OF THE BRITISH SETTLERS :

in May 1870 the fiftieth is celebrated in Grahamstown, *iv* 110

ANTA, MINOR SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF GAIKA :

upon the death without heirs of Ntimbo, right-hand son of Umlawu, is chosen to be his successor, *ii* 51; takes part against the Cape Colony in the sixth Kaffir war, but on the 17th of September 1835 agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 125; on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance to the queen by the Stockenstrom treaties, *ii* 150; on the 2nd of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 187; in April 1846 assists in an invasion of the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; ■ few months later professes a desire for peace and is permitted to settle on the eastern bank of the Keiskama, *iii* 36; in August 1847 joins Sandile in resuming hostilities, *iii* 51; but on the 19th of October is obliged to surrender, when he is sent to Grahamstown a prisoner, *iii* 52; in December he is released by Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 57; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has a tract of land in British Kaffraria assigned to him, *iii* 61; on the 20th of December 1850 on account of his defiant conduct is proclaimed ■■ outlaw, *iii* 94; takes part against the colony in the war of 1850-52, *iii* 100;



on the 9th of March 1853 agrees to the terms of peace imposed upon him, *iii* 114; declines at first to kill his cattle at the bidding of Umhlakaza, *iii* 200; career of from 1857 to the forfeiture of his location and the removal of his retainers to the territory beyond the Kei, *iii* 211; further mention of, *iv* 52

ANTHING, LOUIS :

is sent by the Cape government as a special commissioner to the territory along the Hartebest river, *iv* 30; in April 1863 sends in a report dealing with the Bushmen, *iv* 31

ANTI-CONVICT PLEDGE :

wording as first proposed, *iii* 76; wording as finally adopted, *iii* 77

APONDA, CHIEF OF THE OVAMBANDERU, BANTU CLANS IN HEREROLAND :  
mention of, *v* 102 and 105

APPEALS IN CRIMINAL CASES BEFORE THE ESTABLISHMENT OF ▲  
SUPREME COURT IN THE CAPE COLONY :  
particulars concerning, *i* 219

APPRENTICESHIP OF BLACK CHILDREN IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC :  
particulars concerning, *iii* 439, and *iv* 464

ARABS IN EAST AFRICA :  
mention of, *i* 460

ARBITRATION IN 1872-5 BETWEEN GREAT BRITAIN AND PORTUGAL  
CONCERNING THE OWNERSHIP OF DELAGOA BAY :  
account of, *v* 149 and 150

ARBOUSSET, REV. THOMAS, OF THE PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY :  
in June 1833 with his colleagues founds the mission station Morija in Basutoland, *i* 469; suffers severely in the war of 1858 between the Orange Free State and the Basuto, *iii* 479

ARCHBELL, REV. MR. :  
in 1836 is Wesleyan missionary at Thaba Ntshu, and renders important service to the emigrant farmers, *ii* 294; in June 1842 is a missionary in Durban, Natal, and conveys a flag of truce from Commandant-General Pretorius to Captain Smith, *ii* 426

ARKCOLL, CHARLES :  
in October 1851 is appointed a member of the legislative council of the Cape Colony, *iii* 128

ARMSTRONG, A BRITISH SETTLER :  
on the 21st of April 1835 when on military service beyond the Kei is killed by some Galekas, *ii* 111

**ARMSTRONG, CAPTAIN :**

at the commencement of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 induces the Hottentots at the Kat river to espouse the colonial side, *ii* 97; (Major) in April 1839 commands a division of the force sent against the emigrant Tembu chief Mapasa, *ii* 185

**ARMSTRONG, THE RIGHT REVEREND DR. JOHN :**

in November 1853 is created first English bishop of Grahamstown, *iii* 144; on the 16th of May 1856 dies, *ib.*

**ARNISTON, ENGLISH TRANSPORT :**

on the 30th of May 1815 is wrecked on the South African coast, when three hundred and seventy-two lives are lost, *i* 283

**ARNOLD, E. :**

in June 1823 becomes teacher of the high school at Swellendam, *i* 372

**ARNOT, DAVID, AGENT AND CHIEF ADVISER OF THE GRIQUA CAPTAIN NICHOLAS WATERBOER :**

lays claim to the district of Campbell west of the Vaal river, *iv* 213 and 337; also to the territory east of the Vaal as far ■ a line from Ramah on the Orange *via* David's Graf to Platberg, *iv* 214; also to ■ large tract of land between the Vaal and Hart rivers, *iv* 346; in May 1869 at a meeting with a Free State commission at Swinkspan repudiates the Vetberg line, *iv* 338; in August 1870 conducts the case against the Orange Free State at the Nooitgedacht conference, *iv* 342; in April to June 1871 conducts the case for his client against the South African Republic before the arbitration court at Bloemhof in a most skilful manner, *v* 40 *et seq.*; in 1864 acts as agent for the Batlapin, *v* 25; and in 1869, *v* 26; in 1873 is elected representative of Hay in the legislative council of Griqualand West, *iv* 410; claims extensive tracts of land as private property granted to him by Nicholas Waterboer, *iv* 418 and 419; is the most advanced imperialist in South Africa, *iv* 422; further mention of, *v* 70

**ARRANGEMENTS :**

for the protection of the eastern border of the Cape Colony made in 1817 by Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 325

**ARROWROOT :**

cultivation of in Natal, *iii* 261; see Exports, *iii* 265

**ASPELING, JAN GUSTAF :**

in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Uitenhage, *i* 493

ASSOCIATIONS OF VARIOUS KINDS IN NATAL:

account of, *iii* 262

ASTRONOMICAL OBSERVATORY:

in 1821 is established near Capetown, *i* 365

ATHENS, UNION COMPANY'S STEAMER:

on the 17th of May 1865 is lost in Table Bay with all on board,  
*iv* 77 and 78

AUCKLAND, MILITARY VILLAGE IN THE TYUMIE VALLEY, CAPE COLONY:

in January 1848 is founded, *iii* 68; on Christmas 1850 is destroyed  
by the Kaffirs, and its male occupants are murdered, *iii* 97

AUCTION DUTY:

particulars concerning, *i* 3

AUSTEN, JOHN:

in May 1870 is appointed magistrate of the southern district of  
Basutoland, *v* 61

AUSTRALIAN GOLD DIGGERS:

in 1869 arrive in Natal, *v* 9

AYLIFF, REV. JOHN, WESLEYAN MISSIONARY:

shortly after the commencement of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 retires  
from his station Butterworth to Clarkebury, where he is pro-  
tected by the Tembu regent Vadana, *ii* 109; in April 1835  
he leaves Clarkebury with a patrol sent to rescue the Europeans  
there, and moves with a body of Fingos to the district between  
the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ii* 111 and 113; after the con-  
clusion of peace he remains at Fort Peddie a missionary with  
the Fingos, *ii* 131

AYLIFF, JAMES:

in January 1872 visits Nomansland on a commission, *iv* 68 and  
69

BAATJE, CAROLUS, CAPTAIN OF A CLAN OF HALF-BREEDS:

in December 1833 with his people is induced by Wesleyan mis-  
sionaries to settle at Platberg on the Caledon, *i* 481; complains  
of the injustice done to him by the treaty of 1843 between Sir  
George Napier and the Basuto chief Moshesh, *ii* 483; in June  
1846 assists Major Warden to disperse the adherents of Jan  
Kock, *ii* 500; in September 1850 assists the government of  
the Orange River Sovereignty against the Basuto, and by doing  
so brings much trouble upon his clan, *iii* 315

BACAS, REMNANT OF A BANTU TRIBE:

account of the, *iv* 63; ~~see~~ Ncapayi

**BADENHORST, L. :**

in June 1838 is appointed landdrost of Port Natal, but only holds the office a few weeks, *ii* 377

**BAFOKENG, BANTU TRIBE :**

mention of, *i* 429 and 447

**BAHURUTSI, BANTU TRIBE :**

mention of, *i* 432, 467, and 475

**BAILEY, DR. SAMUEL :**

in 1817 founds the old Somerset hospital in Capetown, *i* 365

**BAILIE, CHARLES :**

on the 27th of June 1835 is killed near Pirie mission station, *ii* 121

**BAILIE, JOHN :**

in 1820 brings a party of British settlers to the Cape Colony, *i* 351; particulars concerning his after life, *ii* 122

**BAIN, ANDREW GEDDES :**

in 1826 visits the country of the Betshuana, *i* 474 and 476; after the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is for a short time owner of the site of the present village of Alice, *iii* 43; in 1835 explores the territory along the upper Limpopo, and is pillaged by the Matabele, *ii* 287; superintends the making of the queen's road between Grahamstown and Fort Beaufort in the Cape province, *ii* 198

**BAIN, ANDREW HUDSON :**

on the 29th of December 1851 becomes a member of the legislative council of the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 313

**BAIN'S KLOOF :**

in September 1853 ■ good road is opened through this kloof in the Drakenstein mountains, *iii* 144

**BAINES, THOMAS, ARTIST AND EXPLORER :**

is for some time engaged as ■■ agent for ■ gold mining company, *v* 11; on the 8th of May 1875 dies at Durban, *v* 12

**BAIRD, MAJOR-GENERAL DAVID :**

after serving some time in South Africa, in November 1798 proceeds from the Cape to India, *i* 46; war having been renewed in 1803 between Great Britain and the Batavian Republic, in 1805 he is sent with a strong army to seize the Cape Colony, *i* 192; previous services of this officer, *ib.*; on the 4th of January 1806 he arrives at the entrance to Table Bay, *i* 194; ■ the 6th and 7th lands his army on the coast opposite



Robben Island, *i* 195; on the 8th meets and repels the Dutch force under General Janssens, *i* 197; on the 10th receives possession of Capetown by capitulation, *i* 201; on the 18th arranges with General Janssens for the capitulation of the remnant of the Dutch army, *i* 204; from the date of the surrender of Capetown to the 17th of January 1807 is acting governor of the Cape Colony, *i* 209; on the 18th of January 1807 embarks for England, *i* 218

**BAKALAHARI, BANTU WHOSE HOME ■ IN THE KALAHARI DESERT:**  
mention of, *i* 432

**BAKOLOKWE CLAN OF BANTU:**  
history of, *iii* 450; see Witsi

**BAKWENA, BANTU TRIBE:**  
account of, *i* 432, 467, 475, and 476; *v* 83 and 84; ■ Setsheli

**BALALA, REMNANTS OF BANTU TRIBES LIVING IN A SERVILE CONDITION AMONG THE BETSHUANA:**  
mention of, *i* 432

**BALFOUR, HAMLET ON THE KAT RIVER IN ■ CAPE PROVINCE:**  
in March 1828 receives its name, *ii* 10

**BALLOT, REV. H. W.:**  
in August 1797 arrives in South Africa, and in February 1798 becomes clergyman of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 41; in April 1802 is transferred to Swellendam, *i* 104; in May 1803 is transferred to Tulbagh, *i* 155; in January 1814 dies, *i* 269

**BALLOT, REV. J. S. S.:**  
on the 31st of May 1827 is appointed clergyman of George

**BAMANGWATO, BANTU TRIBE:**  
history of the, *v* 13 to 15 and 84 and ■

**BAMONAHENG, BANTU TRIBE:**  
mention of, *i* 429

**BAMORARA, BANTU TRIBE:**  
mention of, *i* 430

**BANGWAKETSE, BANTU TRIBE:**  
in 1808 is first visited by Europeans, *i* 228; account of the tribe, *i* 473 and *v* 82 and 83; see Makaba

**BANK OF DISCOUNT:**  
in 1808 is established in Capetown, *i* 245

**BANK NOTES DUTY:**  
in 1864 is first imposed in the Cape Colony, *iv* 35

**BANKS:**

number of in the Cape Colony in 1854, *iii* 144

**BANKS IN NATAL:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 171

**BANTU IN SOUTH AFRICA:**

enumeration of the coast tribes at the beginning of the nineteenth century, *i* 428; enumeration of the mountain tribes or those living along the western side of the Kathlamba at the beginning of the nineteenth century, *i* 429; account of intertribal wars originating with the Zulu chief Tshaka, *i* 439 *et seq.*; mode of formation of various tribes, *i* 460; method of expansion of the Bantu in Africa, *i* 488; enlargement during the wars of Tshaka of the area occupied by the Bantu, *i* 487 and 488; particulars concerning these people, *i* 457 *et seq.*; their constant extension southward, *ii* 128; condition of those in Natal in 1837, *ii* 350; classification of those in Natal, *iii* 229; instances of superstition of, *iii* 242, 416, and 479, and *iv* 252; description of a wedding feast, *iii* 242; condition of those in Natal before 1849, *iii* 233; and after that date, *iii* 234; influx of Bantu refugees into Natal, *iii* 235; estimate of their number in Natal in 1857, *iii* 246; impossibility of obtaining constant or reliable labourers from the Bantu in Natal, *iii* 260 and 261; causes of discontent among those north of the Vaal in 1850-60, *iii* 405; condition of the tribes between the Limpopo and the Zambesi in 1854, *iii* 411; number in the Cape Colony in 1865, *iv* 42; characteristics of, *iv* 51; particulars concerning those in Natal, *iv* 166 *et seq.*; laws of the South African Republic concerning, *iv* 455; land is held by them in the South African Republic on the tenure of quitrent farms, *iv* 474; in 1870 they are first required to pay taxes in money in the South African Republic, *iv* 500; they use iron extensively, *v* 2; instances of their religious belief, *v* 7, 58, and 166; under extreme circumstances they practise cannibalism, *iv* 309; custom on the death of a great chief, *v* 64; other customs of, *v* 76 and 77; views regarding truth, *v* 59; normal condition of those in a state of independence, *iv* 64 and 69

**BAPATSA, BANTU TRIBE:**

mention of, *i* 430, 442, and 445; see Sebetoane

**BAPEDI, BANTU TRIBE:**

history of the, *ii* 505; ■■■ Sekwati

**BAPTISTA, PEDRO JOÃO, A BLACK TRADER:**

in 1806-11 crosses the African continent from Angola to Tete,  
v 144

**BAPUTI TRIBE:**

account of the, i 429 and 464; see Mokuane and Morosi

**BARAMOKHELE, BANTU TRIBE:**

mention of, i 429

**BAREND BARENDS, CAPTAIN OF A ROVING BAND OF MIXED HALF-BREEDS  
AND HOTTENTOTS:**

in 1803 is induced by missionaries of the London society to settle in the country near the junction of the Vaal and Orange rivers, i 271; in 1820 moves away from Griquatown and sets up an independent government at Daniel's Kuil, ii 473; subsequently moves to Boetsap and settles there, *ib.*; in June 1823 assists to defeat the Mantati horde, i 444; in July 1831 loses nearly the whole of his fighting men in a marauding expedition against the Matabele, i 482; after this moves to Namaqualand, but two years later returns to Boetsap, i 482; particulars concerning him until his death, v 24; he is succeeded as head of the clan by Peter Davids, i 481

**BARKLY, SIR HENRY:**

■ the 31st of December 1870 arrives in South Africa and assumes duty as governor of the Cape Colony and her Majesty's high commissioner, v 65; situations previously held by, iv 114; proceeds on a tour of inquiry, and on the 26th of February arrives at Klipdrift, where he has ■ conference with President Pretorius, Nicholas Waterboer, and various Barolong and Batlapin chiefs, v 39; arranges for the disputes between them to be submitted to ■ court of arbitration, *ib.*; obtains the consent of President Pretorius to ■ joint government of the diamond-fields on the northern bank of the Vaal until the decision of the court of arbitration is made known, *ib.*; in March 1871 visits Bloemfontein, and endeavours, but in vain, to induce the Free State government to come to an arrangement concerning the diamond-fields south of the Vaal similar to that made with President Pretorius, iv 362; in the same tour visits also Basutoland and the eastern province of the Cape Colony, iv 114; on the 16th of March 1871 has a conference with Letsie and other Basuto chiefs at Maseru, v 65; the chiefs profess to be thoroughly loyal, and the governor credits their statements, *ib.*; as the Free State government calls out a commando to support its courts of law, he orders the colonial police to assemble at Hopetown,

sends a troop to Klipdrift, and announces that he will protect her Majesty's subjects from all interference by the Free State authorities, *iv* 363; rejects the proposal of the Free State government to submit to the decision of the head of a foreign power its right to territory transferred to it by Sir George Clerk, *iv* 364; on the 27th of April 1871 he opens the Cape parliament with a speech in favour of responsible government and federation, *iv* 115; by instructions from the secretary of state, in May 1871 submits to the Cape parliament a bill for the annexation of Basutoland, *v* 66; which is passed by both houses in August, and is carried into effect, *v* 68; endeavours to obtain the consent of the Cape parliament to the annexation of the diamond-fields, *iv* 367; but does not succeed in the attempt, *iv* 370; gets a resolution carried authorising him to maintain order among the diggers and collect revenue pending the adjustment of the boundary dispute, *iv* 371; upon the repudiation of the Keate award by the government of the South African Republic, announces that he will maintain it, *v* 49; on the 27th of October 1871 issues a series of proclamations declaring the whole of the territory claimed by Mr. Arnot for Nicholas Waterboer, and containing the principal diamond-fields, part of the British dominions, and providing for its government, *iv* 372; deals unceremoniously with the Orange Free State, *iv* 414 and 416

**BARKLY WEST, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in July 1873 receives its present name, *iv* 409

**BARNABAS, SUCCESSOR OF CORNELIS OASIB, CHIEF OF THE RED NATION,  
HOTTENTOT TRIBE IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:**

mention of, *v* 102 and 112

**BARNARD, ANDREW:**

in 1797 becomes colonial secretary, and remains in Capetown in that capacity until 1803, when the country is restored to the Batavian Republic, *i* 28 *et seq.*; upon the second conquest of the Cape Colony by Great Britain is restored to his former office, *i* 218; in May 1807 arrives at Capetown, *ib.*; but in October of the same year dies, *i* 271

**BARNARD, LADY ANNE, WIFE OF THE COLONIAL SECRETARY:**

by her charming entertainments strives to reconcile Cape people of position to English rule, *i* 29; reference to published letters of, *i* 116

**BARNES, MAJOR JAMES:**

in January 1839 becomes the first resident magistrate of Caledon,



ii 228; in March 1848 becomes resident magistrate of Riversdale, iii 70

**BAROLONG TRIBE:**

traditional history of, i 471; genealogical table of the chiefs, *ib.*; upon the death of the chief Tao about 1760 is broken into fragments practically independent one of another, *ib.*; after 1823 various sections suffer very severely in the wars of devastation that originated with the Zulu chief Tshaka, i 472; in 1823 one clan, under the chief Sifunelo, guided by the reverend Messrs. Broadbent and Hodgson, Wesleyan missionaries, settles at Makwasi, on the Vaal river, *ib.*; in 1826 it removes from Makwasi to Platberg, farther down the river and on the western bank, i 473; and in 1833, after the death of Sifunelo and the succession of his son Moroko as its chief, is removed by the reverend Messrs. Archbell, Edwards, and Jenkins to Thaba Ntshu, west of the Caledon, *ib.*; two clans, under Tawane and Gontse, undergo great suffering, i 475; after the settlement of Moselekatse at Mosega, the petty remnants of some of the other clans ■■■ obliged to retire to the Kalahari desert and live like Bushmen, *ib.*; part of one clan, under the captain Matlabe, becomes incorporated with the Matabele, *ib.*; Tawane and Gontse with ■ few followers flee southward to Platberg, and in 1833 proceed with Moroko to Thaba Ntshu, *ib.*; where they are afterwards joined by Matlabe, who manages to escape from Moselekatse, i 479; the whole Barolong people, excepting the few wretched fugitives in the desert, now settle at Thaba Ntshu, i 477; further particulars concerning the Barolong, i 432, 444, 467, and 487; see Masisi, Matlabe, Montsiwa, Moshete, and Tawane

**BAROSWI OR BAROTSI, BANTU TRIBE:**

mention of, i 433 and 485; these people are subjected by Sebetoane, v 85; in 1865 a large section establishes its independence by the extermination of the Makololo, v 93

**BARROW, JOHN (AFTERWARDS SIR JOHN):**

comes to South Africa as private secretary to the earl of Macartney, i 27; is prejudiced against republicans, i 28; is sent on various missions through the colony, *ib.*; and is then promoted to be auditor-general, *ib.*; reference to volumes written by, i 116

**BARRY, ADVOCATE J. D.:**

in October 1871 is appointed recorder of Griqualand West, iv 373

**BARTER BETWEEN WHITES AND BLACKS :**

is prohibited by law in the South African Republic, *iii* 415

**BASIA, BANTU TRIBE :**

mention of, *i* 430 and 447

**BASUTOLAND :**

description of, *i* 430; by a treaty in December 1843 between Sir George Napier and Moshesh a great tract of country is assigned to the Basuto tribe, and is thereafter termed Basutoland or the Lesuto, *ii* 482; in October 1849 it is greatly reduced in extent by Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 307; as contained within the boundaries defined by Major Warden and confirmed by Sir Harry Smith, including also subsequent conquests by Moshesh, on the abandonment of the Sovereignty by Great Britain in 1854 is left independent of all extraneous control, *iii* 441; receives a large addition of territory by the first treaty of Aliwal North, after the war of 1858 with the Orange Free State, *iii* 493; loses a much larger extent of territory by the treaty of Thaba Bosigo, after the war of 1865-6 with the Orange Free State, *iv* 273; in March 1868 becomes part of the British dominions, *iv* 301; condition of the country at this time, *iv* 308 *et seq.*; in February 1869 recovers a portion of its old territory by the second treaty of Aliwal North, *iv* 320; revenue to the 31st of May 1871, *v* 68; in August 1871 is annexed to the Cape Colony, *ib.*; and is then divided into the four magisterial districts of Leribe, Berea, Thaba Bosigo, and Kornet Spruit, *v* 70; in November 1871 the annexation act is ratified by the queen in council, and thenceforth has effect, *v* 76; revenue of Basutoland in 1870, *v* 63; for the year ending 31st of May 1872, *v* 79; expenditure in 1872, *ib.*

**BASUTO LAWS AND CUSTOMS :**

in August 1872 a commission is appointed to investigate and report upon, *v* 78

**BASUTO POLICE FORCE :**

in October 1872 is organised, *v* 77

**BASUTO TRIBE :**

is formed by the genius of Moshesh, *i* 460 *et seq.*; at the time of the abandonment of the Sovereignty by Great Britain in 1854 is rapidly increasing in power, *iii* 443; makes aggressive movements against the Orange Free State, *iii* 450, *iv* 202 and 205; after Sir Philip Wodehouse's award in October 1864 endeavours to provoke the Free State to commence hostilities,

*iv* 223; see Letsie, Mokuane, Molitsane, Molapo, Morosi, Moshesh, Moyakisani, and Poshuli

**BATAUNG, BANTU TRIBE:**

mention of, *i* 430, 442, 465, and 472; see Makwana, Molitsane, and Tulu

**BATHURST, EARL:**

from June 1812 to April 1827 is secretary of state for the colonies, *i* 426

**BATHURST, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in March 1848 is created, *iii* 70

**BATHURST, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in 1820 is founded, *i* 357; at the beginning of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is abandoned, *ii* 92; but is shortly afterwards re-occupied

**BATLAKOANA, BANTU TRIBE:**

mention of, *i* 429

**BATLAPIN, BANTU TRIBE:**

in 1801 is first visited by travellers competent to give a correct description of the people, *i* 100; in 1805 is visited by Messrs. Van de Graaff and Lichtenstein, *i* 186; very complete information upon the condition of these people is obtained in 1811 and 1812 by Mr. W. J. Burchell, *i* 272; dastardly conduct of Batlapin warriors in the engagement with the Mantatis at Lithako, *i* 444 and 445; particulars concerning the tribe, *i* 186 *et seq.*, 432, 444, and 471; account of the various clans of, *iii* 486

**BATLARO, BANTU TRIBE:**

mention of, *i* 471

**BATLOKUA, BANTU TRIBE:**

mention of, *i* 430 and 447; after 1853 is dispersed, and the fragments are now to be found in Zululand and in Griqualand East, *iii* 355; see Lehana, Ma Ntatisi, and Sikonyela

**BATOKA:** see Batonga

**BATONGA, BANTU TRIBES:**

mention of, *i* 433 and 485; those along the Zambesi are brought under subjection by Sebetoane, *v* 85; description of those at Delagoa Bay, *v* 130

**BATTLE OF AMALINDE:**

is fought in the winter of 1818 between the rival Xosa chiefs Gaika and Ndlambe, *i* 333

**BATTLE OF BEREÄ :**

is fought on the 20th of December 1852 by General Cathcart with the Basuto under Moshesh, *iii* 337

**BATTLE OF BLAUWBERG :**

is fought on the 8th of January 1806 between English and Dutch forces, *i* 197

**BATTLE OF BLOOD RIVER :**

is fought on the 16th of December 1838 between the emigrant farmers and the Zulus, *ii* 381

**BATTLE OF BOOMPLAATS :**

is fought on the 29th of August 1848 between the emigrant farmers and British forces, *iii* 288

**BATTLE OF VIERVOET :**

is fought on the 30th of June 1851 between the Basuto of Moshesh and forces collected by Major Warden in the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 320

**BAYLEY, T. B. :**

note on ■ pamphlet on horse sickness prepared by, *iii* 153

**BAUMGARDT, JAN PIETER :**

on the 10th of October 1795 becomes collector of the land revenue of the Cape Colony, *i* 2

**BAVENDA, BANTU TRIBES :**

mention of, *i* 432 and 486

**BAWANA, SON OF TSHATSHU, CHIEF OF A SMALL TEMBU CLAN :**

in 1809 is found by Colonel Collins to have wandered away from the Tembu country proper, and to have settled with his people on the eastern bank of the Tsomo, *i* 233; in August 1827 he is driven over the Zwart Kei into the Cape Colony by the Amangwane, *i* 452; in an interview with General Bourke he promises to return to his own country, but is unable to do so owing to Matiwane having settled on the Umtata, *i* 453; after the retreat of the Zulu army from Tembuland in July 1828 and the destruction of the Amangwane in August of that year, he retires from the colony, *i* 484; when his people, being joined by other refugees, spread themselves thinly over the territory between the Stormberg on the north and the Winterberg on the south, from the Indwe to the Zwart Kei and Klaas Smit's rivers, *ib.*; in 1829 he is murdered by a petty captain named Batwa, *ii* 8



**BEAUFORT WEST, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in November 1818 is formed as a sub-district of Graaff-Reinet, i 307; in August 1836 is placed under a civil commissioner independent of Graaff-Reinet, ii 166

**BEAUFORT WEST, TOWN OF:**

in 1818 is founded, i 307; is the first municipality in the Cape Colony, ii 167; in October 1869 sustains much damage from heavy floods, iv 105

**BEDFORD, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in January 1858 is created, iii 160

**BEERSHEBA MISSION STATION:**

in 1835 is founded by the reverend Mr. Rolland, of the Paris evangelical mission society, at Zevenfontein on the right bank of the Caledon river, ii 297; at the commencement of the war of 1858 between the Orange Free State and the Basuto tribe, most of the residents are driven away, iii 476; in September 1858 by the first treaty of Aliwal North it is greatly reduced in size and is incorporated with the Orange Free State, iii 494; a large portion of the land is then given out as farms, iv 181; in June 1862 the remainder is sold to farmers by the Paris evangelical society, iv 208

**BEIRA, THE SECOND TOWN IN IMPORTANCE IN PORTUGUESE SOUTH AFRICA:**

description of, v 153; condition of in 1899, v 162

**BELL, ADVOCATE SYDNEY SMITH:**

on the 1st of February 1851 is appointed second puisne judge in the supreme court of the Cape Colony, iii 147

**BELL, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL JOHN:**

in 1827 becomes secretary to government in the Cape Colony, i 494; during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 administers the government while Sir Benjamin D'Urban is on the frontier, ii 97; on the 10th of June 1841 goes to England on leave, and he receives military promotion there does not return, ii 214

**BELL, MAJOR CHARLES HARLAND:**

in May 1871 is appointed magistrate of the district of Leribe in Basutoland, v 71

**BELL, WILLIAM, MASTER OF THE SCHOONER CONCH:**

in June 1842 conveys troops to Natal to aid the British force beleaguered there, ii 427; on the 22nd of December 1844 is appointed harbour master of Port Natal, ii 461

**BENNIE, REV. JOHN, OF THE GLASGOW SOCIETY :**

in November 1821 commences mission work in the Tyumie valley,  
i 409

**BENTINCK, WALTER :**

on the 16th of December 1808 becomes auditor of the Cape Colony

**BEREA MISSION STATION :**

in 1843 is founded in Basutoland by the Paris evangelical society,  
ii 502

**BERG DAMARAS OR GHOU DAMUP, A BLACK TRIBE SPEAKING THE**

**HOTTENTOT LANGUAGE, LIVING IN HEREROLAND :**

mention of, v 94, 98, 110, 113, 120, and 121

**BERGH, EGBERTUS :**

on the 6th of June 1804 is appointed receiver general of revenue in the Cape Colony in succession to Arend de Waal, deceased; in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Graaff-Reinet, i 493; in the great retrenchment of 1834 is reduced to be assistant civil commissioner and resident magistrate of George, ii 44

**BERGH, W. F. :**

in March 1848 becomes civil commissioner of Malmesbury, iii 71

**BERGTHEIL, J. :**

in 1848 brings out to Natal thirty-five German agricultural families, iii 254

**BERKELEY, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR GEORGE FREDERICK :**

on the 27th of January 1847 arrives in Capetown from England as commander of the forces in South Africa, iii 40; on the 17th of December in the same year is succeeded by Sir Harry Smith, and then proceeds to Madras, iii 56

**BERLIN MISSIONARY SOCIETY :**

in 1834 commences to labour in South Africa, ii 84; particulars concerning its work in this country, iii 224, 233, 291, 311, 349, 357, and 455, and iv 374 and 467

**BERLIN, ROYAL LIBRARY IN :**

contains many original documents relating to South Africa, i 129

**BERRANGE, REV. JAN CHRISTOFFEL :**

in December 1815 is appointed clergyman of Swellendam, i 404; in June 1817 is transferred to Capetown, i 404; in November 1824 is chosen to be moderator of the first synod of the Dutch reformed church in the Cape Colony, ib.

**BERRANGE, REV. J. F.:**

in 1844 becomes the first resident clergyman of Richmond in the Cape Colony, *ii* 246

**BERTIE, VICE ADMIRAL ALBEMARLE:**

on the 1st of August 1808 assumes command of the Cape squadron, *i* 240; on the 5th of January 1811 transfers the command to Rear Admiral Stopford, *i* 244

**BESTER, PAUL:**

takes part against the British forces in the battle of Boomplaats, but afterwards surrenders, *iii* 293; and is appointed by Sir Harry Smith civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Harrismith, *iii* 299

**BETHANY MISSION STATION:**

in December 1835 is founded by the Berlin society on the Riet river in the present Orange Free State, *iii* 291. The grounds are 22,000 morgen in extent

**BETHELSDORP, LONDON MISSIONARY SOCIETY'S STATION:**

in 1803 is founded by the reverend Dr. Vanderkemp and Mr. James Read on a tract of land near Port Elizabeth in the Cape province, *i* 124; a few months later it is visited by Commissioner-General De Mist, who forms an unfavourable opinion of the method of instruction pursued there, *i* 147; in subsequent years it is regarded with dislike by people outside the missionary circle, *i* 231; but at a later date it is greatly improved, *i* 500

**BETHESDA MISSION STATION:**

in 1843 is founded in Basutoland by the Paris evangelical society, *ii* 502

**BETHLEHEM, DISTRICT IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

in May 1871 is established, *iv* 384

**BETHLEHEM, VILLAGE OF:**

in March 1860 is founded, *iv* 185

**BETHULIE MISSION STATION:**

in 1833 is founded by the reverend Mr. Pellissier, of the Paris evangelical mission society, on the northern bank of the Orange river, *i* 470

**BETHULIE, DISTRICT OF:**

in October 1859 by cession of the chief Lepui becomes part of the Orange Free State, *iv* 184; in February 1860 ■ erected into ■ district under ■ landdrost, *iv* 185

**BETHULIE, VILLAGE OF:**

in June 1862 is founded, *iv* 185

**BETSHUANA, BANTU TRIBES IN THE INTERIOR OF SOUTH AFRICA:**

in 1802 the first authentic information concerning these people is obtained, *i* 98; enumeration of the tribes at the beginning of the nineteenth century, *i* 431

**BETSHUANA REFUGEES:**

after 1823 invade the Cape Colony in considerable numbers, *i* 391

**BEYER, REV. MR.:**

in November 1861 becomes clergyman of the Separatist Reformed church at Reddersburg in the Orange Free State, *iv* 438

**BEZANT, CHARLES:**

on the 6th of July 1838 is murdered at Pato's kraal, *ii* 186

**BEZUIDENHOUT, FREDERICK:**

in 1815 sets the judicial authorities of the Cape Colony at defiance, *i* 290; resists a party of pandours sent to arrest him, and is shot dead, *i* 291

**BEZUIDENHOUT, JAN:**

in 1815 is the instigator and leader of an insurrection against the government of the Cape Colony, *i* 292; on the collapse of the insurrection at Slachter's Nek flees towards Kaffirland, *i* 296; is overtaken by a band of Hottentot soldiers, but declines to surrender, and shoots one of the pandours before he is mortally wounded, *i* 298

**BIBLE AND SCHOOL COMMISSION:**

formation in Capetown of, *i* 267

**BICKFORD, CAPTAIN:**

in November 1861 proclaims the islands Inyaka and Elephant in Delagoa Bay British territory and annexed to Natal, *v* 146

**BIDDULPH, T. J.:**

on the 8th of March 1848 is appointed first civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Winburg in the Orange Free State, *iii* 279; on the 22nd of May is installed in office, *iii* 280; on the 21st of June retires to Bloemfontein owing to threats of the disaffected farmers, *ib.*; but is required by the British resident to return to his post, *iii* 281; on the 12th of July makes his escape from Winburg just before Mr. Pretorius enters the village, *ib.*; on the 29th of August is wounded in the battle of Boomplaats, *iii* 291

**BIDOUW, TRACT OF LAND IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

description of, *i* 170



**BIGGAR, ALEXANDER :**

in 1820 arrives in South Africa as head of a party of British settlers, *ii* 350; in 1834 establishes himself as a trader at Port Natal, *ib.*; in May 1838 is appointed landdrost of Port Natal, but declines to perform the duties, *ii* 377; on the 23rd of December 1838 is killed in battle with the Zulus, *ii* 383

**BIGGAR, GEORGE, SON OF ALEXANDER :**

in 1834 arrives in Natal, *ii* 358; on the 17th of February 1838 is murdered by the Zulus in the great massacre of the emigrant farmers, *ii* 365

**BIGGAR, ROBERT, SON OF ALEXANDER :**

is in nominal command of a force which marches from Port Natal against Dingan and which succeeds in securing a good deal of plunder, when it is broken up by internal dissension, *ii* 369; a few days later, when in command of another expedition, on the 17th of April 1838 is killed in battle with the Zulus, *ii* 373

**BIGGE, JOHN THOMAS :** see Commissioners of inquiry

**BINDON, DR. H. VERIKER :**

successfully treats serious cases of illness of Kaffirs at Dohne post, *iii* 191

**BIRD, CAPTAIN CHRISTOPHER :**

in 1807 becomes deputy colonial secretary, *i* 218; in May 1818 becomes colonial secretary, *i* 413; (Lieutenant-Colonel) in June 1824 through Lord Charles Somerset's agency is obliged to retire with a small pension, *ib.*; thereafter is ~~an~~ opponent of that governor, *i* 414

**BIRD, JOHN :**

note on a pamphlet written by, *ii* 351

**BIRD, WILBERFORCE :**

is controller of customs at Capetown, *ii* 44; ~~on~~ the 19th of April 1836 dies

**BIRKENHEAD, THE :**

account of the loss of this transport on the 26th of February 1852, and the splendid conduct of the soldiers on board, *iii* 106

**BISSEUX, REV. MR., OF THE PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY :**

in 1829 commences a mission at Wellington in the Cape Colony, *i* 468

**BLAIR, CHARLES :**

on the 16th of December 1808 becomes collector of customs in Capetown

**BLAIR, ROBERT :**

in July 1822 arrives from Scotland, and is appointed teacher of the high school at Caledon, *i* 371

**BLAIR, WILLIAM :**

in 1825 is appointed ■ commissioner of inquiry, and assumes duty in Capetown on the 24th of December of that year, *i* 425

**BLAKE, RICHARD, PRIVATE SECRETARY TO SIR GEORGE YONGE :**

evidence against on charges of corruption, *i* 82 and 83

**BLANKETS :**

before 1834 are manufactured in the district of Albany in the Cape Colony, *ii* 39

**BLEEK, DR. W. :**

is the first custodian of the Grey Library in Capetown, *iv* 20

**BLETTERMAN, HENDRIK LODEWYK :**

in November 1795 retires from office as landdrost of Stellenbosch, *i* 3; in 1804 is appointed a commissioner to arrange the boundary of the district of Tulbagh and select a site for the drostdy, *i* 152

**BLOEM, JAN, CAPTAIN OF THE SPRINGBOK CLAN OF THE KORANAS :**

depredations committed by, *i* 101

**BLOEM, JAN, SON AND SUCCESSOR OF THE ABOVE :**

in 1849 is provided by Major Warden with a location along the southern bank of the Vaal river, *iii* 311; but a few years later abandons it, *iii* 484

**BLOEMFONTEIN, TOWN OF :**

in 1846 is founded, *ii* 500; in March 1848 is made the seat of government of the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 278; on the 17th of July 1848 is surrendered by Major Warden to Commandant-General Pretorius, *iii* 282; is recovered by Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 292; is the seat of government of the Orange Free State, *iii* 443

**BLOEMFONTEIN BANK :**

in June 1862 is established, *iv* 208

**BLOEMFONTEIN :**

convention of, *iii* 364

**BLOEMHOF, VILLAGE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

in August 1864 is founded, *iv* 499; proceedings of the court of arbitration from April to June 1871 at, *v* 40 *et seq.*

**BLOEMHOF, DISTRICT OF:**

in June 1869 is established, *iv* 499

**BLYTH, CAPTAIN MATTHEW:**

in 1869 is appointed Fingo agent, and speedily acquires great influence with the people, *iv* 60

**BOADICEA, FRIGATE:**

splendid achievements of the, *i* 243

**BOARD OF EXECUTORS FOR ADMINISTERING ESTATES:**

in 1838 is founded in Capetown, *ii* 225

**BOARD OF EXAMINERS, PRECURSOR OF THE UNIVERSITY OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE:**

in 1858 is created, *iii* 163

**BOARD OF RELIEF:**

is constituted by Sir Benjamin D'Urban soon after the commencement of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 to alleviate the misery of the ruined colonists, *ii* 98; on the 8th of May 1846 a similar board is constituted by Sir Peregrine Maitland for the same purpose, *iii* 12

**BOARDMAN, REV. WILLIAM, OF THE ENGLISH EPISCOPAL CHURCH:**

in 1820 arrives with a party of British settlers, *i* 351

**BONDELZWARTS, HOTTENTOT CLAN IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:**

mention of, *v* 97

**BONGA, A RESIDENT ON THE BANK OF THE ZAMBESI:**

rebels against Portuguese authority and for many years successfully resists the forces sent against him, *v* 165; in 1853 plunders and partly destroys Tete, *v* 164; but in 1888 is subdued by Gouveia, *v* 165

**BORCHERDS, J. H.:**

in March 1848 becomes civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Fort Beaufort, *iii* 71

**BORCHERDS, PETRUS BORCHARDUS:**

in 1801-2 visits Southern Betshuanaland, *i* 99; in May 1826 is appointed magistrate of Capetown, with the title of permanent sitting commissioner, *i* 493; in January 1828 his title is changed to judge of police, and the magisterial work of the district is

added to his duties, *ib.*; in 1834 his title is again changed to civil commissioner and resident magistrate, and the district of Simonstown is joined to the Cape and placed under his charge, *ii* 44

**BOSHOF, DISTRICT IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

in February 1858 is established, *iv* 185

**BOSHOF, VILLAGE OF:**

in April 1856 is founded, *iii* 467

**BOSHOF, JACOBUS NICOLAAS:**

in May 1838 arrives in Natal and thereafter takes a leading part in affairs in that territory, *ii* 376; in February 1848 is appointed a member of a land commission in Natal, *iii* 253; is elected president of the Orange Free State, *iii* 456; in August 1855 is installed, *iii* 457; by Sir George Grey's mediation in October 1855 has a conference with Moshesh at Smithfield, and concludes a formal treaty, *iii* 458; in February 1858 tenders his resignation, which is accepted by the volksraad, but after the appointment of an executive commission he is induced to withdraw it and remain in office, *iii* 469; on the 11th of March 1858 sends an ultimatum to Moshesh, *iii* 472; and as no notice is taken of it, on the 19th of the same month declares war, *iii* 473; in June 1859 resigns the office of president of the Orange Free State, and retires to Natal, *iv* 182

**BOSPHORUS, TRANSPORT:**

on the 21st of October 1867 is wrecked ~~near~~ Cape Saint Francis, *iv* 95

**BOTANIC GARDEN IN CAPETOWN:**

in 1848 is resuscitated, *iii* 89

**BOTLASITSI, SON OF GASIBONE, BATLAPIN CHIEF:**

in 1878 is at war with Griqualand West, *iv* 426 and 427; in November of that year is made a prisoner and is confined at Kimberley, *iv* 431

**BOTMA, ABRAHAM:**

is one of the leaders of the insurrection of 1815, *i* 294; after the failure of the insurrection is arrested at the Winterberg, *i* 297; is sentenced to death by a commission of the high court of justice, *i* 298; and on the 9th of March 1816 is executed at Van Aardt's post on the Fish river, *i* 299

**BOTMA, STEPHANUS:**

is one of the leaders of the insurrection of 1815, *i* 293; after



the failure of the insurrection is captured by a band of Hottentot soldiers, *i* 297; is sentenced to death by a commission of the high court of justice, *i* 298; and on the 9th of March 1816 is executed at Van Aardt's post on the Fish river, *i* 299

**BOTUMANE, CAPTAIN OF A SECTION OF THE IMIDANGE CLAN OF XOSAS:**  
in 1828 takes possession of the western bank of the Tyumie river, *ii* 5; in November 1833, owing to depredations by his people, he is required to leave that territory, *ii* 55; in December 1834 sends his followers to lay waste the frontier districts of the Cape Colony, *ii* 90; continues the conflict until the 17th of September 1835, when he agrees to terms of peace and becomes a British subject, *ii* 125; on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; on the 2nd of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 187; on the 21st of January 1845 enters into a new treaty framed by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; in March 1846 declines to surrender some criminals in accordance with his treaty engagements, *iii* 2; from April to November 1846 takes an active part in the war against the Cape Colony, *iii* 37; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has a tract of land in British Kaffraria assigned to him, *iii* 61; after 1857 loses his ground and sinks into insignificance, *iii* 212

**VON BOUCHENROEDER, B. F.:**

during the administration of General Janssens is connected with a project of introducing Dutch immigrants, *i* 135 *et seq.*; subsequent career of, *i* 137

**BOUNDARY OF THE CAPE COLONY:**

as defined in July 1798 by Lord Macartney, *i* 39; as defined in February 1805 by Governor Janssens and the council, *i* 180; as extended in 1820 by Sir Rufane Donkin, *i* 359; as extended in September 1824 by Governor Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 394; as extended in March 1825 by the same governor, *ib.*; as extended in April 1829 by Governor Sir Lowry Cole, *ii* 9; Extension

**BOUNDARY BETWEEN THE DISTRICTS OF STELLENBOSCH AND SWELLEN-**  
**DAM:**

as defined in April 1811, *i* 226

**BOUNDARY BETWEEN THE DISTRICTS OF ALBANY AND SOMERSET EAST:**  
in October 1837 is defined, *ii* 165

**BOUNDARIES OF THE REPUBLIC OF NATAL :**

*ii* 398 ; of the colony of Natal, see Natal

**BOUNDARY DISPUTE BETWEEN THE ORANGE FREE STATE AND THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC :**

in February 1870 is decided in favour of the latter by Lieutenant-Governor Keate, of Natal, as arbitrator, who adjudges that the Klip river shall be the dividing stream, *iv* 496 to 498

**BOUNDARY BETWEEN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC AND THE PORTUGUESE POSSESSIONS IN SOUTH-EASTERN AFRICA :**

is defined in the treaty of 1869, *v* 22

**BOUNDARY OF PORTUGUESE SOUTH AFRICA, *v* 160****BOURBON, ISLAND OF :**

on the 8th of July 1810 is taken by a British force, *i* 241 ;  
in 1814 is restored to France, *i* 276

**BOURKE, MAJOR-GENERAL RICHARD :**

in August 1825 is appointed lieutenant-governor, *i* 399 ; in February 1826 arrives in the colony, *i* 425 ; on the 5th of March 1826 assumes duty as acting governor during the absence of Lord Charles Somerset, *ib.* ; on the 9th of September 1828 transfers the duty to Sir Lowry Cole, and on the 7th of November 1828 leaves for England, *i* 510

**BOWKER, JAMES HENRY :**

in April 1868 is appointed high commissioner's agent in Basutoland, *iv* 312 ; in May 1870 succeeds Sir Walter Currie as commandant of the frontier armed and mounted police, *iv* 99 ; in October 1871 is appointed a member of the executive committee of Griqualand West, *iv* 373

**BOWKER, JOHN MITFORD :**

at the close of the sixth Kaffir war is appointed agent with the Gunukwebes and the Fingos, and is stationed at Fort Peddie, *ii* 130 ; in December 1836 is directed to act as consular agent with the Fingos, *ii* 153 ; in February 1839 is succeeded in that office by Mr. Theophilus Shepstone, *ii* 190

**BOWKER, THOMAS HOLDEN :**

in March 1848 becomes resident magistrate of Stockenstrom, *iii* 70 ; in 1872 is a member of the Griqualand West land commission, *iv* 418 and 419

**BOWKER, MILES :**

in 1820 arrives in South Africa as head of a party of British settlers, and is the first breeder of woolled sheep in Albany, *ii* 39

**BOYCE, REV. WILLIAM:**

at the commencement of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is obliged to abandon his station Mount Coke, *ii* 111; assists in the negotiations by which the war is brought to an end, *ii* 123; upon the conclusion of peace reoccupies his station, *ii* 131

**BOYS, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL EDMOND FRENCH:**

from the 2nd of August 1849 to the 19th of April 1850 and also from the 12th of October 1852 to the 31st of January 1853 acts as lieutenant-governor of Natal, *iii* 228

**BRAND, CHRISTOFFEL:**

on the 10th of October 1795 becomes collector in Capetown of the tithes, *i* 2

**BRAND, CHRISTOFFEL JOSEPHUS, LL.D.:**

on the 23rd of July 1850 is appointed a member of the legislative council of the Cape Colony, *iii* 122; on the 20th of September of the same year resigns his seat, *iii* 124; on the 30th of June 1854, when the first parliament meets, is elected speaker of the house of assembly, *iii* 140

**BRAND, J. H.:**

on the 1st of January 1810 becomes deputy fiscal at Simonstown

**BRAND, ADVOCATE JAN HENDRIK, (LATER SIR JOHN):**

is elected president of the Orange Free State, and in February 1864 assumes duty, *iv* 211; finds clans of the Basuto tribe pressing upon the state and occupying land far beyond their boundary, *iv* 219; induces Sir Philip Wodehouse to mediate in the interests of peace, *iv* 217; after the award of Sir Philip Wodehouse—which is that the old boundary shall be maintained with but one slight modification—gives Moshesh notice to recall his people before the 30th of November 1864, *iv* 221; but upon request of the Basuto chiefs extends the time for the removal of property to the end of January 1865, *iv* 225; owing to the outrageous conduct of Ramanela on Free State soil, in May 1865 calls out an armed force to punish that chief, *iv* 227; finds hostilities with the Basuto tribe inevitable unless Moshesh will keep his people in order, *ib.*; on the 2nd of June 1865 sends an ultimatum to Moshesh, of which no notice is taken, so on the 9th of June proclaims war with the Basuto, *ib.*; on the 3rd of April 1866 agrees to peace, and signs the treaty of Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 273; owing to the deceitful conduct of the Basuto, in July 1867 is obliged to take up arms again, *iv* 290; but in March 1868 is compelled by the interference of Sir Philip Wodehouse practically to cease hostilities, *iv* 305;

in February 1869 is driven by force of circumstances to sign the second treaty of Aliwal North, *iv* 319; upon the expiration of his first term of office is again elected president of the Orange Free State; in December 1870 with Mr. C. W. Hutton visits Capetown to explain the position of his government with regard to the territory claimed by Mr. Arnot for Nicholas Waterboer, *iv* 359; carries on a long, but fruitless, correspondence with the high commissioner concerning the right of the Free State to the diamond-fields south of the Vaal, *iv* 356 *et seq.*; is desired by a large party to become president of the South African Republic, so as to unite the two states, *v* 51; as the scheme is unfriendly to Great Britain, he declines to allow himself to be put in nomination, *v* 52; but acts as a peacemaker, *ib.*; upon the annexation of the diamond-fields to the British dominions, on the 7th of November 1871 enjoins all officers and burghers of the Free State to avoid anything that might cause a collision with the incoming authorities, *iv* 375; and expresses perfect confidence that England will do justice to the republic as soon as the true condition of affairs is known, *ib.*; is temporarily irritated by the annexation of the diamond-fields to the British dominions, *iv* 395 and 396; in 1876 visits England to confer with the imperial authorities, *iv* 421; and accepts an offer made by Lord Carnarvon to settle the dispute regarding Griqualand West, *ib.*

**BRANDFORT, VILLAGE IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

in October 1866 is founded, *iv* 233

**BREAKWATER IN TABLE BAY:**

in September 1860 its construction is commenced, *iv* 5

**VAN BREDA, K. N.:**

in March 1848 becomes civil commissioner of Paarl, *iii* 70

**VAN BREDA, MICHEL:**

is one of the earliest successful breeders of merino sheep in the Cape Colony, *ii* 39; is one of the first unofficial members of the legislative council established in 1834, *ii* 48

**VAN BREDA, MICHEL (NOT THE ABOVE):**

in June 1842 takes a leading part in resistance to the British troops at Natal, *ii* 425; in July is excepted from the general amnesty agreed to by Colonel Cloete, *ii* 439; a reward of £250 is offered by Sir George Napier for his apprehension, but none molests him, *ii* 440

**VAN BREDA, SERVAAS:**

in June 1842 takes a leading part in resistance to the British



troops at Natal, *ii* 425; in July is excepted from the general amnesty agreed to by Colonel Cloete, *ii* 439; ■ reward of £250 is offered by Sir George Napier for his apprehension, but no one molests him, *ii* 440

**BREDASDORP, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in September 1855 is created, *iii* 148

**BREDASDORP, VILLAGE OF:**

in May 1838 is founded, *ii* 218

**BREDASDORP, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT:**

on the 27th of April 1839 the first elders and deacons are approved of, and in May they commence duty, *ii* 218

**BRERETON, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL:**

in December 1818 commands an expedition that enters Kaffirland to aid Gaika against his uncle and rival Ndlambe, *i* 335

**BRESLER, FRANS REINHARD:**

in January 1796 is appointed landdrost of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 6; on the 9th of February arrives at the village, *i* 7; attends ■ stormy meeting of the nationals, *ib.*; as the people refuse to receive him as landdrost, in March he proceeds to Capetown, *i* 10; is instructed by Lord Macartney to return to Graaff-Reinet, *i* 34; in July 1797 assumes duty as landdrost there, *i* 37; in 1803 is removed, *i* 149; and is afterwards a judge in the high court of justice, *i* 290

**BRIGHT, H. E. RICHARD:**

in November 1871 becomes clerk to the chief magistrate of Basutoland, *v* 71

**BRINK, REV. J. J.:**

in May 1839 becomes the first resident clergyman of Bredasdorp, *ii* 218

**BRINK, PIETER GERHARD:**

from June to November 1824 acts ■ secretary to the government of the Cape Colony, *i* 413; on the establishment of the supreme court at the beginning of 1828 becomes sheriff, *i* 491

**BRITISH EMIGRANTS TO NATAL:**

particulars concerning the scheme of settlement carried out in 1849, 1850, and 1851 by Mr. J. C. Byrne, *iii* 255 and 256; the great disproportion of the sexes causes much restlessness, *iii* 256, and in 1852 and 1853 many leave for Australia, *ib.*; particulars concerning other settlers in the colony of Natal, *iii* 257

## BRITISH KAFFRARIA, PROVINCE OF:

on the 17th of December 1847 is annexed to the queen's dominions, *iii* 57; regulations for the government of, *iii* 58; census of 1848, *iii* 66; condition in 1854 of, *iii* 188; in 1855 the Kaffir chiefs agree to Sir George Grey's proposal to surrender a portion of their power in return for certain money allowances, *iii* 189; in 1855 the construction of roads and watercourses is commenced, *iii* 190; the imperial government grants £40,000 in each of the years 1855, 1856, and 1857 to enable Sir George Grey to carry out his benevolent plans for the reformation of the Kaffirs, *iii* 192; census of Europeans in 1855, *iii* 194; census of 1857, *iii* 206; financial difficulties in, *iii* 207; census at the close of 1858, *iii* 219; census at the close of 1859, *iii* 224; on the 7th of March 1860 letters patent are issued defining the boundaries of the province and settling the form of its government, *iii* 225; description of the province in 1860, *iii* 226 and 227; population, revenue, expenditure, and exports in 1861 of, *iv* 18; form of government of, *iii* 226; boundaries as fixed in 1860, *iii* 225; in 1865 is annexed to the Cape Colony, *iv* 75; imports and exports from 1862 to 1865, *iv* 76; population in 1865, *ib.*; see Annexation

BRITISH REGIMENTS STATIONED IN SOUTH AFRICA BETWEEN 1795 AND 1872: see Garrison

## BRITISH SETTLERS OF 1820:

account of the arrival and location of, *i* 349 *et seq.*; condition of in 1822, *i* 372; condition of in 1823, *i* 389; celebration of the fiftieth anniversary of the arrival of, *iv* 110

## BRITISH SOUTH AFRICA CHARTERED COMPANY:

on the 29th of October 1889 is established, *v* 154

## BROWN, ARCHIBALD:

in July 1822 arrives from Scotland, and is appointed teacher of the high school at Stellenbosch, *i* 371

## BROWNLIE, CHARLES:

in October 1846 is appointed clerk to the Gaika commissioner, *iii* 36; in December 1847 is appointed assistant commissioner, and is stationed at Fort Cox, *iii* 59; in October 1850 is appointed head of the Gaika clans by Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 93; but is unable to control them, *iii* 94; in 1855 is directed to act as magistrate with Sandile, *iii* 190; aids in preventing a Kaffir raid into the Cape Colony, *iii* 203; on the 16th of March 1865 holds an important meeting with the Gaika chiefs, *iv* 52; in November 1872 becomes secretary for native affairs

under responsible government, *iv* 147; in January 1873 visits the Transkei and brings about peace between the Tembus and Xosas, *iv* 58 and 59

**BROWNLEE, JAMES :**

visits Dingana a few hours after the massacre of Pieter Retief and his party, *ii* 363

**BROWNLEE, REV. JOHN :**

leaves the service of the London society, and in June 1820 ■  
■ government agent founds a mission station in the Tyumie valley, *i* 318; resumes his connection with the London society, and in 1825 founds a mission station with the Tinde clan of the Xosa tribe on the eastern bank of the Buffalo river, within the area that is now the municipality of King-Williamstown, *i* 409; at the beginning of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 with his family takes refuge at Wesleyville, *ii* 99; and is there rescued by a party of volunteers, *ib.*; upon the conclusion of peace re-establishes the mission with Tshatshu's people, *ii* 131; when the war of 1846-7 commences has full confidence in the good faith of the Tinde clan towards the Cape Colony, but is soon undeceived, and is compelled to abandon his station, *iii* 3; which at the close of the war he again occupies, *iii* 60

**BUCHANAN, DAVID DALE, EDITOR OF THE NATAL WITNESS :**

in February 1867 becomes the avowed advocate of the Basuto tribe, *iv* 294; after the annexation of Basutoland to the British dominions fans the discontent of the chiefs towards the high commissioner because they have not obtained everything they desire, *iv* 323; in April 1869 with the reverend Mr. Daumas and Moshesh's son Tsekelo proceeds to England, *iv* 324; obtains support from various missionary and philanthropic societies, *iv* 325; on the 22nd of June has an interview with the secretary of state, *iv* 326; with the result that Sir Philip Wodehouse is called upon for explanations, and the ratification of the settlement effected by him is delayed, *ib.*; by his violent language Mr. Buchanan forfeits the attention of the secretary of state, *iv* 329; he returns to Natal, and instigates political agitators in Basutoland, *v* 63; is earnestly advised by the government of Natal to abstain from interference in Basuto affairs, *v* 64; in September 1871 is informed by authority of the high commissioner that if he sends messengers again into Basutoland they will be prosecuted for stirring up sedition, *v* 70; conclusion of his intercourse with the Basuto, *v* 78; on the 4th of September 1874 dies in Capetown

**BUCHANAN, THOMAS :**

in July 1840 opens in Capetown the first normal school in the Cape Colony, *ii* 212. (The school then opened did good work for ■ short time, but was soon closed. It had no connection with the present excellent normal school in Capetown, which was opened under Mr. Whitton's management on the 23rd of January 1878.)

**BUCHU :**

is generally used in South Africa as a medicine, *i* 281

**BUENOS AYRES :**

expedition against under Sir Home Popham and Brigadier-General Beresford, *i* 215 *et seq.*

**BUFFALO RIVER MOUTH, ON THE SOUTH-EASTERN COAST OF AFRICA :**

in November 1836 is first used as a place for landing and shipping goods, *ii* 134; in April 1847 supplies for troops are landed there, and from that date the port is constantly used, *ii* 45; see East London

**DU BUIS, COENRAAD :**

is ■ renegade vagabond living with the Xosas, *i* 52; in 1799 takes an active part in the insurrection of the Graaff-Reinet farmers, *i* 53; escapes from the British troops, and for several years lives under Gaika's protection, *i* 56; exercises an evil influence upon Gaika, *i* 72; in 1803 returns to the colony and by Governor Janssens' order goes to reside at Swellendam, *i* 128; in 1815 flees from Swellendam to the neighbourhood of Klaarwater, north of the Orange river, where he becomes ■ freebooter and at the head of a party of Griqua ruffians plunders the Betshuana clans, *i* 307; after a time moves farther northward and spends the remainder of his days on the banks of the Limpopo, *ii* 279

**BUISSINNE, PETRUS STEPHANUS :**

in January 1810 becomes landdrost of Swellendam, *i* 271

**BUKU (CORRECT KAFFIR SPELLING BURU), RIGHT-HAND SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF KAWUTA :**

on the 1st of May 1835 is given by his half-brother Hintsu to Sir Benjamin D'Urban as a hostage for the due fulfilment of terms of peace, *ii* 112; is detained two months, and is then set at liberty, *ii* 117; takes part in the war of 1846-7 against the Cape Colony, and on the 13th of November 1847 cuts off and kills four English officers, *iii* 52; on the 7th of January



1848 concludes peace with Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 62; in 1857 dies of starvation, *iii* 202

**BUNBURY, CHARLES :**

accompanies Sir George Napier to South Africa, *ii* 173

**BUNTINGVILLE MISSION STATION :**

in March 1830 is founded in Pondoland by the reverend Messrs. Boyce and Tainton, of the Wesleyan society, *ii* 52; is abandoned during the Kaffir war of 1834-5, but early in 1836 is reoccupied, *ii* 132

**BURCHELL, W. J. :**

in 1811 and 1812 resides at Griquatown and Lithako, and gives a full account of events there, *i* 271

**BURGER, JACOBUS JOHANNES :**

from 1840 to 1842 is secretary of the volksraad of Natal, *ii* 403; in July 1842 is excepted from the general amnesty agreed to by Colonel Cloete, *ii* 439; a reward of £250 is offered by Sir George Napier for his apprehension, but no one molests him, *ii* 440

**BURGERS, REV. THOMAS FRANÇOIS :**

particulars concerning, *v* 53; on the 1st of July 1872 becomes president of the South African Republic, *v* 54; induces the volksraad to consent to a loan and to commence the construction of a railway to Delagoa Bay, *ib.*

**BURGERSKLOOF, IN THE DISTRICT OF PIKETBERG, CAPE PROVINCE :**

on the 1st of February 1846 the Moravian school is opened at

**BURGHERSDORP, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

in March 1847 is founded, *ii* 247

**BURGHERSDORP, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT :**

in January 1847 the first consistory commences duty, *ii* 247

**BURGHER SENATE :**

in January 1796 is created to perform duties with which the burgher councillors and the committee of the high court of justice were charged under the government of the East India Company, *i* 3; in 1803 is enlarged to seven members, but in 1804 is reduced to five, *i* 119; in January 1828 is abolished, *i* 494

**BURGHERS OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE :**

according to the constitution of 1854 are all persons of European blood who have resided six months in the state; according

to the amended constitution of 1864 are all white persons born in the country, all white persons resident in the country and possessing fixed property to the value of £150 registered in their names, and all white persons resident for three successive years in the country, *iv* 211

**BURGHERS OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

in the early years are all white persons over twenty-one years of age and born within the state, white persons possessing landed property within the state, and white persons of good conduct resident for one year within the state. Those coming within the last two clauses must take an oath of fidelity to the people and the government, obedience to the laws, and fidelity to the independence of the republic before they can claim burgher rights

**BURKE, REV. DR.:**

in 1838 becomes the first Roman catholic clergyman of Grahams-town, *ii* 225

**BURNES, MESSRS.:**

in May 1878 are murdered by insurgents at Daniel's Kuil in Griqualand West, *iv* 428

**BURNET, JOHN:**

in May 1850 becomes clerk to the civil commissioner of Winburg, *iii* 376; in January 1852 is secretary to the British commissioners when concluding the Sand river convention, *ib.*; in February 1854 is left by Sir George Clerk at Bloemfontein as British agent, *iii* 460; in April 1855 is moved by Sir George Grey to Aliwal North as civil commissioner and resident magistrate, *ib.*; in February 1862 is sent with Mr. Joseph M. Orpen to Moshesh to obtain information for the high commissioner, *iv* 200; in February 1864 is sent again as a commissioner to Moshesh, *iv* 217; and induces the chief to consent to the mediation of Sir Philip Wodehouse between the Free State and the Basuto tribe, *ib.*; in October 1865 is sent again as a commissioner to Moshesh to endeavour to obtain compensation in cattle for Ramanela's raid into Natal, *iv* 259; but meets with only partial success, *iv* 260 and 261

**BURNETT, BISHOP:**

particulars concerning his residence in South Africa and his charges against Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 354, 355, 414, and 415

**BURNSHILL MISSION STATION:**

in June 1830 is founded on the upper Keiskama, *ii* 103; is

named after the reverend John Burns, one of the founders of the Glasgow missionary society, *iv* 131; during the war of 1846-7 is abandoned, but on the conclusion of peace is again occupied

BURR-WEED: see *Xanthium spinosum*

BURTON, CLERKE:

on the 1st of January 1828 becomes master of the supreme court of the Cape Colony, *i* 491

BURTON, WILLIAM WESTBROOKE:

on the 1st of January 1828 becomes a judge in the newly established supreme court of the Cape Colony, *i* 491; in November 1832 is transferred to the supreme court of New South Wales, *ii* 46

BUSHMEN:

particulars concerning during the English occupation of the Cape Colony from 1795 to 1803, *i* 7, 35, and 66; particulars concerning during the Batavian administration from 1803 to 1806, *i* 143, 144, 169, 184, and 187; particulars concerning since 1803, *i* 433, 434, 447, 450, 496 *et seq.*; *ii* 322, 467, and 475; *iii* 88, 236, 238, 313, 474, and 483; *iv* 2, 30, 31, 32, 63, 64, 92, 97, 98, 99, 190, and 286; *v* 8, 94, 106, 111, and 113

BUTLER, CAPTAIN THOMAS:

in 1820 brings a party of Irish settlers to the Cape, *i* 352; and is located at Clanwilliam, *i* 354; subsequent movements of the party, *i* 355

BUTTERWORTH MISSION STATION:

in July 1827 is founded by the Wesleyan society, *ii* 52; during the war of 1834-5 is destroyed by the Xosas, *ii* 109; early in 1836 is occupied again, *ii* 132; at the commencement of the war of 1846-7 is abandoned, but in 1848 is reoccupied, when Kreli compensates the Wesleyan society for the damage done, *iii* 62; further particulars concerning, *iv* 44

BUTTON, EDWARD:

in 1869 and 1870 discovers gold in various parts of the South African Republic, *v* 12; in 1871 finds it at Eersteling near Marabastad, *ib.*; is appointed gold commissioner of the South African Republic, *v* 13

BUXTON, FOWELL:

in July 1828 in the house of commons supports the reverend Dr. Philip's views with regard to the coloured people in the

Cape Colony, *i* 506; in 1835 is chairman of a committee of the house of commons appointed to take evidence regarding the aborigines in British settlements, *ii* 137

BUYS, MICHEL, A HALFBREED SON OF COENRAAD DU BUIS:

account of, *iv* 475; collects a number of retainers and as their chief settles in the district of Zoutpansberg, *ib.*

BUYSKES, P. L.:

in October 1871 is appointed sheriff of Griqualand West, *iv* 373; in 1872 is a member of the land commission, *iv* 418

BYRNE, J. C.:

from 1849 to 1852 sends out over four thousand British emigrants to Natal, *iii* 255 and 256

CALDAS, JOÃO PEREIRA DE SOUSA:

in June 1818 is killed in a quarrel with Bantu at Delagoa Bay, *v* 129

CALDAS, JOSÉ ANTONIO, CAPTAIN OF THE FORT AT LOURENÇO MARQUES:

in 1805 obtains from a Bantu chief a cession of a large tract of land, *v* 128

CALDERWOOD, REV. HENRY:

before the war of 1846-7 is a missionary of the London society residing at a station named Birklands, near Fort Beaufort, *iii* 36; in September 1846 becomes the chief adviser of the governor on matters connected with the Xosas, *ib.*; in October is appointed commissioner for the settlement of the Gaika, Imidange, and Tinde clans, and fixes his residence at Blockdrift, *ib.*; in December 1847 becomes the first civil commissioner of Victoria East, *iii* 67

CALEDON BATHS:

account of, *i* 227

CALEDON, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in January 1839 is created, *ii* 228; in March 1848 is made a division, *iii* 70

CALEDON, EARL OF:

is appointed governor of the Cape Colony, *i* 218; on the 22nd of May 1807 assumes the duty, *ib.*; in July 1811 resigns the government and leaves South Africa, *i* 248; just before embarking makes a donation of five thousand rixdollars to the South African orphan asylum, *i* 286; on the 8th of April 1839 dies, *ii* 232



CALEDON RIVER, A TRIBUTARY OF THE ORANGE :

in February 1809 is seen and named by Lieutenant-Colonel Collins,  
i 232

CALEDON, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :

in April 1811 a deputy landdrost of Swellendam is stationed here,  
i 226; in the following month a congregation of the Dutch  
reformed church is formed, i 227; in December 1813 the  
village receives the name Caledon, i 266; in October 1822 the  
subdrostdy is abolished by Lord Charles Somerset, i 382; on  
the 4th of September 1840 becomes a municipality

CALTON, THOMAS :

in 1820 brings a party of British settlers to the Cape Colony,  
i 351

CALVINIA, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :

in August 1855 is created, iii 148

CAMEL, STORESHIP :

on the 20th of September 1799 is unsuccessfully attacked in Algoa  
Bay by a French frigate, i 64

CAMPAGNE, HUBERT DIRK :

in 1796 is arrested for opposition to the government, and is  
sent a prisoner to England, i 10

CAMPBELL DISTRICT, WEST OF THE VAAL RIVER :

dispute between the government of the Orange Free State and  
Mr. David Arnot, agent for the Griqua captain Nicholas Water-  
boer, concerning the ownership of, iv 213 and 338

CAMPBELL, CAPTAIN DUNCAN :

in 1820 brings a party of British settlers to the Cape Colony,  
and is located on the river Zonder End, i 352; subsequent  
movements of the party, i 355; he makes unsuccessful efforts  
to farm with southdown sheep, ii 39; in July 1828 is ap-  
pointed civil commissioner of Somerset and Albany, i 492;  
from March to December 1833 acts as commissioner-general of  
the eastern province, ii 84; in 1834 becomes civil commissioner  
and resident magistrate of Albany, ii 44; in August 1838  
retires on a pension, ii 181

CAMPBELL, REV. JOHN :

in 1813 visits the Griquas and Batlapin on a tour of inspection  
of the stations of the London missionary society, i 272; in  
1813 tries to found a Griqua state, ii 472

**CAMPBELL, JOHN:**

on the 30th of November 1870 is appointed by the high commissioner, under the Cape of Good Hope Punishment Act, special magistrate in all the territory claimed by Mr. Arnot for Nicholas Waterboer, *v* 37; on the 1st of February 1871 obtains a commission as magistrate from Nicholas Waterboer, *ib.*; from April to June 1871 is one of the judges of the arbitration court at Bloemhof, *v* 40; upon the annexation of the diamond-fields to the British dominions is appointed civil commissioner and resident magistrate of the district of Klipdrift, and a member of the executive committee, *iv* 373

**CANE, JOHN:**

in 1824 accompanies Mr. Farewell to Natal, and remains in that country, *ii* 326; in 1828 is sent to Capetown by Tshaka to greet the governor, *ii* 333; after Mr. Farewell's death in September 1829 becomes chief of a party of blacks, *ii* 340; in October 1830 is sent by Dingana with a present of ivory to the governor of the Cape Colony, but is not allowed to proceed farther than Grahamstown, and the present is declined, *ib.*; he returns to Natal, *ii* 341; in November 1837 he accompanies Pieter Retief from Port Natal to the Tugela on the way to Umkungunhlovu, *ii* 354; early in April 1838 takes part in an attack upon Dingana's army, *ii* 369; and on the 17th of that month is killed in battle with the Zulus, *ii* 373

**CANNIBALISM AMONG THE BANTU IN SOUTH AFRICA:**

particulars concerning this practice following the wars of Tshaka, *i* 447 and 451; is resorted to in some instances by the starving Xosas after the delusion of Nongqause in 1857, *iii* 205; is practised by some Basuto ■ late ■ 1867, *iv* 309

**CAPE COLONY:**

on the 16th of September 1795 is surrendered to the British forces, *i* 1; attitude of the people of the country districts towards the new authorities, *ib.*; conciliatory conduct of the English commanders, *ib.*; in February 1803 is restored to the Batavian Republic, *i* 111; condition at the close of 1805 for defensive purposes, *i* 189 *et seq.*; in January 1806 is retaken by British forces, *i* 197 *et seq.*; in 1814 is ceded by the sovereign prince of the Netherlands to Great Britain, *i* 216 to 220; census of 1865, *iv* 42; imports and exports from 1862 to 1867, *iv* 93 and 94; imports and exports from 1868 to 1872, *iv* 151; see Extension

CAPE COPPER MINING COMPANY :

account of the, *iii* 87

CAPE CROSS :

note on, *v* 119

CAPE, DISTRICT OF :

in March 1824 is slightly enlarged, *i* 382

CAPE MOUNTED RIFLEMEN :

in 1851 many of the Hottentot soldiers desert and join the enemy, *iii* 102; after the rebellion in 1851 the regiment is largely filled up with Europeans, *iii* 197; in 1870 it is disbanded, *iii* 149; see Hottentot regiment

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE BANK :

in August 1837 is established in Capetown, *ii* 168; in September 1890 is closed, *ii* 169

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE FIRE ASSURANCE COMPANY :

in 1835 is founded in Capetown, *ii* 225

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE MARINE ASSURANCE COMPANY :

in 1838 is founded in Capetown, *ii* 225

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE PUNISHMENT ACT :

in August 1836 is passed by the imperial parliament at the instance of Lord Glenelg, *ii* 147; provisions of, *ii* 349

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE TELEGRAPH COMPANY :

particulars concerning, *iv* 11

CAPE PARLIAMENT :

on the 30th of June 1854 meets for the first time, *iii* 140; names of the first members of the legislative council and of the house of assembly, *iii* 139; proceedings during the session of 1861, *iv* 7 to 11; during the session of 1862, *iv* 23 to 28; during the session of 1863, *iv* 32 to 34; during the session of 1864, *iv* 35 to 37; during the session of 1865, *iv* 72 to 74; during the session of 1866, *iv* 79 to 82; during the session of 1867, *iv* 85 to 93; during the session of 1868, *iv* 96; during the session of 1869, *iv* 100 to 103; during the session of 1870, *iv* 106 to 109 and *v* 61; during the session of 1871, *iv* 115 to 132 and *v* 66 to 69; during the session of 1872, *iv* 134 to 145 and 398 to 401; increase in 1865 of the number of members of both houses, *iv* 75; in the session of 1877. *iv* 422 and 423; in 1875 declares it advisable to annex the western coast as far as Walfish Bay, *v* 107; in the session

of 1884 passes an act to annex Walfish Bay to the Cape Colony, *v* 116; in July 1884 approves of the annexation to the colony of the coast line of Hereroland and Great Namaqualand, *v* 124

**CAPETOWN :**

population in 1800, *i* 78; population at the close of 1802, *i* 105; population in 1805, *i* 189; in April 1814 the military lines become the southern boundary, *i* 225; particulars concerning the water supply, *i* 245; in May 1809 the principal streets are first lit at night with oil lamps, *i* 246; during the government of Sir Lowry Cole great changes are made in its appearance, *ii* 16; on the 3rd of March 1840 is created a municipality, *ii* 168; is considerably improved in appearance during the government of Sir George Napier, *ii* 227; in 1846 the streets are first lit by gas, *ii* 245; in 1848 the botanic garden is resuscitated, *iii* 89; in the same year a carriage road is constructed from Sea Point to Camp's Bay and over the kloof to Capetown, *iii* 90; population in 1865, *iv* 42; in 1867 is ravaged by fever, *iv* 83 and 84

**CAPITULATION OF THE CAPE COLONY TO THE BRITISH FORCES IN JANUARY 1806 :**

terms of, *i* 201 and 204

**DE CARDENAS, LUPE, CAPTAIN OF THE FORT AT LOURENÇO MARQUES :**

in 1823 is murdered by Bantu, and nearly the whole of the force under his command perishes, *v* 136

**CARDWELL, RIGHT HON. MR., SECRETARY OF STATE FOR THE COLONIES :**

in August 1864 resolves to withdraw British dominion from the Transkeian territories, *iv* 48

**CAREL RUYTERS, KORANA CAPTAIN :**

account of, *iv* 97

**CARLYLE, REV. MR., ENGLISH CLERGYMAN AT GRAHAMSTOWN :**

on the 12th of July 1828 arrives from England

**CARNALL, JOHN :**

particulars of the causes of his becoming an opponent of Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 422

**CARNARVON, EARL :**

on the 6th of July 1866 succeeds Mr. Cardwell ■ secretary of state for the colonies, *iv* 157; in 1876 arranges the long dispute with the Orange Free State concerning the diamond-fields, *iv* 421; in January 1878 makes known the views of the imperial government regarding Hereroland and Great Namaqualand, *v* 114 to 116



CASA, PETTY CAPTAIN OF THE AMAMBALA CLAN OF THE XOSA TRIBE:  
in December 1834 attacks a military patrol, but is called back  
by his chief, *ii* 88; as ■ punishment is required by Colonel  
Somerset to leave the ceded territory, *ib.*

CASALIS, REV. EUGENE, OF THE PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY:  
in June 1833 with his colleagues founds the mission station Morija  
in Basutoland, *i* 469

CASTLE STEAMSHIP COMPANY:  
particulars concerning, *iv* 149

CATHCART, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL THE HONOURABLE GEORGE:  
is appointed governor of the Cape Colony and high commissioner,  
*iii* 107; on the 31st of March 1852 arrives and takes the  
oaths of office, *iii* 108; in November with a strong army  
marches from the Kaffir frontier to the Orange River Sovereignty  
to restore British prestige there, *iii* 334; on the 14th of  
December sends an ultimatum to Moshesh, *iii* 335; with the  
terms of which the chief only partially complies, *iii* 336; ■  
on the 20th of December the army enters Basutoland, *iii* 337;  
and is defeated in the battle of Berea, *iii* 340; the general,  
however, accepts ■■ overture from Moshesh, declares peace,  
and returns with the troops to the Cape Colony, *iii* 342;  
on the 26th of May 1854 leaves the colony to return to Europe,  
*iii* 140; is killed in the battle of Inkerman, *iii* 114

CATHERINE, BRITISH BARQUE:  
on the 5th of October 1846 is wrecked at Waterloo Bay, *iii* 23

CATTLE DAMARAS: see Hereros

CATTLE DISEASES:  
mention of, *i* 159, 160, 162, 167, 169, 171; *iii* 151 *et seq.*;  
*iv* 164; ■ 104; see Lamsickness, Lungsickness, Redwater, and  
Strangury

CAUSES OF THE GREAT EMIGRATION OF DUTCH-SPEAKING PEOPLE FROM  
THE CAPE COLONY ■ AND AFTER 1836, *ii* 266 *et seq.*

CEDARBERGEN:  
timber obtained from, *i* 170

CENSUS OF BRITISH KAFFRARIA AT VARIOUS PERIODS: ■■ British  
Kaffraria

CENSUS RETURNS OF THE CAPE COLONY:  
of 1805, *i* 188; of 1819, *i* 319; of 1854, *iii* 142; of 1865,  
*iv* 42 and 43

CENSUS IN 1835 OF BANTU BETWEEN THE FISH AND KEI RIVERS  
SOUTH OF THE AMATOLA RANGE, *ii* 131

CESSION OF THE CAPE COLONY IN 1814 TO GREAT BRITAIN BY THE  
SOVEREIGN PRINCE OF THE NETHERLANDS:  
particulars concerning, *i* 277 to 279

CETYWAYO, CHIEF OF THE ZULUS: see Ketshwayo

CHALMERS, E. B.:

in February 1871 is appointed resident with the Tembu chief  
Gangelizwe

CHALMERS, REV. WILLIAM, MISSIONARY AT THE TYUMIE:

in December 1834 is required by the chief Tyali to act as his  
secretary, *ii* 90; on the 20th of January 1835 is rescued by  
a military patrol, *ii* 99; at the close of the war returns to  
his station at the Tyumie, *ii* 131

CHALMERS, WILLIAM B.:

from September 1861 to the end of 1864 is special magistrate  
at Idutywa, *iv* 45

CHAMPION, REV. MR., AMERICAN MISSIONARY:

in February 1836 assists to found the first mission station in  
Natal, *ii* 348; in April 1838 leaves Natal owing to the  
disturbances there, and never returns, *ii* 374

CHAPMAN, WILLIAM:

in August 1878 is murdered at Kuruman, *iv* 430

CHARLOTTE, TRANSPORT SHIP:

on the 20th of September 1854 is lost in Algoa Bay, when over  
a hundred persons perish, *iii* 145

CHARTER OF JUSTICE OF THE CAPE COLONY:

provisions of the first, which came in force on the 1st of January  
1823, *i* 490; and of the second, which came in force on the  
1st of March 1834, *ii* 45

CHARTERS, MAJOR SAMUEL, MILITARY SECRETARY TO SIR GEORGE  
NAPIER:

in November 1838 is sent with a body of troops to occupy Port  
Natal, *ii* 385; constructs a stockaded camp there which he  
names Fort Victoria, *ib.*; takes possession of all the ammunition  
in store at the port, *ii* 386; as soon as the troops are settled  
returns to Capetown, leaving Captain Henry Jervis in command,  
*ib.*

CHASE, JOHN CENTLIVRES :

in January 1848 becomes the first civil commissioner of Albert,  
iii 70 .

CHASE *VERSUS* FAIRBAIRN :

particulars of an action for libel in the *Commercial Advertiser*,  
ii 161

CHILDREN'S FRIEND SOCIETY :

particulars concerning, ii 193

CHRISTIAN, EWAN :

in October 1851 is appointed ■ member of the legislative council  
of the Cape Colony, iii 128

CHRISTIAN, REAR ADMIRAL HUGH CLOBBERRY :

in March 1798 assumes command of the fleet on the Cape station,  
i 46 ; on the 23rd of November 1798 dies, i 50

CHRISTIAN AFRIKANER :

succeeds his father Jonker ■■ captain of ■ Hottentot clan in  
Great Namaqualand, v 97 ; in June 1863 attacks Otjimbingue,  
and is killed in the action, ib.

CHRISTOPHERS, JOSEPH H. :

in 1843 inaugurates a system of immigration by which ■ few  
artisans arrive at Port Elizabeth, ii 193

CHRONICLE AND MERCANTILE ADVERTISER, THE SOUTH AFRICAN :

on the 18th of August 1824 is first published in Capetown, ■  
418 ; and continues in existence until the end of 1826, i 419

CHURCH BUILDING, DUTCH REFORMED, IN TABLE VALLEY :

in 1836 the greater part of the building erected at the com-  
mencement of the eighteenth century is broken down for the  
purpose of enlargement, and in 1841 the present edifice on the  
same site is opened for use, ii 227

CHURCHES IN THE CAPE COLONY : see Dutch reformed, Ecclesiastical  
statistics, English episcopal, Wesleyan, &c.

CHURCH ORDINANCE OF COMMISSIONER-GENERAL DE MIST : see Dutch  
reformed church

CILLIERS, CAREL, A PIOUS FARMER OF PURITAN SIMPLICITY :

accompanies the second large body of emigrants from the Cape  
Colony, ii 285 ; is one of a party that between May and  
September 1836 explores the country from the Vaal river to the  
Zoutpansberg, ii 288 ; in October takes ■ leading part in the

defence of the camp at Vechtkop when attacked by the Matabele, *ii* 292; in January 1837 accompanies a commando which defeats the Matabele at Mosega, *ii* 301; in November of the same year takes part in the expedition that drives the Matabele beyond the Limpopo, *ii* 319; is one of the ablest and most valiant warriors in the commando that on the 16th of December 1838 inflicts a crushing defeat upon Dingana, *ii* 382

**CIRCUIT COURT:**

in 1811 is first established in the Cape Colony, *i* 259; proceedings of the circuit in 1812 of judges of the high court of justice, when charges against colonists made by missionaries of the London society are investigated, *i* 262

**CIRCUIT COURT OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

■ constituted in 1854, *iii* 445

**CITY OF PETERBOROUGH, BARQUE:**

on the 17th of May 1865 is lost in Table Bay with all on board, *iv* 77

**CIVIL COMMISSIONERS:**

■ the 1st of January 1828 ■ first appointed to divisions in the Cape Colony, *i* 492; in 1834 the office is united with that of resident magistrate, *ii* 44

**CIVIL SERVANTS:**

improvement in the method of payment of introduced in 1797, *i* 34

**CIVIL STRIFE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

in September 1860 commences, *iv* 443; and in May 1864 ends with the election ■ president of Mr. Marthinus Wessel Pretorius, *iv* 453

**CLAIM TO A LARGE PORTION OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE MADE BY MR. DAVID ARNOT ON BEHALF OF THE GRIQUA CAPTAIN NICHOLAS WATERBOER:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 214

**CLANWILLIAM, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

■ the 1st of January 1837 is separated from Worcester, having previously been only ■ sub-district, *ii* 166

**CLANWILLIAM, VILLAGE OF:**

in February 1808 a deputy landdrost of Tulbagh is stationed at this place, then called Jan-Dissels-Vlei, *i* 224; in January 1814 it receives the name Clanwilliam, *i* 266; in November 1831 it is provided with a clergyman of the Dutch reformed church



CLARKEBURY MISSION STATION:

in April 1830 is founded in Tembuland by the Wesleyan society, *ii* 52; during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is abandoned, but early in 1836 is reoccupied, *ii* 132

CLARKSON, MORAVIAN MISSION STATION:

in 1838 is founded for the benefit of Fingos at Zitzikama, *ii* 177

CLEGHORN, J.:

on the 4th of November 1850 is appointed magistrate of the Umvoti location in Natal, *iii* 234

CLERGYMEN IN THE CAPE COLONY:

are unanimously opposed to the great emigration in 1836 and later, *ii* 273

CLERK, SIR GEORGE RUSSELL:

on the 6th of April 1853 is appointed special commissioner for the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 349; on the 8th of August arrives in Bloemfontein, *ib.*; on the 9th calls upon the inhabitants of the Sovereignty to elect delegates to take over the government, *iii* 351; on the 5th of September the delegates meet in Bloemfontein, but refuse to take over the government except under conditions to which the special commissioner cannot agree, *ib.*; the republican party, however, offers to comply with his wishes, *iii* 353; in December he has an interview with Moshesh, but makes no arrangements with him, *iii* 355; he investigates charges against the emigrant farmers made by missionaries, *iii* 356; on the 19th of January 1854 invites delegates from the republican party to meet in Bloemfontein, *iii* 361; on the 23rd of February signs the convention by which the Orange River Sovereignty ceases to exist, *iii* 364; he is unable to induce Adam Kok to come to any arrangement, *iii* 366; on the 11th of March with the British troops and officials he leaves Bloemfontein for Capetown, *iii* 367; and he then declares the treaty with Adam Kok null and void, *iii* 368

CLOETE, CAPTAIN ABRAHAM JOSIAS:

is commandant at Tristan da Cunha from November 1816 to May 1817, *i* 304; (Lieutenant-Colonel) in June 1842 is sent from Capetown with troops to succour the British force beleaguered in Natal, *ii* 428; and succeeds in that object, *ib.*; calls upon the farmers to submit to the queen's authority, *ii* 438; on the 15th of July receives the submission of the volksraad, *ii* 439; and then returns to Capetown, leaving Major Smith in command of the troops in Natal, *ib.*

**CLOETE, ADVOCATE HENRY:**

on the 12th of May 1843 is sent to Natal as a commissioner to collect information, *ii* 444; on the 8th of August receives the submission of the volksraad to the conditions imposed by the secretary of state for the colonies, *ii* 451; on the 1st of October visits Panda, *ii* 454; and obtains that chief's consent to a new boundary between Zululand and Natal, *ib.*; at the same time obtains from Panda the cession of St. Lucia Bay to the queen of England, *ii* 455; on the 13th of November 1845 is appointed recorder of Natal, *ii* 462; on the 8th of November 1855 becomes third puisne judge in the supreme court of the Cape Colony, *iii* 148

**CLOETE, PIETER LAURENS:**

is one of the first unofficial members of the legislative council of the Cape Colony established in 1834, *ii* 48

**COAST TRIBES OF BANTU AT THE BEGINNING OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY:**

enumeration of, *i* 428

**COAT OF ARMS OF THE CITY OF CAPE TOWN:**

in July 1804 is adopted, *i* 174

**COAT OF ARMS OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

description of, *iii* 430

**COAT OF ARMS OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

description of, *iv* 436

**COBBE, CAPTAIN:**

in 1865 is stationed with the Fingos in the Transkeian territory, *iv* 53; further mention of, *iv* 59; in May 1849 is withdrawn, *iv* 60

**COCK, WILLIAM:**

makes great efforts to improve the mouth of the Kowie river, *ii* 200 and *iii* 169; in October 1847 becomes a member of the legislative council of the Cape Colony, *ii* 240; when assisting in the preparation of the constitution urges the separation of the two provinces or the removal of the seat of government to the east, *iii* 127

**COCKBURN MAJOR JAMES, AIDE-DE-CAMP TO SIR GEORGE YONGE:**

evidence against at the investigation into the governor's conduct, *i* 83

**COCKBURN, REAR ADMIRAL SIR GEORGE:**

commands on the Cape station from October 1815 to June 1816,  
i 302

**COFFEE:**

cultivation of in Natal, iii 261 and iv 163; Exports, iii 205

**COLD BOKKEVELD:**

description of, i 160

**COLE, ELDRÉD MOWBRAY:**

on the 1st of May 1847 is appointed Tembu commissioner, and is stationed at Shiloh, iii 59; (auditor general) in 1871 signs a memorandum in antagonism to the introduction of responsible government in the Cape Colony, iv 118

**COLE, SIR GALBRAITH LOWRY:**

on the 20th of March 1828 appointed governor of the Cape Colony, and on the 9th of September assumes the duty, i 509; after administration of nearly five years resigns, and on the 10th of August 1833 embarks for England, ii 29; on the 4th of October 1842 dies, ii 232

**COLEBROOKE, MAJOR:** see Commissioners of inquiry

**COLENBRANDER, T. W.:**

is the head of the Dutch settlement at New Gelderland in Natal, iv 158

**COLENZO, THE RIGHT REVEREND DR. JOHN WILLIAM:**

on the 30th of January 1854 arrives in Natal as first bishop of the English church, iii 262; particulars of the celebrated of, iv 172 and 173

**COLESBERG, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

on the 6th of February 1837 is created, ii 164

**COLESBERG, VILLAGE OF:**

in November 1830 is founded, i 406; in March 1836 is first provided with a resident clergyman, i 405; on the 19th of June 1840 becomes a municipality

**COLLECTOR, PRIVATEER:**

slave dealing by in 1799 and 1800, i 84

**COLLEY, LIEUTENANT GEORGE POMEROY:**

in 1855 lays out the Pensioners' village in King-Williamstown, iii 193; from September 1858 to May 1860 is special magistrate at Idutywa, iv 45

**COLLINS, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL RICHARD :**

in 1808 and 1809 visits various parts of South Africa, and sends in some valuable reports and recommendations, *i* 231 *et seq.*

**COLLIS, JAMES :**

in August 1831 settles at Port Natal, *ii* 342; in 1835 is killed there by an explosion of gunpowder, *ii* 343

**COLONIAL BANK :**

in 1844 is established in Capetown, *ii* 242

**COLQUHOUN, ARCHIBALD :**

is the first administrator of Mashonaland, *v* 155; further mention of, *v* 157

**COMMANDO LAW :**

particulars concerning the ordinance of June 1833, which was disallowed by the imperial government, *ii* 27

**COMMANDOS ENTERING KAFFIRLAND TO MAKE REPRISALS FOR STOLEN CATTLE :**

account of one in 1813 under Captain Fraser, *i* 322; of one in 1817 under the same officer, *i* 323; of one under Major Jones towards the end of 1821, *i* 363; of one in November 1824 against Makoma under Captain the honourable John Massey, *ii* 1; of one in December 1825 against Susa, *ii* 2; and of one in June 1830 against some petty captains under Makoma and Tyali, *ii* 53

**COMMERCE AT DELAGOA BAY ■ 1823 :**

description of, *v* 130

**COMMERCE WITH THE XOSAS :**

in April 1817 it is arranged by Lord Charles Somerset and Gaika that twice a year parties of Xosas may visit Grahamstown for trading purposes, *i* 324; from 1821 to 1830 trade is carried on by means of fairs at Fort Willshire, *i* 364; and by illicit dealers, *ib.*; but after 1830 traders are licensed to enter Kaffirland, *i* 365; description of the method of conducting barter, *ii* 52

**COMMERCIAL ADVERTISER, THE SOUTH AFRICAN :**

on the 7th of January 1824 is first published in Capetown, *i* 417; on the 8th of May is suppressed by order of Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 418; with Earl Bathurst's permission, on the 31st of August 1825 is commenced again, *i* 420; on the 10th of May 1827 is suppressed by the government for the second time, *ii* 14; but on the 3rd of October 1828 is again issued, *ii* 15; during the war of 1834-5 creates irritation on the



frontier of the Cape Colony by advocating the Kaffir cause, ii 93; is the organ of the party opposed to Sir Benjamin D'Urban's arrangements after the close of the war, ii 136; supports the measures carried out by Lieutenant-Governor Stockenstrom, ii 155; note upon, ii 156; in the war of 1846-7 advocates the same principles as all other colonial newspapers, iii 63

COMMERCIAL CRISIS IN NATAL IN 1865:

particulars concerning, iv 171

COMMERCIAL EXCHANGE IN CAPETOWN:

in 1819 is founded, i 366

COMMISSION ON BASUTO LAWS AND CUSTOMS:

in August 1872 is appointed, v 78; in December sends in a report, which afterwards serves as a handbook, v 79

COMMISSION TO CARRY OUT IMPROVEMENTS IN AGRICULTURE AND STOCK-BREEDING:

in May 1804 is appointed, i 158; account of its proceedings, i 159 *et seq.*

COMMISSIONER-GENERAL FOR THE EASTERN PROVINCE OF THE CAPE COLONY:

in January 1828 this office is created, i 492; but from the 1st of January 1834 it is abolished, ii 84

COMMISSIONERS OF INQUIRY:

are sent out by the imperial government, and in July 1823 arrive in South Africa, i 397; account of their proceedings, ib.

COMMUNAL RESPONSIBILITY:

Bantu ideas regarding, iii 244

COMPARISON OF THE MILITARY STRENGTH IN 1865 OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE AND THE BASUTO TRIBE, iv 228

CONCORDIA COPPER MINE:

account of the, iii 87

CONDITION OF THE BANTU TRIBES BETWEEN THE LIMPOPO AND THE ZAMBESI IN 1854, iii 411

CONFERENCE AT JAMMERBERG DRIFT ON THE 7TH OF OCTOBER 1864, AT WHICH THE FREE STATE AND BASUTO COMMISSIONERS LAY STATEMENTS OF THEIR CASES BEFORE SIR PHILIP WODEHOUSE, iv 219

CONSISTORIES OF THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH:

constitution of, ii 222

**CONSTANTIA WINE :**

for a long time sixty aams are claimed every year by the government at a fixed price, *i* 74

**CONSTITUTION OF THE CAPE COLONY :**

proceedings connected with the framing of the, *iii* 119 to 134;  
particulars concerning, *iii* 135

**CONSTITUTION AMENDMENT ACT (INTRODUCTION OF RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT) :**

particulars concerning its adoption by the house of assembly and rejection by the legislative council of the Cape Colony in 1871, *iv* 126; in April 1872 it is again brought before the Cape parliament, *iv* 136; in June is passed by both houses, *iv* 139; in August is approved by the queen, and on the 28th of November is promulgated by proclamation, *iv* 146

**CONSTITUTION OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE :**

in March and April 1854 is framed by the volksraad, *iii* 443;  
in 1864 is amended, *iv* 211

**CONSTITUTION OF NINE ARTICLES :**

on the 6th of June 1837 ■ adopted by the emigrant farmers at Winburg, *ii* 306

**CONSTITUTION OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC :**

in December 1856 is framed by an assembly of delegates representing the districts of Potchefstroom, Rustenburg, and Pretoria, *iii* 423

**CONSTITUTION OF NATAL :**

particulars concerning, *iii* 268

**CONSTRUCTION OF ROADS IN THE CAPE COLONY BY CONVICT LABOUR :**

particulars of the system introduced in 1843, *ii* 230

**CONVENTION OF BLOEMFONTEIN OF THE 23RD OF FEBRUARY 1854 :**

terms of, *iii* 364

**CONVICTS :**

successful resistance by the Cape colonists to the introduction of, *iii* 72

**COODE, SIR JOHN :**

designs as a marine engineer the harbour works in Table Bay, *iii* 168 and *iv* 10; in 1870 furnishes plans for the improvement of East London, Port Alfred, and Algoa Bay, *iv* 111

**COOKE, LAUNCELOT :**

is a formidable opponent of Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 424

**COOPER, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL HENRY :**

from the 3rd of March 1855 to the 5th of November 1856 acts  
■ lieutenant-governor of Natal, *iii* 228

**COPPER :**

in 1837 is procurable at the Zoutpansberg, *ii* 280 ; is found in  
great abundance in Little Namaqualand, *iii* 84 ; wild specula-  
tion in mining there, *iii* 85 ; progressive exportation of copper  
ore, *iii* 87

**COPPER COIN :**

value of in 1800 in South Africa, *i* 2

**CORNELIS OASIB, CHIEF OF THE RED NATION (HOTTENTOTS) ■ GREAT  
NAMAQUALAND :**

mention of, *v* 97

**DA COSTA, JOSÉ MARQUES, CAPTAIN OF SOFALA :**

in 1836 is killed in battle with the Matshangana, *v* 139

**COTTERILL, RIGHT REVEREND DR. HENRY :**

in May 1857 becomes bishop of Grahamstown, *iii* 144

**COTTON PLANTING IN NATAL :**

account of experiments in, *iii* 259 and *iv* 163 ; ■ small quantity  
is exported, *iii* 265

**COTTON :**

experiments in the cultivation of in the Cape Colony, *iv* 112 ;  
quantities exported from 1867 to 1871, *ib.*

**COUNCIL OF ADVICE :**

in 1825 is created in the Cape Colony, *i* 398 ; constitution,  
powers, and duties of, *ib.* ; in 1828 two officials having seats  
in this council are replaced by two colonists nominated by the  
governor and approved of by the secretary of state for the  
colonies, *i* 494 ; in 1834 the council of advice is superseded by  
the creation of distinct executive and legislative councils, *ii* 47

**COUNTY COUNCILS :**

in 1854 are created in Natal, *iii* 267 ; in 1857 ■■ abolished,  
*iv* 165

**COURT OF COMMISSIONERS FOR THE TRIAL OF PETTY CASES IN THE CAPE  
DISTRICT :**

in March 1809 is abolished, and a court of landdrost and heem-  
raden is substituted, *i* 225

**COURTS OF APPEAL IN THE CAPE COLONY :**

particulars concerning, *i* 33

**COURTS OF JUSTICE IN NATAL:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 165

**COURTS OF LANDDROST AND HEEMRADEN IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

in 1797 have their powers enlarged, *i* 33; on the 1st of January 1828 are abolished, and in their stead civil commissioners and resident magistrates are appointed, *i* 492

**COURT OF VICE ADMIRALTY:**

in 1797 is established in Capetown, *i* 34; and again in 1806; on the 1st of January 1828 it is abolished, and its duties are transferred to the chief justice of the colony, *i* 490

**COWAN, DR.:**

with Lieutenant Donovan in 1808 leads an exploring expedition into the interior, and perishes, *i* 228

**COWIE, DR.:**

with Mr. Benjamin Green in 1829 travels from the Cape Colony by way of Natal to Delagoa Bay, *ii* 340; and perishes of fever when trying to return, *ib.*

**COWIE, WILLIAM:**

in May 1838 is appointed fieldcornet of Port Natal, *ii* 377; on the 22nd of December 1844 is appointed first postmaster at Durban, *ii* 461

**COX, MAJOR WILLIAM:**

in January 1835, during the sixth Kaffir war, commands the patrol that commences operations against the Xosas, *ii* 96; in March commands one of the four divisions of the army which enters Kaffirland, *ii* 102; five months later assists in the conference by which the war is brought to an end, *ii* 121

**CRADOCK, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

on the 6th of February 1837 is created, *ii* 164

**CRADOCK, VILLAGE OF:**

in July 1812 a deputy landdrost of Graaff-Reinet is stationed at this place, *i* 257; which in January 1814 receives the name Cradock, *ib.*; in June 1818 a congregation of the Dutch reformed church is established, *i* 258; in March 1825 the sub-drostdy is abolished, *i* 394

**CRADOCK, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR JOHN FRANCIS:**

appointed governor of the Cape Colony, and in September 1811 assumes the duty, *i* 249; in 1813 makes a tour through the colony, *i* 266; requests permission to return to England, *i* 274; in April 1814 transfers the government to Lord Charles Somerset, and on the 1st of May leaves South Africa, *ib.*

CRAIG, MAJOR-GENERAL JAMES HENRY:

is appointed by Admiral Elphinstone and General Clarke commandant of the town and settlement of the Cape of Good Hope, *i* 6; and on the 15th of November 1795 becomes head of the Cape government with this title, *ib.*; in May 1797 transfers the administration to Lord Macartney, and proceeds to Bengal, *i* 27

CRAIG, JOHN MOORE:

from the 10th of June 1841 to the 23rd of April 1843 acts as secretary to government in the Cape Colony, *ii* 214

CROWN LAND IN NATAL:

in 1856 is offered to settlers on military tenure, *iii* 257

DA CRUZ, JOAQUIM JOSÉ: see Nyaude

DA CRUZ, ANTONIO VICENTE: see Bonga

CUMMING, THOMAS A.:

in October 1869 is appointed superintendent at Idutywa, *iv* 60

CUNGWA, CHIEF OF THE GUNUKWEBE CLAN OF XOSAS:

in January 1812 is killed in war, *i* 255

CUNYNGHAME, GENERAL SIR ARTHUR:

in 1875 accompanies a military force sent to the diamond-fields to restore order, *iv* 417

CURRIE, SIR DONALD:

in 1876 assists very materially in the arrangement of matters between Great Britain and the Orange Free State, *iv* 421

CURRIE, SIR WALTER:

in 1855 is appointed commandant of the frontier armed and mounted police, *iii* 148; in August 1857 breaks up a Tembu robber band, *iii* 215; mention of, *iv* 47, 48, and 49; in March 1861 visits the Pondo chief Faku, who offers to cede Nomansland to the Cape government, *iv* 66; in March 1862 visits Nomansland to try to arrange the western boundary of Natal, *iv* 67; in 1865 assists in laying down the southern boundary of Natal, *iv* 166; on the 14th of March 1868 is appointed high commissioner's agent in Basutoland, *iv* 304; in 1869 with one hundred and fifty of the frontier armed and mounted police is sent to the northern border to conduct operations against the Koranas, *iv* 98; where his health breaks down, so that he is forced to retire, *iv* 99; in June 1872 dies, *ib.*



CURTIS, VICE ADMIRAL SIR ROGER :

in December 1799 assumes command of the fleet on the Cape station, *i* 71

CUSTOMS DUTIES :

■ levied under the government of General Craig, *i* 31; as levied during the remainder of the first British occupation, *i* 32; as levied under the Batavian administration, *i* 106; as established in 1806, *i* 214; ■ established in 1808, 1810, and 1813, *i* 272; ■ established in 1822, *i* 373; particulars concerning various changes between 1834 and 1850, *ii* 205; particulars concerning the great changes that came in force on the 4th of May 1855, *iii* 149; in 1864 they are increased to ten per cent. *ad valorem*, *iv* 35; particulars concerning the customs duties of British Kaffraria, *iii* 224; particulars concerning the customs duties of Natal, *iii* 264 and *iv* 161; customs duties at Portuguese ports on the eastern coast after 1853, *v* 142

CUYLER, CAPTAIN JACOB GLEN :

in January 1806 becomes landdrost of Uitenhage, *i* 212; in 1815 commands the combined military and burgher forces against a party of insurgents, *i* 295; acts as public prosecutor at the trial of the insurgents, *i* 298; on the 14th of April 1854 dies at Cuyler Manor in Uitenhage

DALASILE, HEAD OF THE AMAKWATI CLANS OF THE TEMBU TRIBE :  
particulars concerning, *iv* 56 and 58

DAMARALAND :

the coast is examined in 1879 by her Majesty's ship *Swallow* without finding ■ landing place north of Walfish Bay, *v* 118

DAMARA TRIBE : see Hereros

DANE, UNION COMPANY'S STEAMER :

on the 1st of December 1865 is wrecked near Cape Recife, *iv* 78

DANIELL, LIEUTENANT RICHARD :

is one of the early breeders of merino sheep in the district of Albany, *ii* 40

DANIELL, SAMUEL, ARTIST :

in 1801 visits the Batlapin country, and makes portraits of animals and pictures of scenes there, *i* 99

DANSER, DAVID, BUSHMAN CAPTAIN :

in 1839 sells a tract of land containing the present diamond mines at Kimberley and Dutoitspan to David Stephanus Fourie *ii*

496; in 1849 is provided by the Sovereignty government with ■ location along the southern bank of the Vaal river, *iii* 310; on the abandonment of the Sovereignty by the British government in February 1854 is left in an independent position, *iii* 442; disposes of farms in the location assigned to him, *iii* 445; in September 1854 is at war with the Korana captain Goliath Yzerbek, *iii* 455; expels his opponent from their joint location, *ib.*; is compelled by the Free State government to restore his booty and permit Goliath to return, *ib.*; in 1858 aids the Free State against Scheel Kobus and Goliath Yzerbek, *iii* 487

DANSER, JAN:

in 1859 sells to the Free State the location along the Vaal assigned by the Sovereignty government to his deceased father David Danser, *iv* 183

DARALA, TEMBU CHIEF:

particulars concerning, *iv* 50 and 54

DARLING, CHARLES HENRY, ESQRE.:

is appointed lieutenant-governor of the Cape Colony, *iii* 107; ■ the 24th of March 1852 arrives in Capetown, *iii* 108; acts ■ head of the Cape government from the 26th of May to the 5th of December 1854, *iii* 140 and 145

DAUMAS, REV. MR., OF THE PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY:

in 1837 commences a mission at Mekuatleng with the Bataung under Molitsane, *ii* 464; action of in 1869 in association with Mr. D. D. Buchanan, *iv* 323

DAVID CHRISTIAN, CAPTAIN OF THE |AMAUQA, AN IMMIGRANT HOTTENTOT CLAN LIVING AT BETHANY IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:

mention of, *v* 95, 102, and 112; on the 11th of November 1880 is killed in battle with the Hereros at New Barmen, *v* 122

DAVIDS, PETER:

succeeds Barend Barends as captain of a clan of Griquas, *i* 481; and in December 1833 is induced by Wesleyan missionaries to settle with his people at Lishuane, *i* 482; in 1834 while hunting along the Vaal river is surprised by a party of Matabele soldiers, who carry off his daughter and a nephew, *i* 484; in January 1837 assists the emigrant farmers against the Matabele, *ii* 300; complains of the injustice done to him by the treaty of 1843 between Sir George Napier and the Basuto chief Moshesh, *ii* 483; in June 1846 assists Major Warden to disperse the adherents of Jan Kock, *ii* 500; shortly after this event the members of his little clan move away in different directions, and he ceases to be of any importance, *ii* 501

## DAVIDSON, J. C., TREASURER-GENERAL:

in 1871 signs a memorandum in antagonism to the introduction of responsible government in the Cape Colony, *iv* 118; in December 1872, upon the introduction of responsible government, retires on pension, *iv* 147

## DAVID WITBOOI, CAPTAIN OF THE HOTTENTOT CLAN AT GIBEON IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:

mention of, *v* 103

## DAVIES, LIEUTENANT DAVID, OF THE 90TH REGIMENT:

in January 1847 is appointed superintendent of Kaffir police, and is stationed at Alice, *iii* 43

## DAVIS, REV. W. J., WESLEYAN MISSIONARY AT CLARKEBURY:

in April 1835 during the Kaffir war is rescued by a military patrol, *ii* 111

## DAWSON, WILLIAM:

in July 1822 arrives from Scotland, and is appointed teacher of the high school at George, *i* 371

## DEBT, COLONIAL PUBLIC:

is paid off during the government of Sir George Napier and Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 198

## DE CAEN, GENERAL:

on the 3rd of December 1810 surrenders the island of Mauritius to an English force, *i* 243

## DEFENSIVE FORCE OF THE CAPE COLONY IN 1872:

particulars concerning, *iv* 149

## DELAGOA BAY:

events in 1796 and 1797 at, *i* 20; in 1829 is visited by an exploring expedition from the Cape Colony, *ii* 340; condition of the Bantu on its shores in 1823, *v* 129; commerce in 1823 at, *v* 130; is considered by Captain Owen as of much importance to Great Britain, *v* 131, 132, and 135; in October 1833 the Portuguese fort is destroyed by the Matshangana and the whole garrison is murdered, *v* 138; account of the arbitration case between Great Britain and Portugal concerning the ownership of, *v* 149 and 150; Lourenço Marques

## DELANCEY, CAPTAIN PETER:

in January 1836 is sent on a diplomatic mission to the chiefs Kreli, Vadana, Faku, and Ncapayi, *ii* 132

## DELPORT, PETRUS JACOBUS:

in 1798 is banished from the Cape Colony by Lord Macartney, *i* 30; effect of this act, *i* 49

**DENYSSEN, DANIEL :**

from 1803 to 1806 is a judge in the high court of justice, *i* 118; in August 1812 becomes fiscal; on the 1st of January 1828 retires with a pension, *i* 491; on the 18th of February 1855 dies

**DENYSSEN, ADVOCATE PIETER JAN :**

is the first secretary of the municipality of Capetown, *ii* 168

**DE PASS, DANIEL :**

acquires extensive concessions in Great Namaqualand, *v* 123

**DESTRUCTION OF LIFE IN THE COUNTRY ALONG THE DRAKENSBURG  
BY THE EARLY ZULU WARS :**

estimate of, *i* 447

**DEVEREUX, THE RIGHT REVEREND AIDAN :**

in 1847 becomes the first Roman catholic bishop in Grahams-town, *iii* 72; on the 11th of February 1854 dies, *ib.*

**DIAMONDS :**

account of the first found in South Africa, *iv* 91; in 1867 a trader named O'Reilly obtains from a farmer named Schalk van Niekerk a pebble—afterwards proved to be a diamond—found in the district of Hopetown in the Cape Colony, *iv* 344; search is then made, and several others are found in the Hopetown district and along the northern bank of the Vaal, *ib.*; in March 1869 the "Star of South Africa" is obtained from a Bantu witchfinder, *ib.*; by the close of 1869 it is ascertained that diamonds in large numbers are to be found above the junction of the Hart and Vaal rivers, *iv* 345; diggers then proceed to that locality from all parts of South Africa, *ib.*; early in 1870 diamonds are found on the Free State side of the river, *iv* 349; in June 1870 the diggings at Pniel are opened, *ib.*; a little later in the year the dry diggings at Dutoitspan are discovered, *iv* 350; and in June 1871 the present Kimberley mine is opened, *iv* 352; value of exports of, *iv* 412; sensational thefts of, *iv* 401 and 402; account of diamond digging in 1871, *iv* 394 to 396

**DIAMOND FIELDS :**

riots at, *iv* 397, 403, 416, and 417

**DIAMOND FIELDS HORSE :**

in 1878 perform excellent service in the war between the Xosas and the Cape Colony, *iv* 426

**DIAMOND MINES :**

condition in 1877 of, *iv* 423

## DIAMOND STEAMSHIP COMPANY :

particulars concerning, *iv* 38

## DINGANA (BY EUROPEANS TERMED DINGAN) :

on the 23rd of September 1828 with two others murders his brother Tshaka, *ii* 335; shortly afterwards with his own hand assassinates one of his fellow conspirators, *ii* 336; and then becomes chief of the Zulu tribe, *ib.*; in which capacity he displays the vilest qualities, *ii* 338; description of his habits, *ii* 336; a few months after his accession to power he causes Matiwane, the Amangwane chief, to be starved to death, *i* 454; he invites the Europeans at Port Natal to remain there for trading purposes, *ii* 338; in October 1830 sends an embassy with ■ present of ivory to the governor of the Cape Colony, but it is not received, *ii* 340; which greatly irritates him, *ii* 341; in September 1832 sends an army against Moselekatse, but it is defeated and obliged to retreat, *i* 475; in 1834 to give confidence to the Europeans at Port Natal he withdraws his soldiers from the southern side of the lower Tugela, *ii* 342; in June 1835 makes Captain Gardiner chief of the Natal people and gives him permission to establish two mission stations, *ii* 347; also gives the American missionaries leave to form stations in his country, *ii* 348; claims dominion over the whole territory between the Drakensberg and the sea as far south as the Umzimvubu, *ii* 349; during the winter of 1837 sends an expedition against Moselekatse, which secures much spoil, *ii* 317; receives a letter from Sir Benjamin D'Urban, *ii* 341; in November 1837 promises Pieter Retief ■ tract of land on condition of recovering some cattle stolen from the Zulus by Sikonyela's Batlokua, *ii* 355; a large body of emigrants then goes down into Natal, *ii* 356; the condition being fulfilled, ■ the 4th of February 1838 he cedes to the emigrant farmers the territory between the Tugela and Umzimvubu rivers, *ii* 359; having succeeded in throwing Retief and his companions off their guard, on the 6th he causes them all to be murdered, *ii* 360; immediately afterwards sends his warriors to exterminate the emigrants in Natal, *ii* 364; and on the 17th another dreadful massacre takes place, *ib.*; some of the emigrants, however, receive warning in time, and successfully defend themselves in lagers, *ib.*; on the 11th of April his army defeats an emigrant commando under Hendrik Potgieter and Pieter Uys, *ii* 371; and on the 17th of the same month in a desperate battle almost annihilates the Englishmen and blacks of Natal, *ii* 373; the army afterwards destroys everything of value at Durban, *ii* 374; in August it is again sent against the emigrants in



Natal, but is beaten back with heavy loss, *ii* 378; on the 16th of December 1838 at the Blood river it suffers a crushing defeat from the emigrant farmers under Commandant-General Andries Pretorius, *ii* 381; Dingana then sets fire to his kraal and takes shelter in the thickets along the Umvolosi river, *ii* 382; in and after March 1839 he makes insincere overtures for peace to the emigrant farmers, *ii* 387; in September of this year his brother Panda conspires against him, *ii* 391; the emigrant farmers assist the rebel, *ii* 392; on the 30th of January 1840 Dingana's army is defeated with very heavy loss, and he then flees to the border of the Swazi country, *ii* 395; where he is shortly afterwards assassinated, *ib.*; his downfall enables the remnants of defeated tribes to emerge from their hiding places and form themselves into settled communities, *ii* 463

DINGISWAYO, CHIEF OF THE ABATETWA:

goes through some strange adventures before acquiring power, *i* 435; from his becoming chief to his death carries on aggressive war against his neighbours, *i* 436; is captured and put to death by Zwide, chief of the Nwandwe, *ii* 330

DIOCESAN COLLEGE AT RONDEBOSCH NEAR CAPETOWN:

foundation of, *iii* 71

DISCORD AT THE BEGINNING OF 1858 IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE,  
*iii* 468

DISCORD IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

result of, *iv* 453

DISEASES OF CATTLE: see Cattle diseases

DISPUTES CONCERNING THE OWNERSHIP OF THE TERRITORY IN WHICH  
THE PRINCIPAL DIAMOND MINES ARE SITUATED, *iv* 346, 355 *et*  
*seq.*, 360 *et seq.*; and *v* 24 *et seq.*

DISTRESS OF THE BRITISH SETTLERS CAUSED BY THE GREAT FLOOD  
OF OCTOBER 1823:

account of the, *i* 390

DISTRESS IN THE CAPE COLONY CAUSED BY SEVERE DROUGHT:

in 1867 reaches ■ acute point, *iv* 83

DISTRICT:

this word is defined by a proclamation of Sir George Napier on the 5th of February 1839 to mean the ■ under the jurisdiction of ■ resident magistrate, *ii* 228

**DISTRICT SECRETARY :**

before the appointment of civil commissioners in 1828 the duties of the officer who held this title were to keep the records of the district, to prepare the yearly statistical returns of population, cattle, produce, &c., to receive the local taxes, to take minutes of the proceedings of the board of landdrost and heemraden, and to draft the correspondence of that board. Except in the Cape and Stellenbosch districts, the secretaries were the only auctioneers allowed, and were responsible to government for the duties on sales. After the establishment of the circuit court, another officer was appointed at each drostdy, with the title of district clerk. He was required to have some knowledge of law, as it was his duty to prepare all the proceedings in criminal cases before the arrival of the judges, and to summon the parties and witnesses in civil cases to attend

**DIVISION :**

this word is defined by a proclamation of Sir George Napier on the 5th of February 1839 to mean the area under the administration of a civil commissioner, *ii* 228

**DIVISION OF THE CAPE COLONY INTO TWO PROVINCES IN JANUARY 1828 :**

details of the, *i* 492

**DIVISIONAL COUNCILS :**

in 1855 are created in the Cape Colony, *iii* 149

**DOCK IN TABLE BAY :**

particulars concerning, *iv* 10; on the 17th of May 1870 is opened for use, *iv* 111

**DONCASTER, THE :**

on the 17th of July 1836 is wrecked near Cape Agulhas, *ii* 243

**DONKER MALGAS :**

in 1878 is a leader of the insurgents in Griqualand West, *iv* 427; on the 5th of June of that year his stronghold in the Langebergen is taken by storm, *iv* 428

**DONKIN, SIR RUFANE SHAWE :**

on the 12th of January 1820 becomes acting governor during the absence on leave of Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 320; overturns Lord Charles Somerset's frontier measures, *i* 361; alters the plan of Fort Willshire, *i* 368; does not meet Lord Charles Somerset after his resumption of the government in November 1821, *i* 369; but returns to England and engages there in bringing the faults of the Cape government to notice, *ib*; on the 1st of May 1841 dies, *ii* 232

**DORDRECHT, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in 1857 is founded, *iv* 131; in 1871 becomes the seat of magistracy of the district of Wodehouse, *ib.*

**DOUGLAS, SIR PERCY:**

in November 1863 succeeds Lieutenant-General Wynyard as commander-in-chief of the British forces in South Africa, *ii* 48

**DOYLE, MAJOR-GENERAL:**

during Major-General Craig's absence in August 1796 commands the troops in Capetown, *i* 15

**DREYER, HENDRIK OOSTEWALD, CHAIRMAN OF THE VOLKSRAAD OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

on the 29th of March 1866 is killed in action with the Basuto, *iv* 272

**DREYER, THOMAS:**

takes part in the battle of Boomplaats against the British forces, is afterwards captured, and is punished with death, *iii* 292

**DROSTDIES:**

during the governments of Sir George Napier and Sir Peregrine Maitland all except the one at Worcester are sold to aid in the extinction of the colonial debt, *ii* 237

**DROUGHT IN THE CAPE COLONY IN 1859:**

particulars concerning, *iii* 176; effects of severe drought, *iv* 21

**DUCKITT, WILLIAM:**

in September 1800 arrives from England as superintendent of the agricultural department, *i* 75

**DUGMORE, REV. MR., WESLEYAN MISSIONARY AT MOUNT COKE:**

at the beginning of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 takes refuge at Wesleyville, and is there rescued by a party of volunteers, *ii* 99

**DUNDAS, MAJOR-GENERAL FRANCIS:**

in May 1797 becomes lieutenant-governor and commander of the forces in the Cape Colony, *i* 27; in November 1798 on the retirement of Lord Macartney becomes acting governor, *i* 48; and until December 1799 carries on the administration, *ib.*; from April 1801 to February 1803 again acts as governor, *i* 80; on the 21st of February 1803 transfers the colony to the Batavian commissioner-general De Mist, *i* 111; on the 5th of March 1803 sails for England, *i* 113

**DUNDAS, CAPTAIN WILLIAM BOLDEN :**

in January 1825 is appointed landdrost of Albany, *i* 391; in January 1828 becomes civil commissioner of Albany and Somerset, *i* 492

**DUPLESSIS, FIELD CORNET DANIEL :**

mention of, *i* 4

**DUPLOOY, COMMANDANT JACOBUS :**

is head of a party of emigrant farmers in the territory north of the Orange river, and assists in hostilities against the Griquas of Adam Kok, *ii* 488; on the 2nd of May 1845 takes part in the skirmish at Zwartkopjes against British troops and Griquas, *ii* 490; after the defeat flees to Winburg, *ii* 491; in September 1847 is sent from Winburg to Grahamstown to seek redress from Sir Henry Pottinger for some acts of Major Warden, *iii* 250; but cannot even obtain an interview with the high commissioner, *ib.*

**DUPRAT, CHEVALIER, CONSUL-GENERAL FOR PORTUGAL IN SOUTH AFRICA :**

objects to the boundaries of the South African Republic ■ defined in a proclamation issued by President Pretorius on the 29th of April 1868, *v* 16; is empowered by the government of Portugal to conclude ■ treaty with the South African Republic, *v* 22; which treaty is signed on the 29th of July 1869, *ib.*

**DURAND, COMMANDANT JAN :**

in December 1825 assists in an expedition against the chieftainess Susa, *ii* 2; on the 27th of August 1828 with one hundred and twenty burghers assists in defeating the Amangwane, *i* 454

**D'URBAN, LADY :**

in 1836 founds ■ girls' school of industry at Wynberg, *ii* 172; on the 23rd of August 1843 dies in Capetown, *ib.*

**D'URBAN, MAJOR-GENERAL SIR BENJAMIN :**

on the 16th of January 1834 assumes duty as governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 29; on the 20th of January 1835 arrives in Grahamstown and assumes command of the forces collected to oppose the Xosas, *ii* 97; after the cessation of resistance by the Rarabe clans, on the 15th of April crosses the Kei into the Galeka territory, *ii* 108; on the 30th of April concludes peace with Hintsa, *ii* 112; and on the 19th of May, after Hintsa's death, with the young chief Kreli, *ii* 117; on the 10th of May issues a proclamation annexing to the British dominions the territory from the frontier of the Cape Colony to the Kei river, *ii* 114; on the 11th of June transfers the direct command of the forces in the field to Colonel Smith,

ii 121; and on the 17th of September brings the war to an end by receiving the Rarabe clans as British subjects, ii 125; forms an excellent plan for the government of the Kaffirs in the province of Queen Adelaide, ii 129; on the 14th of October extends the north-eastern boundary of the colony to the Kraai river, ii 133; on the 30th of December reaches Capetown again, ii 135; is greatly esteemed by the colonists, *ib.*; but is very unfavourably regarded by Lord Glenelg, secretary of state, ii 145; as they hold different views on many subjects, ii 169; and the tone of his despatches gives great offence, ii 171; in January 1837 he becomes a lieutenant-general, ii 172; but a few months later is dismissed from office as governor, ii 171; on the 22nd of January 1838 transfers the duty to his successor, ii 172; but remains until April 1846 in South Africa, *ib.*; is then appointed commander-in-chief of the forces in British North America, *ib.*; and acts in that capacity until the 25th of May 1849, when he dies at Montreal, *ib.*

D'URBAN, MAJOR W. J.:

account of the relief of the British troops at Port Natal in June 1842 given by, ii 429 *et seq.*

D'URBAN, W. S. M., ESQRE.:

presents a very valuable collection of documents to the Union of South Africa, ii 275

DURBAN GOLD MINING COMPANY:

disastrous fate of, v 11

DURBAN, TOWN OF:

on the 23rd of June 1835 is laid out and named by ~~some~~ Englishmen living at Port Natal, ii 344; in May 1854 becomes a municipality, iii 267; description of in 1872, iv 174

DUSHANE, MINOR SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF NDLAMBE:

upon the death of Cebo, right hand son of Rarabe, without leaving an heir, is chosen to succeed that chief, i 328; for a long time takes no part in the contest for power between Gaika and Ndlambe, *ib.*; as he advances in years displays greater ability than any other chief in Kaffirland, *ib.*; is not on good terms with his father, owing to his mother being ill-treated, i 329; but early in 1818 a reconciliation takes place, and thereafter their clans act in alliance, though remaining distinct, *ib.*; on the 22nd of April 1819 is the leader of one of the columns that attack Grahamstown, i 337; in January 1824 concludes an agreement of friendship with the colonial government, ii 6; in 1828 dies, ii 50



**DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

in July 1804 is placed under control of the civil authorities by an ordinance of Commissioner-General De Mist, *i* 154; in November 1824 the first synod meets, *i* 404; in 1862 establishes a mission among Bantu in the South African Republic, *iv* 467; further particulars concerning, *i* 103, 269, and 370; *ii* 11, 18, 216, 221, and 246; *iii* 144, 296 *et seq.*, and 309; *iv* 215, 436, 466, and 477

**DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

extension of, the first elders and deacons are approved by the government on the

31st of May 1798 for the congregation at Swellendam, *i* 41;  
 27th of May 1811 for the congregation at Caledon, *i* 227;  
 9th of February 1813 for the congregation at George, *i* 226;  
 19th of June 1816 for the congregation at Uitenhage, *i* 315;  
 10th of June 1818 for the congregation at Cradock, *i* 258;  
 10th of August 1819 for the congregation at Somerset West,  
*i* 316;  
 16th of May 1820 for the congregation at Beaufort West, *i* 309;  
 25th of January 1821 for the congregation at Worcester, *i* 310;  
 28th of July 1825 for the congregation at Colesberg, *i* 405;  
 26th of October 1825 for the congregation at Somerset East,  
*i* 406;  
 12th of July 1826 for the congregation at Durbanville, *i* 406;  
 17th of August 1826 for the congregation at Clanwilliam, *i* 406;  
 17th of July 1829 for the congregation at Glen Lynden, *ii* 23;  
 2nd of September 1829 for the congregation at Wynberg, *ii* 23;  
 for the congregation of Riebeeck East on the 9th of March 1830 the civil commissioner of Albany was directed by the secretary to government to nominate elders and deacons for the governor's approval. The next letter on the subject to be found in Capetown is from the reverend Alexander Smith, of Uitenhage, stating that he had ordained the elders and deacons in January 1831, and that on the 22nd of April 1831 the presbytery of Graaff-Reinet had appointed the reverend Mr. Morgan, of Somerset East, consulent of the new congregation. The church at Stockenstrom was founded by the reverend William Ritchie Thomson, government missionary, who in July 1830 was introduced to the members of the Dutch church there by the reverend Mr. Morgan, of Somerset East, but who found no persons competent to fill the offices of elders and deacons. On the 2nd of June 1831 Mr. Thomson joined the Dutch reformed church. Provisional officers acted until the 5th of

April 1834, when elders and deacons nominated by the civil commissioner of Albany were ordained by Mr. Thomson, though they were not formally confirmed by the governor until the 11th of December 1834. The church at Piketberg was organised by the reverend William Robertson, of Clanwilliam, in accordance with a recommendation of the presbytery of the Cape in 1831, which received the full approval of the governor. Elders and deacons nominated by the civil commissioner of the Cape were ordained by Mr. Robertson about or before the 17th of October 1833, but none were formally approved by the governor until the 23rd of October 1834, when the clergyman of Malmesbury was appointed consulent. On the 27th of April 1839 elders and deacons were approved by the governor for the church in Riversdale; on the 27th of April 1839 for the church in Bredasdorp; on the 22nd of June 1840 for the church in Wellington; on the 24th of November 1842 for the church in Prince Albert; on the 2nd of November 1843 for the church in Richmond. For Victoria West a list of names for approval of elders and deacons was submitted by the presbytery of Beaufort to the governor, who on the 3rd of November 1843 declined to confirm them on the ground that the establishment of a congregation there had not been sanctioned by him. To a further communication the secretary to government was directed to reply to the presbytery clerk, 12th of December 1843, that "his Excellency saw no occasion for submitting the names of any consistories for his approval, and much less the names of consistories in congregations not supported by government." The churches from this date forward were free of control in the appointment of their elders and deacons, though as a matter of courtesy the governor approved on the 9th of May 1845 of the names submitted to him for the consistory of the new congregation at French Hoek. See Burghersdorp, Kruisvallei, Mossel Bay, and Victoria West. After the 14th of May 1845 the salaries of church clerks, sextons, organists, and bell-ringers ceased to be paid by government, and the churches were left free in the appointments to these offices

**DUTOIT, ANDRIES :**

in the war of 1846-7 is commandant of the Worcester burghers,  
iii 22

**DUTOIT, REV. A. F. :**

in June 1840 becomes the first resident clergyman of Wellington,  
ii 219

**DUTOIT, JACOBUS JOHANNES :**

is one of the first unofficial members of the legislative council of the Cape Colony established in 1834, *ii* 48

**DYASON, GEORGE :**

in March 1848 becomes resident magistrate of Bathurst, *iii* 70

**EARTHQUAKE, SHOCKS OF :**

was felt in Capetown in December 1809 and June 1811, *i* 246; and on the 11th of November 1835, *ii* 169

**EASTERN DISTRICTS COURT OF THE CAPE COLONY :**

in 1865 is established, *iv* 37

**EASTERN PROVINCE OF THE CAPE COLONY :**

the English inhabitants desire to have a government separate from that of the western province, *ii* 240; but in November 1847 the last lieutenant-governor is withdrawn, *ii* 242

**EASTERN PROVINCE, DIAMOND COMPANY'S STEAMSHIP :**

on the 26th of June 1865 is wrecked near the mouth of Ratel River, *iv* 38

**EASTERN PROVINCE BANK :**

in 1839 is founded in Grahamstown, *ii* 226

**EASTERN PROVINCE FIRE AND LIFE ASSURANCE COMPANY :**

in 1839 is founded in Grahamstown, *ii* 226

**EAST LONDON (AT THE MOUTH OF THE BUFFALO RIVER) :**

on the 14th of January 1848 is annexed to the Cape Colony, *iii* 66; in October 1856 the construction of harbour works is commenced, *iii* 190; on the 9th of July 1859 is restored to British Kaffraria, *iii* 223; particulars concerning the improvement of the harbour of, *iv* 131; on the 26th of May 1872 in a gale seven vessels are wrecked at, *iv* 150

**EBDEN, JOHN BARDWELL :**

is one of the first unofficial members of the legislative council of the Cape Colony established in 1834, *ii* 48; is chairman of the anti-convict association, *iii* 77

**EBDEN, ADVOCATE JOHN WATTS :**

on the 22nd of September 1852 is appointed assistant commissioner in the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 330; on the 7th of October 1854 becomes second puisne judge in the supreme court of the Cape Colony, *iii* 147

**ECCLESIASTICAL STATISTICS OF THE CAPE COLONY:**

in 1825, *i* 410; see Dutch reformed, English episcopal, Roman catholic, Wesleyan, &c.

**ECCLESIASTICAL MATTERS IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 215 and 216

**ECCLESIASTICAL MATTERS IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 436 and 466

**EDEMAN, CORNELIS:**

sedition conduct of, *i* 50; ■ publicly flogged and banished from the colony, *i* 74

**EDENBURG, VILLAGE IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

in February 1862 is founded, *iv* 208

**EDGAR, REV. JAMES:**

in May 1828 becomes the first resident clergyman of Durbanville.  
■ 406

**EDUCATION IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

progress of, *iv* 149; see Schools

**EDUCATION IN NATAL:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 164

**EDWARDS, REV. ROGER:**

in 1852 is ■ missionary of the London society residing with the Bakatla clan at Mabotsa, *iii* 402; is brought to trial for libel and sentenced to banishment from the South African Republic, *iii* 403

**EDWARDS, WILLIAM:**

particulars concerning his career in South Africa and his opposition to Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 417

**EDYE, W. M:**

in March 1848 becomes resident magistrate of Fort Peddie, *iii* 70

**EFFORTS TO IMPROVE THE BREED OF HORSES, HORNED CATTLE, AND SHEEP IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

particulars concerning, *i* 76 and 158

**EGAN, DR. CHARLES JAMES:**

is ■ physician in the Grey hospital in King-Williamstown, *iii* 191

**EIGHTH KAFFIR WAR: ■■■ War**

**EKSTEEN, HENDRIK OOSTEWALD:**

treatment of by Lord Macartney, *i* 31

**ELECTORAL DISTRICTS OF NATAL:**

particulars concerning, *iii* 268

**ELECTORS:**

number of in each province of the Cape Colony in 1872 and 1873,  
*iv* 141

**ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH:**

in 1863 is opened between Durban and Maritzburg, *iv* 172

**ELEPHANT HUNTING:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 454

**ELIM, MORAVIAN MISSION STATION IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

in 1824 is founded, *i* 409

**ELIZABETH AND SUSAN, A SMALL SCHOONER:**

in 1828 is built on the southern shore of Port Natal, *ii* 332;  
in December of the same year is seized at Algoa Bay and  
detained by the authorities for being without a license, *ii* 339

**ELPHINSTONE, ADMIRAL SIR GEORGE KEITH:**

in August 1796 captures a Dutch fleet of nine ships of war in  
Saldanha Bay, *i* 16

**ELTON, CAPTAIN:**

in 1870 explores the central course of the Limpopo river, a 150  
and 151; on the 19th of December 1877 dies

**ELY, MILITARY VILLAGE NEAR ALICE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in January 1848 is founded, but in 1850 is abandoned, *iii* 69

**EMIGRATION OF BRITISH SETTLERS TO THE CAPE COLONY IN 1820:**

particulars concerning, *i* 349 *et seq.*

**EMIGRATION OF DUTCH-SPEAKING PEOPLE FROM THE CAPE COLONY IN  
AND AFTER 1836:**

summary of, *ii* 266 *et seq.*

**EMIGRATION OF WHITE PEOPLE FROM THE CAPE COLONY TO NEW  
ZEALAND AND AMERICA:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 22, 39, and 96

**ENCROACHMENTS BY THE BASUTO TRIBE ON FREE STATE TERRITORY,  
*iv* 202 and 209****ENGLAND, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL RICHARD:**

in 1834 is in command of the garrison of Grahamstown, *ii* 86;  
on the 11th of February 1835 with a division of the British  
forces attacks the hostile Xosas in the thickets along the Fish  
river, *ii* 101; when the army enters Kaffirland in the following  
month he is left in command of the line of defence, *iv* 103



ENGLISH EAST INDIA COMPANY:

privileges of in the Cape Colony from 1796 to 1803, *i* 33; in 1803 its property in Capetown is confiscated, *i* 133

ENGLISH EPISCOPAL CHURCH:

in October 1811 the first clergyman who is not a military chaplain is appointed in Capetown, *i* 270; its clergymen are under the superintendence of an ecclesiastical board in London, and to some extent also under the supervision of the senior chaplain in Capetown, *ii* 223; at the beginning of 1844 has nine congregations with clergymen in the Cape Colony, *ib.*; further particulars concerning, *i* 105, 237, 317, 355, and 407, *ii* 17 and 249, *iii* 71, 144, and 225, *iv* 216, 282, and 466, *v* 80

ENGLISH LANGUAGE:

after 1824 supersedes Dutch in the public offices of the Cape Colony and after 1827 in the courts of law, *i* 377; for a short time even jurymen are disqualified by two of the judges for not understanding it, *i* 495

ENGLISHMEN IN NATAL BEFORE 1838:

particulars concerning, *ii* 324 *et seq.*; some of them are obliged to assist the Zulus in war, *ii* 330

ENGLISH WEIGHTS AND MEASURES:

since the 1st of January 1861 have been alone legal in the Cape Colony, *iv* 6

ENO (CORRECT KAFFIR SPELLING NQENO), CHIEF OF THE AMAMBALA CLAN OF XOSAS:

in 1826 takes possession of the western bank of the Keiskama, above the Gwanga, *ii* 5; in November 1834 is implicated in a theft of horses from the colony, *ii* 87; but upon Colonel Somerset's demand gives redress for this and other acts of violence by his people, *ii* 88; in December 1834 sends his followers to lay waste and plunder the frontier districts of the Cape Colony, *ii* 90; in January 1835 is attacked by a patrol under Major Cox, and suffers some loss, *ii* 96; continues the conflict until the 17th of September, 1835, when he agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 125; on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; on the 2nd of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 187; on the 2nd of January 1845 enters into a new treaty framed by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; on the 1st of April 1846 dies, and is succeeded by his son Stokwe, *iii* 7

**ENON, MORAVIAN MISSION STATION IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

in 1816 is founded, i 317; in the Kaffir war of 1819 ■ pillaged and destroyed, i 317 and 336; but is subsequently reoccupied i 317

**ENSLIN, J. A.:**

in January 1851 is appointed commandant-general of the western border of the South African Republic, iii 375

**ENTERPRISE, THE FIRST STEAMSHIP THAT FLIES BETWEEN ENGLAND AND INDIA:**

in October 1825 puts into Table Bay, i 395

**EOLÉ, THE, FRENCH SHIP:**

on the 12th of April 1829 is wrecked on the coast of Kaffraria

**ERASMUS, DANIEL JACOBUS:**

in November 1871, upon the resignation of Mr. M. W. Pretorius, is appointed by the volksraad acting president of the South African Republic, v 47; on the 25th of November 1871 issues ■ protest against the Keate award and ■ proclamation declaring the inviolability of the territory of the republic, v 48

**ERASMUS, (FIELD CORNET) PIETER:**

in June 1830 leads an expedition against the Xosa captain Sigcawu, who is killed, ii 53 and 54; (Commandant) in 1848 assists the British forces under Sir Harry Smith against the emigrant farmers in the Orange River Sovereignty, iii 285; in September of the same year is appointed ■ member of the war tribute commission, iii 294

**ERASMUS, STEPHANUS:**

■ attacked by a band of Matabele warriors in 1836 while on a hunting excursion north of the Vaal, when four white men and ■ number of coloured servants ■ murdered, ii 290

**EREBUS AND TERROR, EXPLORING SHIPS:**

in April 1843 visit Simon's Bay, ii 228

**ERSKINE, MAJOR D.:**

in June 1878 is appointed resident at Walfish Bay, ■ 116

**ERSKINE, REV. THOMAS:**

in October 1818 becomes chaplain at Simonstown, but resigns in the following year, i 317

**ETHIOPIAN MOVEMENT:**

in 1872 first shows itself at the mission station Hermon in Basutoland, v 80

EUROPEAN FARMERS IN TEMBULAND:

account of, *iv* 56

EUROPEAN IMMIGRANTS:

early plans for the introduction into the Cape Colony of, *i* 267

EUROPEAN IMMIGRANTS INTO NATAL:

particulars concerning, *iv* 156 to 158

EUROPEAN INHABITANTS OF THE ORANGE RIVER SOVEREIGNTY:

particulars concerning, *iii* 327, 332, 349, and 362

EUROPEANS:

number of in 1865 in the Cape Colony, *iv* 42

EVANS, REV. JOHN:

in June 1817 assumes duty as first clergyman of Cradock, *i* 257;  
early in 1823 dies, *i* 407

EVATT, CAPTAIN:

in February 1825 is appointed resident magistrate of Port Elizabeth,  
*i* 392

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL OF THE CAPE COLONY:

in 1834 is established in place of the previously existing council  
of advice, *ii* 47; on the 26th of June 1840 it is enlarged by  
■ seat being given to the collector of customs, *ii* 214

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:

consists of the government secretary, the landdrost of Bloem-  
fontein, and three unofficial members chosen by the volksraad,  
*iii* 444

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

according to the constitution framed in December 1856 consists  
of the president, the government secretary, two burghers ap-  
pointed by the volksraad, and the commandant-general when-  
ever military matters are under discussion, *iii* 424; by the  
agreement of union, 4th of March 1840, Lydenburg is entitled  
to elect two additional members, *iv* 442; by later alterations  
made in the constitution, the executive council was made to  
consist of the commandant-general, the state secretary, the  
superintendent of native affairs, two unofficial members, and  
any head of ■ department whom the president might invite  
to assist

EXPEDITION OF MESSRS. TRUTER AND SOMERVILLE IN 1801 TO THE  
BETSHUANA COUNTRY, *i* 99

EXPEDITION OF MESSRS. VAN DE GRAAFF AND LICHTENSTEIN IN 1805  
TO THE BETSHUANA COUNTRY, *i* 184

EXPEDITION OF MESSRS. COWAN AND DONOVAN IN 1808 TO THE  
BETSHUANA COUNTRY:  
unfortunate fate of the, *i* 227

EXPENDITURE OF THE CAPE COLONIAL GOVERNMENT:  
particulars concerning, after 1823, *ii* 33; in 1854 and 1855,  
*iii* 141; comparison between 1854 and 1866, *iv* 80; items  
of in 1871 and 1872, *iv* 153

EXPENDITURE OF BASUTOLAND:  
in 1872, *v* 79

EXPENDITURE OF BRITISH KAFFRARIA: ■■■ British Kaffraria

EXPORTS OF SOUTH AFRICAN PRODUCE:  
during the first British occupation, *i* 40; from 1806 to 1835,  
*ii* 36 to 43; from 1836 to 1850, *ii* 207; in 1853, 1854, and  
1855, *iii* 142; from 1856 to 1861, *iii* 171; from 1862 to  
1867, *iv* 94; from 1868 to 1872, *iv* 151 and 152

EXPORTS OF NATAL:  
in 1845, *ii* 462; from 1845 to 1856, *iii* 264 to 266; from 1857  
to 1872, *iv* 176 and 177

EXPORTS THROUGH EAST LONDON:  
from 1855 to 1858, *iii* 220; in 1861, *iv* 18; from 1862 to 1865,  
*iv* 76

EXTENSION OF THE CAPE COLONY:  
on the 14th of July 1798 the colony is extended by Lord Macartney to the Fish river from its mouth up to Esterhuis's Poort at the end of the Kaga mountain, the Kaga mountain to the Tarka mountain, the Tarka mountain to the Bamboes mountain, the Bamboes mountain to the Zuur mountain, the Zuur mountain to Plettenberg's beacon on the Zeekoe river, Plettenberg's beacon to Great Table mountain, thence to the Nieuwveld mountains, along the Nieuwveld mountains to the source of the Riet river, the Riet and Fish rivers behind the Roggeveld mountain, the Spioen mountain, the Kabiskow peak, the Long mountain, the northern point of the Kamies mountain, and the river Koussie or Buffalo to the Atlantic, *i* 39; on the 20th of February 1805 is extended by Governor Jassens and the council to the Koussie or Buffalo river from its mouth to its source in the Koperberg, thence southeastward in as nearly as possible a straight line—but following the mountains—to the

junction of the Zak and Riet rivers, thence the Zak river to its source in the Nieuwveld mountains, thence the Nieuwveld mountains to the Sneeuwberg, and thence northeastward a line enclosing the Great Table mountain to the Zeekoe river at Plettenberg's beacon; the eastern boundary to remain as fixed by Lord Macartney, *i* 180; on the 9th of September 1824 is extended by Governor Lord Charles Somerset to the Zwart Kei and Klaas Smit's rivers and the Stormberg spruit on the northeast, thence the Orange river to about longitude  $24^{\circ} 20'$ , thence a straight line to the Prامberg, and thence an irregular curve cutting the junction of the Zak and Riet rivers and continuing to the mouth of the Buffalo river on the shore of the Atlantic, *i* 394; on the 11th of March 1825 is extended by Governor Lord Charles Somerset to the Koonap river on the east, *ib.*; in April 1829 without a formal proclamation it is extended to the watershed between the upper Tyumie and Kat rivers, an irregular line from the Tyumie to the Kat a little below Fort Beaufort, and the Kat river to its junction with the Fish, *ii* 9; on the 14th of October 1835 it is extended by Governor Sir Benjamin D'Urban to the Kraai river on the northeast, *ii* 133; but on the 5th of December 1836 is contracted again by Lieutenant-Governor Stockenstrom to the Stormberg spruit, *ii* 150; on the 17th of December 1847 it is extended by Governor Sir Harry Smith to the Keiskama, Tyumie, Klipplaats, Zwart Kei, Klaas Smit's, and Kraai rivers on the east, and to the Orange river on the north, *iii* 56; on the 7th of March 1854 letters patent are issued annexing the Bontebok flats, *iii* 188; in 1865 British Kaffraria is annexed, *iv* 75; in 1873 the Guano islands off the coast of Great Namaqualand are annexed, *ii* 236; at various times between 1879 and 1894 the territory between the Kei river and Natal is annexed; in 1880 the province of Griqualand West is annexed; and in 1895 Botshuanaland south of Ramathlabama Spruit and the Molopo river is annexed, completing the area of the Cape province ■■ in 1910 it became part of the Union of South Africa

**EYRE, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL :**

in December 1851 commands one of the columns that invade Galekaland, *iii* 105

**FABER, CORNELIS :**

is one of the leaders of the insurrection on the frontier of the Cape Colony in 1815, *i* 292; after the failure of the insurrec-



tion flees towards Kaffirland, but is followed by a party of Hottentot soldiers, and is overtaken and seized after being wounded, *i* 297; is sentenced to death by a commission of the high court of justice, *i* 298; and on the 9th of March 1816 is executed at Van Aardt's post on the Fish river, *i* 299

**FABER, MARTHA, WIFE OF JAN BEZUIDENHOUT:**

aids her husband in resistance to the pandours sent to arrest him after the Slachter's Nek rebellion in 1815, *i* 297; is banished for life from the districts of Graaff-Reinet, Uitenhage, and George, *i* 299

**FAILURE OF AN ATTEMPT MADE BY THE FRENCH FRIGATE *PRUDENTE* IN 1799 TO CONVEY AID TO THE NATIONALS OF GRAAFF-REINET,**  
*i* 64

**FAIRBAIRN, JOHN:**

with Mr. John Pringle edits the *Commercial Advertiser* shortly after its first appearance, *i* 417; in August 1825 becomes sole editor, *i* 420; after the suppression of the *Commercial Advertiser* in May 1827 proceeds to England and induces Sir George Murray to promise that the press in South Africa shall be freed from the control of the governor and council, *ii* 14; returns to Capetown and resumes the editorship of the *Commercial Advertiser*, *ii* 15; takes a very active part in the improvement of the public school system, *ii* 210; in 1849 is secretary of the anti-convict association, *iii* 81; he is violently assaulted, and his house is wrecked by a band of rioters, *ib.*; on the 23rd of July 1850 he is appointed a member of the legislative council, *iii* 122; on the 20th of September resigns his seat, *iii* 124; and in October leaves for England to secure support for a particular draft constitution, *iii* 125; on the 5th of October 1864 dies, *iv* 39

**FAIRS FOR TRADE WITH KAFFIRS:**

from 1821 to 1830 are held at Fort Willshire, *i* 364

**FAKU, PARAMOUNT CHIEF OF THE PONDO TRIBE:**

in July 1828 is visited by Major Dundas, *ii* 405; his country has recently been overrun by Tshaka's army, and he and his people are living in the valley of the Umgazi river in great poverty, *ib.*; he sends messengers to Tshaka to beg to be received as a vassal, and they reach their destination on the very day of the Zulu chief's assassination, *ib.*; in May 1829 he is visited by the reverend William Shaw, *ib.*; he is then in better circumstances than in the preceding year, *ib.*; imme-

diately afterwards missionaries of the Wesleyan society settle in his country, *ib.*; his tribe is then weak, is entirely confined to the western side of the Umzimvubu, and is living in constant turmoil, *ib.*; in 1835 he promises friendship to the Cape Colony during the war with the Xosas, *ii* 104; in February 1836 he is visited by Captain P. Delancey, *ii* 132; early in 1838 in alliance with the Baca chief Ncapayi he sweeps the Tembu country of cattle, *ii* 466; he exchanges friendly messages with the emigrant farmers immediately after they enter Natal, *ii* 407; on the 10th and 11th of March 1838 he and his people cross the Umzimvubu and build new kraals on the Umzimhlava, *ii* 408; early in 1839 he is informed by the reverend Mr. Jenkins—without authority—that Sir George Napier guarantees to him the whole territory northward to the Umzimkulu, *ib.*; by the close of this year he and his people are in a fairly prosperous condition, *ii* 409; in April 1840 he makes war with Ncapayi, *ib.*; in December 1840, owing to an attack by the emigrant farmers upon the Bacas of Ncapayi, he calls the missionaries in his neighbourhood together to give him advice, *ii* 411; in his name and with his consent the missionaries write to Sir George Napier craving protection and claiming the territory northward to the Umzimkulu, *ib.*; a body of troops is then sent to form a camp on the Umgazi for his defence, *ii* 412; on the 7th of October 1844 he enters into a treaty with Sir Peregrine Maitland, in which all the territory south of the Umzimkulu is assigned to him, *ii* 457; after which he puts forward claims of supremacy over other chiefs which perpetuate the old wars and confusion, *ii* 458; he makes constant efforts, but ineffectually, to subdue the Xesibes, *iii* 231; compels the Xolo clan to submit to his supremacy, *iii* 232; in 1850 is compelled to make good to Natal losses from thefts of cattle by Bushmen, *iii* 238; offers to cede to Natal the territory between the Umtamvuna and Umzimkulu rivers, and on the 1st of January 1866 it is annexed to that colony, *iii* 239; further particulars concerning, *iv* 61, 62, and 66; dealings of the Natal government with, *iv* 64 and 65; mention of, *iv* 165; offers Nomansland—now Griqualand East—to Moshesh, *iv* 180; on the 29th of October 1867 dies, *iv* 69

FALL OF LARGE MASSES OF ROCK FROM TABLE MOUNTAIN, *i* 103

FALLOWES, REV. FEARON:

in August 1821 arrives at the Cape ■ first astronomer royal.  
*i* 365

**FAREWELL, FRANCIS GEORGE:**

in 1823 visits Natal on a trading expedition, *ii* 323; is so impressed with the capabilities of the country that he resolves to establish himself there, *ii* 324; induces about twenty-five individuals to join him in the enterprise, *ib.*; in June 1824 settles on the northern shore of the inlet, *ii* 325; shortly afterwards is abandoned by all of the adventurers except four, *ii* 326; in July visits Tshaka, *ib.*; on the 7th of August receives from Tshaka a grant of a large tract of land round Port Natal, *ii* 327; on the 27th of August 1824 declares Natal a British possession, though he has no authority to do so, *ii* 328; on the 1st of December 1828 leaves Natal to procure goods in the Cape Colony, *ii* 338; a second time induces a number of people to proceed to Natal, *ii* 339; when returning overland in September 1829 is murdered by the Amakwabi, *ib.*

**FAUNCE, CAPTAIN, OF THE 73RD REGIMENT:**

on the 20th of December 1852 is made prisoner by the Basuto in the battle of Berea, *iii* 339; and is put to death by them, *iii* 341

**FAURE, ABRAHAM:**

in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Stellenbosch, *i* 493; in April 1831 is deprived of office for not quelling a disturbance, *ii* 70

**FAURE, ANTHONY ALEXANDER:**

in November 1795 is restored to his office as landdrost of Swellendam, *i* 4; in January 1810 retires on a pension, *i* 271

**FAURE, REV. PHILIP EDUARD:**

at the end of 1848 goes on a mission to the emigrants north of the Orange, *iii* 297; has an interview with the reverend Dr. Livingstone at Magalisberg, of which he gives an account, *iii* 393

**FAURESMTIH, VILLAGE IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

early in 1850 is founded, *iii* 349

**FAWN, THE:**

from 1842 to 1844 serves as a floating fort at Port Natal, *ii* 439

**FEDERATION OF THE DIFFERENT COLONIES AND STATES IN SOUTH AFRICA:**

views of Sir George Grey concerning, *iii* 179; it is desired by the Orange Free State, *iii* 182; views of the imperial government in 1859 concerning, *iii* 182 and 185; in June 1871 a

commission is appointed by the governor of the Cape Colony to inquire into and report upon, *iv* 128; in March 1872 the commission sends in a report, *iv* 130; after which the question ceases to engage public attention, *iv* 131

**FEVER:**

in 1867 causes great loss of life in the Cape Colony, *iv* 83 and 84

**FICK, J. I. J.:**

at the commencement of the Basuto war in 1865 is elected commandant-general of the Free State forces, *iv* 230; on the 20th of July 1865 crosses the Caledon, and proclaims the whole territory north and west of that river part of the Orange Free State, *iv* 240

**FICKSBURG, VILLAGE IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

in 1869 is founded, *v* 57

**FIELD CORNETS:**

in October 1805 have their qualifications and duties strictly defined by an ordinance, *i* 183

**FIELD, WILLIAM:**

in 1857 is appointed emigration commissioner for the Cape Colony in England, *iii* 173

**FIFTH KAFFIR WAR: see War**

**FIFTIETH ORDINANCE:**

particulars concerning (relating to the Hottentots), *i* 502; in January 1829 is ratified by the imperial government, *i* 507

**FINANCIAL CONDITION OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

at the close of 1871, *iv* 384; see Paper Money

**FINANCIAL CONDITION OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 500; see Paper Money

**FINGOS:**

in 1824 the first of the refugees so called appear in western Kaffirland, *i* 450; they differ in disposition from Xosas, *ii* 110; in 1835 are found living in a miserable condition among the Galekas, *ib.*; individuals among them being often subject to oppressive treatment, though they are not slaves, *ib.*; some of them are taken under British protection, *ib.*; these are attacked by the Galekas, but are not destroyed, as Hintsa is compelled by Sir Benjamin D'Urban to recall his warriors, *ii* 113; they are removed to a block of land between the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ib.*; ■ location in the Zitzikama is given to some of them, *ii* 156; in August of the same year

those around Fort Peddie are attacked by Xosas and pillaged, *ii* 157; they give Sir George Napier a good deal of trouble, *ii* 177; in the war of 1846-7 they take part with the Europeans against the Xosas, *iii* 9; in January 1847 about three thousand more are brought from Butterworth and located west of the Tyumie, *iii* 39; in 1848 they have large tracts of land in Victoria East given to them, *iii* 67; in January 1852 seven thousand are brought from Galekaland into British Kaffraria, *iii* 106; in 1853 they have extensive grants of land made to them, *iii* 115; particulars concerning the apprehensions of the frontier colonists in 1854 and 1855 of danger from these people, *iii* 195; further particulars concerning them, *iii* 215; they increase in number very rapidly, *iv* 53; in 1865 have a great tract of land, afterwards called Fingoland, beyond the Kei given to them, *iv* 53; where they prosper greatly under the guidance of Captain Blyth, *iv* 60; see Gubela, Jama, Jokweni, Mabandla, Madikane, Matomela, Umhlambiso, and Umsutu

#### FINNISH EVANGELICAL SOCIETY:

in 1869 establishes a mission with the Ovambo, ■ 125

#### FIRE IN CAPETOWN:

in the night of the 22nd of November 1798 causes much damage, *i* 50

#### FIRST CIRCUIT OF JUDGES OF THE HIGH COURT OF JUSTICE IN THE CAPE COLONY:

particulars concerning, *i* 259

#### FISCAL:

before the appointment of an attorney-general in 1828 the fiscal was the adviser of the government in points of legal difficulty. He was the public prosecutor in all criminal offences committed in Capetown and in some special offences committed in other parts of the colony—ordinary cases being prosecuted by the respective landdrosts,—and he conducted all civil cases for the government. He could interfere with the landdrosts in any part of the colony in cases where they might be suspected of showing partiality, and in exceptionally difficult or important matters. Before the appointment of a police magistrate in Capetown he exercised summary jurisdiction over slaves, vagabonds, and runaway sailors in petty offences; and he had control of the constabulary arrangements

#### FISCHER, J. H.:

on the 1st of January 1810 becomes deputy landdrost at Clanwilliam, *i* 225; in July 1812 becomes landdrost of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 271; in May 1815 is transferred to Tulbagh, *i* 290



**FISHING COMPANY, THE SOUTH AFRICAN CHARTERED:**  
account of the, *i* 211

**FITSGERALD, DR. J. P.:**  
in February 1856 takes charge of the Grey hospital in King-Williamstown, *iii* 191

**FITZPATRICK, JAMES COLEMAN:**  
in November 1861 becomes judge of the supreme court of British Kaffraria, *iii* 226; upon the annexation of British Kaffraria in 1865 is transferred to the eastern districts court, *iv* 75

**FLAG OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**  
description of, *iii* 430

**FLAG OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**  
description of, *iii* 426

**FLAX:**  
experiments in the cultivation of in the Cape Colony, *iv* 112;  
experiments in the cultivation of in Natal, *iii* 261; ~~===~~ Exports,  
*iii* 265

**FLECK, REV. MR.:**  
~~on~~ the 26th of October 1820 dies

**FLOOD OF OCTOBER 1823 ~~IN~~ THE EASTERN DISTRICTS OF THE CAPE COLONY:**  
account of, *i* 390

**FODO, SON OF THE HLANGWENI CHIEF NOMBEWU:**  
after the death of his father roams about until a tract of land south of the Umzinkulu river is given to him by the emigrant farmers, *ii* 410; in December 1840 he assists the emigrant farmers against Ncapayi, *ii* 411

**FORBES, CAPTAIN PATRICK WILLIAM:**  
in November 1890 takes decisive action against the Portuguese at Umtasa's kraal, *v* 157, 158, and 159

**FORDYCE, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL:**  
~~on~~ the 6th of November 1851 is killed in a skirmish in the Waterkloof, *iii* 114

**FOREIGN BANKS:**  
in January 1866 are expelled from the Orange Free State, *iv* 216

**FORM OF GOVERNMENT OF THE CAPE COLONY:**  
from 1796 to 1803 under the first English administration, *i* 26  
*et seq.*; from 1803 to 1806 under the Batavian Republic, *i* 106;

from the English conquest in 1806 to the creation of a council of advice in 1825, *i* 218 *et seq.*; from 1825 to the establishment of the supreme court in 1828, *i* 398; from 1828 to 1834, when distinct executive and legislative councils are established, *ii* 47

**FORT ARMSTRONG (AT FIRST CALLED FORT ADELAIDE):**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is a place of refuge for the Hottentots of the Kat river, *ii* 97; at the commencement of the war of 1850-52 is seized and occupied by the rebels, *iii* 104; on the 22nd of February 1851 is recovered, *ib.*

**FORT BEAUFORT, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in March 1848 is created, *iii* 70; at the same time is made a division, to include the districts of Fort Beaufort and Stockenstrom, *iii* 71

**FORT BEAUFORT, VILLAGE OF:**

in 1823 is founded, *i* 326; on the 7th of January 1851 is attacked by a mixed horde under Hermanus Matroos, but the assailants are beaten off, *iii* 103

**FORT BERESFORD:**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built on the upper Buffalo river, *ii* 119; in September 1836 is abandoned, *ii* 149

**FORT COX:**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built on the upper Keiskama river, *ii* 119; in December 1836 is abandoned, *ii* 150; at the beginning of August 1846 is again occupied, *iii* 20; and is one of the positions at which troops are stationed after the annexation of British Kaffraria to the queen's dominions, *iii* 60

**FORT DACRES:**

is built at the mouth of the Fish river and occupied during the war of 1846-7, but not afterwards, *iii* 17

**FORT FREDERICK:**

in 1799 is built on the shore of Algoa Bay, *i* 62

**FORT GLAMORGAN:**

in April 1847 is built on the western bank of the mouth of the Buffalo river, *iii* 45; is one of the positions occupied by troops after the annexation of British Kaffraria to the queen's dominions, *iii* 60

**FORT GREY:**

in December 1847 is occupied as an outpost of Fort Glamorgan, *iii* 60

**FORT HARE :**

in August 1847 is built on the eastern bank of the Tyumie, *iii* 50; is one of the stations occupied by troops after the annexation of British Kaffraria to the queen's dominions, *ib.*

**FORTIFICATIONS OF CAPETOWN :**

reference to those constructed by General Craig, *i* 23

**FORT MONTGOMERY WILLIAMS :**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built on the western bank of the Keiskama river, *ii* 119; in January 1837 is abandoned, *ii* 152

**FORT MURRAY :**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built on the western bank of the Buffalo river, *ii* 119; in September 1836 is abandoned, *ii* 149; in April 1847 is rebuilt, *iii* 45; and is one of the positions at which troops are stationed after the annexation of British Kaffraria to the queen's dominions, *iii* 60

**FORT NAPIER :**

in 1843 is built at Maritzburg, *ii* 452

**FORT PEDDIE :**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built in the centre of the ground allotted to Fingos between the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ii* 120; upon the abandonment of the territory east of the Fish river a garrison is retained in this fort for the defence of the Fingos, *ii* 152; on the 28th of May 1846 it is attacked by the Kaffirs, but without success, *iii* 13

**FORT SÃO SEBASTIÃO, ON THE ISLAND OF MOZAMBIQUE :**

state of in the early years of the nineteenth century, *v* 127

**FORT THOMSON :**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built near the junction of the Gaga and Tyumie rivers, *ii* 119; in March 1837 is abandoned, *ii* 151

**FORT WARDEN :**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built near the Kei river, *ii* 119; in September 1836 is abandoned, *ii* 149

**FORT WATERLOO :**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built near the Nahoon river, *ii* 119; in October 1836 is abandoned, *ii* 149; in 1847 is reoccupied, and troops are stationed in it after the annexation of British Kaffraria to the queen's dominions, *iii* 60

**FORT WELLINGTON :**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built near the source of the Gonubie river, *ii* 119; in September 1836 is abandoned, *ii* 149; the old fort is never again occupied, but in December 1847 one is built on the Tshalumna river, to which this name is given, *iii* 58; and in which troops are stationed after the annexation of British Kaffraria to the queen's dominions, *iii* 60

**FORT WHITE :**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is built on the Debe river, *ii* 119; in December 1836 it is abandoned, *ii* 150; in July 1847 it is rebuilt, *iii* 50; and is one of the stations occupied by troops after the annexation of British Kaffraria to the queen's dominions, *iii* 60

**FORT WILLSHIRE :**

in 1819, after the fifth Kaffir war, is commenced on the right bank of the Keiskama, *i* 344; Lord Charles Somerset's designs regarding it are greatly altered by Sir Rufane Donkin, *i* 368; on the outbreak of war in December 1834 is abandoned by its feeble garrison, *ii* 92; at the end of January 1835 it is reoccupied, *ii* 100; but in March 1837 is finally abandoned, *ii* 152

**FOURIE, DAVID STEPHANUS :**

in 1839 purchases a tract of land containing the present diamond mines of Kimberley and Dutoitspan from the Bushman captain David Danser, *ii* 496

**FOURTH KAFFIR WAR : see War****FRANCHISE IN THE CAPE COLONY :**

■ fixed by the constitution of 1853, *iii* 137

**FRANCHISE IN NATAL :**

particulars concerning, *iii* 268

**FRANCIS SPAIGHT, THE :**

on the 7th of January 1846 is wrecked in Table Bay, *ii* 253

**FRASER, REV. COLIN :**

in December 1824 arrives from Scotland, and is appointed clergyman of the Dutch reformed church at Beaufort West, *i* 370

**FRASER, COLONEL GEORGE SACKVILLE :**

on the 19th of October 1823 dies, *i* 386 : see Commandos

**FRASERBURG, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

is named after the reverend Colin Fraser, *i* 371

FRASER, DR. :

on the 5th of September 1853 is elected chairman of the assembly of delegates in Bloemfontein, *iii* 351; is afterwards sent to England by the delegates to protest against the abandonment of the Sovereignty, *iii* 353

FREDERICKSBURG :

account of the intended settlement between the Fish and Keiskama rivers so called, *i* 361 *et seq.*; the scheme is a failure, *i* 374

FREDERICK HUTH, BRITISH BARQUE :

in April 1847 discharges a cargo of military stores at the mouth of the Buffalo river, *iii* 45

FREE CHURCH OF SCOTLAND MISSIONS :

particulars concerning, *iii* 99

FREEDOM OF CONSCIENCE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC :

by the constitution of January 1857 is restricted, *iii* 425; but in June 1870 the restrictions are removed by the volksraad, *v* 23

FRENCH HOEK, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT :

in May 1845 the first consistory commences duty, *ii* 248

FRENCH HOEK PASS THROUGH THE DRAKENSTEIN MOUNTAINS :

in 1824 a waggon road is completed through the, *i* 388

DE FREYN, JAN :

in 1797 is skipper of the Dutch brig *Haasje*, *i* 20: see *Haasje*,

FRIEND OF THE FREE STATE NEWSPAPER :

on the 10th of June 1850 the first number is issued at Bloemfontein, *iii* 310

FRONTIER ARMED AND MOUNTED POLICE :

in May 1852 is organised, *iii* 111; particulars concerning, *iii* 148; in 1855 is greatly enlarged, *ib.*; in 1858 is again enlarged by one hundred men, *iii* 162; further particulars concerning, *iii* 186; strength of in 1872, *iv* 149

FRONTIER COMMERCIAL AND AGRICULTURAL BANK :

in 1847 is established in Grahamstown, *ii* 243

FRUIT IN GREAT VARIETY :

production of in Natal, *iii* 261; see Exports, *iii* 265

FYNN, HENRY FRANCIS :

in April 1824 settles at Natal, *ii* 325; in July visits Tshaka, *ii* 326; whose favour he secures by skilful surgical treatment, *ii* 327; he collects a number of blacks together, and with



Tshaka's consent becomes their chief, *ii* 331; receives from Tshaka a grant of a large tract of land, *ii* 332; early in 1831 flees from Natal to Buntingville, being in fear of Dingana, *ii* 341; but in August returns, *ii* 342; in September 1834 leaves Natal and retires to the Cape Colony, *ii* 343; a few months later guides a party of volunteers to Wesleyville to rescue some refugees, *ii* 99; in March 1835 is sent by Sir Benjamin D'Urban on a mission to Faku, chief of the Pondos, *ii* 103; in December 1836 is appointed British agent with the Tembu chief Mapasa, *ii* 153; after the outbreak of war in 1846 his office is abolished, *iii* 36

**FYNN, WILLIAM MACDOWELL:**

in 1828 joins his brother in Natal, *ii* 335; early in 1831, being apprehensive of danger from Dingana, retires from Natal to Buntingville, *ii* 341; but in August returns, *ii* 342; in September 1834 removes to the Cape Colony, *ii* 343; in January 1836 acts as interpreter to the expedition under Captain P. Delancey, *ii* 132; in December of this year is appointed British agent with Kreli, *ii* 153; in November 1844 is sent to Pondoland to obtain the signature of the chief Faku to a treaty, *ii* 457; in April 1846 is obliged to flee from Butterworth to Clarkebury, and a little later to take refuge at Buntingville, *iii* 23; in December 1847 is appointed assistant commissioner in British Kaffraria, and is stationed at Fort Waterloo, *iii* 59

**FYNN, WILLIAM:**

in July 1865 is stationed as resident with Kreli, *ii* 54; mention of, *ii* 57

**GAIKA (CORRECT KAFFIR SPELLING NGQIKA), SON OF UMLAWU:**

in 1797 claims the chieftainship of the Rarabe clans, but is opposed by his uncle Ndlambe, *i* 37; defeats Ndlambe in a battle and makes him prisoner, *i* 38; makes an agreement of friendship with the colonial authorities, *ib.*; entices a young wife of Ndlambe from him, and thereby renews the intertribal quarrel, *i* 57; in June 1803 enters into an agreement of friendship with Governor Janssens, *i* 128; in 1809 is very poor, and is living on the banks of the upper Keiskama, *i* 233; refuses to assist the insurgents of 1815 against the colonial government, *i* 294; on the 2nd of April 1817 has an interview with Lord Charles Somerset at the Kat river, *i* 323; is treated by Lord Charles as the sole chief of the Xosas in alliance with the

colony, *i* 324; agrees with Lord Charles that compensation can be demanded from any kraal to which stolen cattle are traced, *ib.*; in 1818 is residing in the Tyumie valley, *i* 331; in the winter of 1818 is defeated by Ndlambe with great loss in the battle of Amalinde, *i* 334; flees to the Winterberg, and sends to the nearest military post, urgently requesting aid, *ib.*; being assisted by an armed European force, he is able to do much damage to Ndlambe, *i* 335; but upon the retirement of the commando is again obliged to flee, *i* 336; being once more restored to the position of principal chief of the Rarabe clans by the aid of European forces, he agrees—though very unwillingly—with Lord Charles Somerset that the land between the Fish and Keiskama rivers shall remain unoccupied except by soldiers, *i* 343; in June 1821 at a conference with Sir Rufane Donkin consents to the territory between the Fish and Keiskama rivers being given to European immigrants, *i* 361; is compelled by the colonial government to punish a murderer with death, *i* 382; in February 1822 an ineffectual attempt is made to arrest him, *i* 383; in January 1824 the colonial government reverses its policy and treats with Gaika's enemies as independent chiefs, *ii* 5; on the 13th of November 1829 Gaika dies near Burnshill, on the Keiskama, *ii* 51

GALEKAS, THE:

in December 1834 assist the Rarabes to invade the Cape Colony, *ii* 90; in 1846–7 are at war with the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; in 1851–2 are again at war with the Cape Colony, *iii* 101; in February 1858 are driven over the Bashee into Bomvanaland, *iv* 44; in 1864 are permitted to return to the present districts of Kentani and Willowvale, *iv* 49: see Kreli and Wars

GAME:

in 1860 is still plentiful in the Orange Free State, *iv* 1

GANGELIZWE, PARAMOUNT CHIEF OF THE TEMBU TRIBE:

particulars concerning, *iv* 51, 55, and 56; in May 1866 takes ■ his great wife ■ daughter of the Xosa chief Kreli, who suffers brutal treatment from him, *iv* 57; Kreli complains to the governor of the Cape Colony, who fines Gangelizwe forty head of cattle, *ib.*; but the Xosas are dissatisfied, and war between the tribes follows, *ib.*; on the 6th of October 1872 the Tembus are defeated in battle, when Gangelizwe flees to Clarkebury, *iv* 58; he then offers his country to the British government, *ib.*; but when a commission is sent to conclude the arrangement he withdraws the offer, *ib.*; in January 1873 formally concludes peace with Kreli, *iv* 59

## GARDINER, CAPTAIN ALLEN F., LATE OF THE ROYAL NAVY:

in January 1835 arrives in Natal as a missionary, *ii* 343; on the 6th of May on behalf of the Europeans at Port Natal enters into a treaty with Dingana, *ii* 347; in accordance with which he shortly afterwards surrenders four fugitives to the Zulu chief, by whose orders they are starved to death, *ib.*; he is now permitted to establish two mission stations, *ii* 348; and therefore returns to England to procure men to occupy them, *ib.*; in June 1837 arrives in Natal again with the reverend Mr. Owen, and takes up his residence at the station which on his former visit he had named the Berea, *ib.*; attempts to act as a magistrate under the Cape of Good Hope punishment act, but is repudiated by the Europeans in Natal, *ib.*; in May 1838 leaves the country, *ii* 374; in a volume termed *Narrative of a Journey to the Zoolu Country in South Africa, undertaken in* 1835, he gives instances of Dingana's ferocity, *ii* 338

## GARRISON OF THE CAPE COLONY DURING THE FIRST BRITISH OCCUPATION FROM 1795 TO 1803:

- 8th light dragoons, in November 1796 arrive, *i* 24; in February 1803 leave, *i* 111
- 22nd regiment of the line: in May 1800 arrives, *i* 72; in November 1802 leaves, *i* 108
- 28th light dragoons: in July 1796 arrive, *i* 12; in November 1798 leave, *i* 46
- 34th regiment of the line: in May 1800 arrives, *i* 72; in February 1803 leaves, *i* 111
- 61st regiment of the line: in January 1799 arrives, *i* 49; in March 1801 leaves, *i* 108
- 65th regiment of the line: in March 1801 arrives, *i* 107; in February 1803 leaves, *i* 111
- 78th regiment of the line: in September 1795 the second battalion arrives and takes part in the conquest of the colony; in May 1796 the first battalion arrives, *i* 12; the two battalions are afterwards united, and in November 1796 the regiment leaves for India, *i* 23
- 80th regiment of the line: in July 1796 arrives, *i* 12; in December 1796 leaves for India, *i* 24
- 81st regiment of the line: in January 1799 arrives, *i* 49; in December 1802 leaves, *i* 108
- 84th regiment: in September 1795 arrives, and takes part in the conquest of the colony; in November 1798 leaves for India, *i* 46
- 86th regiment of the line: in September 1796 arrives, *i* 24; in February 1799 leaves for India, *i* 49

91st regiment of the line: in September 1795 arrives ■ the 98th and takes part in the conquest of the colony; in October 1798 changes its number 98th to 91st; in March 1803 leaves for England, *i* 113

95th regiment of the line: in September 1795 arrives, and takes part in the conquest of the colony; is afterwards drafted into the 84th and 86th, *i* 24

Scotch brigade: in September 1796 arrives, *i* 24; in November 1798 leaves for India, *i* 46

GARRISON OF THE CAPE COLONY UNDER THE BATAVIAN REPUBLIC FROM 1803 TO 1806:

particulars concerning, *i* 129 and 131

GARRISON OF SOUTH AFRICA FROM 1806 TO 1872, PROVIDED BY GREAT BRITAIN:

2nd regiment of the line: in August 1851 the first battalion arrives, *iii* 110; in March 1860 leaves, *iii* 186

5th regiment of the line: in April 1863 the second battalion arrives from Mauritius, *iv* 41; in May 1867 leaves for England, *iv* 148

6th regiment of the line: in November 1821 arrives, *ii* 85; in March 1825 leaves for India, *ib*.

6th regiment of the line: in October and November 1846 the first battalion arrives, *iii* 29; in December 1857 leaves for India, *iii* 162

7th dragoon guards: in June 1843 arrive, *ii* 189; in April 1848 leave, *iii* 68

9th regiment of the line: in October 1865 the first battalion arrives, *iv* 41; in August 1870 leaves for England, *iv* 148

10th regiment of the line: in February 1860 the second battalion arrives, *iii* 186; in November 1864 leaves for India, *iv* 41; in November 1864 the first battalion arrives, *iv* 41; in March 1868 leaves, *iv* 148

11th regiment of the line: in September 1861 the second battalion arrives from England, *iv* 15; in April 1865 leaves for China, *iv* 41; in July 1866 returns to South Africa, *iv* 148; in June 1870 leaves for England, *ib*.

12th regiment of the line: in February 1843 the second battalion on its way to the Mauritius is detained for three months at the Cape, *ii* 188; in August 1851 it arrives again, *iii* 110; in July 1858 leaves for India, *iii* 162

12th Lancers: in October 1851 arrive, *iii* 110; in December 1853 leave for India, *iii* 197

13th regiment of the line: in September 1856 the first battalion arrives, *iii* 198; in August 1857 one wing leaves for India,

- iii 161; in December of the same year the other wing follows,  
 iii 162; in April 1859 the second battalion arrives, iii 186;  
 in March 1863 it leaves for Mauritius, iv 41  
 20th regiment of the line: in May 1867 arrives, iv 148; in June  
 1870 leaves for Mauritius, *ib.*; in January 1871 one wing returns  
 from Mauritius, and in December of the same year leaves for  
 England, *ib.*  
 20th light dragoons: in January 1806 arrive, and take part in  
 the conquest of the colony, i 194; in August 1806 leave for  
 South America, i 216  
 21st light dragoons: in July 1806 arrive, i 216; in June 1817  
 leave for India, i 327  
 24th regiment of the line: in January 1806 arrives, and takes  
 part in the conquest of the colony, i 197; in June 1810 leaves,  
 i 243  
 25th regiment of the line: in April 1840 arrives, ii 188; in  
 April 1842 leaves for India, *ib.*  
 27th regiment of the line: in August 1835 arrives from Cork,  
 ii 124; in January 1848 leaves, iii 67  
 31st regiment of the line: in July 1858 arrives from England,  
 and in October of the same year leaves for India, iii 162  
 32nd regiment of the line: in July 1869 arrives, iv 148; in  
 October 1871 one wing leaves for Mauritius, *ib.*  
 38th regiment of the line: in January 1806 arrives, and takes  
 part in the conquest of the colony, i 194; in August 1806  
 leaves for South America, i 216; in November 1818 arrives  
 again, i 335; in March 1822 leaves, ii 85  
 43rd regiment of the line: in December 1851 arrives, iii 110; in  
 December 1853 leaves for India, iii 197  
 45th regiment of the line: in May 1843 the first battalion arrives  
 from Cork, ii 188; in July 1846 the second battalion arrives,  
 iii 28; in August 1850 the two battalions are united, and in  
 April 1859 the regiment leaves, iii 186  
 49th regiment of the line: in March 1822 arrives, ii 85; in  
 October 1828 leaves, *ib.*  
 54th regiment of the line: in May 1819 arrives, i 339; in March  
 1822 leaves, ii 85  
 55th regiment of the line: in March 1822 arrives, ii 85; in  
 September 1830 leaves, *ib.*  
 59th regiment of the line: in January 1806 arrives, and takes  
 part in the conquest of the colony, i 197; in February 1806  
 leaves for India, i 216; in January 1859 arrives from China,  
 iii 162; in October 1861 leaves, iv 41  
 60th regiment of the line: in July 1806 the fourth battalion



- arrives, and in March 1808 leaves for Barbadoes, *i* 217; in September 1811 the first battalion arrives, *i* 255; in January 1819 leaves, *i* 335
- 60th Rifles: in September 1851 the second battalion arrives, *iii* 110; in April 1858 one wing leaves for India, *iii* 162; and in November of the same year the other wing follows, *ib.*
- 62nd regiment of the line: in May and July 1847 one wing arrives, *iii* 45; in January 1848 leaves, *iii* 67
- 67th regiment of the line: in April and September 1865 arrives, *iv* 41; in July 1866 leaves, *iv* 148
- 71st regiment of the line: in January 1806 arrives, and takes part in the conquest of the colony, *i* 195; in April 1806 leaves for South America, *i* 216
- 72nd regiment of the line: in January 1806 arrives, and takes part in the conquest of the colony, *i* 195; in November 1810 leaves, *i* 243; in February 1816 the first battalion arrives from India, *i* 327; in February 1822 leaves, *ii* 85; in October 1828 arrives again, *ib.*; in April 1840 leaves for England, *ii* 188
- 73rd regiment of the line: in August 1846 arrives, *iii* 28; in March 1858 leaves for India, *iii* 162
- 74th Highlanders: in May 1851 arrive, *iii* 110; in December 1853 leave for India, *iii* 197
- 75th regiment of the line: in August 1830 arrives, *ii* 85; in 1834 is stationed on the eastern colonial frontier, *ii* 86; in June 1843 the skeleton leaves for England, more than half the men having taken their discharge in South Africa, *ii* 189; in October 1871 arrives again, *iv* 148
- 80th regiment of the line: in September 1856 arrives, *iii* 198; in November 1857 leaves for India, *iii* 162
- 83rd regiment of the line: in January 1806 arrives, and takes part in the conquest of the colony, *i* 197; in September 1817 leaves for Ceylon, *i* 327
- 85th regiment of the line: in June 1856 arrives from Mauritius, *iii* 198; in May 1863 leaves for England, *iv* 41
- 86th regiment of the line: in May 1867 one wing arrives from Gibraltar, and in December of the same year proceeds to Mauritius, *iv* 148; in October 1868 the other wing arrives, and in July 1870 the first one returns from Mauritius, *ib.*
- 87th regiment of the line: in October 1806 arrives, *i* 217; in November 1810 leaves, *i* 244
- 89th regiment of the line: in September 1856 arrives, *iii* 198; in August 1857 leaves for India, *iii* 161
- 90th regiment of the line: in April 1846 one wing arrives from

- Ceylon, *iii* 10; in July 1846 the other wing arrives, *iii* 16; in January 1848 leaves, *iii* 67
- 91st regiment of the line: in April 1839 a wing of the first battalion arrives, *ii* 178; in April 1842 the other wing arrives from St. Helena, *ii* 188; in January 1848 the first battalion leaves, *iii* 67; in August 1842 the second battalion arrives from England, *ii* 188; in July 1855 leaves for England, *iii* 197
- 33rd regiment of the line: in January 1806 arrives, and takes part in the conquest of the colony, *i* 195; in May 1814 leaves, *i* 273
- 96th regiment of the line: in March 1863 arrives, *iv* 41; in October and November 1865 leaves for India, *ib.*
- 98th regiment of the line: in August 1824 arrives, *ii* 85; is in garrison in the Cape peninsula during the sixth Kaffir war, *ii* 94; in April 1837 returns to England, *ii* 175
- 99th regiment of the line: in April and September 1865 arrives, *iv* 41; in July 1869 leaves for England, *iv* 148
- Rifle Brigade: in October 1846 one wing of the first battalion arrives, *iii* 29; in November the other wing arrives, *ib.*; in June 1850 leaves, *iii* 109; in March 1852 it returns, *iii* 110; in November 1853 it leaves, *iii* 197
- Royal African corps: in July 1817 arrives, *i* 327; in June 1821 is partly disbanded and partly drafted into the 60th, *i* 361
- In December 1872 the 75th, the 86th, and one wing of the 32nd are in South Africa, *iv* 148

**GASELA, CAPTAIN OF A XOSA CLAN:**

takes part against the Cape Colony in the sixth Kaffir war, but on the 17th of September 1835 agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 125; on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; on the 31st of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 188; on the 2nd of January 1845 enters into a new treaty framed by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; in March 1845 dies, and is succeeded by his son Toyise, *ii* 264

**GASIBONE, CHIEF OF A CLAN OF THE BATLAPIN TRIBE IN BETSHUANALAND:**

in 1858 during the Basuto war makes an unprovoked raid into the Orange Free State, *iii* 487; on the 13th of August 1858 is killed in battle, *iii* 489

**GASIYITSWE:**

succeeds his grandfather Makaba as chief of the Bangwaketse tribe in Betshuanaland, *v* 83

**GASLIGHT :**

in 1846 is first used in Capetown to light the streets, *ii* 245

**GAWLER, MAJOR JOHN COX :**

in 1855 is appointed magistrate with Umhala, *iii* 190; (lieutenant-colonel) in August and September 1858 is special magistrate at Idutywa, *iv* 45

**GAZETTE :**

in August 1800 is first published in Capetown, *i* 78

**GEARY, REV. WILLIAM :**

cause of his opposition to Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 424

**GEHBARD, REV. J. W. L. :**

in June 1810 arrives in South Africa and is appointed clergyman of the Drakenstein congregation, *i* 269

**GECELO, SON OF TSHOPO, VASSAL TEMBU CHIEF :**

particulars concerning, *iv* 50 and 54

**GEI||KHAUS, HOTTENTOT TRIBE IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND :**

particulars concerning, *v* 94, 111, 112, and 121

**GENADENDAL, MORAVIAN MISSION STATION :**

description of in 1803, *i* 146; in January 1806 receives its present name, *ib.*; is very favourably regarded by Commissioner-General de Mist, *ib.*

**GENTOO, THE :**

on the 29th of April 1846 is wrecked near Cape Agulhas, *ii* 244

**GEORGE, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

in April 1811 is formed out of a portion of the old district of Swellendam, *i* 225; in 1834 for fiscal purposes is reduced to the rank of a sub-district of Uitenhage, *ii* 44; but in August 1836 is again provided with its own civil commissioner, *ii* 166

**GEORGE, VILLAGE OF :**

in June 1811 is founded, *i* 225; in February 1813 a congregation of the Dutch reformed church is established there, *i* 226

**GERMAN IMMIGRANTS :**

in 1848 thirty-five families arrive in Natal, *iii* 254; in 1858 and 1859 a considerable number of families of agriculturists arrive and are located in British Kaffraria, *iii* 217 *et seq.*; after 1859 ■ good many arrive and settle in the Cape Colony, *iii* 177

**GERMAN LEGION, BRITISH :**

particulars concerning the settlement in British Kaffraria of part of, *iii* 193, 216, and 219

**GERMAN VILLAGE IN KING-WILLIAMSTOWN:**

in 1857 is laid out and occupied, *iii* 194

**GERMANY:**

in August 1884 takes possession of the coast of Great Namaqualand and Hereroland, *v* 125; and shortly acquires an immense extent of territory to the eastward, *v* 126

**GEROTZ, CAREL DAVID:**

in September 1796 is empowered by General Craig to act as landdrost of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 18; in July 1797 transfers the duty to Mr. Bresler, *i* 37

**GETHIN, CAPTAIN:**

loses his life in the fifth Kaffir war, *i* 336

**GHIKA, THE:**

on the 17th of October 1847 is wrecked at the mouth of the Buffalo river, *iii* 45

**GHOUDAMUP:** see Berg Damaras**GIBEON, RHENISH MISSION STATION IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:**

in 1866 is destroyed, *v* 99

**GIDDY, RICHARD:**

is master of the supreme court of British Kaffraria, *iii* 226

**GILFILLAN, WILLIAM:**

in February 1837 is appointed civil commissioner and resident magistrate, of Cradock *ii* 165

**GINGER:**

cultivation of in Natal, *iii* 261

**GIRLS' TRAINING SCHOOL:**

in 1871 is opened in Basutoland by the reverend Mr. Jousse, *v* 76

**GLADSTONE, RIGHT HONOURABLE WILLIAM EWART:**

on the 23rd of December 1845 becomes secretary of state for the colonies, *ii* 239; on the 7th of July 1846 is succeeded by Earl Grey, *iii* 29

**GLASGOW MISSIONARY SOCIETY:**

in 1821 commences to work in South Africa, *i* 409; particulars concerning, *ii* 10, 51, and 131

**GLENBERVIE, LORD:**

in 1801 is appointed governor of the Cape Colony, but never enters upon the duty, *i* 79

**GLENELG, LORD :**

in April 1835 becomes secretary of state for the colonies in Viscount Melville's cabinet, *ii* 141; is in full sympathy with the party represented in South Africa by the reverend Dr. Philip, *ii* 142; on the 26th of December 1835 writes a despatch justifying the Xosas for making war upon the Cape Colony, and announcing that Sir Benjamin D'Urban's arrangements with regard to the province of Queen Adelaide must be reversed, *ii* 142; sends out Captain Stockenstrom as lieutenant-governor with instructions to undo all that Sir Benjamin D'Urban has done, *ii* 144; is the author of the act usually known as the Cape of Good Hope punishment bill, *ii* 148; refuses to annex Natal to the British dominions, *ii* 346; orders all the land east of the Fish and Kat rivers, except the Fingo locations, to be restored to the Xosas, *ii* 151; dismisses Sir Benjamin D'Urban from office as governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 171; after causing unbounded discontent and inflicting severe losses upon the Cape Colony, on the 8th of February 1839 he is forced by his colleagues to resign as secretary of state, *ii* 181; on the 23rd of April 1866 dies at Cannes. He was unmarried, and the title is extinct.

**GLEN GREY LOCATION IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

in 1852 is formed, *ii* 113; unsuccessful efforts of Sir Philip Wodehouse to obtain it for European settlement, *iv* 45 and 50

**COATS :**

number of in 1865 in the Cape Colony, *iv* 43

**GOBABIS, IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND :**

the Rhenish mission station at is plundered and destroyed by the Gei||khuas under the captain Lambert, *v* 99

**GODERICH, VISCOUNT :**

from April to September 1827 is secretary of state for the colonies, *i* 426; in November 1830 again becomes secretary of state for the colonies, *i* 489; in April 1833 retires from office, *ii* 28

**GODLONTON, THE HONOURABLE ROBERT :**

on the 23rd of July 1850 is appointed ■ member of the legislative council of the Cape Colony, *iii* 122; when assisting in the preparation of the constitution urges the separation of the two provinces or the removal of the seat of government to the east, *iii* 127; proceedings in the Cape parliament of, *iv* 74, 128, and 139; in 1871 he is a member of the federation commission, *iv* 128



**GOEDGEDACHT, MISSION STATION OF THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH:**

in 1862 is established in the location of Michiel Buys in the district of Zoutpansberg, *iv* 477; in July 1865 is temporarily abandoned on account of the war, *iv* 481

**GOES (CORRUPTION OF LEGHOYAS):**

take refuge in the Cape Colony in a famishing condition, and are apprenticed to farmers, *i* 446

**GOLD:**

in 1836 is seen in the form of rings of native manufacture in possession of Bantu at the Zoutpansberg, *ii* 288; in 1867 is discovered by Carl Mauch at the Tati, *v* 4; also near the Zambesi, *v* 11; in 1869 and 1870 is found by Mr. Edward Button in various parts of the South African Republic, and in 1871 at Eersteling near Marabastad, *iii* 212

**GOLD MINING:**

was carried on in ancient times in the territory south of the Limpopo ■ well as between that river and the Zambesi, *v* 3; account of operations at the Tati, *v* 8 and 9; in 1872 is favourably regarded by the government of the South African Republic, *v* 12

**GOLIATH YZERBEK, PETTY KORANA CAPTAIN:**

in 1849 is provided by the Sovereignty government with a location along the southern bank of the Vaal river, *iii* 310; on the abandonment of the Sovereignty by Great Britain in February 1854 is left in an independent position, *iii* 442; in September 1854 is at war with David Danser, *iii* 455; in 1857 sells his share of the mixed Korana and Bushman reserve to the Orange Free State, *iii* 485; in 1858 assists Scheel Kobus in plundering the Free State, *ib.*

**GOMAPERI:**

action of the 16th of July 1878 between Hereros and Hottentots at, *iv* 429

**GONTSE, CAPTAIN OF A BAROLONG CLAN:**

in 1841 moves from Thaba Ntshu over the Vaal river, *ii* 466; and has a tract of land assigned to him by Hendrik Potgieter, *ib.*; upon which he lives as a favoured subject of the emigrant farmers, *ib.*; subsequently wanders from one place to another until his death, when he is succeeded by Masisi, *ii* 467; see Barolong tribe

**GOSLING, JAMES:**

in 1818 introduces ■ few English boys as immigrants into the Cape Colony, *i* 347

GOSSELIN, CONSTANT, OF THE PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY:

in June 1833 with his colleagues founds the mission station Morija in Basutoland, *i* 469

GOUVEIA:

performs important services for the Portuguese government in South Africa, *v* 156; transactions in 1890 of, *v* 157 and 158; eminent services of, *v* 165; in 1892 is killed in battle with the chief Makombi, *v* 166

GOVERNMENT BANK:

this bank conducted business under three headings. 1. Mortgages. In this branch money was advanced on landed property, with collateral personal security. Payment usually commenced upon the expiration of two years from the date of the loan, and was made at the rate of ten per cent per annum. 2. Temporary loans. In this branch money was lent for six months on security of slaves or other movable property. 3. Discount. In this branch bills and notes of hand payable within three months were discounted, if the security was considered sufficient; on the 31st of December 1842 the bank was closed, *ii* 203

GOVERNORS OF THE CAPE COLONY:

succession of: see Heads of the Cape government

VAN DE GRAAFF, HENRY:

in August 1804 is appointed first landdrost of the district of Tulbagh, *i* 152

GRAAFF-REINET:

conduct of the people of in 1795 after the conquest of the Cape Colony by the English, *i* 6; description of the village in 1803, *i* 128; and in 1804, *i* 149

GRAHAM, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL JOHN:

upon the conquest of the Cape Colony in 1806 is instructed to form a regiment of Hottentots, *i* 206; commands the united military and burgher forces in the fourth Kaffir war, *i* 252; in October 1820 is appointed first landdrost of the district of Albany, but is unable to assume the duty, *i* 359; in March 1821 dies, *ib.*

GRAHAM, ROBERT:

on the 24th of December 1864 becomes governor's deputy in British Kaffraria, *iv* 71; as collector of customs and a member of the executive council, in 1871 signs a memorandum in antagonism to the introduction of responsible government in the Cape Colony, *iv* 118

## GRAHAMSTOWN :

in March 1812 the head-quarters of the troops on the frontier occupy this place, *i* 258; in July a deputy landdrost of Uitenhage is stationed here, *ib.*; and in August the name Grahamstown is given to the encampment in honour of Lieutenant-Colonel John Graham, of the Cape regiment, *ib.*; on the 22nd of April 1819 it is unsuccessfully attacked by a great horde of Xosas, *i* 337; in February 1822 is made the seat of magistracy of the district of Albany, *i* 374; in 1834 it contains six hundred houses, *ii* 83; further particulars concerning, *ib.*; during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 presents a scene of great misery, *ii* 93; the session of the Cape parliament in 1864 is held in, *iv* 35; population in 1865, *iv* 42; ■ town hall including ■ memorial tower of the British settlers is erected in, *iv* 110

## GRAHAMSTOWN JOURNAL :

on the 30th of December 1831 is first issued, and is still published, *ii* 16; note on, *ii* 156

## GRAND, GEORGE FRANCIS :

occupies a vague position in the government of the Cape Colony under the Batavian Republic, *i* 177; on the 17th of January 1820 dies in Capetown

## GRANT, J. MURRAY :

in January 1872 visits Nomansland on a commission, *iv* 68 and 69

## GRAVING DOCK IN TABLE BAY :

in 1882 is completed, *iv* 143

## GREAT EMIGRATION OF DUTCH-SPEAKING PEOPLE FROM THE CAPE COLONY :

causes of, *ii* 266 *et seq.*; imaginary grievance of some of the emigrants, *ii* 283; causes of as given in a letter written by Pieter Uys, *ii* 312

## GREAT NAMAQUALAND :

in 1814 mission work is commenced in, *i* 410; description of, *v* 111; in 1884 becomes a German possession, *v* 125

## GREAT STORM OF JULY 1822 :

account of the, *i* 330

## GREEN, BENJAMIN :

with Dr. Cowie in 1829 travels from the Cape Colony by way of Natal to Delagoa Bay, *ii* 340; and perishes of fever when trying to return, *ib.*

GREEN, FREDERICK :

assists the Hereros in their war of independence, *v* 98; in May 1868 narrowly escapes being killed by Hottentots, *v* 100

GREEN, HENRY :

is in charge of the commissariat train that accompanies Sir Harry Smith's expedition to restore British authority north of the Orange, *iii* 285; on the 23rd of July 1852 becomes British resident in the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 331; and retains that office until the abandonment of the country by the British government, *iii* 365

GREY COLLEGE AT BLOEMFONTEIN :

particulars concerning, *iv* 16 and 17

GREY, EARL :

on the 7th of July 1846 succeeds Mr. Gladstone as secretary of state for the colonies, *iii* 29; is in favour of granting to the Cape Colony a representative government, *iii* 119; on the 27th of February 1852 is succeeded by Sir John Pakington, *iii* 132

GREY HOSPITAL IN KING-WILLIAMSTOWN :

is erected by Sir George Grey to break the belief of the Kaffirs in witchcraft, *iii* 191

GREY INSTITUTE AT PORT ELIZABETH :

particulars concerning, *iv* 15 and 16

GREY LIBRARY IN CAPETOWN :

particulars concerning, *iv* 19 and 20

GREY, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL HENRY GEORGE :

from January to May 1807 is acting governor of the Cape Colony, *i* 218; and again from July to September 1811, *i* 248

GREY, SIR GEORGE :

on the 5th of December 1854 becomes governor of the Cape Colony and high commissioner, *iii* 146; particulars concerning his previous career, *ib.*; is desirous of preventing war between the Orange Free State and the Basuto tribe, *iii* 457; arranges for a meeting in October 1855 of President Boshof and Moshesh, *ib.*; is the means of a treaty being entered into between the Free State and the Basuto tribe, which, however, is not observed by Moshesh, *iii* 458; by means of agents scattered throughout Kaffirland is kept informed of Moshesh's intrigues, *iii* 464; in August and September 1858 arranges conditions of peace between the Free State and the Basuto tribe, *iii* 492; in

1858 intends to remove Jan Letele and Lehana to Nomansland, but his design is frustrated by Moshesh, *iv* 180; offers the Griqua captain Adam Kok part of Nomansland, *iv* 195; on the 4th of June 1859 is recalled by the secretary of state for the colonies, *iii* 183; on the 20th of August transfers the administration to Lieutenant-General Wynyard, and leaves for England, *iii* 185; is reappointed governor of the Cape Colony and high commissioner, and on the 4th of July 1860 arrives at Capetown again, *iii* 187; accompanies Prince Alfred on a tour through South Africa, *ii* 2 to 5; in July 1861 sends all the troops in Capetown to Natal, where an attack by Ketshwayo is feared, *iv* 15; on the 15th of August 1861 leaves South Africa to assume the government of New Zealand, *iv* 18; presents a valuable library to the Cape Colony, *iv* 19 and 20

GREY, THE RIGHT REVEREND DR. ROBERT:

in 1848 arrives as the first bishop of the Anglican church in South Africa, *iii* 71; in the same year accompanies Sir Harry Smith to British Kaffraria, *iii* 66

GREYLING, COMMANDANT PIETER:

selects the site of Pietermaritzburg, *ii* 378

GRIFFITH, LIEUTENANT CHARLES:

is one of the early breeders of merino sheep in the district of Albany, *ii* 40

GRIFFITH, LIEUTENANT VALENTINE:

in 1820 brings a party of settlers to the Cape Colony, and is located on the river Zonder End, *i* 352; subsequent movements of the party, *i* 355

GRIFFITH, INSPECTOR CHARLES DUNCAN:

in September 1857 assists in breaking up a Tembu robber band, *iii* 215; on the 22nd of November 1865 holds an important meeting with the Tembus in Glen Grey, *ii* 51; in August 1871 becomes chief magistrate and governor's agent in Basutoland, *v* 70; in January 1872 visits Nomansland on a commission, *iv* 68 and 69

GRIFFITH, THE RIGHT REVEREND PATRICK RAYMOND, FIRST BISHOP OF THE ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH IN THE CAPE COLONY:

on the 14th of April 1833 arrives in Capetown from Europe, *ii* 225

GRIFFITH, WILLIAM DOWNES:

on the 20th of March 1866 becomes attorney-general of the Cape Colony, *iv* 80; in 1871 draws up a memorandum in antagonism



to the introduction of responsible government in the Cape Colony, *iv* 117; is excused from drawing up the constitution amendment act in 1871, as he does not approve of it, *iv* 126; in December 1872, upon the introduction of responsible government, retires on pension, *iv* 147

GRIQUAS:

the people so called are composed of various races who were collected together by missionaries of the London society and induced to settle near the junction of the Vaal and Orange rivers, *i* 185; in 1805 their settlements are visited and described by a government commission, *ib.*; in 1813 the reverend John Campbell gives them the name Griquas, which they adopt, *i* 272; some of them become marauders, and commit great atrocities upon the Basuto, *i* 466; further particulars concerning, *i* 474, 476, and 481, *ii* 57; short sketch of their history, *ii* 470; see Barends, Davids, Kok, and Waterboer

GRIQUA CLAN UNDER NICHOLAS WATERBOER:

history of, *iv* 331 *et seq.*; in 1870 consists of some five or six hundred individuals sunk in poverty and wretchedness, *iv* 336; cause of their rebellion in 1878, *iv* 424 and 425

GRIQUALAND EAST:

area of, *iv* 60; description of, *iv* 61

GRIQUALAND WEST:

on the 27th of October 1871 is annexed to the British dominions, *iv* 372; is divided into the three magisterial districts of Klipdrift, Pniel, and Griquatown, *iv* 373; receives a staff of British officials, *ib.*; area, population, and other particulars concerning the territory, *iv* 374; on the 17th of July 1873 is formed into a crown colony, *iv* 409; it is divided into the electoral districts of Kimberley, Barkly, and Hay, *iv* 409; constitution of the legislative council of, *iv* 409 and 410; public debt of in 1877, *iv* 424; in 1877 the Cape parliament passes an act annexing it, *iv* 423; in 1878 the Griquas, Koranas, and Betshuana residing in it rebel, *iv* 424 to 432; in October 1880 the annexation to the Cape Colony is completed, *iv* 433

GRIQUALAND WEST LAND COURT:

in 1875 is appointed, *iv* 419; proceedings of, *iv* 420

GRIQUATOWN, DISTRICT OF:

description of, *iv* 334 and 335

GRIQUATOWN, VILLAGE OF:

in 1803 is founded as a mission station, *ii* 470; in 1813 receives its present name from the reverend John Campbell, *ii* 473

**GROBBELAAR, J. H. :**

in February 1860 becomes acting president of the South African Republic, *iv* 444; in November of the same year is succeeded by Stephanus Schoeman, *ib.*

**GROEPE, FIELD CORNET CHRISTIAAN :**

at the commencement of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 takes command of the half-breeds of the Kat river who rally to the support of the government, *ii* 97; and performs excellent service against the enemy, *ii* 101; in the war of 1846-7 is again commandant of the Kat river people, *iii* 23

**GROOTE POST :**

in May 1804 the tract of land so named at Groenekloof with some other ground of less value is set apart as an experimental and stock-improving farm, *i* 158; which is continued by Major-General Baird, *i* 211; in March 1815 Lord Charles Somerset assumes personal control of it, *i* 281; and uses the estate as a preserve for game, *i* 411; in October 1827 it is divided into seven farms, which are disposed of by auction, *i* 496

**GROUT, REV. ALDIN, AMERICAN MISSIONARY :**

in February 1836 assists to found the first mission station in Natal, *ii* 348; in April 1838 leaves Natal on account of disturbances caused by the Zulus, *ii* 374; in June 1840 returns and resumes mission work, *ii* 400

**GUANO :**

particulars concerning the discovery of a vast quantity of guano on some small islands off the coast of Great Namaqualand, and its removal, *ii* 234

**GUANO ISLANDS OFF THE COAST OF GREAT NAMAQUALAND :**

on the 5th of May 1866 are taken possession of for Great Britain, *ii* 236; and on the 16th of July in the same year are annexed to the Cape Colony, *ib.*; see Ichaboe

**GUBELA, WIFE OF THE ABASEKUNENE CHIEF UMJOLI :**

acts in a very valiant manner against Tshaka's armies, but is ultimately beaten and killed, *i* 448

**GUNGUNYANA :**

in 1884 succeeds his father Umzila ■ chief of the Matshangana, *v* 154; in 1894 sets the Portuguese government at defiance, *v* 166; but in December 1895 is made a prisoner and is banished to Portugal, *ib.*; in December 1906 dies, *v* 167

**GUNS:**

illegal traffic in guns and ammunition in the South African Republic, *iv* 454; are sold freely to blacks at the diamond fields, *iv* 412 and 426; a large number are seized by the Free State authorities at Magersfontein, *iv* 412; the republican government is compelled by Sir Henry Barkly to restore them and to pay damages for the seizure, *iv* 413 and 414

**GURNEY, CHARLES:**

in 1820 brings ■ party of settlers to the Cape Colony, and is located at Algoa Bay, ■ 353

**GWALANA POST:**

is formed by Sir Lowry Cole to overawe the Gunukwebes, and in March 1830 troops are stationed there, *ii* 12; at the commencement of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 it is abandoned, and is never again occupied, *ii* 92

**GWALI MISSION STATION:**

in June 1820 is founded by the reverend John Brownlee in the Tyumie valley, *i* 318; in February 1852 it is abandoned, and has never been reoccupied, *iii* 98

**HAAS, REV. JOHAN:**

from February 1799 to February 1802 is acting clergyman of the Lutheran church in Capetown, *i* 105

**HAASJE, DUTCH BRIG:**

in 1797 is sent from Batavia with munitions of war to aid the nationals of Graaff-Reinet against the English, *i* 20; springs a leak at sea, and puts into Delagoa Bay to refit, *ib.*; where she is seized by a combined force of English and Portuguese, *i* 21; and is sent as a prize to Simon's Bay, *i* 22

**HAHN, REV. DR. C. H., RHENISH MISSIONARY IN GREAT NAMAQUA LAND:**

in 1868 is almost alone at Otjimbingue, *v* 100; in September 1870 draws up a treaty of peace between the Hereros and the Hottentots, *v* 103; in 1882 induces some of the clans in Hereroland and Great Namaqualand to agree once more to peace, *v* 123

**HALLORAN, REV. DR. LAURENCE:**

strange career of, *i* 238

**HALSE, HENRY:**

on the 18th of August 1850 becomes ■ member of the legislative council of the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 313

**HAM, REV. PIETER NICOLAAS :**

is sent out by ■ society in Holland to minister to the emigrant farmers in Natal, but on his arrival there on the 8th of May 1843 is not permitted by the English authorities to land, *ii* 445; proceeds to Delagoa Bay, where his wife dies, *ib.*; in 1844 leaves Lourenço Marques and proceeds to Capetown, *ii* 456; early in 1845 becomes the first resident clergyman of French Hoek, *ii* 249

**HAMELBERG, H. A. L. :**

in 1871 is appointed plenipotentiary of the Orange Free State in London, *iv* 372; but is not recognised in that capacity by the secretaries of state, *ib.*

**HANKEY MISSION STATION :**

in 1825 is founded in the Cape Colony by the London society, *i* 409

**HANOVERIAN MISSION SOCIETY :**

mention of, *iii* 439; sends agents to Zululand, *iv* 457

**HANTAM, THE, TRACT OF LAND IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

description of, *i* 167

**HANTO, JAN, KORANA CAPTAIN :**

in December 1833 with his people is induced by some Wesleyan missionaries to settle at Merumetsu, *i* 480

**HARBOUR IMPROVEMENTS :**

particulars concerning works in Table Bay, *ii* 199; concerning works at Algoa Bay, *ii* 200; concerning works at the mouth of the Kowie river, *ib.*; concerning works at the mouth of the Buffalo river, *iii* 190; concerning works at Port Natal, *iv* 162; mention of, *iii* 143

**HARDING, JOHN WILLIAM :**

sensational theft of diamonds by, *iv* 401 and 402

**HARDING, WILLIAM WALTER :**

on the 15th of November 1826 is appointed deputy landdrost of Beaufort in succession to Mr. J. Baird; in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Beaufort West, *i* 493; on the 13th of November 1845 is appointed crown prosecutor of Natal, *ii* 462; on the 11th of April 1850 on behalf of the Natal government concludes ■ treaty with the Pondo chief Faku, *iv* 64

**HARD ROAD OVER THE CAPE FLATS :**

between July 1844 and September 1846 is opened for ■ in sections, *ii* 244

**HARE, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL JOHN, OF THE 27TH REGIMENT:**

on the 9th of August 1838 becomes acting lieutenant-governor of the eastern province of the Cape Colony, *ii* 180; in September 1839 is confirmed in the appointment, *ii* 184; in March 1846 calls upon Sandile to surrender some criminals, and ■ he meets with ■ refusal sends a military force to occupy the chief's kraal, which is the commencement of the seventh Kaffir war, *iii* 2; in July and August 1846 commands the first division of the army of operations, *iii* 18; in September 1846 leaves South Africa to return to England, *iii* 27; but dies at sea four days after embarking, *ib.*

**HARGREAVES, REV. PETER, WESLEYAN MISSIONARY:**

in 1872 acts ■ ■ peacemaker between the Xosa and Tembu tribes, *iv* 58;

**HARKER, CAPTAIN, R. C.:**

on the 15th of November 1826 is appointed resident ■ Plettenberg's Bay in succession to Mr. W. W. Harding

**HARRIES, WILLIAM MATTHEW:**

is the leader in the Cape parliament in the effort to separate the two provinces of the Cape Colony, *iv* 7 and 27

**HARRIS, CAPTAIN CORNWALLIS:**

in 1836 visits the Matabele chief Moselekatse and hunts along the Limpopo river, *ii* 288

**HARRISMITH, DISTRICT IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

in September 1854 is united to Winburg, *iii* 450; in 1856 becomes ■ separate district again, *iii* 461

**HARRISMITH, VILLAGE OF:**

in May 1849 is founded, *iii* 299

**HART, ROBERT:**

in 1817 succeeds Dr. Mackrill ■ superintendent of the Somerset farm, *i* 281

**HARTEBEEST HOEK, FARM OF MR. ANDREW BAIN NEAR BLOEMFONTEIN:**

account of Prince Alfred's hunt at, *iv* 4

**HARTEBEEST RIVER, IN THE CAPE PROVINCE, TERRITORY DRAINED BY:**

description of, *iv* 30

**HARTLEY, HENRY:**

is the first in our times to notice ancient mines in the territory south of the Zambesi, *v* 3; invites ■ German geologist named Carl Mauch to visit the country, *v* 4



**HARVEY, WILLIAM HENRY:**

on the 18th of October 1836 becomes treasurer-general of the Cape Colony, *ii* 215; is author of three volumes of the *Flora Capensis*, *ib.*; on the 7th of December 1841 leaves for Europe suffering from aberration of mind, *ib.*

**HAWKINS, WILLIAM:**

in October 1851 is appointed a member of the legislative council of the Cape Colony, *iii* 128; on the 22nd of March 1852 resigns, *iii* 138

**HAY, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL CHARLES CRAUFURD:**

from the 20th of May to the 31st of December 1870 is head of the Cape government and her Majesty's high commissioner in South Africa, *iv* 109; in September 1870 opens a controversy with the government of the Orange Free State concerning the claim made by Mr. Arnot, on behalf of the Griqua captain Nicholas Waterboer, to the territory in which the principal diamond mines are situated, *iv* 355; in his despatches to the secretary of state uses expressions that cannot be justified by facts, *iv* 359; in September 1870 writes to President Pretorius, of the South African Republic, calling upon him to abstain from aggressions on Bantu tribes, *v* 35; on the 30th of November 1870 appoints Mr. John Campbell special magistrate in all the territory claimed by Mr. Arnot for Nicholas Waterboer, ■ 37

**HAYWARD, WILLIAM:**

in May 1824 is appointed special commissioner in Albany, *i* 391

**HEADS OF THE CAPE GOVERNMENT, SUCCESSION OF:**

Admiral Sir George Keith Elphinstone and Major-Generals Alured Clarke and James Henry Craig, conjointly, as commanders of the British forces, from 16 September to 15 November 1795;

Major-General James Henry Craig, commandant of the town and settlement of the Cape of Good Hope, 15 November 1795 to 5 May 1797;

George, Earl Macartney, governor, 5 May 1797 to 20 November 1798;

Major-General Francis Dundas, acting governor, 21 November 1798 to ■ December 1799;

Sir George Yonge, governor, 10 December 1799 to 20 April 1801;

Lieutenant-General Francis Dundas, acting governor, 20 April 1801 to 20 February 1803;

- Jacob Abraham de Mist, commissioner-general, 21 February 1803 to 25 September 1804 ;
- Lieutenant-General Jan Willem Janssens, governor, 1 March 1803 to 18 January 1806 ;
- Major-General David Baird, acting governor, 10 January 1806 to 17 January 1807 ;
- Lieutenant-General Henry George Grey, acting governor, 17 January to 21 May 1807 ;
- Du Pré Alexander, earl of Caledon, governor, 22 May 1807 to 4 July 1811 ;
- Lieutenant-General Henry George Grey, acting governor, 4 July to 5 September 1811 ;
- Lieutenant-General Sir John Francis Cradock, governor, 6 September 1811 to 6 April 1814 ;
- Lieutenant-General Lord Charles Henry Somerset, governor, 6 April 1814 to 13 January 1820 ;
- Major-General Sir Rufane Shawe Donkin, acting governor, 13 January 1820 to 30 November 1821 ;
- General Lord Charles Henry Somerset, governor, 30 November 1821 to 5 March 1826 ;
- Major-General Richard Bourke, acting governor, 5 March 1826 to 2 September 1828 ;
- Lieutenant-General Sir Galbraith Lowry Cole, governor, 9 September 1828 to 10 August 1833 ;
- Lieutenant-Colonel Thomas Francis Wade, acting governor, 10 August 1833 to 16 January 1834 ;
- Major-General Sir Benjamin D'Urban, governor, 16 January 1834 to 22 January 1838 ;
- Major-General Sir George Thomas Napier, governor, 22 January 1838 to 18 March 1844 ;
- Lieutenant-General Sir Peregrine Maitland, governor, 18 March 1844 to 27 January 1847 ;
- Sir Henry Pottinger, governor and high commissioner, 27 January to 1 December 1847 ;
- Lieutenant-General Sir Henry George Wakelyn Smith, governor and high commissioner, 1 December 1847 to 31 March 1852 ;
- Lieutenant-General the honourable George Cathcart, governor and high commissioner, 31 March 1852 to 26 May 1854 ;
- Charles Henry Darling, Esquire, acting governor, 26 May to 5 December 1854 ;
- Sir George Grey, governor and high commissioner, 5 December 1854 to 20 August 1859 ;
- Lieutenant-General Robert Henry Wynyard, acting governor, 20 August 1859 to 4 July 1860 ;

Sir George Grey, governor and high commissioner, 4 July 1860 to 15 August 1861;

Lieutenant-General Robert Henry Wynyard, acting governor, 15 August 1861 to 15 January 1862;

Sir Philip Edmond Wodehouse, governor and high commissioner, 15 January 1862 to 20 May 1870;

Lieutenant-General Charles Craufurd Hay, acting governor and high commissioner, 20 May to 31 December 1870;

Sir Henry Barkly, governor and high commissioner, 31 December 1870

**HEBRON MISSION STATION:**

in 1847 is founded between Basutoland and the Orange river by the French evangelical society, *ii* 502

**HEEMRADEN:**

in October 1805 have their qualifications and duties strictly defined by an ordinance, *i* 182; on the 1st of January 1828 the office is abolished, *i* 492

**VAN DEN HEEVER, LUKAS:**

in 1844 is one of the leaders of the emigrant farmers in the district of Philippolis who are favourable to British rule, *ii* 487

**HEIDELBERG, DISTRICT IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

in March 1866 is formed out of the eastern part of Potchefstroom, *iv* 499

**HEIDELBERG, VILLAGE OF:**

in 1865 is founded, *iv* 499

**VAN HEININGEN, REV. MR.:**

in 1858 becomes clergyman of the Dutch reformed church at Lydenburg, *iv* 436

**HELMORE, REV. HOLLOWAY:**

in 1859 leads a mission party to Linyanti, and dies there with his wife and two of his children, *v* 90 and 91

**HENDERSON, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL:**

endeavours to introduce Angora goats into the Cape Colony, *ii* 42

**HERCULES, THE, AMERICAN SHIP:**

on the 16th of June 1796 is wrecked on the coast of Kaffraria

**HERERO TRIBE (CATTLE DAMARAS):**

account of, *v* 93 *et seq.*; in 1840 are reduced to servitude by the Hottentots under Jonker Afrikaner, *v* 94; in 1863 attempt to regain their independence, *v* 97; at Omukaru gain a decisive

victory over the Hottentots, *v* 102; and in September 1870 peace is concluded between the belligerents, *v* 103; in 1880 war with the Hottentots recommences, *v* 121

**HERMANSBURG MISSIONARY SOCIETY:**

employs agents among Bantu tribes in the South African Republic,  
*iv* 467

**HERMANUS MATROOS, A KAFFIR FOR SOME TIME EMPLOYED AS AN INTERPRETER:**

during the war of 1846-7 assists the Europeans, *iii* 8; in January 1848 is rewarded by ■ grant of land near Fort Beaufort, ■ which he collects a number of retainers, *iii* 63; he becomes disaffected and acts treacherously, *iii* 102; on the 7th of January 1851 attacks Fort Beaufort, but is defeated and killed.  
*iii* 103

**HERMANUS VAN WYK, LEADER OF A PARTY OF MIXED-BREEDS:**

in 1870 settles at Rehoboth in Great Namaqualand, *v* 102

**HERMON MISSION STATION:**

in 1847 ■ founded in Basutoland by the French evangelical society

**HEROLD, REV. TOBIAS JOHANNES:**

in April 1813 assumes duty ■ first clergyman of George, *i* 226

**HERSCHEL, SIR JOHN, THE EMINENT ASTRONOMER:**

in January 1834 arrives in South Africa, *ii* 29; takes ■ very warm interest in matters relating to education, *ii* 210; at the request of Sir George Napier draws up a plan for the improvement of the public schools, *ib.*; in March 1838 returns to Europe, *ii* 212; at the governor's request selects teachers for the most important public schools, *ib.*

**HERSCHEL SYSTEM OF SCHOOLS:**

in 1839 is commenced in the Cape Colony, *ii* 211

**HESSE, REV. F.:**

in September 1800 arrives in South Africa and assumes duty as clergyman of the Lutheran church in Capetown, *i* 105; in June 1817 leaves the colony to return to Europe, *i* 317

**HEYMAN, CAPTAIN, OF THE BRITISH SOUTH AFRICA COMPANY'S POLICE:**

in May 1891 defeats ■ Portuguese force near Andrada, *v* 159

**HEYNING, MARGARETHA ANNA, WIDOW OF HENDRIK PIETER MOLLER:**

in 1799 establishes a perpetual fund for the relief of helpless and distressed old women, *i* 284; in 1808 founds the South African orphan asylum, *i* 286; on the 6th of January 1815 dies childless,  
*i* 287

**HIGH COMMISSIONER :**

the office is first held in South Africa by Sir Henry Pottinger,  
*iii* 42

**HIGH COURT OF JUSTICE :**

in 1797 is remodelled and made to consist of a president and seven members, *i* 33; in 1803 is made to consist of a president and six members, and is to be independent of the executive and legislative authority, *i* 106; in 1806 again becomes dependent upon the executive government, *i* 212; in December 1819 various changes in its powers and duties are made, *i* 319; on the 1st of January 1828 it is abolished, and a supreme court of four qualified judges appointed by the crown is established, *i* 491

**HILL, CAPTAIN JOHN MONTGOMERY :**

in January 1839 becomes the first resident magistrate of Malmesbury, *ii* 228; in March 1848 becomes resident magistrate of Piketberg, *iii* 70

**HINTSA, PARAMOUNT CHIEF OF THE XOSA TRIBE :**

is a minor when his father Kawuta dies, *i* 250; in 1809 is visited by Major Collins at his kraal between the Kei and Bashee rivers, *i* 233; is a very poor specimen of a Xosa, *ii* 109; in 1818 assists Ndlambe against Gaika, *i* 333; in 1828 assists in the destruction of the Amangwane, *i* 454; further mention of, *i* 450; at the commencement of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 professes to be neutral, but really takes an active part against the Cape Colony, *ii* 108; in February and again in March 1835 is called upon by Sir Benjamin D'Urban to cease aiding the Rarabe clans, but does not comply with the demand, *ii* 103; after the entrance of an army into his country declines to give satisfaction for his hostile conduct, *ii* 111; but after losing a large number of cattle, on the 29th of April comes to the British camp to ask for peace, and there on the following day agrees to the governor's terms, *ii* 112; remains in the camp as a hostage for the fulfilment of the conditions of peace, *ib.*; as the cattle which he agreed to surrender are not brought in by his people he proposes to go with a patrol of the British forces to collect them, *ii* 115; this offer being accepted, the patrol sets out, when he attempts to make his escape, and is killed in doing so, *ib.*; he is succeeded in the chieftainship by his son Kreli, *ii* 117

**HLANGWENI TRIBE :** see Fodo and Nombewu



**HLUBI TRIBE :**

account of, *iii* 235; in 1848 a section of it seeks refuge in Natal, *iii* 235; and in 1849 has a location assigned to it at the sources of the Bushman's river, *iii* 236; assists the Natal government against the rebel chief Matyana, *iii* 245; see Amahlubi, Langalibalele, and Umpangazita

**HOACHANAS, RHENISH MISSION STATION IN HEREROLAND :**

in 1866 is destroyed, *v* 99

**HODGES, SIR WILLIAM :**

on the 10th of February 1858 is appointed chief justice of the Cape Colony, *iii* 148

**DER HOFF, REV. DIRK :**

in May 1853 arrives in the South African Republic from Holland, and for some time is the only clergyman there, *iii* 408

**HOFFMAN, JOSIAS PHILIP :**

in 1824 proceeds to Natal with Mr. Farewell, but does not remain there long, *ii* 324; in February 1854 is chairman of the assembly of delegates that takes over the government of the Orange River Sovereignty from Sir George Clerk, *iii* 361; is elected first president of the Orange Free State, *iii* 447; visits Moshesh, *iii* 451; makes him a present of gunpowder, *iii* 455; attempts to conceal this transaction from the volksraad, *ib.*; becomes very unpopular, and in February 1855 resigns his office, *iii* 456

**VAN HOGENDORP, GYSBERT KAREL :**

in 1803 endeavours to establish ■ settlement of Dutch working people in the neighbourhood of Plettenberg's Bay, *i* 134 *et seq.*; but the attempt ends in utter failure and heavy loss to himself, *i* 137

**HOGG, CAPTAIN WILLIAM S., OF THE 7TH DRAGOON GUARDS :**

in August 1846 commands an expedition against the Tembu chief Mapasa, *iii* 24; serves afterwards until the close of the war of 1846-7 ■ commandant of Hottentot levies, *iii* 38; in 1851 is appointed assistant commissioner with large powers to deal with affairs north of the Orange river in conjunction with Mr. C. M. Owen, *iii* 372; on the 27th of November reaches Bloemfontein and at once enters into correspondence with Mr. A. W. J. Pretorius, *ib.*; investigates matters in the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 325; ascertains the views of the people of the Sovereignty with regard to their future government, *ib.*; arranges with Mr. Pretorius for a conference on the 16th of January 1852, *iii* 374; on the 17th of January 1852 concludes

the Sand River Convention with delegates from the Transvaal emigrants, *iii* 377; in February opens negotiations with Moshesh, *iii* 328; but cannot bring that chief to do anything practical towards the restoration of peace, *iii* 329; on the 9th of June 1852 dies at Bloemfontein, *iii* 330

HÖHNE, F. K.:

in September 1872 acts ■ president of the Orange Free State, *iv* 408

HOLLAND, JOHN:

in 1797 is appointed judge of the court of vice admiralty at Capetown, *i* 34; in 1798 becomes also postmaster-general, *i* 39

HOLLOWAY, MAJOR:

is the designer of the road through the French Hoek pass, *i* 388

HOLSTEAD, THOMAS:

in 1824 accompanies Mr. Farewell to Natal, *ii* 326; in October 1830 is sent by Dingana with a present of ivory to the governor of the Cape Colony, but he is not allowed to proceed farther than Grahamstown, and the present is declined, *ii* 340; he returns to Natal, *ii* 341; in November 1837 accompanies Pieter Retief to Umkungunhlovu ■ an interpreter, *ii* 354; three months later again proceeds to Umkungunhlovu ■ interpreter to Pieter Retief, *ii* 358; and there ■ the 6th of February 1838 is murdered with the others of the party, *ii* 360

HONDEKLIP BAY, ON THE WESTERN COAST OF THE CAPE PROVINCE:  
description of, *iii* 86

HOPE, THE, THE FIRST STEAMER EMPLOYED ON THE SOUTH AFRICAN COAST:

■ the 8th of December 1838 arrives from England, *ii* 226; on the 11th of March 1840 is wrecked near Cape St. Francis, *ib.*

HOPE, THE, DUTCH SCHOONER:

in 1804 is wrecked near Walfish Bay, *i* 188

HOPE, CAPTAIN F.:

in March 1848 becomes resident magistrate of Richmond, *iii* 70

HOPE, WILLIAM, AUDITOR-GENERAL:

is in favour of ■ nominated legislative council when assisting in the preparation of the constitution, *iii* 126

HOPETOWN, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in January 1858 is created, *iii* 160

HORNED CATTLE:

number of in 1865 in the Cape Colony, *iv* 43

**HORSES :**

the breed is greatly improved by animals imported by Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 282; value of horses exported from the Cape Colony from 1826 to 1835, *ii* 43; number of in 1865 in the Cape Colony, *iv* 43

**HORSE SICKNESS :**

mention of, *i* 161, 162, and 171; ravages of in 1854-6, *iii* 153; further mention of, *iii* 420

**HOSPITAL, OLD SOMERSET :**

in 1818 is opened in Capetown, *i* 365

**HOSTILE FEELING OF THE XOSAS TOWARDS THE CAPE COLONY IN 1834 :**

~~CAUSES~~ of, *ii* 56

**HOTTENTOT REGIMENT :**

in April 1796 a number of Hottentots are enlisted for service in the interior of the Cape Colony, *i* 10; in March 1799 they are sent to Graaff-Reinet to assist in suppressing an insurrection, *i* 54; in February 1803 the regiment is transferred to the Batavian authorities, *i* 125; in 1804 it is enlarged by General Janssens to six hundred men, *i* 132; on the English conquest in 1806 the regiment is reformed and placed under command of Lieutenant-Colonel Graham, *i* 206; in 1807 it is enlarged to eight hundred rank and file, *i* 217; it is very objectionable to the colonists, *i* 289; in September 1817 it is disbanded, and in its stead a corps of seventy-eight cavalry and one hundred and sixty-nine infantry—halfbreeds and Hottentots—is raised, *i* 327; in October 1819, after the fifth Kaffir war, the corps is enlarged to four hundred and fifty men, mixed cavalry and infantry, *i* 344; in 1823 it is enlarged to two hundred and sixty cavalry and two hundred and fifty infantry, *i* 385; in December 1827 the infantry are disbanded, and the cavalry—two hundred and fifty in number—take the title Cape mounted riflemen, *ii* 85; until June 1828 it is regarded as a colonial force and is a charge upon the colonial treasury, but after this date it is paid by the imperial government, *ii* 25; in 1837 it is enlarged to four hundred and sixty-two horsemen, and three hundred footmen are attached to the corps, *ii* 158; on the 19th of February 1838 a number of the men mutiny, *ii* 175; in June 1839 the regiment is reduced to four hundred and eighty rank and file, *ii* 178; in 1846 two companies of Hottentot levies are attached to the regiment provisionally for a short

time, *iii* 16; in March 1847 four hundred men are added to it, *iii* 44; in 1860 the regiment is nearly a thousand strong, *iii* 186; see Cape mounted riflemen

#### HOTTENTOTS:

particulars concerning the insurrection in 1799 of those of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 55 *et seq.*; further particulars concerning, *i* 126, 188, 189, and 230; in 1809 a very important proclamation concerning these people is issued by the earl of Caledon, *i* 234; particulars concerning them from Lord Caledon's proclamation in 1809 to the passing of the fiftieth ordinance in July 1828, *i* 499 *et seq.*; further particulars concerning, *ii* 9; in 1848 an attempt is made to form a settlement of Hottentots on the Beka river, but it fails, *iii* 69; ■ large number join the enemies of the colony in the war of 1850-52, *iii* 101; redress of grievances of, *iii* 151; number of in 1865 in the Cape Colony, *iv* 42; particulars concerning those in Great Namaqualand, *v* 95 and 96; in 1880 ■ number are murdered in Hereroland by order of the chief Kamaherero, *v* 121

#### HOTTENTOT LEVIES:

causes of dissatisfaction during the war of 1846-7, *iii* 35

#### HOTTENTOT SETTLEMENT AT THE KAT RIVER:

particulars concerning the formation and progress of, *ii* 9; at the commencement of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 the Hottentots of this settlement are in a very discontented condition owing to injudicious teaching, and are suspected of an intention to join the Xosas, *ii* 96; but under the judicious management of Captain Armstrong are led to commit themselves on the colonial side, *ii* 97; during the war it is necessary to maintain them and their families at the public expense, *ii* 98; also during the war of 1846-7, *iii* 12; in the war of 1850-52 most of them go into rebellion and join the hostile Xosas and Tembus, *iii* 101

#### HOUGH, REV. GEORGE:

in September 1813 becomes the first clergyman of the English episcopal church at Simonstown, *i* 270; in February 1817 is removed to Capetown, *i* 317

#### HOUSE DUTY ACT:

in 1870 is passed by the Cape parliament, *iv* 108

#### HOUSE OF ASSEMBLY OF THE CAPE COLONY:

on its creation in 1853 consists of forty-six members, *iii* 129; see Cape parliament

**HOWELL, JAMES MICHAEL, LANDDROST OF WINBURG :**

in 1858 takes part in the war against Scheel Kobus and other captains, *iii* 487

**HUDSON, HOUGHAM :**

in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Port Elizabeth, *i* 493 ; at the close of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is appointed agent-general for the province of Queen Adelaide and resident magistrate of Grahamstown, *ii* 129 ; in September 1836 becomes secretary to the lieutenant-governor of the eastern districts, *ii* 152

**HUILEBALKEN AT FUNERAL PROCESSIONS :**

note concerning, *i* 280

**HUME, DAVID :**

in 1835 explores the country along the Limpopo river, *ii* 287

**HUSKISSON, THE RIGHT HONOURABLE MR. :**

from August 1827 to May 1828 is secretary of state for the colonies, *i* 489

**HUT-TAX :**

in 1849 is first levied upon the Bantu in Natal, *iii* 235

**ICHABOE ISLAND, OFF THE COAST OF GREAT NAMAQUALAND :**

description of, *ii* 235 ; on the 21st of June 1861 is taken possession of for Great Britain, *ii* 236 ; and on the 16th of July 1866 is annexed to the Cape Colony, *ib.*

**IDUTYWA, DISTRICT OF :**

in August 1858 a settlement of Bantu, partly consisting of fragments of Umhala's clan, under a British magistrate, is formed at, *iii* 213 and *iv* 45 ; it is regarded until the end of 1864 as dependency of the crown colony of British Kaffraria, *iv* 45

**IGQIBIRA MISSION STATION :**

in December 1850 is destroyed by the Xosas

**ILLICIT DIAMOND BUYING :**

particulars concerning, *iv* 402 to 407, 410, 416, and 424

**IMMIGRANTS FROM EUROPE INTO THE CAPE COLONY :**

in 1803 a few individuals are brought from Holland by Major Von Buchenroeder, *i* 136 ; in 1817 two hundred Scotch mechanics are brought out by Mr. Benjamin Moodie, *i* 346 ; in 1817 and 1818 seven or eight hundred time expired soldiers are discharged in Capetown, who, however, associate with coloured people, *i* 347 ; in 1818 and 1819 a few British immigrants are brought



out by Messrs. Gosling and Tait, *ib.*; in 1820 and 1821 nearly five thousand individuals of British birth settle in the colony, *i* 352 *et seq.*; in 1823 three hundred and thirty-six Irish labourers are brought out, *i* 389; between the years 1833 and 1839 seven hundred and fifty destitute English children arrive, *ii* 76; particulars of ■ plan adopted in 1844 under which over four thousand individuals from Great Britain are added to the population of the Cape Colony, *ii* 238; particulars concerning immigration from Great Britain in and after 1857, *iii* 172 *et seq.*; particulars concerning immigration from Holland into the Cape Colony after 1855, *iii* 171 and *iv* 23; particulars concerning immigrants from Northern Germany into the Cape Colony after 1859, *iii* 177 and *iv* 23; further particulars concerning immigrants from Great Britain, *iv* 22; see British settlers, Christophers, and Juvenile immigrants

#### IMMIGRANTS FROM EUROPE INTO NATAL:

particulars concerning those sent from Great Britain by Mr. Byrne between 1848 and 1851, *iii* 254 to 257; the disproportion of the sexes causes unrest, *iii* 256

#### IMMIGRANTS FROM EUROPE INTO BRITISH KAFFRARIA:

■ considerable number of men of the British German legion are disbanded here, *iii* 193, 216, and 219; in November 1857 ■ few arrive from Great Britain, *iii* 217; in 1858 and 1859 a considerable number of families arrive from Germany, *iii* 218; particulars concerning these people, *iii* 220; prevention by the secretary of state of further immigration of Germans under the plan adopted by Sir George Grey, *iii* 221

#### IMMIGRATION OF EUROPEANS INTO THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

in 1855 is invited under certain conditions by the volksraad, *iii* 414

#### IMMIGRANTS OF COLOURED BLOOD INTO THE CAPE COLONY:

during the British occupation from 1795 to 1803 great numbers of negroes are introduced as slaves, *i* 31; during the administration of the Batavian Republic very few are introduced, *i* 215; in 1806 and 1807 several hundred slaves are introduced, *i* 215 and 220; and after the suppression of the slave trade negroes taken in ships captured by British cruisers are brought here and liberated, *i* 224 and *ii* 197; some ■■ brought from St. Helena, *iii* 172

#### IMMIGRATION ACT PASSED BY THE CAPE PARLIAMENT IN 1857:

particulars concerning, *iii* 172 *et seq.*

IMPAFANA LOCATION IN NATAL:

in 1846 is set apart for the use of the Bantu, *iii* 230

IMPARAN MISSION STATION:

in December 1833 is founded by the Wesleyan society near Basutoland, *i* 482

IMPORTS FROM OVERSEA INTO THE CAPE COLONY:

amount of during the English occupation from 1795 to 1803, *i* 40; from 1806 to 1835, *ii* 36; between 1835 and 1850, *ii* 207; in 1854 and 1855, *iii* 142; from 1862 to 1867, *iv* 93; from 1868 to 1872, *iv* 151

IMPORTS INTO NATAL:

in 1845, *ii* 462; from 1845 to 1856, *iii* 266; from 1857 to 1872, *iv* 175

IMPORTS THROUGH EAST LONDON:

from 1855 to 1858, *iii* 219

IMPORTS OF BRITISH KAFFRARIA:

from 1862 to 1865, *iv* 76

INANDA LOCATION IN NATAL:

in 1846 is set apart for the use of the Bantu, *iii* 230

INCOME TAX:

rejection in 1869 by the Cape parliament of a proposal by the governor to levy, *iv* 100

INDIAN IMMIGRANTS INTO NATAL:

particulars concerning, *iv* 159 *et seq.*

INDIAN MUTINY:

important services performed by Sir George Grey during the, *iii* 160

INDIAN PLANTS FOUND IN EASTERN AFRICA:

mention of, *i* 460

INDIGO:

cultivation of in Natal, *iii* 261

INDUSTRIAL SCHOOLS FOR BANTU:

encouraged by Sir George Grey, *iii* 191

INGLIS, REV. WALTER:

in 1852 is a missionary of the London society residing with the Bahurutsi clan near the Marikwa, *iii* 402; is brought to trial for libel, and sentenced to banishment from the South African Republic, *iii* 403

## INGRAM, JOHN :

in 1820 brings a party of Irish settlers to the Cape, *i* 352; and is located with them at Clanwilliam, *i* 354; subsequent movements of the party, *i* 355; in 1823 brings out another party of Irish labourers, *i* 389

## INHAMBANE, VILLAGE IN PORTUGUESE SOUTH AFRICA :

condition of in 1823, *v* 133; condition of in 1834, *v* 139; is destroyed by the Matshangana, *ib.*; condition of in 1899, *v* 163

## INNES, JAMES ROSE, M.A. :

in July 1822 arrives from Scotland, and is appointed teacher of the high school at Uitenhage, *i* 371; on the 11th of May 1839 is appointed first superintendent of education in the Cape Colony, *ii* 211; in May 1840 proceeds to Scotland to procure teachers, *ii* 212; in March 1841 returns with several, *ib.*; manages to thwart an attempt to wreck the new system of education, *ii* 213

## INNES, JAMES ROSE (SON OF THE ABOVE):

is the last acting administrator of Griqualand West, *iv* 432

INSURRECTION IN 1799 OF A PARTY OF FARMERS IN THE DISTRICT OF GRAAFF-REINET, *i* 48 *et seq.*;

sentences passed upon the principal insurgents, *i* 73

## INSURRECTION IN 1815 OF A PARTY OF FRONTIER FARMERS :

account of, *i* 289 *et seq.*

## INTERTRIBAL WARS AMONG BANTU ORIGINATING WITH TSHAKA :

account of, *i* 439 *et seq.*

INVASION OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE IN APRIL 1857 BY A COMMANDO FROM THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC, *iii* 432

## IRON :

abundance of in the territory between the Vaal and the Limpopo, *v* 2

## ISAACS, NATHANIEL :

in October 1825 becomes ■ resident at Port Natal, *ii* 329; is severely wounded while accompanying a Zulu military expedition, *ii* 330; in December 1828 leaves Natal, but in April 1830 returns, *ii* 338; early in 1831 finally leaves Natal, *ii* 341

## ISIZI :

meaning of the word, *iv* 55

VAN JAARVELD, ADRIAAN :

in March 1796 is one of the leading men of the party in the district of Graaff-Reinet that refuses to receive the landdrost appointed by Major-General Craig, *i* 7 and 9; but in August 1796 signs a document promising fidelity to the English government, *i* 17; in January 1799 is arrested at Graaff-Reinet on a charge of having committed forgery, *i* 51; is rescued from the guard that is conveying him to Capetown by a party of farmers under the leadership of Marthinus Prinsloo, *ib.*; in April is arrested again by a party of soldiers, and is sent a prisoner to Capetown, *i* 56; in September 1800 is brought to trial, and is sentenced to death, *i* 73; the execution of the sentence is suspended by the governor, *ib.*; but the prisoner dies in confinement, *i* 119

JACKALSFONTEIN, NEAR GRIQUATOWN :

skirmish on the 21st of May 1878 at, *iv* 428

JACKSON, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR JAMES :

on the 30th of December 1854 assumes duty as lieutenant-governor of the eastern province of the Cape Colony and commander of the troops in South Africa, *iii* 147; on the 20th of May 1859 is succeeded by Lieutenant-General Robert Henry Wynyard, *iii* 185

JACKSON, MAXIMILIAN JAMES :

in October 1868 is appointed special magistrate of the northern border of the Cape Colony, *iv* 97; after Sir Walter Currie's retirement conducts the operations against the insurgent Koranas, *iv* 99

JACOB, A XOSA :

has been a convict on Robben Island, and is sent by the Cape government as an interpreter to Captain Owen in the surveying ship *Leven*, *ii* 323; in July 1823 is transferred by Captain Owen to Mr. Farewell, who is proceeding along the coast on a trading expedition, *ib.*; runs away at St. Lucia Bay, proceeds to Tshaka's head quarters, and becomes a favourite of that chief, *ii* 326; in October 1830 is sent by Dingana with a present of ivory to the governor of the Cape Colony, but he is not allowed to proceed farther than Grahamstown, and the present is declined, *ii* 340; returns to Natal, *ii* 341; in 1831 by Dingana's order is put to death, *ii* 342

JACOB BOIS, A HOTTENTOT CAPTAIN IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND :

in May 1868 attacks some Englishmen near Walfish Bay and does much damage there, *v* 100 and 101

**JACOBIN FACTION IN CAPETOWN IN 1803:**  
particulars concerning, *i* 120

**JACOBSDAL, DISTRICT IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**  
in February 1861 is established, *iv* 194

**JACOBS, PIETER:**  
in 1837 is leader of a large party of emigrants from the Cape Colony, *ii* 309

**JACOBS, SIMEON:**  
is attorney-general of British Kaffraria, *iii* 226

**JACOBS, WILLEM:**  
in October 1847 is elected landdrost of Winburg by the emigrant farmers who are opposed to the British government, *ii* 506

**JACOBUS IZAAK, CAPTAIN OF AN IMMIGRANT HOTTENTOT CLAN LIVING AT BEERSHEBA IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:**  
mention of, *v* 95, 102, and 112

**JALUSA, CHIEF OF A SMALL XOSA CLAN:**  
career of, *ii* 276; towards the close of 1835 with a band of turbulent characters moves to the neighbourhood of Thaba Bosigo, where he leads the life of a robber, *ii* 295; in September 1836 the band is annihilated by the Basuto, *ib.*

**JAMA, CHIEF OF A FUGITIVE REMNANT OF THE AMAKUZE TRIBE:**  
in April 1835 at Butterworth solicits Sir Benjamin D'Urban to give him protection against the Xosas, *ii* 110; his request is complied with, and he has land assigned to him between the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ii* 113

**JAMESON, DR. LEANDER STARR (NOW SIR STARR):**  
succeeds Mr. Colquhoun as administrator of Rhodesia, *v* 158

**JANE DAVIES, THE:**  
on the 26th of May 1872 is wrecked on the coast near East London, *iv* 150

**JAN JONKER AFRIKANER:**  
in June 1863 succeeds his brother Christian as captain of a Hottentot clan in Great Namaqualand, *v* 97; in September 1865 attacks Otjimbingue, *v* 98; at Omukaru sustains a crushing defeat from the Hereros, *v* 102; on the 23rd of September 1870 concludes peace on humiliating terms, *v* 103; tries to bring about a coalition of Hottentot clans to renew the war, *v* 104; but does not succeed in that object, *v* 117; further mention of, *v* 112, 117, 122, and 123



**JAN KIVIDO, KORANA CAPTAIN LIVING ON THE BANKS OF THE ORANGE RIVER :**

account of, *iv* 97; in 1869 is at war with the Cape Colony, *iv* 98; in November 1869 is captured and sent as a prisoner to Capetown, *iv* 99

**JANSSENS, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL JAN WILLEM :**

is appointed governor of the Cape Colony, *i* 106; in December 1802 arrives from the Netherlands, *i* 107; on the 1st of March 1803 is installed, *i* 118; on the 3rd of April sets out on a tour through the colony, *i* 121; with the scanty means at his disposal he is not able to assemble a large force when at the beginning of 1806 a powerful English army lands on the shore opposite Robben Island, *i* 196; with a mixed force of rather over two thousand men, however, he marches from Capetown, *ib.*; on the 8th of January 1806 meets the British army, and is defeated in battle, *i* 198; retires to the mountains of Hottentots-Holland, *ib.*; but finding it impossible to hold out, on the 18th enters into a capitulation for himself and the troops with him, *i* 204; and on the 6th of March leaves for Holland, *i* 207

**JANTJE, SON OF THE BATLAPIN CHIEF MOTHIBI :**

on the annexation of Griqualand West to the British dominions moves from Likatlong to Manyiding by way of protest, *iv* 425

**JENKINS, REV. THOMAS, WESLEYAN MISSIONARY :**

mention of, *iv* 66

**JENKINS, MRS., WIFE OF THE REVEREND THOMAS JENKINS :**

in 1838 goes to reside in Pondoland, and gives a description of the Pondo tribe at that time, *ii* 407

**JENNINGS, MATTHEW :**

is resident magistrate and collector of customs at East London at the time of the annexation of British Kaffraria to the Cape Colony, *iii* 226

**JERVIS, CAPTAIN HENRY :**

in January 1839 is left in command of the troops at Port Natal, *ii* 386; attempts to bring about peace between the emigrant farmers and the Zulus, *ii* 387; on the 24th of December 1839 when the British troops are withdrawn he leaves Natal, *ii* 391

**JOHN AND LUCY, EMIGRANT SHIP :**

on the 9th of October 1859 is wrecked off the coast of Brazil, *iii* 175

JOHN DUNN, AN ENGLISHMAN LIVING WITH THE ZULUS:  
mention of, *iii* 241

JOJO, CHIEF OF THE XESIBES:

in 1847 asks the government of Natal for protection from the Pondos, *iii* 231; in January 1872 asks to be taken under the authority of the Cape Colony, *iv* 69

JOKWENI, CHIEF OF A FUGITIVE REMNANT OF THE AMAZIZI TRIBE:

in April 1835 at Butterworth solicits Sir Benjamin D'Urban to give him protection against the Xosas, *ii* 110; his request is complied with, and he has land assigned to him between the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ii* 113; in December 1836 as an independent chief enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 152; on the 29th of December 1840 consents to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 187; on the 2nd of January 1845 enters into a new treaty framed by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; becomes disaffected, *iii* 196

JONES, MAJOR JAMES:

in May 1821 is appointed by Sir Rufane Donkin landdrost of Albany, *i* 359; in December of the same year is dismissed by Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 374

JONES, REV. ROBERT:

in October 1811 becomes the first resident clergyman of the English episcopal church in Capetown, *i* 270; in February 1817 resigns, *i* 317

JONKER AFRIKANER, CHIEF OF A HOTTENTOT CLAN IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:

in 1840 reduces the Herero tribe to servitude, *v* 94; particulars concerning, *v* 95

JOSANA, FINGO HEADMAN:

particulars concerning, *iv* 316

JOSÉ, AMARO, A BLACK TRADER:

in 1806-11 crosses the continent from Angola to Tete, *v* 144

JOSEPH FREDERICKS:

succeeds David Christian as captain of the Hottentot clan at Bethany in Great Namaqualand, *v* 123; in 1883 sells territory to the German merchant Luderitz, *ib.*

JOUBERT, GIDEON:

in May 1838 visits the emigrant camps in Natal as a commissioner of the Cape government, *ii* 376; in November 1838 visits Natal again in the same capacity, *ii* 379; in July and August

1845 is sent by Sir Peregrine Maitland on a tour of investigation through the territory between the Orange and Vaal rivers, *ii* 495; in the war of 1846-7 is commandant of the Colesberg burghers, *iii* 23

JOUBERT, P. J., J. A., AND F. G.:

in 1853 visit the Matabele chief Moselekatse, and conclude an agreement of amity with him, *iii* 413

JOUBERT, W. F.:

in January 1851 is appointed by the volksraad commandant-general for Lydenburg, *iii* 375; is one of the parties to the Sand River convention, *ib.*

JOURNEYS ACROSS THE AFRICAN CONTINENT:

account of, *v* 144 and 145

JUANASBURG, MILITARY VILLAGE IN THE TYUMIE VALLEY:

in January 1848 is founded, *iii* 68; on the 25th of December 1850 is destroyed by a party of Xosas, *iii* 97

JUDGE, REV. EDWARD, A CLERGYMAN OF THE ENGLISH EPISCOPAL CHURCH:

in May 1825 opens a high-class school in Capetown, *i* 422

JUDGES:

before the establishment of the supreme court of the Cape Colony in 1828, the judges, in addition to their judicial duties, had various tasks imposed upon them. Two in succession were required to hold a weekly court in the colonial secretary's office, for the purpose of passing and registering transfers of landed property, registering mortgages and other deeds of security, ascertaining the competency of the parties to the acts, and seeing that the deeds were legally prepared. The signature of a member of the high court of justice was requisite to the issue of each note of the paper currency. Two members were required to be present when defaced or worn-out notes were burned, and two attended to the stamping of fresh notes, the dies whereof were kept under the joint seals of the court and the governor. A member of the court was required to attend the impression of stamps, and his certificate of issue was the check upon the collector of stamp duties. The dies for the stamps were kept under the joint seals of the court and the governor. The judges were also required to execute the duties of coroners in Capetown and the Cape district

**JULIA, BRITISH CRUISER :**

on the 2nd of October 1817 is wrecked at Tristan da Cunha, *i* 306

**JURYMEN :**

qualifications of in the Cape Colony under the ordinance of May 1831, *ii* 45

**JUSTICES OF THE PEACE :**

in January 1828 are first created in the Cape Colony, *i* 494

**JUVENILE IMMIGRANTS :**

account of those sent from England to the Cape Colony, *ii* 194 ;  
in 1839 cease to be sent out, owing to the collapse of the  
Children's Friend Society, *ii* 193

**KAFFIR CONVERTS TO CHRISTIANITY :**

note upon, *i* 332

**KAFFIR LABOUR :**

cost of in 1872, *ii* 132

**KAFFIR POLICE :**

in 1835 after the close of the sixth Kaffir war a small body is enrolled to serve in the province of Queen Adelaide, *ii* 130 ; the men are employed by Lieutenant-Governor Stockenstrom in the Cape Colony, where they are worse than useless, *ii* 156 ; in January 1847 11 hundred men are enrolled and are stationed at Alice, *iii* 43 ; in March the number is increased by Sir Henry Pottinger to two hundred men, *iii* 44 ; and a few months later to four hundred and forty-six men, *iii* 58 ; in 1851, on the outbreak of war, most of them desert and join the enemy, *iii* 99

**KAFFIR SERVANTS :**

by an ordinance in July 1828 Xosas are permitted to enter the Cape Colony to seek service, *ii* 11 ; but in consequence of this liberty leading to extensive stockstealing, in August 1829 the ordinance is suspended, *ib.*

**KAFFIR WARS : see Wars****KAFFRARIA, THAT IS THE WHOLE TERRITORY OCCUPIED BY BANTU IN SOUTH AFRICA :**

condition of from 1826 to 1836, *i* 486

**KAMA, GUNUKWEBE CAPTAIN AND A PROFESSED CHRISTIAN :**

in the war of 1834-5 acts as a neutral, *ii* 98 ; on the 17th of September 1835 agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 126 ; on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance

and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; on the 19th of June 1838 enters into a closer treaty of alliance framed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 176; on the 29th of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications in these treaties, *ii* 187; in June 1843 moves to the neighbourhood of Basutoland, *ii* 191; in the war of 1846-7 assists the Europeans, *iii* 8; in January 1848 is rewarded for his fidelity by a grant of the land still known as Kamastone, *iii* 62; in the war of 1850-52 aids the colony, *iii* 100; for which he has a large tract of land along the Keiskama given to him, *iii* 115; in 1856 he refuses to kill his cattle at the bidding of Umhlakaza, *iii* 200; further particulars concerning, *iii* 214

**KAMAHHERERO :**

in 1864 is elected paramount chief of the Ovaherero and Ovambanderu clans in Hereroland, *v* 98; conducts himself in a despotic and irritating manner, *v* 105; in June 1874 applies to Sir Henry Barkly for assistance, *v* 106; in August 1880 issues orders for a general massacre of Hottentots, *v* 121; further particulars concerning, *v* 109, 110, 113, 114, 117, 119, 120, and 121; in June 1882 he makes peace with the southern Hottentot clans, *v* 123

**KANYE :**

is the chief kraal of the Bangwaketse tribe of Betshuana, *v* 83

**KAOKO, THE, TRACT OF GROUND IN HEREROLAND :**

description of, *v* 111

**KAREL HENDRIK, CAPTAIN OF THE HOTTENTOT CLAN CALLED THE VELDSCHOENDRAGERS, IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND :**

mention of, *v* 102

**KAROO, THE, EXTENSIVE TRACT OF LAND IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

description of, *i* 162

**KATHLAMBA LOCATION IN NATAL :**

in 1846 is set apart for the use of the Bantu, *iii* 230

**KATLAKTER, CHIEF OF A BAVENDA CLAN IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC :**

takes part in the war from April 1865 to July 1868 against the Europeans in Zoutpansberg, *iv* 481; destroys the mission buildings at Goedgedacht, *ib*; is attacked in May 1867 by a commando, but manages to hold his own, *iv* 484; sets fire to the village of Schoemansdal after its abandonment, *iv* 485



**KAT RIVER, UPPER VALLEYS OF THE :**

in 1821 are surveyed for the reception of a party of Scotch people, who, however, do not come to South Africa, *i* 361; description of, *ii* 9; in 1829 a Hottentot settlement is formed there, *ii* 10; census of December 1833, *ii* 11; in 1851 most of the London society's congregation there go into rebellion, *iii* 102

**KAUFMAN, REV. F. R. :**

in June 1817 becomes pastor of the Lutheran church in Capetown, *i* 317

**KAUSOP, BUSHMAN CAPTAIN :**

has a location assigned to him by Major Warden; see Scheel Kobus (his son)

**KAWUTA, PARAMOUNT CHIEF OF THE XOSA TRIBE :**

takes as his wife a daughter of Tshatshu, a petty Tembu chief, *i* 449; in 1797 assists Ndlambe against Gaika, *i* 38; about the year 1804 dies, *i* 250

**KAY, REV. STEPHEN, OF THE WESLEYAN SOCIETY :**

in August 1825 founds the mission station Mount Coke, *ii* 6

**KAYSER, REV. FREDERICK, OF THE LONDON SOCIETY :**

upon the conclusion of peace in 1835 reestablishes the mission station Knappshope on the Keiskama river, *ii* 131

**KEATE, ROBERT WILLIAM, LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR OF NATAL :**

acts as arbitrator in the boundary dispute between the Orange Free State and the South African Republic, and in February 1870 decides that the Klip river shall be the dividing line, *iv* 497; as final umpire of the court of arbitration at Bloemhof, on the 17th of October 1871 signs an award which cuts off a great deal of territory from the South African Republic, *v* 43; is almost constantly at variance with the legislative council of Natal, *iv* 169 and 170

**KEISKAMA RIVER :**

in December 1847 becomes the eastern boundary of the Cape Colony, *iii* 56

**KEKEWICH, GEORGE :**

from 1806 to 1828 is judge of the vice-admiralty court in Cape-town; on the 1st of January 1828 becomes a judge in the newly established supreme court of the Cape Colony, *i* 491; on the 12th of October 1843 retires on pension, *ii* 215

VAN KERVEL, ADRIAAN GYSBERT:

in April 1811 becomes landdrost of the new district of George,  
i 225

KETSHWAYO (CORRECT ZULU SPELLING CETSHWAYO, THE FIRST LETTER REPRESENTING THE DENTAL CLICK), SON OF THE ZULU CHIEF PANDA:

quarrels with his brother Umbulazi, *iii* 240; on the 2nd of December 1856 defeats his brother in a great battle on the bank of the Tugela, and is afterwards the virtual leader of the Zulu tribe, *iii* 241; in May 1861 is acknowledged by the Natal government as lawful heir to the chieftainship, *iv* 14; in July 1861 causes a panic in Natal by massing his troops on the border, *ib.*; but a few weeks later withdraws his regiments and declares he has no hostile intentions, *iv* 15; upon the flight of his brother Umtonga to Utrecht in February 1861 he offers the people of that district a strip of territory along their border if they will surrender the fugitive, *iv* 459; the farmers of Utrecht consent to the proposal upon condition that the life of Umtonga is spared, *ib.*; Ketshwayo agrees to this, and the arrangement is concluded, *ib.*; Panda approves of what has been done by his son, *iv* 461; and in April 1861 signs a deed of cession of the ground, *iv* 460; in December 1864 the boundary of the ceded land is beacons off by a commission from the South African Republic and delegates from Panda and Ketshwayo, *iv* 462; in February 1865 Umtonga flees from Zululand to Natal, when Ketshwayo, having lost what he had obtained for the ground, causes the beacons to be removed, *iv* 463; Panda then requests President Pretorius to alter the boundary so as to restore to Zululand some ground along the Pongolo, *ib.*; the attitude of Ketshwayo is so threatening that the farmers of Utrecht go into lager, *ib.*; and a commando under Paul Kruger assembles at Wakkerstroom, *ib.*; in July 1865 Ketshwayo gives Commandant-General Kruger assurances that he has no hostile intentions, and removes his army from the Utrecht border, *iv* 249; but a little later sends people to build kraals north of the Pongolo river, *iv* 494; and claims the ceded territory along the Utrecht border, *ib.*; offers the ceded ground to Natal, *iv* 495; which leads to correspondence between the two governments concerning arbitration, *ib.*; all the time Ketshwayo professes that he entertains no other feeling than friendship for the South African Republic, *iv* 496; but does not succeed in deceiving the burghers, who are aware that he is not to be trusted, but are not afraid of his power, *iv* 495; he succeeds, however, in skilfully playing off Natal

against the South African Republic, *iv* 496; after his father's death in 1872 conducts himself peaceably towards Natal, *iv* 178; further particulars concerning, *iv* 13 and *v* 64

**KHAMA, CHIEF OF THE BAMANGWATO TRIBE OF BETSHUANA:**  
particulars concerning, *v* 15

**KHARI, CHIEF OF THE BAMANGWATO:**  
is killed in battle with a Baroswi clan, *v* 84

**KICHERER, REV. JOHANNES JACOBUS:**

in March 1799 arrives in South Africa as an agent of the London missionary society, *i* 67; forms a station among the Bushmen on the Zak river, *i* 69; in 1801 is engaged in mission work north of the Orange river, *i* 100; in January 1806 leaves the service of the London missionary society and becomes clergyman of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 269; in December 1815 is transferred to Tulbagh; on the 1st of April 1825 dies, *ii* 220

**KIMBERLEY, EARL, SECRETARY OF STATE FOR THE COLONIES:**

in November 1870 writes a despatch which greatly irritates the people of the republics, *iv* 365; on the 18th of May 1871 gives the high commissioner power to annex Waterboer's country, on condition of the Cape parliament taking the entire responsibility, *iv* 366; upon the refusal of the Cape parliament to pass an act annexing the territory in which the diamond-fields are situated, on the 2nd of October 1871 leaves the matter to the discretion of the high commissioner, *iv* 371; approves of the annexation by Sir Henry Barkly of the territory called Griqualand West, *iv* 376

**KIMBERLEY DIAMOND MINE:**

description of when it was first opened for working, *iv* 353;  
description of in 1872, *iv* 401

**KIMBERLEY, TOWN OF:**

in July 1873 receives its present name, *iv* 409

**KING, JAMES SAUNDERS:**

in 1823 visits Natal as master of a vessel, *ii* 323; proceeds to England and applies to Earl Bathurst for countenance in opening a trading establishment at Port Natal, *ii* 328; receives a letter of recommendation to Lord Charles Somerset, *ib.*; returns to South Africa, and on the 1st of October 1825 reaches Natal, but loses his vessel in attempting to cross the bar, *ii* 329; in April 1828 leaves Natal with two of Tshaka's indunas as an embassy to the Cape government, *ii* 333; but is obliged to

return ■ he came, the government declining to receive him as Tshaka's representative, *ib.*; in September 1828 dies at Natal, *ii* 334

KING, RICHARD :

in May 1842 rides express from Durban to Grahamstown to seek assistance for the British troops beleaguered there, *ii* 424

KING-WILLIAMSTOWN :

on the 24th of May 1835 is founded on the eastern bank of the Buffalo river, *ii* 119; in December 1836 is abandoned, *ii* 150; during the war of 1846-7 it is reoccupied, *iii* 39; in December 1847 Sir Harry Smith makes it the seat of government of the new province of British Kaffraria, *iii* 58; and the headquarters of the troops in the province, *iii* 60; description of in 1860, *iii* 227

KITCHINGMAN, REV. MR., OF THE LONDON MISSIONARY SOCIETY :

in 1824 obtains an enlargement of the grounds of Bethelsdorp, *i* 500

KLAAS LUKAS, CAPTAIN OF A KORANA CLAN :

in 1871 commits depredations on the northern border of the Cape Colony, *iv* 100

KLAAS SMIT'S RIVER :

in 1822 is made the eastern boundary of the Cape Colony, *i* 393

KLEINSCHMIDT, REV. MR., RHENISH MISSIONARY :

is driven from his station in Great Namaqualand and dies of hardship, *v* 99

DE KLERK, THEUNIS :

is one of the leaders in the insurrection of 1815, *i* 293; after the failure of the insurrection surrenders to the authorities, *i* 296; is sentenced to death by a commission of the high court of justice, *i* 298; and on the 9th of March 1816 is executed at Van Aardt's post on the Fish river, *i* 299

KNOX, CAPTAIN ROBERT :

in 1825 submits to Lord Charles Somerset plans for the improvement of Table Bay, *i* 427

KNYSNA, INLET ON THE COAST OF THE CAPE PROVINCE :

description of, *i* 310; the greater part of the land about the inlet comes into possession of Mr. George Rex, *i* 311; in May 1817 the sloop of war *Podargus* enters the inlet, *i* 312; after

this date timber is frequently shipped there, *i* 313; in February 1818 a pilot is stationed at the entrance, *ib.*; the formation of a village advances slowly, *ib.*

**KNYSNA, DISTRICT OF:**

in April 1858 is created, *iii* 160; in February 1869 sustains great damage from fire in the forests, *iv* 104 and 105

**KOBE, CAPTAIN OF A GUNUKWEBE CLAN:**

during the war of 1834-5 of his own free will goes to Grahams-town as a hostage for the good conduct of his brothers Pato and Kama, *ii* 99; on the 17th of September 1835 agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 126; on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; on the 19th of June 1838 enters into a closer treaty of alliance framed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 176; on the 20th of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications in these treaties, *ii* 187; on the 2nd of January 1845 enters into a new treaty framed by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; in May 1846 joins the other Xosas against the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; and continues in arms longer than most of them, *iii* 37; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has a tract of land in British Kaffraria assigned to him, *iii* 61

**KOCK, COMMANDANT JAN:**

is one of the leaders of the emigrant farmers in the district of Philippolis who are opposed to British rule, *ii* 486; in July 1843 strives to prevent the volksraad of Natal coming to an arrangement with Commissioner Cloete concerning the government of the country as a British colony, *ii* 449; but fails in his object, *ii* 450; on the 2nd of May 1845 takes part in the skirmish at Zwartkopjes against British troops and Griquas, *ii* 490; after the defeat flees to Winburg, *ii* 491; in June 1846 is driven from Winburg by Major Warden, *ii* 500; on the 29th of August 1848 commands the right wing of the emigrant army in the battle of Boomplaats, *iii* 289; in 1859 attempts to disturb the peace in the district of Winburg, *iv* 438; but does not succeed, and is brought to trial and fined, *iv* 439 and 440; takes part with Stephanus Schoeman in the disturbances in 1862 in the South African Republic, and is punished by sentence of confiscation of all his property, *iv* 447

**KODAS COPPER MINE, ON THE BANK OF THE ORANGE RIVER:**

account of the attempted working of, *iii* 85



KOK, ABRAHAM, ELDEST SON OF ADAM KOK II:

in 1835 upon the death of his father is elected captain of Philippolis, *ii* 476; in February 1837 through the efforts of the missionaries enters into close alliance with Andries Waterboer, *ib.*; in September of the same year is driven from Philippolis by his younger brother Adam, *ii* 477; carries on hostilities with his brother until the beginning of 1841, when he is finally deposed, *ib.*

KOK, ADAM I, A HALF-BREED:

is allowed by the Dutch East India Company to collect together a band of Hottentots and people of mixed blood, and has a tract of land at the Kamiesberg granted to him by the colonial government, *i* 65

KOK, ADAM II, ELDEST SON OF THE FIRST CORNELIS:

early in the nineteenth century moves from Little Namaqualand to Griquatown with a few followers, *ii* 471; in 1802 is visited by an expedition from Capetown, *i* 101; in 1820 moves away from Griquatown, *ii* 473; and sets up an independent government at Campbell, *ii* 474; in June 1823 assists to defeat the Mantati horde, *i* 444; in May 1824 resigns, and is succeeded as captain of Campbell by his brother Cornelis Kok II, *ii* 474; for a time leads a wandering life, *ib.*; but eventually is joined by a number of rovers who elect him to be their captain, *ib.*; in 1826 at the invitation of the rev. Dr. Philip he settles with these people at Philippolis, *ii* 475; in 1835 visits Capetown, and when returning home in September of that year dies at the Berg river, *ii* 476

KOK, ADAM III, YOUNGER SON OF ADAM KOK II:

conspires against his elder brother Abraham, and in September 1837 by the influence of the missionaries is elected captain of Philippolis, *ii* 476; in November 1838 enters into a treaty with Andries Waterboer, in which they divide on paper an immense region between them, *ii* 477; carries on hostilities with his brother until the beginning of 1841, when his success is complete, *ib.*; in October 1842 applies for British protection against the emigrant farmers, *ii* 479; on the 29th of November 1843 enters into treaty alliance with the British government, *ii* 481; early in 1844 gives the emigrant farmers great provocation, *ii* 485; in January 1845 requests Sir Peregrine Maitland to establish a military post at Philippolis for his protection, *ii* 487; and receives a reply which prompts him to irritate the farmers into hostilities, *ii* 488; he attempts to have a farmer arrested, when his messengers commit acts of great violence, *ib.*; there-

upon the burghers take up arms, and the Griquas do the same, *ib.*; some skirmishing follows, *ib.*; the Griquas are supplied with muskets and ammunition by the civil commissioner of Colesberg, *ii* 489; and two hundred soldiers are sent to occupy Philippolis, *ib.*; the leaders of the emigrant farmers decline the terms proposed by the civil commissioner of Colesberg a strong military force is sent to assist the Griquas, *ib.*; on the 2nd of May 1845 the emigrant farmers are completely routed at Zwartkopjes, *ii* 490; and their camp at Touwfontein is seized, *ii* 491; the farmers who are opposed to British authority then retire to Winburg, and those who are well affected come to the British camp and take an oath of allegiance to the queen, *ib.*; at the close of June Sir Peregrine Maitland arrives at Touwfontein, where Kok has a conference with him and makes most extravagant pretensions as to his authority over residents in the territory, *ii* 492; subsequently, however, he moderates his tone and agrees to proposals of the governor, which are embodied in a treaty signed by both parties in the following February, *ii* 493; on the 25th of January 1848 he gives his consent to an arrangement proposed by Sir Harry Smith which greatly reduces the territory previously acknowledged as his, *iii* 272; in August of this year he assists the British forces under Sir Harry Smith against the emigrant farmers in the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 285; he finds it impossible to prevent his people selling their land, *iii* 349; in 1854 he declines all proposals made to him by Sir George Clerk, whereupon that officer declares the treaty with him abrogated and he is left to his fate, *iii* 366; he publishes his disapproval of the arrangements made in 1854 by Sir George Clerk, *iii* 447; invites a party of blacks from the Cape Colony to settle in his district, *iii* 448; wishes to renew negotiations with Sir George Clerk, but is informed that it is now too late, *iii* 449; in September 1854 makes an arrangement with President Hoffman by which land in his reserve can be sold to Europeans, *ib.*; acts as arbitrator between Nicholas Waterboer and Cornelis Kok, and in October 1855 lays down the boundary known as the Vetberg line between the districts of those captains, *iii* 465; in 1861 moves from Philippolis with the intention of proceeding to Nomansland, *iv* 195; in December 1861 sells to the Orange Free State his sovereign rights and the whole of the unoccupied lands of the clan north of the Orange, *iv* 197; in 1863 is located with his Griquas in part of Nomansland, *iv* 67; drives Nehemiah Moshesh out of the territory, *iv* 67 and 68; in 1865 fights on the Free State side against the Basuto, *iv* 237

**KOK, CORNELIS I, SON OF THE FIRST ADAM KOK:**

with a band of half-breeds and Hottentots follows his sons from Little Namaqualand to Griquatown, *ii* 471; in 1798 applies to the colonial government for assistance against the robber Afrikaner, *i* 66

**KOK, CORNELIS II, SECOND SON OF THE FIRST CORNELIS:**

early in the nineteenth century moves from Little Namaqualand to Griquatown with a few followers, *ii* 471; in June 1823 assists to defeat the Mantati horde, *i* 444; in May 1824 is elected captain of the Griquas at Campbell, *ii* 474; from September 1837 to the beginning of 1841 assists Abraham Kok against his younger brother Adam in the struggle for the captaincy of Philippolis, *ii* 477; by Sir Harry Smith his jurisdiction is confined to the right bank of the Vaal, *iii* 311; in April 1854 has his claim to ground above the junction of the Orange and Vaal rivers recognised by the government of the Orange Free State, *iii* 447; submits his dispute with Nicholas Waterboer concerning ownership of territory to the arbitration of Adam Kok, and in October 1855 is awarded the land north of the Vetberg line, *iii* 465; is recognised by the Free State government as possessing proprietary but not sovereign rights in the district north of the Vetberg line, *iii* 466; cedes his chieftainship to his nephew Adam Kok, *iv* 213

**VAN DER KOLFF, ADRIAAN, A NOTORIOUS RUFFIAN:**

particulars concerning, *iii* 375

**KOLVER, REV. A.:**

in 1797 dies, *i* 105

**KONA, ELDEST SON OF THE GAIKA CHIEF MAKOMA:**

in 1847 governs his father's clan during the elder chief's residence at Port Elizabeth, *iii* 51; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, *iii* 61

**KOONAP RIVER:**

in 1830 farms are given out between this stream and the Kat under tenure of military occupation, *ii* 13

**KORANAS, MIGRATORY HOTTENTOT CLANS LIVING NEAR THE JUNCTION OF THE ORANGE AND VAAL RIVERS:**

particulars concerning, *i* 186, 230, 466, 474, and 480, *ii* 465, *iii* 304 and 347, *iv* 30 and 96 *et seq.*

**KORSTEN, FREDERICK:**

is the first breeder of Angora goats in the Cape Colony, *ii* 41

**KOWIE HARBOUR IMPROVEMENT COMPANY:**

in July 1870 is dissolved, when the harbour works are transferred to the Cape government, *iv* 111

**KOWIE RIVER, MOUTH OF THE:**

in February 1825 is named Port Frances in honour of the wife of Lieutenant-Colonel Somerset, *i* 391; at the same time a magistrate is stationed there, *ib.*; on the 9th of November 1821 is first entered by a vessel, *i* 392; in July 1826 a custom-house is established, *ib.*; in January 1828 the magistracy is abolished, *i* 493; efforts are made to improve it, *iii* 169; see Port Alfred and Port Frances

**KRAMER, REV. MR.:**

is one of the early missionaries to the Griquas, *ii* 470

**KRELI (CORRECT KAFFIR SPELLING SARILI), SON OF HINTSA:**

during the war of 1831-5 is left by his father in the British camp as a hostage for the fulfilment of terms of peace, *ii* 115; upon the death of his father becomes paramount chief of the Xosa tribe, and on the 19th of May 1835 concludes peace with Sir Benjamin D'Urban, *ii* 117; under the terms of which he gives up over three thousand head of cattle, and on the 11th of December cedes a slip of territory to the British government, *ii* 133; the land, however, is restored to him by order of the secretary of state for the colonies, *ii* 150; in November 1844 he enters into a treaty with Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 257; in the war of 1846-7 takes part against the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; in August 1846 completely outwits Sir Andries Stockenstrom, *iii* 23; on the 17th of January 1848 concludes peace with the British government, *iii* 62; in October 1848 has a friendly interview with Sir Harry Smith near King-Williamstown, *iii* 66; in the war of 1850-52 aids the enemies of the Cape Colony, *iii* 101; suffers great loss in an engagement with burghers under Captain Tylden, *iii* 109; by the invasion of his country in August 1852 is brought to terms, *iii* 112; in February 1853 peace is concluded with him, *iii* 113; in 1854 and 1855 shows himself hostile, *iii* 197; takes a leading part in the self-destruction of the Xosa tribe, *iii* 199; in February 1858 is driven over the Bashee into Bomvanaland, *iv* 44; gradually recovers importance, *iv* 47; is offered a large tract of land beyond the Umtata, which he declines to accept, *ib.*; in May and June 1864 a panic is created on the colonial frontier by a rumour that he intends to attack the police, *iv* 48; in August 1864 has a portion of the territory between the Kei and the Bashee restored to him, *iv* 49; carries on war with Gangelizwe, *iv* 57 and 58

KRIGE, REV. W. A. :

in October 1844 becomes the first resident clergyman of Victoria West, *ii* 248

KROONSTAD, DISTRICT IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE :

in August 1859 is established, *iv* 185

KRUGER, STEPHANUS JOHANNES PAULUS :

when a boy in October 1836 assists in the defence of the lager at Vechtkop against the Matabele, *ii* 292; in 1852 serves as a fieldcornet in the expedition against Setsheli, *iii* 398; in 1853 serves with a commando against Montsiwa, *iii* 404; in 1854 takes part in the expedition against insurgent clans in the district of Zoutpansberg, *iii* 419; in April 1857 is a commandant in the force that invades the Orange Free State, *iii* 433; soon afterwards is sent to Bloemfontein on a friendly mission, *iii* 437; in April 1858 takes Mapela's stronghold by storm, and suppresses the insurrection of that chief, *iv* 434; assists in framing the constitution of the South African Republic, *iii* 422; in June 1858 visits Thaba Bosigo as a commissioner of the South African Republic, *iii* 491; in 1858 commands an expedition against the Batlapin, *iii* 489; takes an active part in the civil strife in the South African Republic, *iv* 445 to 453; in October 1862 commands the burgher force that drives Stephanus Schoeman from Pretoria, *iv* 446; and from Potchefstroom, *iv* 447; in 1863 is elected commandant-general of the South African Republic, *iv* 450; in December 1863 calls out a force to oppose Jan Viljoen, who is heading an insurrection, *ib.*; part of his force is obliged to surrender, and he retires to the Orange Free State for a short time, *iv* 451; on the 5th of January 1864 defeats Jan Viljoen in an action at the ford of the Limpopo between Pretoria and Rustenburg, *ib.*; in September 1865 commands an expedition against the Basuto, *iv* 252; in November 1865 visits Zoutpansberg, and endeavours in vain to restore peace, *iv* 481; in May 1867 with five hundred men attacks the captain Katlakter, but is obliged to retire without taking that rebel's stronghold, *iv* 484; appeals to the country to support him with fifteen hundred men, but without success, *ib.*; in June 1867 abandons Schoemansdal, *iv* 485; and shortly afterwards disbands the commando, *ib.*; in June 1868 with a commando of nearly nine hundred men inflicts heavy losses on the insurgent chiefs Mapela and Matshem, *iv* 488 and 489; in February 1870 visits Panda with a commission, and finds the Zulu people opposed to the occupation by Europeans of the ground ceded some time before by Ketshwayo, *iv* 494



**KRUISVALLEI CONGREGATION :**

in 1843 is formed at Tulbagh in the Cape Colony, *ii* 220

**KUANE :** see Jan Letele**KUISIP RIVER IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND :**

description of, *v* 108 and 109

**KURUKURU STREAMLET, A TRIBUTARY OF THE TYUMIE :**

is made by Colonel Wade the boundary of Kaffirland, *ii* 55

**KURUMAN MISSION STATION :**

in 1817 is founded by the London missionary society with the Batlapin tribe, *i* 472; in 1878 it is plundered and threatened with destruction by the Batlapin and the Batlaro, *iv* 429; but is relieved by a volunteer force from Kimberley, *ib*.

**KURUMAN, CLAIMANT TO THE CHIEFTAINSHIP OF THE MATABELE TRIBE :**

in 1870 is defeated by the partisans of Lobengula, *v* 8; resides subsequently at Shoshong and in the South African Republic, *ib*.

**KUYS, REV. A. G. M. :**

in September 1852 becomes the first resident clergyman of Napier, *ii* 219

**KUYS, REV. J. A. :**

in January 1799 dies, *i* 104

**KWESHA, CHIEF OF A TEMBU CLAN :**

in 1856 and 1857 takes a leading part in the cattle-killing delusion, *iii* 200; in 1857 is captured and sent as a prisoner to Capetown, *iii* 215

**LABOUCHERE, RIGHT HON. HENRY :**

on the 21st of November 1855 becomes secretary of state for the colonies, *iii* 167

**LABOUR TAX :**

as imposed by the emigrant farmers upon some of their Bantu subjects, description of, *ii* 466 and *iii* 405; particulars concerning the labour tax in Natal, *iii* 248

**LADYBRAND, VILLAGE IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE :**

in 1869 is founded

**LADY KENNAWAY, THE :**

brings some immigrants from England to British Kaffraria, and after landing them, on the 25th of November 1857 is wrecked at East London, *iii* 217

**LADYSMITH, VILLAGE OF:**

in 1850 is founded, and becomes the seat of magistracy of the Klip River division of Natal, *iii* 263

**LAING, REV. JAMES:**

in 1831 arrives in South Africa ■ an agent of the Glasgow society and goes to reside at Burnshill on the Keiskama; when leaving Kaffirland during the war of 1834-5 is accompanied to Grahamstown by Matwa and Tente, two sons of Gaika, *ii* 100; at the close of the war returns to Burnshill, *ii* 131; during the war of 1846-7 is again compelled to abandon his station, *iii* 12; but as soon as peace is concluded resumes his work, *iii* 60

**LAKE CHRISSIE, IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

in January 1867 a few Scotch families are located on the margin of, *iv* 470

**LAKEMAN, STEPHEN B. (AFTERWARDS SIR STEPHEN):**

in June 1852 arrives from England to assist the Cape Colony against the Kaffirs, *iii* 110

**LAKE NGAMI:**

in 1849 is discovered by the reverend Dr. Livingstone and Messrs. Oswell and Murray, *v* 87

**LALANDE, M., FRENCH NATURALIST:**

in 1819 and 1820 resides in South Africa, *i* 366

**LAMBERT, JONATHAN:**

in December 1810 occupies the island of Tristan da Cunha, *i* 303

**LAMBERT, REAR ADMIRAL SIR ROBERT:**

in July 1820 assumes command on the Cape station, *i* 302; on the 6th of November 1821 leaves the Cape for England

**LAMSICKNESS, CATTLE DISEASE:**

mention of, *i* 159, 169, and 171, *iii* 152

**LAND COMMISSION OF GRIQUALAND WEST:**

account of, *iv* 288, 289, 418, and 419

**LAND COMMISSION OF NATAL:**

in 1846 is appointed, and recommends that seven large locations be set apart for the exclusive use of the Bantu, *iii* 230; in February 1848 another land commission is appointed to allot farms to Europeans in Natal, *iii* 253

**LAND COMMISSION FARMS IN NATAL:**

particulars concerning, *iii* 253 and 254

**LAND IN NATAL:**

after 1847 an upset price of four shillings an acre is placed upon it at government sales, *iii* 255; on the 7th of July 1856 farms are offered in Natal on military tenure and payment of quitrent, *iii* 257; in 1857 land is offered in Natal under quitrent tenure alone, *ib.*

**LANDDROSTS IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

by an ordinance of October 1805 have their duties strictly defined, *i* 181; on the 1st of January 1828 the office is abolished, *i* 492. Under the English administration the landdrosts were required to visit each ward or fieldcornetcy of their districts at least once a year, and to transmit to the governor a report upon its condition. They were political commissioners in the consistories, and presidents of the schoolboards. The board of landdrost and heemraden formed the matrimonial court of the district. Before it came in the first instance all disputes relative to boundaries of land, roads, or watercourses. To it were referred all applications for land within the district, which it reported upon, and assessed the value if the ground could be alienated without inconvenience. An officer entitled the inspector of lands and woods then commented upon this report and valuation for the governor's information. The board of landdrost and heemraden had the management of the district finances, and performed duties similar to those of the present divisional councils, but could not expend for any single purpose more than five hundred rixdollars without the express sanction of the governor. The district accounts were submitted annually to the examination of the colonial auditor, and were open to the inspection of every ratepayer. The landdrost and two heemraden acted ■ coroner within the district

**LANDDROSTS IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

are provisionally appointed by the president, but all appointments must be confirmed by the volksraad, *iii* 445

**LANDDROSTS IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

before 1858 were elected by the burghers of each district, *iii* 425; after 1858 are appointed by the executive council, but can be rejected by the people of the district within two months, *iv* 436

**LANDER, RICHARD, AFRICAN EXPLORER:**

career of, *i* 427

**LANDMAN, CAREL PIETER:**

in April 1838 arrives in Natal ■ leader of ■ party of emigrants from the Cape Colony, *ii* 375; immediately afterwards is sent

by the volksraad to the port ■ a commissioner to arrange matters there, *ii* 377; in July of the same year becomes the head of all the emigrants in Natal, *ii* 378

LAND MEASURE OF THE CAPE COLONY:

in 1855 the standard is fixed, *iii* 163; particulars concerning, *iv* ■ and 7

LAND QUESTION IN NATAL IN 1846:

particulars concerning, *iii* 249

LAND TENURE IN THE CAPE COLONY:

particulars concerning the change made by Sir John Cradock, *i* 264; in 1830 the system of holding land under military tenure is introduced by Sir Lowry Cole, *ii* 13; after May 1832 crown-lands are not otherwise disposed of than by sale at public auction, *ii* 13; form of tenure adopted on the frontier of the Cape Colony for a few years after 1853, *iii* 115

LANGALIBALELE, HIGHEST CHIEF IN RANK OF A HLUBI CLAN:

in 1848 seeks refuge in Natal from Panda, *iii* 235

DE LANGE, JAN:

in July 1844 is killed in the district of Albany by Xosa robbers, *ii* 256

LANYON, MAJOR WILLIAM OWEN:

in 1875 becomes administrator of Griqualand West, *iv* 420; in March 1879 is removed in the same capacity to the Transvaal, *iv* 432

LAUBSCHER, J.:

extent of farming operations in 1803, *i* 140

LAW OF INHERITANCE IN THE CAPE COLONY:

proclamation of Lord Charles Somerset concerning, *i* 376

LAW OF INHERITANCE IN NATAL:

ordinance concerning, *iii* 358

LAWS RELATING TO COMMERCE AND CUSTOMS REGULATIONS IN THE CAPE COLONY FROM 1806 TO 1835:

particulars concerning, *ii* 33

LAWS RELATING TO THE TREATMENT OF BANTU TRIBES IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC, *iv* 435

LAW OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE ADOPTED IN MAY 1866 FOR ■■■ GOVERNMENT OF MOLAPO'S CLAN, *iv* 276

LAWS AND REGULATIONS PUT IN FORCE IN BASUTOLAND ON THE 1st OF DECEMBER 1871, *v* 71 *et seq.*

LAWSON, THOMAS :

in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Grahamstown,  
i 493

LAYARD, EDGAR :

is the first curator of the South African museum, iii 159

LEBENYA, CHIEF OF A BASUTO CLAN :

early in 1858 ravages several farms in the Orange Free State,  
iii 470; after the capture of Vechtkop by the Free State  
forces in 1865 abandons Basutoland and retires to the Witte-  
bergen reserve for Bantu in the Cape Colony, iv 292; in 1867  
he moves into Nomansland, iv 68; where in 1869 he has  
a location assigned to him by Sir Philip Wodehouse, ib.; in  
January 1872 he asks to be taken under the authority of the  
Cape Colony, iv 69

LEGHOYAS : see Bataung

LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL OF THE CAPE COLONY BEFORE THE GRANT OF  
A CONSTITUTION :

particulars concerning the creation in 1833 and the establishment  
in 1834 of, ii 47; in 1836 it unanimously approves of the  
measures adopted by Sir Benjamin D'Urban with regard to the  
Xosas, ii 146; under Sir George Napier's commission undergoes  
some important changes in its constitution, ii 214; has no  
claim to be regarded as representing the colonists, ii 239;  
after 1844 holds regular yearly sessions, ib.; in 1846 is enlarged  
by the admission of the senior military officer in the garrison  
of Capetown, ii 240; succession of unofficial members of:

Pieter Laurens Cloete, 25th February 1834, ii 48; retires;

John Bardwell Ebdon, 25th February 1834, ii 48; in August  
1849 resigns, iii 78;

Michiel van Breda, 25th February 1834, ii 48; died 12th August  
1847, ii 240;

Charles Stuart Pillans, 25th February 1834, ii 48; retires;

Jacobus Johannes Dutoit, 25th February 1834, ii 48; retires;

Henry Cloete, succeeds P. L. Cloete, ii 215; in August 1849  
resigns, iii 78;

Hamilton Ross, succeeds C. S. Pillans, ii 215; in August 1849  
resigns, iii 78;

Advocate Henry Cloete, succeeds J. J. Dutoit, ii 215; retires;

Thomas Butterworth Charles Bayley, 10th December 1845, succeeds  
Advocate Henry Cloete, ii 239; retires, ii 240;

William Cock, 26th October 1847, succeeds T. B. C. Bayley, ii  
240;



Pieter Voltelen van der Byl, 11th September 1847, succeeds M. van Breda; before January 1848 dies, *iii* 78;  
 William Matthew Harries, 19th January 1845, *iii* 78; in August 1849 resigns, *iii* 78;  
 Christoffel Josephus Brand, LL.D., 23rd July 1850, *iii* 122; 20th September 1850 resigns, *iii* 124;  
 Sir Andries Stockenstrom, 23rd July 1850, *iii* 122; 20th September 1850 resigns, *iii* 124;  
 Francis William Reitz, 23rd July 1850, *iii* 122; 20th September 1850 resigns, *iii* 124;  
 John Fairbairn, 23rd July 1850, *iii* 122; 20th September 1850 resigns, *iii* 124;  
 Robert Godlonton, 23rd July 1850, *iii* 122;  
 William Hawkins, October 1851, *iii* 128; 22nd March 1852 resigns, *iii* 138;  
 Charles Arckoll, October 1851, *iii* 128;  
 Ewan Christian, October 1851, *iii* 128;  
 Benjamin Moodie, October 1851, *iii* 128;  
 On the 14th of October 1853 it concludes its last session, *iii* 138

LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL OF THE CAPE COLONY UNDER THE CONSTITUTION,  
*iii* 136;  
 in 1874 the colony is divided into seven provinces for the election of members of, *iv* 142

LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL OF GRIQUALAND WEST:  
 constitution of, *iv* 409 and 410; on the 30th of September 1880 meets for the last time, *iv* 433

LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL OF NATAL:  
 in March 1847 letters patent are issued creating a council of official members only, *iii* 266; particulars concerning the charter of July 1856 creating a legislative council of twelve elected and four official members, *iii* 268; which on the 23rd of March 1857 meets for the first time, *ib.*; names of the elected members, *iii* 269

LEHANA:  
 in 1856 upon the death of his father Sikonyela becomes regent of a remnant of the Batlokua tribe, *iii* 354; in 1869 has a location in Nomansland assigned to him by Sir Philip Wodehouse, *iv* 68; in January 1872 asks to be taken under the authority of the Cape Colony, *iv* 69

LEITNER, REV. MR., OF THE MORAVIAN MISSION:  
 in 1823 goes to reside at the leper asylum Hemel en Aarde, *i* 315

**LEMUE, REV. PROSPER, OF THE PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY:**

in 1829 endeavours to form a mission station with the Bahurutsi at Mosega, *i* 468; in 1830 is obliged by the advance of Moselekatse to abandon Mosega, and with his colleagues founds the station Motito, *ib.*

**LEPER ASYLUM:**

in 1817 is founded at Hemel en Aarde, *i* 315; in 1846 is removed from Hemel en Aarde to Robben Island, *ii* 245

**LEPUI, CHIEF OF A BATLAPIN CLAN:**

in 1833 is led by the reverend Mr. Pellissier southward to Bethulie, and settles there, *i* 470; on the abandonment of the Sovereignty by Great Britain in 1854 is left in an independent position, *iii* 441; in October 1859 cedes the district of Bethulie to the Orange Free State, *iv* 184

**LEROTHODI:**

on the 20th of November 1891 succeeds his father Letsie as head of the Basuto tribe, *v* 60

**LESUTO, THE:** see Basutoland**LETELE, JAN (KUANE):**

is a grandson of Motlomi and representative of the most powerful family in the valley of the upper Caledon river before the rise of Moshesh, *iii* 452; is the head of a gang of marauders, *ib.*; is at enmity with Moshesh's brother Poshuli, *ib.*; in March 1858 is received as a subject of the Orange Free State, *iii* 471; in January 1862 is robbed of all his cattle by Poshuli, *iv* 198; after which he sinks greatly in power and influence, *iv* 199

**LETSHULATEBE, CHIEF OF THE BATAWANA TRIBE AT LAKE NGAMI:**

in 1860 treats a distressed missionary very kindly, *v* 91

**LETSIE, ELDEST SON BY THE GREAT WIFE OF THE BASUTO CHIEF MOSHESH:**

in June 1833 is sent by his father with a large party of people to reside at the mission station Morija, *i* 469; has much less ability than his father, *v* 57; in April 1858 is defeated by the Free State forces, when his kraal at Morija is destroyed, *iii* 479; for selfish reasons is disposed to carry out Sir Philip Wodehouse's award in October 1864, *iv* 222; in 1865 is at enmity with his brother Molapo, *iv* 229; in July 1865 his kraal of Matsieng is taken by Commandant Wepener, *iv* 240; he joins his father Moshesh in applying for British protection, *iv* 279; in April 1866 in order to save his crops, with the other

Basuto chiefs agrees to peace with the Free State, *iv* 273; after signing the treaty of Thaba Bosigo renews his efforts to obtain British protection, *iv* 279; but the secretary of state for the colonies is unwilling to extend the British dominions, *ib.*; Letsie then applies to be received as a subject by the Free State, *ib.*; and receives permission to remain where he is until his crops are reaped, *iv* 280; in May 1867 he is received as a Free State subject and allowed to remain in his old district, *iv* 286; as soon as his crops are harvested and stored on fortified mountains he becomes defiant, *iv* 288; in the war of 1867-8 he loses his stronghold the Kieme, *iv* 300; in March 1868 is received as a British subject, *iv* 301; at a great meeting at Thaba Bosigo on the 22nd of December 1870 expresses himself satisfied with the regulations drawn up by Sir Philip Wodehouse, *v* 64; he consents to the annexation of Basutoland to the Cape Colony, *v* 69; on the 29th of November 1891 dies, *v* 60

LETSIMA, BASUTO CUSTOM OF:

particulars concerning, *v* 76

LEVANT, THE, AMERICAN TRADING BRIG:

in August 1841 discharges cargo at Port Natal, *ii* 414

LEVEY, CHARLES J.:

in 1869 acts for a short time as Fingo agent, *iv* 60

LEWANIKA:

in 1877 becomes chief of the Barotsi tribe on the Zambesi, *v* 93

LEWIS, ROBERT:

in May 1868 narrowly escapes being killed by Hottentots in Great Namaqualand, *v* 100

LIBRARY, THE SOUTH AFRICAN PUBLIC, IN CAPETOWN:

in 1818 is founded, *i* 377; particulars concerning the progress of, *i* 378; on the 17th of November 1857 the first stone of the fine building devoted to it is laid, and on the 1st of April 1860 one wing is opened for use, *iii* 160

LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR OF THE CAPE COLONY:

in 1816 the office is abolished, *i* 320

LIGHTHOUSES ON THE SOUTH AFRICAN COAST:

in April 1824 the one at Green Point on the shore of Table Bay is first lit, *i* 387; on the 1st of July 1842 the one at Mouille Point on the shore of Table Bay is first lit, *ii* 199; on the 1st of March 1849 one on Cape Agulhas is opened for use,

*ii* 244; on the 1st of April 1851 one on Cape Recife, *ib.*; on the 1st of December 1852 one on the Bird island east of Algoa Bay, *iii* 143; on the 1st of May 1860 one on the Cape of Good Hope, *iii* 170; on the 25th of August 1860 one at East London, *iii* 227; on the 1st of June 1861 one on the hill at Port Elizabeth, *iii* 170; on the 16th of September 1861 one on the Roman rock in Simon's Bay, *ib.*; on the 1st of January 1865 one on Robben Island at the entrance to Table Bay, *iv* 10; in January 1867 one on the Bluff of Natal, *iv* 162

LIGHTSHIP IN SIMON'S BAY:

on the 10th of January 1845 first displays a light, *ii* 243

DE LILLE, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL:

after the conquest of the Cape Colony by the English in 1795 becomes barrack master in Capetown, *i* 29

LIMPOPO RIVER:

in 1870 is traced for the first time along its central course by Captain Elton, *v* 150 and 151

LIND, CHRISTIAAN MICHIEL:

in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Swellendam, *i* 493

LINDE, FREDERICK:

on the 29th of December 1851 becomes a member of the legislative council of the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 313

LINDE, COMMANDANT JACOBUS:

though seventy-five years old takes an active part in the Kaffir war of 1834-5, *ii* 107

LINDE, JAN:

in the war of 1846-7 is commandant of the Swellendam burghers, *iii* 22

LINDLEY, REV. DANIEL, AMERICAN MISSIONARY:

in June 1836 with two associates goes to reside with the Matabele in the valley of Mosega, *ii* 302; in January 1837 leaves that station with the emigrant farmers who have defeated the Matabele, *ii* 303; in July of the same year arrives in Natal, and commences to labour there; in May 1838 leaves Natal in consequence of the Zulu disturbances, *ii* 374; in June 1839 returns to Natal and becomes resident clergyman of the Dutch church at Maritzburg and consulent of churches at Weenen, Durban, Winburg, and Potchefstroom, *ii* 399; in the beginning of 1847 returns to mission work in Natal, *iii* 230

LINDSAY, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL MARTIN :

during the Kaffir war of 1846-7 is in command of Fort Peddie, but acts very feebly, *iii* 9; on the 26th of May 1846 causes a civilian named John Smith to be flogged for disobedience of his orders, *iii* 26; for which a jury finds him guilty of assault, but the judge inflicts no punishment upon him, *iii* 49

LISE, THE, FRENCH SHIP :

on the 9th of March 1840 is wrecked on Cape Agulhas, *ii* 244

LISHUANE MISSION STATION :

in December 1833 is founded by the Wesleyan society near the border of Basutoland, *i* 482

LITERATURE OF THE PERIOD 1795-1803 :

particulars concerning, *i* 116

LITHAKO :

action of the 24th of July 1878 at, *iv* 430

LITTLE NAMAQUALAND, IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :

description of, *iii* 83

LIVINGSTONE, REV. DR. DAVID, OF THE LONDON SOCIETY :

in 1845 establishes a mission with the Bakwena tribe, *iii* 376; and acquires great influence with the chief Setsheli, *iii* 390; adopts an unfriendly attitude towards the emigrant farmers, *iii* 391; and is regarded by them with much dislike, *iii* 392; in 1848 has an interview at Magalisberg with the reverend Messrs. Robertson and Faure, *iii* 393; claims independence for the Betshuana tribes bordering on the Kalahari desert, *v* 19; in 1849 discovers Lake Ngami, *v* 87; in 1851 visits Linyanti and discovers the Zambesi river in the centre of the continent, *ib.*; in August 1852, while he is absent from the mission, his property at Kolobeng is destroyed, *iii* 398; in May 1853 he visits Linyanti again, *v* 88; between November 1853 and September 1855 travels to St. Paul de Loanda and back to Linyanti, and from November 1855 to July 1856 from Linyanti to Kilimane, *v* 89; in August 1860 reaches Linyanti again from the eastern coast, *v* 91; is the first European to cross Africa from coast to coast, *v* 145

LLOYD, CAPTAIN W. :

in March 1848 becomes civil commissioner of Port Elizabeth, *iii* 70

LOBENGULA, SON OF MOSELEKATSE :

particulars concerning, *v* 7 and 8; in January 1870 becomes chief of the Matabele tribe, *v* 7; is a friend of Europeans, *ib.*; further mention of, *v* 153 and 154



## LOCATIONS FOR BANTU IN NATAL:

particulars concerning, *iv* 167; area of, *ib.*

## LOCUSTS:

in 1799 in vast swarms infest the eastern part of the Cape Colony, *i* 86

## LOMBARD, H. S.:

in December 1840 commands a burgher force sent from Natal against the Bacas of Neapayi, *ii* 411

## LONDON AND LIMPOPO MINING COMPANY:

in 1868 is formed, *v* 10; in 1872 obtains ■ large and important concession from Lobengula, *v* 11; account of its operations in South Africa, *v* 10 and 11

## LONDON MISSIONARY SOCIETY:

in March 1799 commences work in South Africa, *i* 67; particulars concerning, *i* 68, 100, 123, 147, 184 *et seq.*, 231, 270, 318, 325, 409, 470, 471, 472, and 500, *ii* 10, 51, 57, 58, and 59; in 1837 it is outlawed by the first constitution of the emigrant farmers, *ii* 307; particulars concerning, *ii* 470, *iii* 101, 224, 357, and 402, *v* 5, 38, 90 *et seq.*, and 95

## LONGMORE, MAJOR GEORGE:

in January 1830 becomes the first resident magistrate of Wynberg, *ii* 228; in March 1848 becomes resident magistrate of Mossel Bay, *iii* 70

## LORD HAWKESEBURY, ENGLISH WHALER:

is captured by a French squadron, but is run ashore near Zoetendal's Vlei by an English sailor at the helm, *i* 13

## DE LORENTZ, THE BARON CHARLES:

in April 1826 becomes superintendent of police in Capetown, *i* 493; in 1834 becomes police magistrate of Capetown, *ii* 45

## LOSSES OF THE CAPE COLONISTS IN THE SEVENTH KAFFIR WAR:

amount of, *iii* 65

## LOURENÇO MARQUES:

in 1829 fever rages here so severely that of forty European residents thirty-four die, *ii* 340; in 1864 the present town is founded, *v* 148; population in 1878, *v* 140; condition of in 1899, *v* 152 and 153

## LOVEDALE MISSION STATION:

in November 1824 is founded by the Glasgow society on the Ncera river, *i* 409; is named after Dr. Love, one of the founders of the Glasgow missionary society, *ii* 131; during the war of 1834-5 is of necessity abandoned, *ii* 111; after the war

is reëstablished by the reverend John Bennie near the junction of the Gaga and Tyumie rivers, *ii* 131; on the 21st of July 1841 a school is opened here for the education of the sons of missionaries and select Kaffir pupils; in April 1846 the mission premises are occupied by soldiers and converted into a fort, *iii* 6; but on the conclusion of peace in December 1847 the missionaries return and resume their work, *iii* 60; in 1856 industrial schools are opened here, *iii* 192

LOWEN, HECTOR:

in December 1851 is appointed civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Bloemfontein, *iii* 325

LOWER BOKKEVELD, IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

description of, *i* 169

LUCAS, ADMIRAL ENGELBERTUS:

in August 1796 in Saldanha Bay surrenders a fleet of nine Dutch ships of war to Admiral Elphinstone, *i* 10 *et seq.*

LUCAS, LIEUTENANT HENRY:

in 1855 is appointed magistrate with Makoma, *iii* 190

LUDERITZ, F. A. E.:

in 1883 establishes a trading station at Angra Pequena, *v* 123; in May 1883 purchases a small tract of land round the bay from the Hottentot captain Joseph Fredericks, of Bethany, *ib.*; in August of the same year purchases a much larger tract from the same captain, *ib.*; applies to the German government for protection, *ib.*; claims the guano islands off the coast, but unsuccessfully, *v* 126

LUDIDI, CHIEF OF A HLUBI CLAN:

in 1869 has a location in Nomansland assigned to him by Sir Philip Wodehouse, *iv* 68; in January 1872 asks to be taken under the authority of the Cape Colony, *iv* 69

LUDORF, REV. JOSEPH, WESLEYAN MISSIONARY:

in January 1850 goes to reside at Lotlakana with Montsiwa's Barolong, *iii* 382; in September 1852 gives very pernicious advice to Montsiwa; acts as agent for Montsiwa, *v* 28; devises an ingenious but fabulous history of the Barolong, *v* 29; from April to June 1871 conducts the case for the Barolong chiefs before the arbitration court at Bloemhof, *v* 40 *et seq.*; admits that he is the author of a spurious treaty that has been used to draw President Pretorius into a snare, *v* 41; after the delivery of the Bloemhof award, in October 1871 draws up a pompous but absurd constitution for a united Barolong, Bangwaketse, and Batlapin state, *v* 47; in January 1872 dies, *v* 49

## LUNGSICKNESS ■ CATTLE :

in 1854 is introduced into the Cape Colony, and causes great losses, *iii* 151; particulars concerning, *iii* 152; in 1855 it spreads to the cattle in British Kaffraria, where it is attributed by the Xosas to witchcraft practised by the Europeans, *iii* 198; in the same year it spreads to Natal, and causes great loss, *iii* 261

## LUTHERAN CHURCH IN CAPETOWN :

particulars concerning, *i* 105 and 317

## LYDENBURG, DISTRICT OF :

in December 1856 separates from the South African Republic and is declared by its representatives to be a sovereign and independent state; in September 1857 negotiations are commenced by the government at Potchefstroom for a reconciliation, *iv* 440; and are carried on until April 1860, when the union of the two states is completed, *iv* 442

## LYDENBURG, VILLAGE OF :

in 1846 is founded

## LYTTON, RIGHT HON. SIR EDWARD BULWER :

on the 31st of May 1858 succeeds Lord Stanley as secretary of state for the colonies, *iii* 181

## MAAS, CORNELIS :

is severely punished for spreading false reports, *i* 213

## MABANDLA, CHIEF OF A REMNANT OF THE AMABELE TRIBE :

in April 1835 at Butterworth solicits Sir Benjamin D'Urban to give him protection against the Xosas, *ii* 110; his request is complied with, and he has land assigned to him between the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ii* 113; on the 2nd of January 1845 he enters into a treaty with Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259

## MABOELA, BASUTO CUSTOM OF :

particulars concerning, *v* 77

## MABOTSA :

reference to the reverend Dr. Livingstone's residence at, *iii* 394

## MACARTNEY, EARL OF :

in May 1797 becomes governor of the Cape Colony, *i* 27; conducts the government without the slightest taint of corruption, *i* 29; but is very severe with republicans, *i* 30; resigns, and in November 1798 leaves South Africa, *i* 46; on the 31st of March 1806 dies, *i* 47

**McCLELAND, REV. FRANCIS, OF THE ENGLISH EPISCOPAL CHURCH:**

in 1820 arrives in the Cape Colony with a party of Irish settlers, and is stationed at Clanwilliam, *i* 351; in November 1825 is transferred to Port Elizabeth, *i* 355

**McCORKINDALE, ALEXANDER:**

in September 1864 obtains a concession from the government of the South African Republic for introducing immigrants from Great Britain, *iv* 469; is unable to carry out his project in its entirety, but brings out a few Scotch families, *iv* 470; in May 1871 dies at Inyaka Island, *ib.*

**McDIARMID, REV. ALEXANDER:**

is a missionary of the free church of Scotland at Macfarlan station, *iii* 99

**McDOUGALL, DONALD:**

in 1848 obtains a lease of a copper mine on the bank of the Orange river from a Hottentot captain, *iii* 85

**MACFARLAN MISSION STATION:**

particulars concerning, *iii* 99

**MACKAY, WILLIAM MACDONALD:**

in January 1824 is appointed deputy landdrost at Cradock, *i* 394; in March 1825 is promoted to be landdrost of Somerset, *ib.*; in January 1828 becomes civil commissioner of the Cape and Simonstown districts, *i* 492; prosecutes the reverend Dr. Philip for libel in the book *Researches in South Africa*, and obtains judgment in his favour, *i* 508; in March 1848 becomes civil commissioner of Caledon, *iii* 70

**McKENNY, REV. MR.:**

in 1814 is sent to South Africa by the Wesleyan society, but is not permitted by Lord Charles Somerset to act as a clergyman, *i* 318; in consequence of which he returns to England, *ib.*

**MACKENZIE, REV. JOHN:**

in 1860 at Lake Ngami rescues the survivors of the ill-fated Makololo mission, *v* 92

**McKIDD, REV. MR.:**

founds the first mission of the Dutch reformed church in the Zoutpansberg, *iv* 477

**MACKINNON, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL GEORGE HENRY:**

in September 1846 arrives in South Africa as a supernumerary officer, *iii* 29; in December 1847 is appointed commandant and chief commissioner of British Kaffraria, *iii* 58; on the

24th of December 1850 commands a patrol which is attacked by Xosas at the Boomah pass, *iii* 94; in October 1852 resigns, *iii* 117

**MACKRILL, DR. :**

is the first superintendent of the Somerset farm, *i* 281

**MACLEAN, CAPTAIN JOHN :**

in November 1845 succeeds Mr. Theophilus Shepstone as diplomatic agent at Fort Peddie, *ii* 261; in November 1846 is appointed commissioner with the clans near the sea between the Keiskama and Kei rivers, *iii* 37; (Lieutenant-Colonel) in October 1852 becomes chief commissioner of British Kaffraria, *iii* 117; in October 1860 is appointed lieutenant-governor of that province, *iii* 226; in December 1864 is transferred in the same capacity from British Kaffraria to Natal, *iv* 71

**MACMAHON, MARSHAL, PRESIDENT OF THE FRENCH REPUBLIC :**

as arbitrator in 1875 awards Delagoa Bay to the Portuguese, *v* 150

**MACROBIE, DR. W. K. :**

in January 1869 is consecrated bishop of Maritzburg, *iv* 173

**MADIKANE :**

is leader of a Bantu horde driven westward by the armies of Tshaka, *i* 450; on the 20th of December 1824 is defeated and killed in a battle with the Tembus and Xosas, *ib.*; his followers who disperse after his death are the first Fingos, *ib.*

**MADOOR, A BUSHMAN :**

in 1843 becomes nominal chief of a party of refugees from the Cape Colony, *iii* 47

**MAGADU, SON OF THE BAVENDA CHIEF RAMAPULANA :**

quarrels with his brother Tabana, and after his father's death drives him from his kraals, *iv* 478; in April 1865 engages in war with the Europeans in Zoutpansberg, *iv* 481

**MAGERSFONTEIN :**

seizure of guns and ammunition by the Free State authorities at, *iv* 412

**MAGISTERIAL DIVISIONS OF NATAL :**

account of, *iii* 263

**MAGWAMBA TRIBE :**

these people were termed Knobnoses by Europeans, *ii* 289

**MAHLAPO TRIBE :**

mention of, *i* 465



**MAHURA, CHIEF OF A BATLAPIN CLAN:**

in 1858 protects his relative Gasibone from ■ commando of the South African Republic, *iii* 489; makes an agreement of peace, in which he undertakes to pay the expenses of the commando within three months, *ib.*; but pays nothing when called upon to do so, *iv* 455; in May 1864, in reply to a letter of demand from President Pretorius, refers the government of the republic to his agent, Mr. David Arnot, *ib.*; in February 1869 with other Batlapin chiefs and several Korana captains has a conference with a commission from the South African Republic, *v* 26, at which he and the others admit their indebtedness and undertake to pay three thousand head of cattle within two months, *ib.*; but they fail to carry out their agreement, *ib.*; shortly after this Mahura dies and is succeeded by Mankoroane ■ head of the clan, *v* 27

**MAIL PACKET SERVICE:**

in 1815 is first established between England and South Africa, *i* 282; in 1864 begins to be conducted twice a month by different routes, *iv* 38; in April 1868 is established bimonthly by the Atlantic route, *iv* 96

**MATTLAND, SIR PEREGRINE:**

is ■ military officer of distinction, *ii* 233; on the 19th of December 1843 receives a commission as governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 232; on the 18th of March 1844 takes the oaths of office in Capetown, *ib.*; in the following September proceeds to the eastern frontier, *ii* 256; and makes new treaty arrangements with the various chiefs and captains of the Xosa and Tembu tribes, *ii* 257; on the 7th of October 1844 enters into a treaty with the Pondo chief Faku, *ii* 457; in June 1845 visits the country north of the Orange river, *ii* 492; holds conferences with various chiefs and captains, and endeavours to settle the disturbances of the country, *ib.*; but is able to make positive arrangements with Adam Kok only, *ii* 493; defers further proceedings until he can obtain a report from a special commissioner whom he sends on a tour of investigation, *ii* 495; when it is found no possible settlement can be made without violating the Napier treaty with Moshesh, *ii* 497; on the 1st of April 1846 on account of the hostile attitude of the Xosas leaves Capetown again for the eastern frontier, *iii* 3; on the 22nd of that month proclaims the colony under martial law and calls out the entire burgher force, *iii* 10; on the 1st of May assumes the chief command of the army in the field, *ib.*; on the 13th of June establishes his head-quarters at Waterloo

Bay, *iii* 18; in September resolves to effect ■ settlement of the Kaffir territory very similar to that of Sir Benjamin D'Urban, *iii* 31; on the 6th of January 1847 at Butterworth receives ■ despatch from England announcing his recall, *iii* 39; on the 27th of the same month is succeeded by Sir Henry Pottinger, *iii* 40; and on the 23rd of February sails for England, *ib.*; on the 30th of May 1854 dies in London, *ib.*

#### MAIZE GROWING IN NATAL:

particulars concerning, *iv* 164

#### MAKABA, CHIEF OF THE BANGWAKETSE TRIBE:

in 1823 defeats the Mantati horde, *i* 444; is killed in battle with the Makololo under Sebetoane, *v* 83

#### MAKALANGA OR MAKARANGA CLANS:

mention of, *i* 433 and 460; they are reduced to great misery by the Matabele, *v* 8

#### MAKANA, XOSA SEER AND WARRIOR LEADER:

account of, *i* 329; early in 1818 declares himself a partisan of Ndlambe, and by so doing turns the balance of power against Gaika, *i* 331; is the leading actor in the invasion of the Cape Colony in 1819 by Ndlambe's adherents, *i* 336; on the 22nd of April 1819 attacks Grahamstown, but is repulsed, *i* 338; on the 15th of August surrenders to Landdrost Stockenström, *i* 339; is sent a prisoner to Robben Island, *i* 340; on the 9th of August 1820 is drowned while attempting to escape, *ib.*; but for half a century afterwards his countrymen refuse to believe that he is dead, *ib.*

#### MAKAPAN:

is chief of a clan called the Batlou in the district of Zoutpansberg, *iii* 415; in 1854 causes a party of Europeans to be murdered, *iii* 417; and commences to pillage the country in his neighbourhood, *ib.*; upon the approach of burgher forces under Commandants-General Pretorius and Potgieter takes refuge with all his people in an enormous cavern, *iii* 418; where he is blockaded, and the greater part of his clan perishes, *iii* 419

#### MAKASANE, CHIEF OF A TONGA TRIBE OF BANTU:

in August 1823 cedes to Great Britain a large tract of land at Delagoa Bay, *v* 131; further mention of, *v* 136

#### MAKATEES (CORRUPTION OF MANTATIS):

take refuge in the Cape Colony in ■ famishing state, and are apprenticed to farmers, *i* 446

**MAKAULA, SON OF NCAPAYI:**

in July 1845 succeeds his father as chief of the Bacas, *ii* 459;  
in January 1872 asks to be taken under the authority of the  
Cape Colony, *iv* 69

**MAKHOAKHOA TRIBE:**

mention of, *i* 429 and 465

**MAKIWANE, REV. ELIJAH:**

is a missionary at Macfarlan station, *iii* 99

**MAKOLOLO MISSION:**

disastrous fate of, *v* 90 to 92

**MAKOLOLO TRIBE:**

particulars concerning, *i* 472, *iii* 412 and *v* 84 to 93; in 1865  
is utterly exterminated, *v* 93

**MAKOMA (CORRECT KAFFIR SPELLING MAQOMA), RIGHT-HAND SON OF  
THE XOSA CHIEF GAIKA:**

in April 1817 is present at an interview between his father and  
Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 323; in the winter of 1818 commences  
his career as a warrior, and acts very bravely in the battle of  
Amalinde, *i* 334; is permitted by the colonial government to  
occupy the valleys at the sources of the Kat river, *i* 382;  
in December 1823 is compelled to make compensation for  
robberies by his people, *i* 386; also in November 1824, *ii* 1;  
in January 1829 he quarrels with the Tembu captain Mtshalela,  
whom he drives into the Cape Colony, and whose cattle he  
seizes on the Tarka, *ii* 8; in consequence of which in May  
he is compelled to leave the Kat river and to retire over the  
Tyumie, *ib.*; on his father's death in November 1829 he is  
appointed regent during the minority of Sandile, the recognised  
heir in the great line, *ii* 51; in 1832 Colonel Somerset gives  
him leave to return to the western bank of the Tyumie, *ii* 55;  
but owing to depredations by his people, in November 1833 he is  
again required to leave the ceded territory, *ib.*; in December 1834  
sends his followers to invade and lay waste the frontier districts  
of the Cape Colony, *ii* 90; continues the strife until the 17th  
of September 1835, when he consents to terms of peace and  
agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 125; on the 5th of  
December 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into  
a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; on the 2nd of  
December 1840 agrees to certain modifications of the treaty  
proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 187; on the 21st of January  
1845 enters into a new treaty framed by Sir Peregrine Maitland,  
*ii* 259; is leading a very miserable life, even for a barbarian,

*ii* 264; at the beginning of 1846 is indisposed to join the war party in Kaffirland, *ib.*; but in April of that year sends his followers into the Cape Colony to plunder and destroy, *iii* 6; in October he surrenders, *iii* 34; and has an outbuilding at Lovedale assigned for his residence, *iii* 36; is sent by Sir Henry Pottinger to Port Elizabeth, *iii* 51; where he remains until January 1848, when he has ground assigned to him in British Kaffraria, *ib.*; in the war of 1850-52 takes a leading part against the Cape Colony, *iii* 100; on the 9th of March 1853 agrees to the terms of peace imposed upon him, *iii* 114; in 1856 takes a leading part in the self-destruction of the Xosa tribe, *iii* 199 and 201; career of from 1857 to his death in September 1873, *iii* 210

**MAKOMBI, CHIEF OF A BANTU TRIBE IN PORTUGUESE SOUTH AFRICA:**

in 1892 rebels against the Portuguese, but is vanquished, *v* 166

**MAKWAI, CHIEF OF A BASUTO CLAN:**

in May 1867 is received as a Free State subject, *iv* 287; but soon afterwards goes into rebellion, *iv* 290; after the loss of his stronghold on the 25th of September 1867 moves over the Drakensberg to Nomansland, *iv* 292; where in 1869 he has a location assigned to him by Sir Philip Wodehouse, *iv* 68

**MAKWANA, CHIEF OF THE BATAUNG TRIBE:**

mention of, *i* 442; during the Zulu wars of extermination escapes with a few followers, and after the retirement of the invading hordes settles between the Vet and Sand rivers, *i* 446 and 465; early in 1836 sells nearly the whole territory between the Vet and Vaal rivers to the emigrant farmers under Commandant Potgieter, *ii* 286

**MALCOLM, REAR ADMIRAL SIR PULTENEY:**

from June 1816 to June 1817 commands on the Cape station, *i* 302

**MALEWU, CHIEF OF A BANTU CLAN IN THE DISTRICT OF LYDENBURG:**

in 1863 rises in arms against the South African Republic, *iv* 456; in June 1864 is attacked by a Swazi army, when his clan is nearly annihilated, *ib.*

**MALMESBURY, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in January 1839 is created, *ii* 227; in March 1848 is made a division, to include the districts of Malmesbury and Piketberg, *iii* 70

**MALMESBURY, VILLAGE OF:**

in November 1828 is founded, *ii* 22

**MAMOTSHISANE, DAUGHTER OF SEBETOANE:**

by her father's wish at his death becomes head of the Makololo tribe, but soon afterwards gives the chieftainship to her half-brother Sekeletu, *v* 88

**MAMRE, MORAVIAN MISSION STATION:**

in March 1808 is founded, *i* 230

**VON MANGER, REV. J. H.:**

in March 1796 leaves Graaff-Reinet, *i* 9; and declines to return, *i* 41; in June 1798 becomes the first clergyman of Swellendam, *ib.*; in January 1802 is transferred to Capetown, *i* 104; for many years is president of the bible and school commission, *ii* 208; on the 2nd of May 1842 dies, *ib.*

**MANIKUSA:** see Sotshangana

**MANN, DR. R. J., SUPERINTENDENT OF EDUCATION IN NATAL:**

in 1865 is sent to England to endeavour to procure immigrants, *iv* 157; but meets with very little success, *iv* 158

**MANNER OF LIVING IN THE CAPE COLONY BEFORE THE MIDDLE OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY, *ii* 250**

**MANNING, WILLIAM:**

in 1857 is the engineer in charge of the harbour works at the mouth of the Kowie river, *iii* 169

**MANTATI HORDE:**

account of the, *i* 443 *et seq.*; several thousands of the people composing it in a famishing state take refuge in the Cape Colony, *i* 446

**MA NTATISI, THE RENOWNED LEADER OF THE HORDE CALLED AFTER HER MANTATIS:**

is daughter of Mothage, chief of the Basia, and wife of Mokotsho, chief of the Batlokua, *i* 430; acts as regent of the Batlokua during the minority of her son Sikonyela, *i* 440; is one of the leaders of a great horde that lays waste the southern portion of the Transvaal territory, *i* 442; is defeated by the Bangwaketse under the chief Makaba, and in June 1823 by the Griquas, *i* 444; then returns to the banks of the Caledon, and assists to devastate that country, *i* 445; in 1823 attacks Moshesh, but unsuccessfully, *i* 462; in 1824 again attacks him and drives him from Butabute, *ib.*

**MAPASA, SON OF BAWANA, CHIEF OF A TEMBU CLAN:**

in 1835 is virtually independent of the regent of the tribe, *ii* 105; during the war of that year professes to be friendly, but allows



his people to make plundering raids into the Cape Colony, *ii* 107; in October 1835 consents to become a British subject, *ii* 132; but on the 18th of January 1837 is released from his allegiance, and as an independent chief concludes a treaty with Lieutenant-Governor Stockenstrom, *ii* 153; on account of the constant robberies committed by his people, in April 1839 a military force is sent against him and exacts compensation, *ii* 184; on the 28th of January 1841 he agrees to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 188; on the 25th of March 1845 he enters into a new treaty with Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 260; in May 1846 joins the Xosas against the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; in August is severely punished by the colonial forces, *iii* 25; in November is quite ruined for a time by a colonial force and by the chief Umtirara, *iii* 32; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, *iii* 61; and is allowed to reside where he did before the war, *iii* 63; in the war of 1850-52 takes part against the Cape Colony, *iii* 101; and is killed in an action, *iii* 113

**MAPELA**, CHIEF OF A BANTU CLAN IN THE DISTRICT OF ZOUTPANSBERG: early in 1858 rises in rebellion, *iv* 434; but is defeated with heavy loss and compelled to submit, *ib.*; ten years later rises again, but in June 1868 is severely chastised, *iv* 488

**MAPOK**, CHIEF OF A BANTU CLAN IN THE DISTRICT OF LYDENBURG: in 1863 rises in rebellion, *iv* 456; meets with some reverses, but does a great deal of damage to the farms in the district, *ib.*; in June 1864 is routed by a Swazi army, *ib.*

**MAQOMA**: see Makoma

**MARABASTAD**:

after the abandonment of Schoemansdal in June 1867 becomes the residence of the landdrost of Zoutpansberg, *iv* 486

**MARIA LOUISA**, DUTCH PACKET:

on the 19th of October 1795 is captured outside of Table Bay, *i* 6

**MARICO**, DISTRICT IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

in 1871 is established, *v* 45 and 46

**MARITZ**, GERRIT:

is leader of the third party of emigrants from the Cape Colony, *ii* 294; in October 1836 reaches Thaba Ntshu, where he learns of the losses sustained by Potgieter's party from the Matabele, *ib.*; on the 2nd of December is elected landdrost of the emigrant

farmers, *ii* 296; assists Commandant Hendrik Potgieter to punish the Matabele, *ii* 300; quarrels with Potgieter, *ii* 304; on the 6th of June 1837 is elected president of the second volksraad, *ii* 306; after Pieter Retief's death in February 1838 becomes head of the emigrants in Natal, *ii* 367; remains in charge of the lagers in Natal while Potgieter and Uys proceed against Dingana, *ii* 369; on the 23rd of September 1838 dies, *ii* 375

**MARITZBURG:** see Pietermaritzburg

**MARRIAGES:**

by an ordinance of the commissioner-general De Mist, after the 1st of January 1805 marriages take place before the landdrost and heemraden of each district, *i* 174; but by a proclamation of General Baird, after April 1806 can only be performed by ordained ministers of the gospel, *i* 214

**MARTINUS-WESSEL-STROOM, VILLAGE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**  
in 1859 is founded, *iv* 440

**MARY, THE, ENGLISH BRIG:**

on the 1st of October 1825 is wrecked while trying to cross the bar at Port Natal, *ii* 329

**MASERU:**

in March 1869 is selected as the residence of the high commissioner's agent in Basutoland, *iv* 322

**MASHONALAND:**

in 1890 is occupied by the British South Africa chartered company, *v* 155

**MASISI, SUCCESSOR TO THE BAROLONG CAPTAIN GONTSE:**

in 1871 dies at Taung, and is succeeded by Moshete, *ii* 467

**MASONIC LODGE DE GOEDE HOOP:**

dates from November 1772, *i* 175; on the 7th of July 1803 its temple in Capetown is dedicated by the commissioner-general De Mist, *ib.*; on the 21st of February 1892 is destroyed by fire, but has since been rebuilt, *ib.*

**MASSACRE OF PIETER RETIEF AND A PARTY OF FARMERS AT UMKU-  
NGUNHLOVU:**

account of, *ii* 360

**MASSACRE OF EMIGRANT FAMILIES IN NATAL BY THE ZULUS:**

account of, *ii* 364

MASSACRE OF THE ADHERENTS OF UMBULAZI BY THE ARMY UNDER  
KETSHWAYO:

account of, *iii* 241

MASSACRE OF HOTTENTOTS BY HEREROS IN AUGUST 1880:

account of, *v* 121

MASSEY, CAPTAIN THE HONOURABLE JOHN:

in November 1824 conducts an expedition against Makoma, *ii* 1

MASSOU, KORANA CAPTAIN:

particulars concerning, *v* 35

MASUPHA, SON OF THE BASUTO CHIEF MOSHESH:

in June 1865 leads a raiding party into the Orange Free State and commits several massacres of a peculiarly atrocious nature, *iv* 233; on the death of his father takes up his residence on Thaba Bosigo against the orders of the high commissioner's agent, *v* 65; refuses to leave Thaba Bosigo, and remains master of the stronghold, *v* 70; owing to a feud between him and Jonathan, son of Molapo, in 1872 he becomes less refractory, *v* 77

MATABELE TRIBE:

estimate of the number of the people composing it, *i* 456; particulars concerning it, *i* 467 and 485; in August 1836 a band of Matabele soldiers attacks a European hunting party north of the Vaal river, and murders all of its members except four, *ii* 290; afterwards attacks a lager of emigrant farmers, but is beaten off with heavy loss, *ib.*; at another encampment commits a dreadful massacre, *ii* 291; and then proceeds to Mosega with large herds of the emigrants' cattle and three captive children, *ib.*; in October a strong Matabele army attacks Commandant Potgieter's camp at Vechtkop, *ii* 292; it is defeated, but secures all the cattle belonging to the people in the camp, *ii* 293; on the 17th of January 1837 the military kraals at Mosega are attacked by the emigrant farmers, *ii* 302; and the soldiers there are defeated with considerable loss, *ii* 303; in the winter of 1837 the Matabele sustain a defeat from a Zulu army sent against them by Dingana, *ii* 317; in November of this year they are attacked on the Marikwa by the emigrant farmers under Potgieter and Uys, and suffer such loss that they flee beyond the Limpopo, *ii* 320; account of the tribe from 1837 to 1868, *v* 4 to 8; in 1859 it is provided with missionaries by the London society, *v* 5; in 1870 it is engaged in civil war, *v* 8; see Moselekatse

**MATANZIMA, CHIEF OF A TEMBU CLAN:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 54 and 55

**MATIWANE, CHIEF OF THE AMANGWANE TRIBE:**

in 1821 when trying to escape from Tshaka attacks and disperses the Amahlubi, *i* 440; pursues them across the Drakensberg, *i* 441; during seven years follows ■ murderous career in the country west of the Drakensberg, *i* 446; in 1827 is defeated on the Caledon by a Zulu army, and retires across the Drakensberg into Tembuland, *i* 452; drives the clan under Bawana over the Zwart Kei into the Cape Colony, *ib.*; devastates a large portion of the Tembu country, *ib.*; and then settles on the eastern bank of the Umtata, *ib.*; on the 26th of July 1828 some of his people are attacked and beaten by Vusani's Tembus, aided by an inspecting party of Europeans under Major Dundas, who believe they are opposing Tshaka's Zulus, *i* 453; on the 27th of August 1828 his tribe is utterly broken and ruined in an engagement with a colonial commando under Colonel Somerset and an army of Xosas and Tembus under Hintsu and Vusani, *i* 454; with a few of his warriors he flees northward to Dingana, who causes them all to be put to death, *ib.*

**MATLABE, CHIEF OF A BAROLONG CLAN:**

in January 1837 acts as guide to the emigrant farmers in an expedition against the Matabele, *ii* 300; in November 1837 again renders assistance to the emigrant farmers against the Matabele, *ii* 318; in 1841 moves from Thaba Ntshu over the Vaal and has a tract of land assigned to him by Commandant Potgieter, upon which he lives as a favoured subject of the emigrant farmers, *ii* 466; in 1846 he assists the farmers against the Bapedi, *ii* 505

**MATLAPATLAPA, CHIEF OF A CLAN OF THE AMAZIZI:**

mention of, *i* 443

**MATOMELA, CHIEF OF A REMNANT OF THE AMARELEDWANE TRIBE:**

in April 1835 at Butterworth solicits Sir Benjamin D'Urban to give him protection against the Xosas, *ii* 110; his request is complied with, and he has land assigned to him between the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ii* 113; on the 2nd of January 1845 enters into ■ treaty with Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259

**MATRIMONIAL COURT IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

in 1839 is abolished, *ii* 228

**MATSHANGANA TRIBE:**

career of the, *iv* 479, *v* 138, 139, 140, 147, 148, 154, 156, and 166

**MATSHATSHI, CHIEFTAINNESS OF THE BAKWEBO TRIBE :**  
account of, *iv* 476

**MATSHENG, CHIEF OF THE BAMANGWATO TRIBE :**  
account of, *v* 14

**MATWA, INFERIOR SON OF GAIKA :**  
during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 professes friendship to the Cape Colony, *ii* 111; in 1837 attacks the Fingos along the Gaga and drives them away, *ii* 156

**MATYANA, CHIEF OF A BANTU CLAN IN NATAL :**  
refuses to appear at Maritzburg to answer to a charge of murder, *iii* 244; had once before been fined for a similar offence, *iii* 245; an armed force is then sent against him, *ib.*; which he resists, but is defeated, when he flees to a jungle and his cattle are seized, *ib.*; he consents to meet Mr. Shepstone in conference, on the 16th of March 1858, when a deplorable incident takes place, *iii* 246; he then flees into Zululand, and is outlawed, his followers being dispersed, *ib.*; his punishment and that of Sidoyi has an exemplary effect upon the Bantu in Natal, *ib.*

**MAUCH, CARL, GERMAN GEOLOGIST :**  
in 1867 discovers gold in the territory north of the Limpopo, *v* 4

**MAURITIUS, ISLAND OF :**  
account of the operations which resulted in its surrender on the 3rd of December 1810 to a British force, *i* 240 *et seq.*; in 1814 it is ceded to Great Britain, *i* 276

**MAWA, A CHIEFTAINNESS OF HIGH RANK, BEING A WIDOW OF SENZANGAKONA :**  
early in 1843 flees from Zululand into Natal with a great horde of adherents, *ii* 446

**MAWEVA, SON OF MANIKUSA, CHIEF OF THE MATSHANGANA TRIBE :**  
in 1862 contests for the chieftainship with his brother Umzila, but is defeated and obliged to flee, *v* 147

**MAYETA, CHIEF OF A TONGA TRIBE OF BANTU :**  
in March 1823 cedes to Great Britain a tract of land along the Tembe river, *v* 129; further mention of, *v* 136

**MAYIANA TRIBE :**  
mention of, *i* 429



**MAYNIER, HONORATUS CHRISTIAAN DAVID :**

in September 1799 accompanies General Dundas to the frontier, and makes ■ arrangement with the Xosas and Hottentots which he calls peace, *i* 61; in December 1799 is stationed ■ commissioner in the frontier districts with very great power, *i* 63; gives dissatisfaction to the colonists, *i* 87; in July 1801 parties of farmers appear in arms at the drostdy of Graaff-Reinet, and require him to leave the district, *ib.*; by a display of military force some of them are intimidated, and others retire beyond the colonial boundary, *i* 88; in October they appear at the drostdy again, and invest it, *ib.*; Major Sherlock with ■ strong military reinforcement is then sent to Graaff-Reinet, *ib.*; but so many petitions and letters from friends of the government are sent in imploring the removal of Maynier that General Dundas recalls him, *i* 89; and as soon as this becomes known the insurgent farmers disperse to their homes, *i* 90; the complaints against Maynier are subsequently investigated by a special commission, *ib.*; and he is acquitted of all misconduct, *i* 91; after which he sits as a member of the high court of justice, and receives from General Dundas £1,000 as compensation for his losses and expenses, *ib.*

**MEASLES :**

in 1839 this disease destroys many lives in the Cape Colony, *ii* 192

**MEASURES AND WEIGHTS :** see English

**MEASURES ADOPTED BY GENERAL CRAIG IN 1796 FOR THE RESTORATION OF ORDER AT GRAAFF-REINET, *i* 10**

**MEASURES ADOPTED BY THE GOVERNMENT OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE :** with regard to the territory acquired by the treaty of Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 276

three rows of farms adjoining the boundary are given free to selected applicants to hold under personal occupation, and in the remainder of the territory not intended for reserves for blacks farms are sold by auction, *iv* 284; in January 1867 the farms are allotted, but the owners cannot occupy them on account of Basuto squatters, *ib.*; therefore in March 1867 ■ burgher force is called out to expel the Basuto, *iv* 285; two commandos commence destroying the crops, *ib.*; but do not meet with much resistance, *iv* 286; the great object of the Basuto being to save their crops, they in general profess abject submission and implore to be received as Free State subjects, *ib.*; in May the volksraad consents, and Letsie and

other chiefs are taken over, *ib.*; as soon ■■ the crops are gathered, all the chiefs except Moperi become defiant, *iv* 288; in June an English trader named Bush is murdered by some Bataung in the ceded territory, and Moshesh protects the murderer, *iv* 289; in July a farmer named Krynauw is murdered by a party of Bataung, *ib.*; as it is then certain that the Basuto have no intention to abide by their engagements, the burghers are called to arms, and the war of 1867-8 follows, *iv* 290

**MEAT:**

price of in the Cape Colony in 1798, *i* 40; and after 1856, *iii* 152

**MEINTJES, JACOBUS JOHANNES:**

in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Somerset East, *i* 493; but in 1834 in consequence of retrenchment is reduced to be assistant civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Beaufort, *ii* 44

**MELVILL, MR., AGENT OF THE CAPE GOVERNMENT AT GRIQUATOWN:**

induces the Griquas to march against the Mantatis, *i* 444

**MENZIES, WILLIAM:**

on the 1st of January 1828 becomes a judge in the newly established supreme court of the Cape Colony, *i* 491; on the 22nd of October 1842 at Alleman's drift proclaims an immense tract of land north of the Orange river British territory, *ii* 480; but his proclamation is repudiated by Sir George Napier, *ib.*; on the 1st of November 1850 dies at Colesberg, *iii* 147

**MENZIWE, CHIEF OF A FINGO CLAN IN TEMBULAND:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 56

**MERRIMAN, J. X. (LATER RIGHT HONOURABLE):**

proceedings in the Cape parliament of, *iv* 108, 137, and 398

**MERUMETSU MISSION STATION:**

in December 1833 is founded by the Wesleyan society north of the Caledon river, *i* 481

**MESHAM, L. E.:**

on the 4th of November 1850 is appointed magistrate of the Inanda location in Natal, *iii* 234

**METROPOLITAN HALL IN BURG-STREET, CAPETOWN:**

in February 1831 is opened for public worship by the Wesleyans, *ii* 17

**MEYER, GERRIT HENDRIK :**

in August 1847 is elected landdrost of Winburg in the Orange river territory by some emigrant farmers who are well affected towards the British government, but in October he is deposed by the opponents of that party, *ii* 506

**MGWALI MISSION STATION :**

in September 1857 is founded in Sandile's location, British Kaffraria, by the reverend Messrs. Tiyo Soga and Robert Johnston, in connection with the united presbyterian church of Scotland. This station must not be confounded with the one of the same name in the Tyumie valley, which had then ceased to exist. It is memorable as having been for ten years the sphere of labour of the first ordained Kaffir clergyman, a most amiable and excellent man, who gave to his countrymen an exceedingly beautiful translation of Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress* and set them an example of a devoted and highly useful Christian life

**MICHELL, MAJOR CHARLES CORNWALLIS :**

in 1829 becomes surveyor-general, civil engineer, and superintendent of works in the Cape Colony, *i* 495; plans the road over the Hottentots-Holland mountains, *ii* 24; is the first to conceive the design of massing convict labour upon mountain passes in the Cape Colony, *ii* 230

**MICHELL'S PASS, LEADING FROM THE TULBAGH BASIN TO THE WARM BOKKEVELD :**

in December 1848 a good carriage road is opened through, *iii* 144

**MIDDELBURG, DISTRICT IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC :**

in October 1871 is formed, *v* 45 and 46

**MIDDELBURG, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

in November 1855 is formed, *iii* 148

**MIDDELBURG, VILLAGE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC :**

in 1859 is founded, *iv* 442

**MIGRATION OF FARMERS FROM THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC TO THE WESTERN COAST :**

account of, *v* 105, 106, 117, 118, and 119

**MILITARY FORCE OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE :**

constitution of, *iii* 445

**MILITARY ORGANISATION OF THE BURGHERS IN THE CAPE COLONY :**

in October 1805 is regulated by an ordinance, *i* 183

**MILITARY VILLAGES IN THE TYUMIE VALLEY :**

particulars concerning the formation of, *iii* 68; and of their destruction by Xosas on the 25th of December 1850, *iii* 96

MILLS, CAPTAIN (LATER SIR CHARLES):

is sheriff of British Kaffraria, *iii* 226

MINERAL WEALTH OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC AS KNOWN IN  
1868, *v* 1

MISSIONARY LABOUR:

instance of the result of, *iii* 117

MISSION STATIONS IN NATAL IN 1837, *ii* 349

MISSION STATIONS IN BRITISH KAFFRARIA:

particulars concerning, *iii* 224

MISSIONARIES OF THE PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY:

in February 1866 the volksraad of the Orange Free State expels those whose stations are in the territory overrun by the burgher forces, *iv* 265; further particulars of this event, *iv* 281; after the second treaty of Aliwal North they return to their labours in Basutoland, *v* 75

MISSION WORK IN BASUTOLAND:

general effects of, *iv* 193

MISSION WORK IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

is carried on by the Berlin and Hermansburg societies and the Dutch reformed church, *iv* 467

DE MIST, JACOB ABRAHAM:

is appointed by the government of the Batavian Republic commissioner-general in South Africa, *i* 106; in December 1802 arrives in Capetown from Holland, *i* 107; on the 21st of February 1803 receives transfer of the Cape Colony from General Dundas, *i* 111; on the 1st of March instals the governor and other officials in their posts, *i* 118; on the 9th of October leaves Capetown to make a tour of inspection through the colony, *i* 138; on the 3rd of November reaches the northern border, *i* 142; on the 15th of the same month arrives at Roodezand, now Tulbagh, *i* 145; on the 7th of January 1804 reaches Algoa Bay, *i* 147; travels onward to the Fish river, and thence by way of Bruintjes Hoogte to the village of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 149; on the 13th of February 1804 leaves Graaff-Reinet, and travels over the karoo to the Hex river pass, *ib.*; thence through Tulbagh, the Paarl, and Stellenbosch to Capetown, where on the 23rd of March he ends his tour, *i* 150; in September 1804 he lays down his authority, *i* 178; and in February 1805 embarks in an American ship to return to Europe, *i* 179

MITCHELL, JOHN, A BANISHED IRISHMAN ON BOARD THE CONVICT SHIP  
*NEPTUNE*:

particulars concerning, *iii* 83

MIXED-BREEDS OF PART EUROPEAN BLOOD IN SOUTH AFRICA:

are not very numerous before the discharge of soldiers from  
British regiments in Capetown, *i* 205

MOCKE, COMMANDANT JAN:

is the head of an independent party of emigrant farmers from  
the Cape Colony temporarily settled west of the Drakensberg,  
*ii* 448; in June 1842 he assists in the siege of the English  
camp at Durban, *ii* 426; in October 1842 at Alleman's drift  
on the Orange river makes an armed display before Mr. Justice  
Menzies, *ii* 480; in July 1843 strives to prevent the volksraad  
of Natal coming to an arrangement with Commissioner Cloete  
concerning the government of the country as a British colony,  
but is obliged to return over the Drakensberg disappointed,  
*ii* 449; on the 2nd of May 1845 takes part in the skirmish  
at Zwartkopjes against British troops and Griquas, *ii* 490;  
after his defeat flees to Winburg, *ii* 491; and a little later  
moves over the Vaal, *ii* 497

MOFFAT, REV. DR. ROBERT, OF THE LONDON MISSIONARY SOCIETY:

mention of, *i* 318; in 1821 goes to reside at Kuruman, *i* 472;  
in 1823 induces the Griquas to march against the Mantati  
horde, and is present at the battle of Lithako, *i* 444; in 1829  
visits the Matabele chief Moselekatse at a kraal about a hundred  
miles east of the present village of Zeerust, and acquires great  
influence with him, *ii* 287; in 1857 visits Moselekatse again,  
and obtains his consent to the establishment of a mission in  
his country, *v* 5; induces Moselekatse to liberate the Bamang-  
wato chief Matsheng, *v* 14

MOFFAT, REV. JOHN SMITH (SON OF THE ABOVE):

in 1859 assists to found a mission among the Matabele, *v* 5

MOHAMEDAN RELIGION IN CAPETOWN:

particulars concerning, *i* 410

MOKOTSHO, CHIEF OF THE BATLOKUA TRIBE:

mention of, *i* 430

MOKUANE, CHIEF OF THE BAPUTI:

in 1825 becomes a vassal of Moshesh, *i* 164

MOKWASELE, CHIEF OF THE BAKWENA TRIBE:

■ killed by some of his subjects, *v* 83



**MOL, REV. CORNELIS :**

in March 1817 returns from Europe and becomes the first resident clergyman of Uitenhage, *i* 316; in July 1822 is transferred to Swellendam, *i* 370

**MOLAPO, SECOND SON IN RANK OF THE BASUTO CHIEF MOSHESH :**

in June 1833 is sent by his father with a large party of people to reside at the mission station Morija, *i* 469; in 1845 is sent by his father to occupy the country along the Putiatsana, *ii* 499; after suffering severely in the war of 1865-6, on the 26th of March 1866 by the treaty of Imparani becomes a subject of the Orange Free State, *iv* 272; takes no open part in the war of 1867-8, *iv* 293; in March 1868 expresses a desire to come under British protection, *iv* 309; tries to induce the Basuto tribe to join Natal in hope of receiving aid to recover lost territory, *iv* 312; by the second treaty of Aliwal North is permitted to become a British subject, *iv* 319; punishes the robber chief Ramanela by seizing a thousand head of his cattle, *iv* 327; on the 11th of April 1870 he is formally received as a British subject, *v* 60

**MOLEHABANGWE, CHIEF OF THE BATLAPIN TRIBE OF BETSHUANA :**

in 1801 is visited by an expedition from Capetown, *i* 101; further mention of, *i* 187

**MOLESWORTH, RIGHT HON. SIR WILLIAM :**

on the 21st of July 1855 becomes secretary of state for the colonies, but on the 22nd of October of the same year dies, *iii* 167

**MOLESWORTH, VISCOUNT AND LADY :**

in May 1815 lose their lives in the wreck of the *Arniston* on the South African coast, *i* 283

**MOLITSANE, CHIEF OF A CLAN OF THE BATAUNG :**

after the dispersion of the Mantati horde wanders about the country west of the Caledon, *i* 445; at length settles at Philippolis in vassalage to Adam Kok, *ib.*; further mention of, *i* 442; in 1837 becomes ■ vassal of Moshesh, and is located at Mekuatleng, *ii* 464; during the winter of 1849 suffers very severely from an attack by the Batlokua, *iii* 304; having plundered ■ mission station, on the 21st of September 1850 he is attacked by Major Warden, which brings on a general war with the Basuto tribe, *iii* 314; at the close of the war of 1865-6, as his district has been ceded to the Orange Free State, applies to be received as ■ subject of that republic, *iv* 279; and receives permission to remain where he is until ■ suitable

location can be found for him, *iv* 280; he gathers his crops, and when the planting season comes round puts a large extent of ground under cultivation, *ib.*; in May 1867 he is received as a Free State subject, *iv* 287; takes part in the war of 1867-8, *iv* 293; and in March 1868 becomes a British subject, *iv* 301; in 1869 is removed to the south of Basutoland, *iv* 325; where in October 1885 he dies at a very advanced age, *ib.*

MOLLER, WIDOW: see Heyning

MOLOPO, CONFERENCE OF:

is held in November 1870 between a commission of the South African Republic and various Betshuana chiefs, *v* 32

MOLTENO, JOHN CHARLES (LATER SIR JOHN):

in the Kaffir war of 1846-7 is commandant of the Beaufort burghers, *iii* 23; is the leader in the Cape parliament of the party in favour of responsible government, *iv* 32, 33, 72, 92, 102, 103, 108, 121, 125, 126, and 137; on the 29th of November 1872 becomes the first prime minister of the Cape Colony under responsible government, *iv* 146; proceedings in the Cape parliament of, *iv* 398, 422, 423, and *v* 107

MONENE, A REFUGEE FROM THE MATSHANGANA TRIBE:

has a location in the Zoutpansberg district assigned to him, *iv* 479; causes much trouble by his turbulent conduct, *iv* 480; is arrested on a charge brought against him by João Albasini, but in March 1865 escapes from custody, and takes refuge with chiefs in the mountains who are ill-disposed towards the Europeans, *ib.*; a party of white men under Commandant Stephanus Venter is sent in search of him, accompanied by a party of knobnoses, *iv* 481; who attack the chief Pago, and a general war follows, *ib.*

MONI, CHIEF OF THE BOMVANAS:

in 1858 gives shelter to Kreli and his people, *iii* 209; and aids the Galekas in their distress; particulars concerning him, *iv* 49

MONTAGU, JOHN:

on the 23rd of April 1843 becomes secretary to the government of the Cape Colony, *ii* 198; sets himself to the redemption of the public debt, *ib.*; is the promoter of a system of constructing roads by means of convict labour, which was adopted in 1843, *ii* 230; when assisting in the preparation of the constitution is in favour of a nominated legislative council, *iii* 126; on the 1st of May 1852 leaves the colony on sick leave, *iii* 133; on the 14th of November 1853 dies in London, *iii* 138

**MONTAGU, THE,** A LITTLE VESSEL OF THIRTY TONS, ~~ON~~ ~~THE~~ BUILT IN THE EASTERN PROVINCE OF THE CAPE COLONY:

■ the 28th of November 1846 is launched at the mouth of the Kowie river

**MONTAGU PASS:**

■ the 18th of January 1848 the road over this pass is opened for traffic, *ii* 245

**MONTEIRO, MAJOR JOSÉ MARIA CORREIA:**

travels of, ■ 144

**MONTE VIDEO:**

account of the expedition sent from the Cape Colony against under Sir Home Popham and Brigadier-General Beresford, *i* 215 *et seq.*

**MONTSIWA:**

at the close of 1849 succeeds his father Tawane as chief of the Tsili clan of the Barolong tribe, *iii* 382; enters into certain arrangements with the government of the South African Republic, *iii* 383; under the terms of which in August 1852 he is called upon to render assistance against Setssheli, but does not comply, *iii* 396; for which he is required to give an account in person to Commandant Scholtz, *iii* 400; instead of doing so he abandons Lotlakana and retires to the desert, *iii* 401; after this his people rob the farmers of cattle to such an extent that ■ military expedition is sent against them, *iii* 404; matters are arranged, but Montsiwa's clan removes to the territory north of the Molopo, *iii* 405; where after 1854 he remains with the Bangwaketse tribe, *v* 28; in August 1868 he applies through the reverend J. Ludorf to the high commissioner for protection against the South African Republic, *v* 29; in March 1870 supports his brother Molema in his refusal to pay taxes, *v* 31; in November 1870 with other chiefs has a conference with ■ commission from the South African Republic, *v* 32; when it is agreed on both sides to refer questions in dispute to ■ court of arbitration, *v* 35; applies to Lieutenant-General Hay to appoint two members of this court, *ib.*; by the Keate award in October 1871 is declared independent of the South African Republic, *v* 44

**MONUMENT TO THE MEMORY OF THE FREE STATE CITIZENS WHO LOST THEIR LIVES IN THE BASUTO WARS:**

on the 29th of May 1871 is unveiled at Bloemfontein, *iv* 385

**MOODIE, BENJAMIN:**

in 1817 brings to the Cape Colony two hundred Scotch mechanics, *i* 346; in 1821 is connected with his brothers and part of the

Royal African corps in ■ attempt to form ■ settlement between the Beka and Fish rivers, *i* 362; but the settlers are obliged to abandon the territory, *i* 375; in October 1851 is appointed a member of the legislative council of the Cape Colony, *iii* 128

MOODIE, DONALD :

in February 1825 is appointed resident magistrate at Port Frances, *i* 391; in 1836 is entrusted with the task of compiling records regarding the intercourse between the colonists and the various tribes of South Africa, *ii* 145; on the 13th of November 1845 is appointed secretary to the government of Natal, *ii* 462; on the 1st of October 1852 retires from that office, *iii* 269; in March 1857 is elected speaker of the legislative council of Natal, *ib.*

MOODIE VERSUS FAIRBAIRN :

particulars of an action on account of a libellous article in the *Commercial Advertiser*, *ii* 160 *et seq.*

MOOIMEISJESFONTEIN :

skirmish between the Free State police and a party of Basuto at, *iv* 415

MOORREES, REV. H. A. :

on the 19th of May 1839 commences duty as first resident clergyman of Riversdale, *ii* 217; acts for a time as clergyman of Tulbagh during the suspension of the reverend Mr. Shand, *ii* 220; in August 1843 becomes first clergyman of the Kruisvallei congregation, *ii* 221

MOPERI, BROTHER OF THE BASUTO CHIEF MOSHESH :

in May 1865 commits several outrages on Free State soil, *iv* 227; applies to be received as a subject of the Free State, *iv* 279; is considered the least untrustworthy of all the Basuto chiefs, *iv* 280; in June 1867 is received as a Free State subject, and a tract of land in Witsi's Hoek is assigned to him as a location, *iv* 287; in August 1867 moves with his clan to Witsi's Hoek, *iv* 290; takes no part in the subsequent war, *ib.*

MOPETE, CHIEF OF THE BATAUNG :

is killed by the Barolong chief Sifunelo, *i* 442 and 472

MORAN, RIGHT REV. DR. :

in September 1856 becomes Roman catholic bishop in Grahamstown, *iii* 72

MORAVIAN MISSION IN SOUTH AFRICA :

particulars concerning, *i* 146, 229, 315, 317, and 409, *ii* 52 and 177, *iii* 69 and 438

**MORELAND, EDMUND:**

in 1847 introduces the sugar cane into Natal, and in 1852 produces some very good sugar, *iii* 260

**MORGAN, REV. GEORGE:**

in January 1826 arrives from Scotland, and is appointed clergyman of Somerset East, *i* 370

**MORIJA MISSION STATION:**

in June 1833 is founded in Basutoland by the Paris evangelical society, *i* 469

**MORLEY MISSION STATION:**

in May 1829 is founded by the reverend Mr. Shepstone, of the Wesleyan society, in Pondoland, *ii* 52; a few months after its formation is destroyed by the Amakwabi, *ii* 405; but is subsequently rebuilt on the western bank of the Umtata, *ib.*; during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 it is abandoned, *ii* 111; but early in 1836 is reoccupied, *ii* 132

**MOROKO, CHIEF OF THE SELEKA BRANCH OF THE BAROLONG TRIBE:**

particulars concerning, *i* 479 and 487; in 1836 renders important assistance to the emigrant farmers, *ii* 294; in 1837 makes an agreement of friendship with Pieter Retief, *ii* 308; complains of the injustice done to him by the treaty of 1843 between Sir George Napier and the Basuto chief Moshesh, *ii* 483; in June 1845 has a conference with Sir Peregrine Maitland at Touwfontein, *ii* 492; but as he will not admit the authority of Moshesh no arrangement can be made with him in furtherance of a settlement of the dispute between them, *ib.*; in August 1845 offers a tract of land for settlement by Europeans, *ii* 497; in March 1846 agrees to submit his dispute with Moshesh to the judgment of a commission to be appointed by the governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 499; in June of the same year assists Major Warden to disperse the adherents of Jan Kock, *ii* 500; in September 1850 assists the government of the Orange River Sovereignty against the Basuto, and by doing so brings much trouble upon his clan, *iii* 315; on the 30th of June 1851 loses many men in the battle of Viervoet, *iii* 320; on the abandonment by Great Britain of the Orange River Sovereignty in 1854 is left in an independent position, *iii* 441; in the war of 1858 assists the Free State against the Basuto, *iii* 481; is regarded with great favour by the Free State government, *iv* 192; in 1865 enters into a treaty with the Orange Free State, *iv* 283; in the war of 1865-6 fights on the Free State side, *iv* 241; see Barolong tribe



MOROSI, SON OF THE BAPUTI CHIEF MOKUANE:

in 1825 becomes a vassal of Moshesh, *i* 464; during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 professes to be neutral, but really allows his followers to plunder the Europeans, *ii* 465; on one occasion his cattle are seized in reprisal, *ib.*; but are restored by Sir Benjamin D'Urban, *ib.*; in 1851 joins the enemies of the Cape Colony, *iii* 317; dealings of the Cape government with, *iii* 492; in 1868 is the head of a gang of robbers, *iv* 315; in February 1869 requests to be received as a British subject, but the high commissioner takes time for consideration, *iv* 322; in June 1870 becomes a British subject, *v* 61

MOSELEKATSE (UMSILIKAZI), CHIEF OF THE MATABELE TRIBE:

is commander of a division of the Zulu army, *i* 455; about the year 1817 loses Tshaka's favour, and with his soldiers flees across the mountains, *ib.*; lays waste the centre of the country between the Vaal and the Limpopo, and exterminates the inhabitants, *i* 456; at length settles down north of Magalisberg, and for many years sends out plundering parties in search of spoil, *ib.*; in 1831 sends an army against Moshesh, which unsuccessfully besieges Thaba Bosigo, *i* 466; in 1830 and 1831 nearly exterminates the Bakwena, Bangwaketse, Bahurutsi, and Barolong tribes, *i* 475; in September 1832 defeats an army sent against him by Dingana, *ib.*; but fearing he may again be attacked, moves farther to the west, and settles at Mosega, *ib.*; further particulars concerning, *i* 476 and 485; in 1829 he is visited by the reverend Robert Moffat, of Kuruman, *ii* 287; in 1835 is visited by Dr. Andrew Smith, leader of an exploring expedition, *ii* 298; sends with Dr. Smith a favourite induna named Nombate to Capetown, *ib.*; who on the 3rd of March 1836 in his name concludes a treaty of friendship with Sir Benjamin D'Urban, *ib.*; in 1835 and 1836 is visited by several travellers, *ii* 287; articles of European manufacture which he prizes, *ii* 299; his soldiers attack parties of emigrant farmers and massacre many of them, *ii* 291; he takes no notice of an offer of peace made by Pieter Retief, *ii* 317; in November 1837 he is defeated by the emigrant farmers on the Marikwa, and flees far north of the Limpopo, *ii* 320; after his flight from the emigrant farmers attacks the Makololo, *v* 86; in 1853 he is visited by three brothers named Joubert, who conclude an agreement of amity with him, *iii* 413; his tribe is now composed of various elements, *iii* 412; in 1854 he resides near the Matopo hills, *ib.*; thousands of Bantu flee from his neighbourhood to the South African Republic, *ib.*; further mention of, *■* 153; in October 1868 he dies, *v* 6

**MOSELELE, CHIEF OF THE BAKATLA CLAN OF BETSHUANA:**

having got himself into trouble in the South African Republic, in the winter of 1852 flees to the Bakwena chief Setsheli, who gives him protection, *iii* 395

**MOSENTHAL BROTHERS, OF PORT ELIZABETH:**

are successful in obtaining pure Angora goats for breeding purposes in the Cape Colony, *iv* 12

**MOSES WITBOOI, CAPTAIN OF AN IMMIGRANT HOTTENTOT CLAN IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:**

mention of, *v* 95 and 112

**MOSHESH (MSHESHWE), FOUNDER OF THE BASUTO TRIBE:**

is son of a petty chief of the Baramokhele, *i* 460; genealogical table showing his descent, *i* 461; is born at Lintshuaneng on the Tlotsi, *i* 462; is about eight or nine and twenty years old when his country is invaded by numerous hordes, *ib.*; about the close of 1821 first sees white men, and is favourably impressed by their conduct, *i* 467; collects a party of warriors, and tries to make a stand against the invaders at Butabute, *i* 462; in 1824 is attacked by Ma Ntatisi, and is driven from that place, *ib.*; takes possession of a natural fortress of great strength, named Thaba Bosigo, *ib.*; here he rapidly acquires strength and military renown, *ib.*; as the Amangwane are the most powerful people in the country he professes to be their vassal, *i* 463; after the death in battle of Umpangazita, is acknowledged by various parties of Hlubis as their protector, *ib.*; by his wisdom and good government attracts the remnants of many broken tribes to place themselves under him, *ib.*; by successful forays upon the Tembus becomes wealthy in cattle, *i* 464; in 1825 subjects the Baputi clans to his authority, *ib.*; after the destruction of the Amangwane professes to be a vassal of Tshaka and pays him tribute, *i* 465; in 1831 successfully holds Thaba Bosigo against a Matabele army, *i* 466; sends two hundred head of cattle to Adam Kok and requests a missionary in return, *i* 468; in June 1833 welcomes missionaries of the Paris evangelical society to his country, *i* 469; by 1834 is chief of considerable power and widely-extended renown, *i* 487; in 1835 during the war between the Cape Colony and the Xosas makes a raid into Kaffirland, but is beaten back by Hintsa, *ii* 105; in September 1836 destroys a strong robber band under the Xosa captain Jalusa, *ii* 295; in 1837 makes an agreement of friendship with Pieter Retief, *ii* 308; is gifted with great power of observation, *ii* 463; takes advantage of dissensions

among the Europeans to increase his strength, *ii* 464; favours the reverend Dr. Philip's scheme for the formation of great Bantu and Griqua states, *ii* 469; on the 30th of May 1842 approves of a letter written by his missionary asking that he may be taken into treaty relationship with the Cape Colony, *ib.*; on the 13th of December 1843 enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 481; which gives rise to numerous complications and quarrels, *ii* 483; in June 1845 he has a conference with Sir Peregrine Maitland at Touwfontein, *ii* 492; but will not renounce his claim to sovereignty over the petty chiefs along the Caledon, *ib.*; nor withdraw his title to any part of the ground allotted to him by the Napier treaty, except a very small area on which he is willing that Europeans should reside, *ii* 495; during 1845 pushes his outposts far forward, *ii* 498; in March 1846 agrees to submit his disputes with other chiefs to the judgment of a commission to be appointed by the governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 499; in the same year offers to assist the British forces against the Xosas and Tembus, but his proposal is civilly declined, *ii* 501; in 1847 assists Major Warden to attack some Tembus in the Wittebergen, *ib.*; benefits greatly by the presence of the French missionaries, *ii* 503; on the 27th of January 1848 gives his consent to an arrangement proposed by Sir Harry Smith which practically destroys the former treaty, *iii* 275; in September of the same year has another conference with Sir Harry Smith at Winburg, *iii* 294; carries on an unceasing petty warfare with the Batlokua under Sikonyela, *iii* 299; on the 1st of October 1849 very unwillingly signs a document which greatly reduces the limits of the territory to which he lays claim, *iii* 306; after this opposes the British resident and acts in such a manner that the whole of the neighbouring clans become involved in hostilities, *iii* 314; in September 1851 allies himself with the republican party in the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 322; after the Sand River convention consents to open negotiations with the assistant commissioners Hogg and Owen, *iii* 327; but cannot be brought to do anything practical towards the restoration of peace, *iii* 329; on the 14th of December 1852 Sir George Cathcart sends him an ultimatum, *iii* 335; with the tenor of which he only partially complies, *iii* 336; so on the 20th of December a strong British army in three divisions enters his country, *iii* 337; but is defeated by the Basuto in the battle of Berea, *iii* 340; that night the chief addresses a most conciliatory letter to the English general, *iii* 342; with the result that peace is proclaimed and the army returns to the Cape Colony, *iii* 343;

the reputation of Moshesh is thereafter greatly enhanced among the neighbouring tribes, *iii* 345; in September 1853 he vanquishes Sikonyela and takes possession of his territory, *iii* 353; and also of the territory of Gert Taaibosch, *iii* 354; issues an ordinance prohibiting the introduction of spirituous liquors into Basutoland, *iii* 454; issues other ordinances which are, however, not enforced, *ib.*; is the most intelligent and humane of all known Bantu chiefs, but has no regard for his word, *iv* 179; by Sir George Grey's mediation in October 1855 has a conference with President Boshof at Smithfield, and concludes a formal treaty, *iii* 457; which he afterwards takes no trouble to observe, *iii* 459; in March 1856 lays claim in writing to a large tract of land in the Orange Free State, *iii* 462; is preparing for war with the Free State, *iii* 463; is intriguing with some of the coast tribes, *ib.*; manages to deceive the missionaries as to his designs, *ib.*; is closely watched by Sir George Grey, who is aware of his intrigues, *iii* 464; makes an agreement with Free State commissioners, but fails to keep it, *iii* 463; in 1857 offers under certain conditions to submit his dispute with the Free State to the decision of Sir George Grey, *iii* 468; early in 1858 tries to provoke the burghers of the Free State to commence hostilities, *iii* 469; in the war of 1858 devises an excellent plan of campaign, *iii* 478; on the 15th of October 1858 with great reluctance signs the treaty of peace drawn up by Sir George Grey, *iii* 495; makes no effort to carry out the provisions of the treaty of 1858, *iv* 179; in August 1860 waits upon his Royal Highness Prince Alfred at Aliwal North, *iv* 191; in September 1861 informs a commissioner of the Orange Free State that he will not recognise any boundary lines or carry out the arrangements made with President Pretorius, *iv* 194; in March 1862 treats with great indignity a commission sent from the Free State to endeavour to obtain redress of grievances, *iv* 203; in May 1863 informs a commission from the Free State government that he does not recognise a boundary and will not recall his people who are trespassing on farms, *iv* 209; in November 1863 proposes to Acting President Venter a boundary line that would cut off from the Free State nearly half the districts of Winburg and Harrismith, *iv* 210; consents with great reluctance to the mediation of Sir Philip Wodehouse, *iv* 217; after Sir Philip Wodehouse's decision in favour of the Free State resolves to evade carrying out the award while professing to submit to it, *iv* 222; is completely under the influence of seers, *iv* 228; in 1865 issues a proclamation in reply to President Brand's declaration of war, *iv* 230; for



subsequent occurrences see War of 1865-6; after signing the treaty of Thaba Bosigo renews his efforts to obtain British protection, *iv* 279; instead of withdrawing his subjects, towards the end of 1866 sends strong parties of warriors into the ceded territory, *iv* 284; and lays up large stores of grain on strongly fortified mountains, *iv* 285; in March 1867 informs the high commissioner that he does not intend to surrender the ceded territory, *ib.*; in July causes a letter of defiance to be written to the president, *iv* 289; as soon as the crops of 1867 are harvested denies all knowledge of the treaty of Thaba Bosigo and announces that he will not allow Europeans to settle on the ceded land, *iv* 288; in August 1867 sends a messenger to Natal to urge that he may be taken over and that his country may be joined to that colony, *iv* 295; object of his desire for British protection, *v* 56; in March 1868 becomes a British subject, *iv* 301; at this time is very feeble and irresolute, *iv* 314; on the 11th of March 1870 dies, *v* 58; further particulars concerning, *v* 58 and 59; has recently had a fictitious pedigree given to him

**MOSHETE :**

in 1871 succeeds Masisi ■ chief of the elder clan of the Barolong,  
*ii* 467

**MOSSEL BAY, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT :**

in 1844 the first consistory commences duty, *ii* 249

**MOSSEL BAY, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

in March 1848 is created, *iii* 70

**MOTHAGE, CHIEF OF THE BASIA TRIBE :**

mention of, *i* 430

**MOTHIBI, CHIEF OF THE BATLAPIN TRIBE :**

mention of, *i* 444

**MOTLOMI, CHIEF OF THE BAMONAHENG TRIBE :**

mention of, *i* 446

**MOUNT COKE MISSION STATION :**

in August 1825 is founded by the Wesleyan society, *ii* 6

**MOYAKISANI, CHIEF OF A PETTY CLAN OF THE BASUTO TRIBE :**

on the 26th of December 1835 consents to become a British subject, but subsequently transfers his allegiance to Moshesh,  
*ii* 133

**MOZAMBIQUE COMPANY :**

particulars concerning, *v* 162 and 163



**MPEZINI:**

succeeds his father Swangendaba as chief of the Angoni tribe,  
v 138

**MPOFU, BAVENDA CHIEF:**

upon the occupation of the Zoutpansberg district by the emigrant farmers gathers a number of Bantu refugees there, *iv* 475; upon his death two of his sons fight for the chieftainship, when the one—Ramapulana—favoured by Commandant-General Potgieter is successful, *ib.*

**MPOLOLO:**

succeeds Sekeletu as chief of the Makololo, v 92

**MTSHALELA, CHIEF OF A PETTY TEMBU CLAN:**

in 1828 moves from the Umtata to the country north of the Winterberg, *ii* 7; quarrels with Makoma's people south of the mountain, *ii* 8; in January 1829 is attacked by Makoma and driven into the Cape Colony, where his cattle are captured by his pursuers, *ib.*

**MUNICIPAL BOARDS IN NATAL:**

in March 1847 an ordinance is passed for creating, *iii* 266; but in December 1853 it ceases to be in force, *iii* 267; in April 1854 another ordinance to the same effect is passed, *ib.*

**MUNICIPALITIES:**

in September 1836 an ordinance is passed to allow towns and villages in the Cape Colony to elect municipal councils, *ii* 166

**MURRAY, REV. ANDREW:**

in July 1822 arrives from Scotland, and is appointed clergyman of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 370; at the end of 1847 goes on a mission to the emigrants north of the Orange, *iii* 296

**MURRAY, REV. ANDREW (SON OF THE ABOVE):**

in March 1848 is appointed first clergyman of Bloemfontein, *iii* 298; in 1853 is sent to England by the loyalists in the Orange River Sovereignty to protest against their abandonment, *iii* 353

**MURRAY, CAPTAIN ARTHUR STORMONT, OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE:**

on the 29th of August 1848 is killed in the battle of Boomplaats  
*iii* 289

**MURRAY, SIR GEORGE:**

from May 1828 to November 1830 is secretary of state for the colonies, *i* 489

**MURRAY, HENRY:**

in 1845 bequeaths a sum of money to the orphan asylum in

Capetown, *i* 287 and *ii* 22; and also to the South African college to establish scholarships, *ii* 21

MURRAY, REV. JOHN:

in May 1849 becomes the first resident clergyman of Burghersdorp, *ii* 247

MURRAYSBURG, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

is named after the reverend Andrew Murray, senior, *i* 371

MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY:

in 1823 is established in Capetown, *i* 380; but is allowed to fall into decay, *ib.*

MUSEUM, THE SOUTH AFRICAN:

in 1855 is founded, *iii* 159

MUSGRAVE, MAJOR BENJAMIN D'URBAN:

in January 1880 is appointed British resident at Okahandja, *v* 119; in November 1880 is withdrawn and is stationed at Walfish Bay, *v* 122

MUSGRAVE, ADVOCATE WILLIAM:

from the 16th of March to the 16th of September 1839 acts as attorney-general of the Cape Colony, *ii* 215; on the 12th of October 1843 becomes second puisne judge, *ib.*; on the 1st of February 1851 becomes first puisne judge in the supreme court of the Cape Colony, *iii* 147

MUTINY IN OCTOBER 1797 IN ENGLISH SHIPS OF WAR ON THE CAPE STATION:

account of, *i* 42 *et seq.*; note on, *i* 45

MUTUAL LIFE ASSURANCE SOCIETY:

in 1845 is established in Capetown, *ii* 242

MUTUAL PROTECTION ASSOCIATION OF KING-WILLIAMSTOWN:

account of, *iv* 79

NAMAQUALAND, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in August 1855 is created, *iii* 148

NAMAQUALAND MINING COMPANY:

formation of the, *iii* 87

NAMAQUAS, HOTTENTOTS IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:

for many years carry on war with the Hereros, till they are forced to conclude peace, but in 1880 renew the war, *v* 121; see Jonker Afrikaner and Jan Jonker

**NAPIER, MAJOR-GENERAL SIR GEORGE THOMAS :**

is a distinguished military officer, *ii* 173; on the 4th of November 1837 receives a commission as governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 171; on the 20th of January 1838 arrives in Capetown, and on the 22nd takes the oaths of office, *ii* 172; two months later leaves Capetown for the eastern frontier, *ii* 175; at this time is in full accord with the border policy of Lord Glenelg, *ii* 173; but with experience his views become greatly modified, *ii* 176; on the 19th of June he enters into a supplementary treaty with the Gunukwebe chiefs, *ib.*; attempts unsuccessfully to remove the Fingos to the Zitzikama, *ii* 177; in October reaches Capetown again, *ii* 184; in November sends troops to occupy Port Natal, *ii* 384; but in December 1839 recalls them, *ii* 391; on the 6th of October 1840 again leaves Capetown to visit the eastern frontier, *ii* 186; where he obtains the consent of the Rarabe chiefs to various modifications of the Stockenström treaties, *ii* 187; in January 1841 sends a military force to the Umgazi river to protect the Pondo chief Faku, *ii* 412; on the 2nd of December 1841 issues a proclamation announcing his intention of reoccupying Port Natal, *ii* 415; which he carries into effect by sending on the troops at the Umgazi, *ib.*; on the 12th of May 1843 issues a proclamation that Natal is a British colony, *ii* 444; in 1843 concludes treaties of alliance with Adam Kok and Moshesh, *ii* 482; which cause great difficulties in the territory north of the Orange river, *ii* 483; on the 18th of March 1844 is succeeded as governor by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 232; on the 1st of April sails for England, *ib.*; and on the 8th of September 1855 dies at Geneva, *ib.*

**NAPIER, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL EDWARD H. D. E. :**

in September 1846 arrives in South Africa as a supernumerary officer, *iii* 29

**NAPIER, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT :**

in February 1848 the first consistory commences duty, *ii* 219

**NAPIER, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

in 1838 is founded, *ii* 218

**NAPOLÉON BONAPARTE :**

on the 15th of October 1815 arrives at St. Helena as a prisoner, and on the 5th of May 1821 dies there, *i* 302

**NAPOLÉON, FRENCH PRIVATEER :**

in December 1805 is run ashore near Hout Bay to avoid capture, *i* 191

**NARAS, EDIBLE FRUIT :**

abounds at Walfish Bay, *v* 108 and 109

**NATAL :**

after 1570 is occupied by the Abambo horde of Bantu, *i* 458; between 1820 and 1824 is laid waste by the Zulu wars, and its inhabitants are either exterminated or driven away, *i* 448; various geographical significations of the name, *ii* 321; description of the territory now so called, *ii* 322; in 1824 with Tshaka's consent a few Englishmen settle at the port and find that the country has been almost depopulated by the Zulu wars, *ii* 327; concealed in thickets at Port Natal were a famished remnant of a Bantu tribe who called themselves Amatuli, *ib.*; these immediately attach themselves to the Europeans as dependents, *ii* 328; on the 27th of August 1824 part of the territory is proclaimed by Mr. Farewell a British possession, but the act is unauthorised, *ib.*; European population in 1835, *ii* 344; fifteen of them sign a petition to the secretary of state asking for recognition as a British colony and for a representative government, *ib.*; names of the European residents, *ii* 345; Bantu population in 1835, *ib.*; in November 1837 the territory is occupied by emigrant farmers from the Cape Colony, *ii* 356; who establish a republic there, *ii* 378; mission stations in 1837, *ii* 349; on the 4th of December 1838 the port is occupied by a military force sent from the Cape Colony, *ii* 385; on the 24th of December 1839 the troops are withdrawn, *ii* 391; boundaries of the republic, *ii* 398; magisterial and ecclesiastical divisions, *ib.*; privileges of burghers, *ib.*; sources of revenue, *ii* 399; particulars of the civil list, *ib.*; constitution and power of the volksraad, *ii* 400; excessive weakness of the government, *ib.*; relation to the emigrants west of the Drakensberg, *ii* 401; the British government declines to acknowledge the independence of the republic, *ii* 403; and in 1842 the territory is taken in possession by English troops, *ii* 418; the northern boundary is defined on the 5th of October 1843 as the Buffalo and Tugela rivers, *ii* 454; the Umzimkulu river is chosen by Sir Peregrine Maitland as its south-western boundary, *ii* 457; number of European inhabitants at the close of 1843, *ii* 452; number of Bantu inhabitants at this time, *ii* 456; in May 1844 the imperial authorities decide that the country is to be annexed in a loose manner to the Cape Colony, *ii* 459; on the 21st of August 1845 boundaries are defined in a proclamation by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 460; on the 22nd of November an executive council is appointed, *ii* 462; and on the 4th of December 1845 a staff of British officials arrive, and a colonial

government is established, *ib.*; value of imports in 1845, and of exports, *ib.*; shipping returns for 1845, *ib.*; condition of the district in 1845, *iii* 228; European population in 1845, *iii* 249; difficulties of the land question, *ib.*; in 1847 the first sugar cane plants are received from Mauritius by Mr. E. Moreland, *iii* 260; impossibility of obtaining constant or reliable Bantu labourers, *iii* 260 and 261; arrangements made by Sir Harry Smith regarding the grant of farms, *iii* 253 and 254; estimate of the European population at the close of 1856, *iii* 257; area of the colony in 1866, *iv* 166; and in 1907, *ib.*; attempts to obtain British immigrants, *iv* 156 *et seq.*; banking institutions, *iv* 171; Bantu, different policy pursued towards these people from that in the Cape Colony, *iii* 247; Bantu, great influx of until 1860, *iii* 247; Bantu locations, *iv* 167; coffee planting, *iv* 163; commercial crisis of 1865, *iv* 171; construction of a line of telegraph, *iv* 172; cotton growing, *iv* 163; courts of justice, *iv* 165; customs duties, *iv* 161; definition of the new boundary, *iv* 166; ecclesiastical strife, *iv* 172 and 173; erection of a lighthouse on the Bluff, *iv* 162; exports from 1857 to 1872, *iv* 176 and 177; extension of the colony to the Umtamvuna river, *iv* 165; flood of August 1868, *iv* 162; friction between Lieutenant-Governor Keate and the legislative council, *iv* 169 and 170; harbour works, *iv* 162; hut tax paid by the Bantu, *iii* 248; immigration of Europeans, *iii* 254 *et seq.*; imports from 1857 to 1872, *iv* 175; introduction of Indians, *iv* 159; labour tax, *iii* 248; list of the heads of government from 1857 to 1872, *iv* 155; magisterial divisions, *iii* 263; outbreak of redwater among cattle in 1871, *iv* 164; particulars concerning the Bantu in, *iv* 166 *et seq.*; physical features of, *iii* 258; population in 1872, *iv* 174; production of wheat, maize, &c.; *iv* 164; public debt in 1872, *iv* 175;



railway, the first, *iv* 162 ;  
 representative government, petitions in favour of, *iii* 267 ; in July 1856 ■ charter is issued raising the district to the rank of a separate colony and creating a legislative council of twelve elected and four official members, *iii* 268 ;  
 revenue, *iv* 175 ;  
 schools, *iv* 164 ;  
 sugar planting, *iv* 163 ;  
 supplementary charter of 1872, *iv* 170 ;  
 trade with the diamond fields, *iv* 172 ;  
 volunteers in 1872, *iv* 175 ;  
 western boundary, in 1862 is fixed by the high commissioner, *iv* 67

**NATAL BANK:**

in April 1854 is established, *iii* 263

**NATAL FIRE ASSURANCE AND TRUST COMPANY:**

in April 1849 is established, *iii* 262

**NATAL LAND AND COLONISATION COMPANY:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 156

**NATAL MERCURY, THE:**

in 1852 is first published at Durban, *iii* 262

**NATAL SOCIETY, THE:**

account of, *iii* 262

**NATAL WITNESS, THE:**

in 1846 is first published at Maritzburg, *iii* 262

**NATIONALS OF GRAAFF-REINET:**

after the conquest of the Cape Colony by the British in 1795 oppose the government until August 1796, when the majority of them submit, *i* 17 ; and in January 1797 the others cease open resistance, *i* 19

**NCAPAYI:**

with a remnant of the Baca tribe is driven from Natal by the wars of Tshaka, and takes refuge in the valley of the Umzimvubu, where he becomes a freebooter, *ii* 406 ; in November 1836 he attacks the Tembus and takes immense herds of cattle from them, *ib.* ; in 1838 in alliance with the Pondo chief Faku sweeps the Tembu country of cattle, *ib.* ; in April 1840 makes war with Faku, *ii* 409 ; attacks the Hlangwenis under Nombewu, and kills that chief, *ii* 410 ; in December 1840 is attacked and defeated by ■ commando of emigrant farmers from Natal, *ii* 411 ; in July 1845 is killed in battle with the Pondos, and

is succeeded as chief of the Bacas by his son Makaula, *ii* 459; further particulars concerning, *iv* 63

NDAMASI, RIGHT HAND SON OF FAKU:

particulars concerning, *iv* 62

NDLAMBE, SON OF THE CELEBRATED XOSA CHIEF RARABE:

in 1797 opposes in arms the pretensions of his nephew Gaika, but is beaten, and is detained as a prisoner at his rival's kraal, *i* 38; in February 1799 makes his escape, and, being joined by many people, crosses the Fish river with them and takes possession of the Zuurveld, *i* 57; is successful in a war that follows with the colonial government, and which is brought to a close early in 1803, *i* 98; in May 1803 in an interview with General Janssens expresses a desire for peace, but will not consent to return to Kaffirland, *i* 127; but in 1812 is driven out of the colony by a powerful commando, *i* 255; in 1817 is in a very depressed condition, *i* 324; in 1817 refuses to surrender colonial cattle seen in his kraals, *i* 328; but is compelled by a commando under Major Fraser to make restitution for recent robberies, *ib.*; early in 1818 by Dushane and Makana joining him becomes more powerful than Gaika, *ib.*; in the winter of 1818 defeats Gaika in a great battle on the Kommetje flats, *i* 334; in December 1818 is attacked by a commando under Lieutenant-Colonel Brereton, *i* 335; when his people take refuge in dense thickets and thus escape destruction, *ib.*; as soon as the commando retires he falls again upon Gaika and compels that chief to flee westward, *ib.*; in August 1819 is broken in power by a force of Europeans, *i* 339; in January 1824 is treated by the government as an independent chief, when the former policy of supporting Gaika is entirely abandoned, *ii* 6; in February 1828 dies near Mount Coke, *ii* 50

NDONGENI, A ZULU:

assists Richard King in his famous ride from Durban to Grahams-town, *ii* 424

NDWANDWE TRIBE:

account of the destruction of by the Zulus under Tshaka, *ii* 330

NEAVE, JOSEPH:

in 1820 brings a party of settlers to the Cape Colony, and is located on the river Zonder End, *i* 353; subsequent movements of the party, *i* 355

NEED'S CAMP:

in April 1847 is formed on the western bank of the Buffalo river, but is only occupied a few months, *iii* 45

**NEETHLING, JAN HENOCH :**

in October 1803 is appointed ■ member of the high court of justice of the Cape Colony, *i* 181

**NEETHLING AND LOUW, REV. MESSRS. :**

in 1853 at the instance of the Cape synod visit the South African Republic, *iii* 420

**NEGROES :**

after the liberation from apprenticeship on the 1st of December 1838 lead very indolent lives in the Cape Colony, *ii* 191; in 1839 suffer very severely from measles, *ii* 192; and in 1840 from small-pox, *ib.*

**NEHEMIAH, SON OF THE BASUTO CHIEF MOSHESH :**

in 1857 is sent by his father to the Koesberg to suppress stock-lifting, *iii* 468; in 1858 with a few followers moves into Nomansland in order to defeat Sir George Grey's plan of locating Jan Letele and Lehana there, *iv* 180; proceedings of in Nomansland (now Griqualand East), *iv* 65, 67, and 68; engages in hostilities with the Pondomsis in Nomansland, *iv* 192; endeavours, though in vain, to procure Sir George Grey's recognition of his ownership of the district in which he is living, *iv* 193; endeavours to obtain from Sir Philip Wodehouse recognition of his ownership of part of Nomansland, but in vain, *iv* 196 and 201; gives a great deal of trouble to Adam Kok's Griquas after their settlement in Nomansland, *iv* 196; but in 1865 is defeated by them and driven back into Basuto-land, *ib.*

**NEL, COMMANDANT WILLEM :**

in 1815 aids the government against the insurgent farmers, *i* 294

**NEPTUNE, CONVICT SHIP :**

particulars concerning, *iii* 75, 79, and 82

**NEREIDE, FRIGATE :**

heroic defence of the, *i* 242

**VAN DER NEST, CORNELIS :**

in September 1822 makes ■ raid upon Makoma's kraal, *i* 384; in November 1824 assists in another expedition against Makoma, *ii* 1

**NEW BARMEN, RHENISH MISSION STATION IN HEREROLAND :**

in 1866 is plundered, *v* 99; on the 10th of November 1880 is attacked by the Hottentots, who are driven back on the following day, *v* 122

**NEWCASTLE, DUKE OF:**

from the 28th of December 1852 to the 10th of June 1854 is secretary of state for the colonies, *iii* 134; on the 18th of June 1859 again takes the same office, *iii* 184

**NEW GELDERLAND, IN NATAL:**

account of the settlement of, *iv* 158

**NEWLANDS HOUSE:**

is built by Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 411; in March 1828 the estate is sold by public auction, *i* 496

**NEWSPAPERS IN NATAL:**

account of, *iii* 262

**NGOKWENI, CHIEF OF A LITTLE BAND OF BANTU:**

flees from Tshaka to the Zambesi, *v* 137

**NGUBENCUKA: see Vusani****NOLLOTH, COMMANDER:**

surveys the coast of Namaqualand, *iii* 86

**NOMBATI, MATABELE INDUNA:**

visits Capetown, and on the 3rd of March 1836 concludes for Moselekatse a treaty with Sir Benjamin D'Urban; from October 1868 to January 1870 is regent of the Matabele tribe, *v* 6; is a friend of Europeans, *ib.*

**NOMBEWU, CHIEF OF A REMNANT OF THE HLANGWENI TRIBE:**

some time between 1818 and 1823 is driven southward by Tshaka, and in his flight falls upon and routs the Bacas where Maritzburg now stands, *ii* 410; with his people wanders about Kaffirland, but is at length killed by the Bacas of Ncapayi, *ib.*

**NONÉ, CHIEF OF A BAPUTI CLAN:**

in 1824 is driven by Moshesh from Thaba Bosigo, *i* 462

**NONESI, DAUGHTER OF THE PONDO CHIEF FAKU:**

is great wife of the Tembu chief Vusani, but has no children, consequently adopts Umtirara, the son of a wife of lower rank, *ii* 104; in the war of 1850-52 between many of the Tembu clans and the Cape Colony is neutral, *iii* 101; at the close of the war she is invited to occupy Glen Grey, *iii* 113; further particulars concerning, *iv* 50, 51, 52, and 55

**NONGALAZA, ZULU INDUNA:**

is in charge under Dingana of the district along the northern bank of the Tugela, *ii* 348; aids Panda against his brother Dingana, *ii* 391; on the 30th of January 1840 commands Panda's army in the great battle in which the power of Dingana is destroyed, *ii* 395; in 1843 is murdered by Panda's order, *ii* 396

**NONGQAUSE, PROFESSED XOSA PROPHETESS:**

particulars concerning, *iii* 198 *et seq.*

**NONIBE, GREAT WIDOW OF THE XOSA CHIEF DUSHANE:**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 professes friendship to the Cape Colony on account of her son Siwani being a minor, *ii* 111;  
in the war of 1846-7 shows herself hostile to the colony, *iii* 8

**NONKOSI, THE UMPONGO PROPHETESS:**

particulars concerning, *iii* 200

**NOOITGEDACHT, CONFERENCE OF:**

is held in August 1870 between a commission from the Orange Free State and one from the Griqua captain Nicholas Waterboer, *iv* 340 to 343; also between commissions from the Orange Free State and the South African Republic, *iv* 343

**NORMANBY, MARQUESS OF:**

on the 20th of February 1839 becomes secretary of state for the colonies, *ii* 181; on the 3rd of September in the same year is succeeded by Lord John Russell, *ii* 183

**NORTHERN BORDER MAGISTRATE:**

in 1868 is first appointed, *iv* 97

**NORTHERN BORDER POLICE IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

in 1868 is first enrolled, *iv* 97

**NORTHUMBERLAND, THE:**

on the 25th of August 1838 is wrecked near Cape Agulhas, *ii* 244

**NORWEGIAN MISSION:**

in 1843 is commenced in Zululand, *iv* 457

**NTSIKANA, EARLY CHRISTIAN XOSA:**

account of, *i* 331

**NXELE, XOSA SEER: see Makana**

**NYAUDE:**

in 1844 revolts against Portuguese rule and establishes himself as a freebooter on the Zambesi, *v* 164

**NYLSTROOM, VILLAGE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

in March 1866 becomes the residence of the landdrost of the new district of Waterberg, *iv* 499

**OATH OF ALLEGIANCE TO THE KING OF ENGLAND REQUIRED TO ■■■  
TAKEN BY THE OFFICIALS AND BURGHERS IN 1795:**

form of, *i* 5



## OBA, ALIAS NGONYAMA, SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF TYALI:

particulars concerning his clan, *ii* 4; in the war of 1850-52 he takes part against the Cape Colony, *iii* 100; on the 9th of March 1853 agrees to the terms of peace imposed upon him, *iii* 114; in 1856 declines at first to kill his cattle at the bidding of Umhlakaza, *iii* 200; career of after 1857, *iii* 211; further mention of, *iv* 52

## OBERHOLSTER, MICHEL:

is head of a party of emigrants north of the Orange river favourable to British rule, *ii* 479; during 1844 is treated with great disfavour by the republican party, *ii* 487

## OBSERVATORY, ASTRONOMICAL:

in 1821 is established near Capetown by the commissioners of the admiralty, *i* 365

## OGLE, HENRY:

in 1824 accompanies Mr. Farewell to Natal, *ii* 326; after Mr. Farewell's death in September 1829 becomes chief of a party of Bantu, *ii* 340; in April 1838 takes part in an attack upon the Zulus, *ii* 369; in 1841-2 acts as a medium of communication between the English residents at Durban and the British military post on the Umgazi, *ii* 416; in June 1842 with other Englishmen is sent a prisoner to Maritzburg by Commandant-General Pretorius, *ii* 426; but on the 15th of July is released, *ii* 439; in October 1843 accompanies Commissioner Cloete to Zululand, *ii* 454

## OHRIG, GEORGE GERHARD, OF THE FIRM OF KLYN &amp; CO., OF AMSTERDAM:

publishes a pamphlet termed *The Emigrants at Port Natal*, *ii* 419; sends out a vessel named the *Brazilia* to trade with the emigrant farmers at Natal, *ib.*

## OHRIGSTAD, VILLAGE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

in 1845 is founded, but the site proves so unhealthy that it is soon abandoned by most of its inhabitants, *ii* 504; though for some time afterwards it is regarded as the seat of government of the adherents of Chief-Commandant Potgieter, *ii* 505. The first volksraad of the section of the emigrant farmers that moved from the Mooi river to this part of the country was elected on the 1st of August 1845, and consisted of eight members, besides a secretary. The village was at first called Andries-Ohrigstad, but *Andries* soon fell into disuse. It has recently been occupied again

## OÏDIUM:

in 1859 first attacks the vines in the Cape Colony, *iii* 176

OLD SOMERSET HOSPITAL IN CAPE TOWN:

in 1817 is founded, *i* 365

OLIPHANT, ANTHONY:

on the establishment of the supreme court of the Cape Colony in the beginning of 1828 becomes attorney-general, *i* 491; is appointed chief justice of Ceylon, and on the 16th of March 1839 leaves South Africa, *ii* 215

OLIVE:

particulars concerning attempts to cultivate the tree at the Cape, *i* 172

OMUKARU:

decisive battle in 1868 between the Hereros and Hottentots at, *v* 102

ORANGE FREE STATE:

on the abandonment of the Sovereignty by Great Britain in 1854 the territory handed over to the provisional administration comprises only the ground actually occupied by Europeans and the waste lands enclosed by the Orange and Vaal rivers and the Kathlamba mountains, *iii* 442; in 1854 is inhabited by only fifteen thousand Europeans, *ib.*; is chiefly adapted for pastoral purposes, *ib.*; in October 1859 obtains the district of Bethulie by cession from the chief Lepui, *iv* 184; in December 1861 obtains the district of Philippolis by purchase from the Griqua captain Adam Kok, *iv* 197; ecclesiastical statistics in 1864, *iv* 215; condition of after the treaty of Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 275; law adopted in May 1866 for the government of Molapo's clan, *iv* 276; measures adopted with regard to the territory acquired by the treaty of Thaba Bosigo, *ib.*; creation of paper money, *iv* 277; financial position in 1868, *iv* 303; in February 1869 has its south-eastern boundary defined by the second treaty of Aliwal North, *iv* 320; in February 1870 has its north-eastern boundary defined by Lieutenant-Governor Keate, of Natal, *iv* 498; in October 1871 loses a large extent of territory by the annexation of the diamond-fields to the British dominions, *iv* 372

ORANGE RIVER:

description of the stream and islands near Olivenhout drift, *i* 102 and *ii* 25; from the junction of the Stormberg spruit to longitude 24° 20' in 1824 is made the north-eastern boundary of the Cape Colony, *i* 394; in December 1847 it is proclaimed the northern boundary of the Cape Colony from the Kraai tributary to the Atlantic ocean, *iii* 56

## ORANGE RIVER SOVEREIGNTY :

on the 3rd of February 1848 is created by a proclamation of Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 277; on the 8th of March a form of government is proclaimed, *iii* 278; foundation of churches, *iii* 297; on the 14th of March 1849 regulations for its government are proclaimed, *iii* 298; revenue, *iii* 309 and 310; after the defeat of Major Warden by the Basuto on the 30th of June 1851 the country is in a condition of utter anarchy, *iii* 321; particulars concerning the European inhabitants, *iii* 327, 332, 349, and 362; on the 23rd of February 1854 ceases to exist, *iii* 364

## O'REILLY, ANTHONY ALEXANDER, LANDDROST OF WAKKERSTROOM :

in April to June 1871 is a member of the arbitration court at Bloemhof, on behalf of the South African Republic, *v* 40

## O'REILLY, JAMES :

on the 22nd of March 1848 is appointed civil commissioner and resident magistrate of the Caledon River district in the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 279

## ORPEN, FRANCIS :

in October 1871 is appointed civil commissioner and resident magistrate of the district of Griquatown, *iv* 373

## ORPEN, JOSEPH MILLERD :

in March and April 1854 ■ a member of the volksraad takes a leading part in framing the constitution of the Orange Free State, *iii* 450; in July 1854 is appointed landdrost of the united districts of Winburg and Harrismith, *ib.*; visits Moshesh as a special commissioner of the Orange Free State, *iii* 451; visits Moshesh again as special commissioner, *iii* 453; in 1856 expels Witsi's robber clan from Harrismith, *iii* 462; in October 1856 resigns as landdrost, *iii* 467; in January 1862 acts as a peace-maker between the Free State and Moshesh, *iv* 198; in February 1862 with Mr. John Burnet visits Moshesh to obtain information for the high commissioner, *iv* 200

## ORPHAN ASYLUM, SOUTH AFRICAN :

in 1808 is founded in Capetown by the widow Moller, *i* 286; in July 1811 receives a donation of five thousand rixdollars from the earl of Caledon, *ib.*; on the 26th of September 1815 is formally opened, *ib.*; is managed by a board of mixed Lutherans and members of the Dutch reformed church, *ib.*; in 1845 receives a bequest of £3,300 from Mr. Henry Murray, *i* 287

## ORPHAN CHAMBER FOR THE ADMINISTRATION OF ESTATES :

in 1834 is abolished, and the duty is transferred to the master of the supreme court, *ii* 45

**OSTRICHES :**

are domesticated in the Cape Colony, *iv* 40 and 41

**OTAVÉ COPPER DEPOSITS :**

mention of, *v* 111

**OTJIMBINGUE, RHENISH MISSION STATION IN HEREROLAND :**

description of, *v* 96; on the 17th of June 1863 is attacked by the Hottentots under Christian Afrikaner, *v* 97; in September 1865 is attacked by the Hottentots under Jan Jonker Afrikaner, *v* 98; in December 1867 is again attacked by Jan Jonker Afrikaner, *v* 99; after which the chief Kamaherero removes to Okahandja, and the station for some time is almost deserted, *v* 100

**OUUDTSHOORN, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

in July 1855 is created, *iii* 148; in October 1869 sustains much damage from heavy floods, *iv* 105

**OVAHERERO, BANTU TRIBE IN SOUTH-WESTERN AFRICA**

mention of, *i* 460 and 486; see Hereros

**OVAMBANDERU :** see Hereros

**OWEN, CHARLES MOSTYN :**

in 1847 is appointed superintendent of a division of the Kaffir police in the Cape Colony, *iii* 58; is appointed assistant commissioner, and in that capacity on the 27th of November 1851 arrives at Bloemfontein with large powers to deal with affairs north of the Orange river in conjunction with Major W. S. Hogg, *iii* 324 and 372; investigates matters in the Orange River Sovereignty, and ascertains the views of the people with regard to their future government, *iii* 325; enters into correspondence with Mr. A. W. J. Pretorius, *iii* 372; arranges with him for a conference on the 16th of January 1852, *iii* 374; on the 17th of January 1852 concludes the Sand River convention with delegates from the Transvaal emigrants, *iii* 377; in February opens negotiations with Moshesh, *iii* 328; but cannot bring that chief to do anything practical towards the restoration of peace, *iii* 329; convenes a meeting of the people of the Orange River Sovereignty to consider the question of their future government, *iii* 332

**OWEN, REV. FRANCIS, OF THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY :**

in June 1837 arrives in Natal, and a little later goes to reside at Umkungunhlovu, *ii* 348; in November 1837 acts as Dingana's secretary in the arrangement with Pieter Retief, *ii* 355; at Dingana's request on the 4th of February 1838 draws up a deed of cession of Natal to the emigrant farmers, *ii* 359; on the

6th witnesses the massacre of Retief's party, *ii* 362; ■ few days later leaves Zululand, *ii* 363; in May 1838 abandons Natal, *ii* 374; in 1840 with Mr. Wallace Hewetson as a lay assistant endeavours to establish a mission at Mosega with the Bahurutsi, but without success, and in April 1841 he returns to the Cape Colony

OWEN, CAPTAIN WILLIAM FITZWILLIAM, OF THE ROYAL NAVY:

towards the close of 1822 visits Delagoa Bay on a surveying expedition, *v* 129; in March 1823 obtains from a Bantu chief a cession of land along the Tembe river, *ib.*; and in August of the same year obtains from another chief a much larger cession, *v* 131; in October 1823 reports upon the condition of South-Eastern Africa, *v* 132

OX-WAGGON:

description of as a means of conveyance, *ii* 273

PAARL, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in January 1839 is created, *ii* 228; in March 1848 is made a division, *iii* 70

PAARL, TOWN OF:

on the 9th of October 1840 becomes a municipality; population in 1865, *iv* 42

PACALTSDORP, HOTTENTOT RESERVE CLOSE TO THE TOWN OF GEORGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in 1813 the London missionary society stations an agent at this place, *i* 270

PAFURI, BAVENDA CHIEF IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

account of, *iv* 476

PAKINGTON, SIR JOHN:

on the 27th of February 1852 becomes secretary of state for the colonies, *iii* 132; on the 24th of June 1852 approves of the Sand River convention, *iii* 379; on the 28th of December 1852 is succeeded by the duke of Newcastle, *iii* 134

PALGRAVE, WILLIAM COATES:

in May 1868 narrowly escapes being killed by Hottentots in Great Namaqualand, *v* 100; in 1876 is sent by the Cape government as a special commissioner to the Hereros and Namaquas, *v* 107; makes extensive investigations, *v* 108 to 112; in 1877 is sent again to Hereroland, *v* 113; and in February 1879 sends in ■ report of what he has done, *v* 114; in September and October 1879 accompanies an expedition sent to relieve a party of dis-



tressed farmers in Hereroland, *v* 118; in January 1880 he is appointed commissioner to the tribes north of the Orange river, *v* 120; on the outbreak of war among them in August 1880 is recalled, *v* 122; in 1884 is sent for the fourth time on a mission to Hereroland and Great Namaqualand, *v* 124

**PALMER, DEPUTY-COMMISSARY-GENERAL:**

in October 1846 is placed in charge of the frontier transport service, and speedily puts it on a good footing, *iii* 28

**PALMER, REV. SAMUEL, WESLEYAN MISSIONARY AT MORLEY:**

on the outbreak of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 takes refuge at Clarkebury, where in April 1835 he is rescued by a military patrol, *ii* 111; assists in the negotiations by which the war is brought to an end, *ii* 123

**PANDA (CORRECT SPELLING MPANDE), ONE OF THE YOUNGER SONS OF SENZANGAKONA:**

in September 1839 conspires against his brother Dingana, *ii* 391; with a large following crosses the Tugela into Natal and requests protection from Landdrost Roos, *ii* 392; on the 15th of October has an interview with the volksraad, when a tract of land is assigned to him for temporary use, *ib.*; on the 26th of the same month is installed as "reigning prince of the emigrant Zulus" by a commission from the volksraad, *ib.*; receives assistance from the emigrant farmers to attack his brother, *ib.*; in January 1840 with his adherents and a burgher commando marches against Dingana, *ib.*; in a great battle his forces are victorious, *ii* 395; on the 10th of February 1840 he is installed by Commandant-General Pretorius chief of the Zulus, but in vassalage to the volksraad of Natal, *ii* 396; on the 25th of July 1842 he causes a mission station on the Umhlatusi river to be attacked and the whole inhabitants of three kraals to be massacred, *ii* 400; declines to assist the English force against the emigrant farmers until the latter are defeated, when he tenders his services, *ii* 437; early in 1843 puts his brother Xoxo to death, and commits such atrocities upon people whom he suspects of treasonable intentions that there is a great rush of fugitives into Natal, *ii* 446; on the 5th of October 1843 gives his consent to the Buffalo and Tugela rivers forming the north-eastern boundary of Natal, *ii* 454; on the same day cedes St. Lucia Bay to the queen of England, *ii* 455; and thereafter is treated by the British authorities as an independent chief, *ib.*; in 1851 offers to assist the Cape Colony against the Xosas and Tembus, *iii* 105; condition in 1860 of, *iii* 240; he

encourages European traders in Zululand and permits missionaries to pursue their labours, *iv* 457; in August 1861 he cedes to the South African Republic a strip of land along the border of the district of Utrecht, *iv* 462; sends two hundred and forty head of cattle to buy the ground back again, *iv* 494; but the republic refuses to sell it, *ib.*; further particulars concerning, *iv* 13 and 14; in 1872 dies, *iv* 178

PANDOURS: see Hottentot regiment

PANSEGROUW, J. G.:

in the war of 1867-8 is in command of a division of the Free State forces which performs signal services, *iv* 290; on the 25th of September 1867 he takes Makwai's mountain by storm, *iv* 291; on the 28th of January 1868 takes Tandjesberg by storm, *iv* 298; and on the 22nd of February 1868 makes himself master of the Kieme, *iv* 300

PAPER CURRENCY OF THE CAPE COLONY:

particulars concerning, *i* 2, 23, 112, 175, 176, 245, 372, and 401; in June 1825 the paper rixdollar is declared by the government to be only of the value of one shilling and sixpence, *i* 401; the paper in circulation is partly redeemed at that rate with British silver and copper coin, *i* 404; which occasions very heavy losses to many people, *i* 403; the residue is replaced by notes on which the value is marked in pounds, shillings, and pence, and which are declared redeemable by drafts on the imperial treasury, *i* 404

PAPER MONEY OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:

in April 1865 is created by the government to the amount of £30,000, as capital of the Bloemfontein bank, *iv* 216; in June 1866 is created to the amount of £100,000, £43,000 of which is intended to cover war expenses and £57,000 to lend to impoverished burghers, *iv* 277

PAPER MONEY OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

in June 1865 is created by the government to the amount of £10,500, *iv* 471; in February 1866 is created by the government to the amount of £12,000, *iv* 483; in May 1867 is created by the government to the amount of £20,000, *iv* 484; in 1868 is created by the government to the amount of £65,000, but out of this the previous issues are to be redeemed, *iv* 488; in June 1870 another issue is authorised, bringing the whole amount in circulation up to £73,826. The whole of this is to meet deficiency of revenue, *iv* 500

PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY:

in 1829 commences mission work in South Africa, *i* 468; particulars concerning, *ii* 464 and 502; *iii* 357; in February 1866 the volksraad of the Orange Free State expels those missionaries of this society whose stations are in the territory overrun by the burgher forces, *iv* 265; statistics of in 1865, *iv* 266; particulars concerning, *iv* 281 *et seq.*; after the second treaty of Aliwal North the missionaries return to their labours in Basutoland, *v* 75; statistics of the operations of the society in Basutoland in 1872, *v* 79 and 80

PARKER, WILLIAM:

in 1820 brings a party of Irish settlers to the Cape Colony, *i* 351 and 352; proceedings of, *i* 354 and 355

PARLIAMENT OF THE CAPE COLONY: see Cape parliament

PATO, CHIEF OF THE GUNUKWEBE CLAN OF THE XOSA TRIBE:

in 1812 succeeds his father Cungwa, *i* 255; and with his clan retires from the Zuurveld, *ib.*; in the war of 1819 takes a very active part against the Cape Colony, *i* 337; in January 1824 with his brothers Kobe and Kama concludes an agreement of friendship with the colonial government, *ii* 6; in 1827 is permitted to occupy the territory between the Keiskama and Beka rivers, *ii* 7; during the war of 1834-5 professes to be neutral, though many of his followers are in arms against the Cape Colony, *ii* 98; on the 17th of September 1835 agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 126; on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; on the 19th of June 1838 enters into a supplementary treaty with Sir George Napier, *ii* 176; on the 29th of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications in these treaties, *ii* 187; on the 2nd of January 1845 enters into a new treaty framed by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; in May 1846 takes part with the rest of his tribe against the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; commits horrible cruelties upon some Fingos, *iii* 9; continues hostilities after all the other chiefs west of the Kei have come to terms, but on the 19th of December 1847 is obliged to surrender to Colonel Somerset, *iii* 53; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has ground assigned to him in British Kaffraria, *iii* 61; in the war of 1850-52 aids the Cape Colony, *iii* 100; in 1856-7 takes a leading part in the self-destruction of the Xosa tribe, *iii* 199; career of from 1857 until his death, *iii* 213

## PEARLS :

note on those found on the coast near the mouth of the Breede river, *i* 310

## PEARS, REV. JOHN :

in May 1829 becomes the first resident clergyman at Glen Lynden, *ii* 23; on the 2nd of April 1839 becomes the first resident clergyman of the Dutch reformed congregation in Albany, *ii* 216

## PEDDIE, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :

in March 1848 is created, *iii* 70

## PEDDIE, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL JOHN :

on the outbreak of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 proceeds with his regiment from Capetown to the scene of hostilities, *ii* 94; in March 1835 commands one of the four divisions of the army which enters Kaffirland, *ii* 102

## PELLISSIER, REV. JEAN PIERRE, OF THE PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY :

in 1829 arrives in South Africa and proceeds to the station at Mosega, *i* 468; in 1830 is obliged by the advance of Moselekatse to abandon Mosega, and with his colleagues founds the station Motito, *ib.*; in 1833 with some fugitives from the north moves to the northern bank of the Orange river and founds the mission station Bethulie, *i* 470; dealings with regard to the district of Bethulie, *iv* 183 and 184

## PENSIONERS' VILLAGE IN KING-WILLIAMSTOWN :

in 1855 is laid out and the construction of the cottages is commenced, *iii* 192

## PEPPERCORN, G. R. :

on the 4th of November 1850 is appointed magistrate of the Impafana location in Natal, *iii* 234

## PERCEVAL, DUDLEY MONTAGU :

in January 1828 becomes auditor-general of the Cape Colony and clerk of the council, *i* 494

## PERIODICAL COURTS :

in 1856 are established in the Cape Colony, *iii* 160

## PERSIANS IN EAST AFRICA :

mention of, *i* 460

## PETERS, DR. JAMES :

is a physician in the Grey hospital in King-Williamstown, *iii* 191

## PHILIP, REV. DR. JOHN, SUPERINTENDENT OF THE LONDON SOCIETY'S MISSIONS IN SOUTH AFRICA :

particulars concerning the life and conduct of, *i* 500 *et seq.*; character of his book *Researches in South Africa*, *i* 500 and

508; he is prosecuted by a government official for libel, and ■ cast in heavy damages, *i* 508; but is regarded by the missionary party in England as a martyr, *i* 509; further particulars concerning, *i* 468 and 470; in 1826 he induces Adam Kok II to settle in the district of Philippolis, *ii* 475; shows determined opposition to the commando law of June 1833, *ii* 28; in 1834 successfully opposes the passing of an ordinance against vagrancy, *ii* 80; in 1834 attempts unsuccessfully to procure the deposition of Cornelis Kok as captain of Campbell, *ii* 475; during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 devotes all his energy to supporting the cause of the Xosas, *ii* 118; disapproves of Sir Benjamin D'Urban's arrangements in 1835 with regard to the Xosas, *ii* 136; takes Jan Tshatshu and Andries Stoffels to England as specimens of the result of mission work in South Africa, *ii* 137; gives evidence at great length before a committee of the house of commons, *ib.*; makes a tour through England with Tshatshu and Stoffels, everywhere drawing adherents to his cause, *ii* 138; during the government of Sir George Napier possesses very great power in South Africa, *ii* 468; favours the creation of a belt of Bantu and Griqua states under missionary influence along the border of the Cape Colony, *ii* 469; urges the governor to enter into a treaty of alliance with the Basuto chief Moshesh, *ib.*; in May 1846 is completely prostrated by the defection of Jan Tshatshu and the evil result of all his political plans, *iii* 64; shortly afterwards retires to Hankey, where he spends the remainder of his days in complete abstention from politics, *ib.*

PHILIP, REV. WILLIAM, SON OF THE ABOVE:

on the 1st of July 1845 is drowned at Hankey, *iii* 63

PHILIPPOLIS, DISTRICT IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:

in December 1861 is purchased by the Free State from Adam Kok, *iv* 197; in April 1862 is placed under a landdrost, *ib.*

PHILIPPOLIS, VILLAGE OF:

in 1823 is founded as a mission station of the London society, *ii* 474

PHILIPS & KING, MERCHANTS IN CAPETOWN:

in 1852 commence successful copper mining in Little Namaqualand, *iii* 85

PHŒNIX, THE, COASTING STEAMER:

in December 1842 arrives in Table Bay from England, *ii* 227

PIERS, MAJOR HENRY:

in January 1839 becomes the first resident magistrate of Paarl, *ii* 228; in March 1848 becomes resident magistrate of Tulbagh, *iii* 70



**PIETERMARITZBURG, SEAT OF GOVERNMENT OF NATAL:**

in October 1838 is founded, *ii* 378; in March 1848 becomes a municipality with the town lands greatly reduced in size, *iii* 266; but in December 1853 ceases to be one, *iii* 267; in May 1854 again becomes a municipality, under a new ordinance, *ib.*; description of in 1872, *iv* 174

**PIET ROOY, CAPTAIN OF A KORANA CLAN:**

account of, *iv* 97; in 1869 is at war with the Cape Colony, *iv* 98; in November 1869 is captured and sent to Capetown as a prisoner, *iv* 99

**PIGOT, MAJOR:**

is one of the early breeders of merino sheep in the district of Albany, *ii* 40

**PIKETBERG, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in March 1848 is created, *iii* 70

**PIKETBERG, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT:**

about the 17th of October 1833 the first consistory commences duty, *ii* 217; in 1840 the village is founded, *ib.*

**PILKINGTON, WOODFORD:**

in 1856 is appointed engineer in charge of the harbour works at East London, *iii* 190

**PILLANS, CHARLES STUART:**

is one of the first unofficial members of the legislative council of the Cape Colony established in 1834, *ii* 48

**PINE, BENJAMIN C. C., ESQRE.:**

from the 19th of April 1850 to the 3rd of March 1855 is lieutenant-governor of Natal, *iii* 228

**PINETOWN, VILLAGE IN NATAL:**

in 1850 is founded, *iii* 263

**PINNEY, F. B.:**

in March 1848 becomes resident magistrate of Simonstown, *iii* 70

**PIRIE MISSION STATION:**

in May 1830 is founded, *ii* 99; is named after the reverend Alexander Pirie, one of the founders of the Glasgow missionary society, *ii* 131

**PLAMPIN, REAR ADMIRAL SIR ROBERT:**

from June 1817 to July 1820 commands on the Cape station, *i* 302

**PLASKET, SIR RICHARD :**

in November 1824 becomes secretary to government in the Cape Colony, *i* 414

**PLATBERG MISSION STATION :**

in December 1833 is founded by the Wesleyan society near the Caledon river, *i* 481

**PNIEL MISSION STATION :**

in 1849 is founded by the Berlin society for the benefit of the Koranas along the Vaal river, *iii* 311; in February 1871 is made a separate district of the Orange Free State, *iv* 352

**POFADDER, CAPTAIN OF A KORANA CLAN :**

account of, *iv* 97; in 1869 aids the government forces against some other Korana captains on the northern border of the Cape Colony, *iv* 98

**PONDOLAND :**

in July 1828 is invaded by a Zulu army, which does much damage, *i* 454

**PONDO TRIBE :**

exterminates the Amakwabi under Qeto, *i* 451; particulars concerning, *i* 486, *iv* 62, 63, and 64; see Faku

**PONDOMSI TRIBE :**

account of, *iv* 62 and 63; see Umditshwa and Umhlonhlo

**POPHAM, COMMODORE HOME :**

in 1805 is sent with a powerful fleet to convey an army from Ireland for the conquest of the Cape Colony, *i* 192; on the 4th of January 1806 arrives in Table Bay, *i* 194; in April 1806 with his whole squadron leaves the Cape to seize the Spanish settlements on the river La Plata, *i* 216

**POPULATION OF THE CAPE COLONY :** see Census returns

**POPULATION OF NATAL :** see Natal

**POORTJE MISSION STATION :**

in 1862 is founded by the reverend Mr. Rolland in Basutoland, *iv* 208

**PORT ALFRED :**

in August 1860 receives its present name, *iv* 6; see Kowie river mouth

**PORT BEAUFORT, AT THE MOUTH OF THE BREEDE RIVER :**

in 1816 a coasting trade is commenced with Table Bay from, *i* 310

**PORT ELIZABETH, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

on the 6th of February 1837 is created, *ii* 164; in March 1848 is made a division, *iii* 70

**PORT ELIZABETH, TOWN OF :**

in June 1820 is so named after the deceased wife of Sir Rufane Shawe Donkin. She was a daughter of Dean Markham, and granddaughter of Archbishop Markham of York. She died at Merut in India in August 1818, at the age of twenty-eight years, *i* 357; in February 1825 is provided with a resident magistrate, *i* 392; in July 1826 a custom house is established, *ib.*; in February 1832 owing to retrenchment it is deprived for a time of its magistrate, *ii* 84; in 1834 contains twelve hundred residents, *ib.*; by an order in council in April 1836 is made a free warehousing port, *ii* 164; position of in 1862, *iv* 27; population in 1865, *iv* 42

**PORT ELIZABETH BANK :**

in 1847 is established, *ii* 242

**PORTER, WILLIAM :**

on the 16th of September 1839 becomes attorney-general of the Cape Colony, *ii* 215; in March 1848 draws up a plan of a constitution for the Cape Colony, *iii* 119; in July of the same year drafts another constitution in accordance with the views of the executive council and the judges, *iii* 120; when assisting in the preparation of the constitution suggests the division of the colony into two constituencies for the purpose of electing members of the legislative council, *iii* 126; on the 20th of March 1866 retires from the office of attorney-general, *iv* 80; in 1871 frames the constitution amendment act, *iv* 126; in the same year is a member of the federation commission, *iv* 130; proceedings in the Cape parliament of, *iv* 137 and 145; declines to form a ministry under responsible government, *iv* 146

**PORT FRANCES :**

in August 1866 is renamed Port Alfred, *iv* 6; see Kowie river mouth

**PORT NOLLOTH, ON THE COAST OF LITTLE NAMAQUALAND :**

in March 1855 Robbe Bay is so renamed, *iii* 87

**PORT REX : see Buffalo river mouth****PORT ST. JOHN'S :**

is situated at the mouth of the Umzimvubu river; description of, *ii* 252; in October 1846 is opened to commerce, *ib.*

PORTUGUESE AT DELAGOA BAY:

show great kindness to the first party of emigrant farmers in distress, *ii* 282

PORTUGUESE CHARTERED FISHING COMPANY:

from 1824 to 1835 has a monopoly of the commerce of Delagoa Bay, *v* 137

PORTUGUESE SOUTH AFRICA:

in June 1891 is defined in a treaty with Great Britain, *v* 160; condition of in 1899, *v* 167

POSHULI, BROTHER OF THE BASUTO CHIEF MOSHESH:

is a notorious robber captain, *ii* 498; in 1845 is sent by Moshesh to reside at Vechtkop in the centre of a European settlement, *ib.*; where he collects a band of worthless characters about him, *ib.*; comes in conflict with the government of the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 313; commits barbarous cruelties upon some Tembus, *iii* 316; in February 1858 takes forcible possession of a farm in the Free State, *iii* 470; after 1858 becomes patron of a band of Bushman marauders, *iv* 190; in January 1862 makes ■ raid upon Jan Letele, and takes all his cattle, *iv* 198; in May 1865 pillages farms along the lower Caledon, *iv* 232; in June 1865 is ■ leader in the raid into the Smithfield district, *ib.*; in May 1867 is received as a Free State subject, *iv* 287; on the 28th of January 1868 is killed in the storming of Tandjesberg, *iv* 298

POSTAL ARRANGEMENTS:

in 1798 the first post office in the Cape Colony is opened, but only for ocean mails, *i* 39; in 1805 an inland post is first established, *i* 180; improvements in the postal system are made by General Baird, *i* 215; rates of ocean postage in 1815, *i* 282; before 1834 the principal villages in the Cape Colony are connected by regular weekly posts; from the beginning of January 1846 there are two weekly posts between Capetown and the eastern frontier, *iii* 27; in January 1872 postal communication between Basutoland and the Cape Colony is established, *v* 76

POSTMA, REV. MR.:

in 1858 becomes clergyman of the Separatist reformed church at Rustenburg, *iv* 436

POST VICTORIA:

towards the close of 1844 is built at the head of the Sheshegu streamlet between the Keiskama and Fish rivers, *ii* 256; in April 1846 it is abandoned, *iii* 11

POTCHEFSTROOM, DISTRICT IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:  
boundaries in 1840, *ii* 402

POTCHEFSTROOM, TOWN OF:

in November 1838 is founded by the party of emigrants under Hendrik Potgieter, *ii* 375

POTGIETER, ANDRIES HENDRIK:

is head of the second large party of emigrants that in 1836 leaves the Cape Colony, *ii* 285; purchases from the Bataung chief Makwana all the land between the Vet and Vaal rivers except a small reserve, *ii* 286; with eleven others explores the country northward to the Zoutpansberg, *ii* 288; in October 1836 is attacked by a Matabele army at Vechtkop, and beats his assailants back, but loses all his cattle, *ii* 293; receives assistance which enables him to retire to Thaba Ntshu, *ii* 294; throughout his life shows gratitude to the Barolong people for services performed by some of them, *ii* 466; with the aid of Commandant Gerrit Maritz prepares to punish the Matabele, *ii* 300; on the 17th of January 1837 attacks them in the valley of Mosega, *ii* 302; defeats them and takes a good deal of spoil, with which he returns to Thaba Ntshu, *ii* 303; declines to work in harmony with Retief and Maritz, *ii* 308; removes to the Vet river and founds the village of Winburg, *ii* 303; quarrels with Maritz, *ii* 304; on account of the jealousy which is so rife among the emigrants sets up an independent government, *ii* 318; on November 1837 on the Marikwa attacks Moselekatse the second time, and compels him to abandon that part of the country and flee beyond the Limpopo, *ii* 320; then proclaims the territory which the Matabele have overrun forfeited to the emigrant farmers, *ib.*; after the massacres in Natal hastens to the aid of his countrymen, *ii* 366; but declines to serve under Maritz, who is then the head of the emigrants in Natal, *ii* 369; in company with a body of men under Pieter Uys proceeds to attack Dingana, *ii* 370; on the 11th of April 1838 is defeated and compelled to retreat, *ii* 372; in May leaves Natal and recrosses the Drakensberg, *ii* 374; in November settles on the banks of the Mooi river, and founds the town of Potchefstroom, *ii* 375; from this date until September 1840 his party has an independent government, *ib.*; in July 1840 makes an effort to recover some white children whom Moselekatse holds as captives, but cannot find the Matabele, *ii* 401; in September 1840 enters into a loose kind of union with the republic of Natal, *ib.*; after this date is styled chief commandant, *ii* 402; in May 1842 refuses to assist the



republic of Natal against an English invading force, *ii* 421; early in 1844 visits Mr. Smellekamp at Delagoa Bay, *ii* 456; in December 1844 visits Philippolis, but is unable to induce Adam Kok to refrain from interfering with the emigrant farmers, *ii* 487; in 1845 settles at Zoutpansberg, *ii* 505; in 1846 reduces the Bapedi tribe to submission, *ib.*; in June 1847 conducts an unsuccessful expedition against the Matabele, *ii* 506; in September 1848 is offered by Sir Harry Smith the appointment of landdrost of the district of Vaal River, but declines to accept it, *iii* 293; in January 1851 under a new governmental arrangement is appointed by the volksraad commandant-general for Zoutpansberg, Rustenburg, and Potchefstroom, *iii* 375; is embittered against Mr. A. Pretorius, *ib.*; but on the 16th of March 1852 a reconciliation takes place, *iii* 378; in August of this year conducts an expedition against the Bapedi under Sekwati, *iii* 387; but before the cessation of hostilities his health fails and he is obliged to resign the command to Stephanus Schoeman, *iii* 388; in March 1853 he dies, *iii* 408

POTGIETER, HERMANUS:

in 1854 is leader of a hunting party, *iii* 415; visits the kraal of Makapan to purchase ivory, *ib.*; where he is murdered with twelve white men and ten women and children, *iii* 417

POTGIETER, PIETER G.:

in 1853 after the death of his father is appointed commandant-general of Zoutpansberg, *iii* 409; in 1854 leads a force against insurgent clans in the district of Zoutpansberg, *iii* 418; and is killed when blockading a cavern, *iii* 419

POTGIETER'S RUST, VILLAGE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

in 1870 is abandoned on account of fever, *iv* 491

POTTINGER, STEAMSHIP:

in 1847 makes the quickest passage then known from Europe to Table Bay, *ii* 254

POTTINGER, SIR HENRY:

on the 27th of January 1847 assumes duty as governor of the Cape Colony and high commissioner, *iii* 40; has won for himself great distinction in India and China, *iii* 41; on the 10th of February leaves Capetown for the eastern frontier, *iii* 42; where he remains during the whole of his short term of office, *iii* 55; gives his reasons for not granting an interview to the delegates from Natal and Winburg, *iii* 251; on the 1st of December 1847 is succeeded by Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 55; leaves

for Madras to fill the position of governor there, *iii* 56; in 1854 returns to England, and on the 18th of March 1856 dies at Malta, *ib*.

**PAZOS SOUTH OF THE ZAMBESI:**

condition of in the middle of the nineteenth century, *v* 141

**PRELLER'S *PIET RETIEF*:**

reference to, *ii* 361

**PRENEUSE, FRENCH FRIGATE:**

on the 20th of September 1799 attacks two English ships in Algoa Bay, but is beaten off, *i* 64

**PRESBYTERIES OF THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH IN SOUTH AFRICA:**

constitution of, *ii* 222

**PRESIDENT OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

by the constitution of 1854 is elected by the burghers, from a list of candidates nominated by the volksraad, for a term of five years. There is nothing to prevent the same person holding the office more than one term. The president is the principal executive officer of the state, he superintends all public departments and the carrying out of all business connected with the public service, but he is responsible to the volksraad, and his administrative acts are liable to be reviewed by that body. He is required to make a yearly report of the state of the country and of the public service to the volksraad, and must visit the district villages frequently, and make himself acquainted with the interests and wishes of the people. All appointments made by him are provisional and require the confirmation of the volksraad; he can suspend public functionaries, but not deprive them of office; with the consent of a majority of the executive council he can exercise the prerogative of mercy in criminal cases; with the concurrence of the volksraad he can declare war, make peace, and conclude treaties. In 1856 an ordinance was passed, under which the burghers can vote for any person as president who receives a requisition signed by twenty-five qualified electors, provided such requisition with a reply accepting it are published in the *Staats Courant* four full weeks before the day of election. For original constitution see page 44 of Vol. *iii*; for amendment of 1856 see Vol. *iv*, page 182

**PRESIDENT OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

by the constitution as amended in November 1871, is elected for a term of five years. He is the chief executive officer of the republic, but is responsible to the volksraad, whose resolutions

he must obey. He must be over thirty years of age, a member of a Protestant church, and never convicted of a dishonourable offence. He need not be a burgher of the republic at the time of his election, but must have received requisitions signed by at least one hundred qualified voters, which requisitions must be published in the *Staats Courant* for one month before the day fixed for the election. The voting is by ballot. For amended constitution see Vol. *iv*, page 506, and powers of the president before 1871 see Vol. *iii*, page 426

PRESS ORDINANCE OF THE CAPE COLONY:

in April 1829 is issued, *ii* 15

PRESTON, MAJOR W. R.:

from the 1st of February to the 22nd of March 1853 acts as lieutenant-governor of Natal, *iii* 228

PRETORIA, DISTRICT IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

in 1855 is established, *iii* 422

PRETORIA, TOWN OF:

in 1855 is founded, *iii* 422; by the treaty of April 1860 with Lydenburg becomes the seat of government of the South African Republic, *iv* 442

PRETORIUS, ANDRIES WILLEM JACOBUS:

in November 1838 arrives in Natal, and is immediately elected commandant-general of all the emigrants there, *ii* 379; without any delay collects a force and marches against Dingana, *ii* 380; on the 16th of December 1836 at the Blood river inflicts a crushing defeat upon the Zulu army, *ii* 381; in January 1840 with a commando of four hundred burghers assists Panda against Dingana, *ii* 392; causes Tambusa, one of Dingana's great indunas, to be put to death, *ii* 393; after the decisive battle in which Dingana's power is destroyed, on the 10th of February 1840 instals Panda as chief of the Zulus in vassalage to the volksraad of Natal, *ii* 396; on the 14th of February 1840 issues a proclamation taking possession of the territory northward to the Umvolosi river, *ib.*; in December 1840 directs an attack upon the Bacas of Ncapayi, *ii* 411; on the 17th of May 1842 is instructed by the volksraad to require the English forces that have recently arrived in Natal to leave within two days, and if they do not go to enforce the demand by war, *ii* 422; on the night of the 23rd of May defeats a detachment of the English troops sent to attack him, *ii* 423; on the 26th seizes the military stores landed on the Point, *ii* 425; on the 31st invests the British camp, *ib.*; on the 26th of June strong

reinforcements reach the British camp and he is obliged to abandon Durban, *ii* 429; retires to Maritzburg, *ii* 433; where he exerts all his influence in favour of coming to terms with the English commander, *ib.*; in July after the submission of the volksraad to the authority of the queen resigns the office of commandant-general, *ii* 440; in September 1847 is sent from Natal to Grahamstown by the farmers to implore relief from Sir Henry Pottinger, as they are being ruined by the constant influx of Bantu refugees who have locations assigned to them, *iii* 250; but cannot even obtain an interview with the high commissioner, *ib.*; he then publishes his grievances in the newspapers, *ib.*; and when returning to Natal meets with very warm sympathy in all the districts he passes through, *iii* 251; on his arrival in Natal finds his family in great distress, fleeing from their home on account of robberies by the blacks, *ib.*; in January 1848 has an interview with Sir Harry Smith at the foot of the Drakensberg, *iii* 276; by whom he is appointed member of a land commission, but does not act upon it, as he leaves Natal, *iii* 253; in March removes to Magalisberg, *iii* 278; is invited by the Winburg burghers to assist them to throw off the English government imposed upon them by Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 280; is appointed commandant-general of the burghers along both banks of the Vaal, *ib.*; on the 12th of July arrives at Winburg, *iii* 281; on the 17th obliges Major Warden to capitulate at Bloemfontein, *iii* 282; on the 29th of August is defeated by Sir Harry Smith in the battle of Boomplaats, *iii* 289; in January 1851 under a new governmental arrangement is appointed by the volksraad commandant-general for Rustenburg and Potcheftroom, *iii* 375; on the 25th of August 1851 is invited by the republicans in the Orange River Sovereignty to take upon himself the office of administrator-general, *iii* 322; he announces to the British resident his intention of complying with the request, *iii* 370; in December 1851 enters into correspondence with the assistant commissioners Hogg and Owen, *iii* 372; after this several letters pass between them, the object of Mr. Pretorius being to obtain the recognition by the British government of the independence of the emigrants north of the Vaal, *iii* 371; arranges with them for a conference on the 16th of January 1852, *iii* 374; with other delegates from the Transvaal emigrants on the 17th of January 1852 concludes the Sand River convention with the assistant commissioners Hogg and Owen, *iii* 378; is greatly embittered against Mr. A. H. Potgieter, *iii* 375; but on the 16th of March 1852 a reconciliation takes place, *iii* 378;

in May 1852 ■ public dinner in his honour is given in Durban, Natal, *iii* 408; in June 1852 visits Bloemfontein, where he is received by the government with every mark of honour, *iii* 333; he enters into certain arrangements with the Barolong chief Montsiwa, *iii* 383; on the 23rd of July 1853 dies, *iii* 408; on the 13th of May 1891 his remains are removed from the original grave, and are accorded a state funeral at Pretoria, *iii* 409

PRETORIUS, MARTINUS WESSEL, SON OF THE ABOVE:

in August 1853 is appointed by the volksraad commandant-general of Rustenburg and Potchefstroom, *iii* 409; in 1854 leads ■ force against insurgent clans in the district of Zoutpansberg, *iii* 418; in January 1857 is appointed by the representative assembly president of the South African Republic, *iii* 426; in February 1857 visits the Orange Free State in order to try to effect the union of that country with the South African Republic, *iii* 430; is unsuccessful, and is ordered by the volksraad to leave Bloemfontein, *iii* 431; in December 1859 is elected president of the Orange Free State, *iv* 186; in February 1860 obtains six months' leave of absence from the South African Republic, *iv* 442; proceeds to Bloemfontein, and on the 8th of February 1860 takes the oath of office as president of the Orange Free State, *iv* 186; in May 1860 has a conference with Moshesh and comes to a friendly arrangement with him, *iv* 189; which, however, Moshesh does not carry out, *iv* 190; in 1860 has an interview with Prince Alfred at Winburg, *iv* 4; in September 1860 resigns as president of the South African Republic, *iv* 444; in April 1861 has another conference with Moshesh, *iv* 191; in May 1861 visits Panda, and obtains his approval of the cession of land made by Ketshwayo to the district of Utrecht, *iv* 461; in July 1862 visits Capetown to confer with the high commissioner on various subjects, *iv* 203; in November 1862 acts ■ ■ mediator in the civil strife in the South African Republic, *iv* 447; in April 1863 resigns as president of the Orange Free State, *iv* 208; in January 1864 acts as mediator between Messrs. Kruger and Viljoen, *iv* 451; is elected president of the South African Republic, and on the 10th of May 1864 assumes duty, *iv* 452; on the 26th of June 1865 issues a proclamation full of sympathy for the Free State, *iv* 238; five burghers of the South African Republic having been murdered by Basuto, on the 7th of August 1865 he demands from Moshesh the murderers and payment for the stolen property, with the alternative of war, *iv* 249; accompanies the force sent against the Basuto, *iv* 252; in November 1865 visits Zoutpansberg



and endeavours in vain to restore peace, *iv* 481; in 1866 causes the new Zulu border line to be altered in accordance with Panda's wishes, *iv* 494; after the abandonment of Schoemansdal in June 1867 makes a despairing appeal to the country for volunteers to recover the lost ground, *iv* 486; sends messengers to Moselekatse and Matsheng to induce those chiefs to submit to the authority of the South African Republic, *v* 13; on the 29th of April 1868 issues a proclamation extending the boundaries of the republic, *v* 16; in July 1868 visits Zoutpansberg, and concludes a kind of peace, *iv* 489; in 1869 is reëlected president of the South African Republic, *iv* 498; in June 1870 grants to a company a concession of diamond digging north of the Vaal, and by so doing creates such opposition from the diggers that the government of the South African Republic is repudiated, *iv* 346 and 347; the government then cancels the concession, and the president seeks by very liberal offers to recover the goodwill of the diggers, but with only partial success, *iv* 347 to 349; on the 1st of March 1871 under Sir Henry Barkly's pressure signs deeds of submission referring the disputes with Waterboer and the Barolong and Batlapin chiefs to a court of arbitration, *v* 39; conducts the case of the South African Republic before the arbitration court at Bloemhof in April to June 1871 in a most imbecile manner, *v* 40 *et seq.*; in November 1871 resigns the office of president on account of the hostility shown by the volksraad and the people upon the delivery of the Keate award, *v* 47

**PRICE, REV. ROGER:**

in 1859 proceeds to Linyanti as a missionary, loses his wife and child by death, and with great difficulty gets away, *v* 90 to 92

**PRINCE ALBERT, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in August 1855 is created, *iii* 148

**PRINCE ALBERT, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT:**

in November 1842 the first consistory is appointed, *ii* 220

**PRINCE ALBERT, VILLAGE OF:**

in 1841 is founded, *ii* 220

**PRINCE ALFRED:**

in 1860 visits South Africa for the first time, *iv* 2; makes a tour overland from Port Elizabeth to Durban, *iv* 2 to 5; on the 17th of September 1860 tilts the first load of stones in the great breakwater in Table Bay, *iv* 5; on the following day lays the foundation stone of the Sailors' Home in Cape-town and inaugurates the public library in its new building, *ib.*;

in 1867 visits South Africa the second time, *iv* 95; in 1868 the third time, *iv* 111; and in 1870 the fourth time, *ib.*

PRINCE, COLLISON & Co., OF CAPE TOWN:

carry on copper mining successfully in Little Namaqualand, *iii* 87

PRINGLE, REAR ADMIRAL THOMAS:

in November 1796 assumes command of the fleet on the Cape station, *i* 24; in March 1798 is succeeded by Sir Hugh Christian, *i* 46

PRINGLE, THOMAS:

in 1820 brings ■ party of Scotch settlers to the Cape Colony, who are located at Glen Lynden, *i* 352; particulars concerning his life in Capetown, *i* 421

PRINGLE, W. DODDS:

in the war of 1846-7 is commandant of the Somerset East burghers, *iii* 23

PRINSLOO, HENDRIK, SON OF MARTHINUS:

is one of the leaders of the insurrection of 1815, *i* 293; at an early stage of the revolt is arrested and imprisoned at a military post, *ib.*; is sentenced to death by a commission of the high court of justice, *i* 298; and on the 9th of March 1816 is executed at Van Aardt's post on the Fish river, *i* 299

PRINSLOO, JOACHIM, PRESIDENT OF THE VOLKSRAAD OF NATAL:

in July 1842 is excepted from the general amnesty agreed to by Colonel Cloete, *ii* 439; a reward of £250 is offered for his apprehension by Sir George Napier, but no one molests him, *ii* 440; in January 1844 he dies of fever contracted at Delagoa Bay, *ii* 456

PRINSLOO, MARTHINUS:

in February 1796 is elected head of the nationals of Graaff-Reinet, with the title of protector of the voice of the people, *i* 8; in January 1799 is the leader of a party of farmers who take up arms against the English authorities, *i* 51; in April surrenders to the British troops, *i* 56; in September 1800 is put upon his trial, and is sentenced to death, *i* 73; the execution of the sentence is suspended by the governor, *ib.*; and in March 1803 he is released, *i* 119; takes no part in the Slachter's Nek rebellion, nevertheless in 1816 the lease of his farm at the Boschberg is cancelled, and he is required to remove to the district of Tulbagh or the district of Swellendam, *i* 300; with the others banished at the same time from the eastern frontier he retires to the Gouph, *ib.*

## PRINTING PRESS:

introduction of the first into Capetown, *i* 78 and 117; particulars concerning the publication in South Africa of the first magazine and the first newspaper other than the *Government Gazette*, *i* 416

## PRIVATE FUND OF THE ORPHAN CHAMBER IN CAPETOWN:

particulars concerning, *i* 378

## PRIZE MONEY AWARDED TO THE FORCES THAT CONQUERED THE CAPE COLONY:

particulars concerning, *i* 210

## PRIZE NEGROES:

after the suppression of the slave trade are brought into the Cape Colony by British cruisers, *i* 224

## PROTECTEUR FIRE AND LIFE ASSURANCE COMPANY:

in 1838 is founded in Capetown, *ii* 225

PROTEST OF THE VOLKSRAAD OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE AGAINST THE ANNEXATION BY SIR HENRY BARKLY OF THE DIAMOND-FIELDS SOUTH OF THE VAAL TO THE BRITISH DOMINIONS, *iv* 377 *et seq.*

## PROVINCE OF QUEEN ADELAIDE:

on the 10th of May 1835 is created by Sir Benjamin D'Urban, *ii* 114; nearly the whole of it is allotted to the Xosas, *ii* 134; on the 5th of December 1836 it is abandoned by the British government, *ii* 150

## PRUDENTE, FRENCH FRIGATE:

in 1799 fails to convey aid to the nationals of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 64; on the 9th of February 1799 is captured by the *Dædalus*, *ib.*

## PUBLIC BUILDINGS IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

particulars concerning, *iv* 468

## PUBLIC DEBT OF THE CAPE COLONY:

in 1835, *ii* 33; in 1870, *iv* 109

PUBLIC DEBT OF NATAL IN 1872, *iv* 175

## PUBLIC MEETINGS FOR THE DISCUSSION OF POLITICAL MATTERS:

on the 24th of May 1822 are prohibited by a proclamation of Lord Charles Somerset, *i* 375

## PURCELL, WILLIAM:

on the 13th of July 1834 is murdered in the Galeka country, *ii* 112

QETO, CHIEF OF THE AMAKWABI:

career of, *i* 451; in 1828 is obliged to flee from Dingana, and commits dreadful ravages south of the Umzimvubu, *ii* 336; in September 1829 murders Mr. Farewell and his companions, *ii* 339

QEYA: see Gangelizwe

QUEEN'S FORT AT BLOEMFONTEIN:

in October 1848 is built, *iii* 295

QUEEN'S ROAD BETWEEN GRAHAMSTOWN AND FORT BEAUFORT:

is made during the government of Sir George Napier, *ii* 198

QUEENSTOWN, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

creation of, *iii* 116; in 1856 is united to Victoria East ■ an electoral division, *iii* 158

QUEENSTOWN, VILLAGE OF:

in 1853 is founded, *iii* 116

QUIGLEY, MICHAEL, A DESERTER FROM THE 45TH REGIMENT:

in July 1848 sends information to Mr. Biddulph, resident magistrate of Winburg, of the movements of Mr. Pretorius, *iii* 281; takes part in the battle of Boomplaats against British troops, is afterwards captured, and is punished with death, *iii* 291

QUITRENT, PERPETUAL:

in 1813 this system of land tenure is introduced in the Cape Colony, *i* 265

RADEMEYER, COMMANDANT JACOBUS IGNATIUS:

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 performs good service, *ii* 102

RAILWAYS:

in 1857 the parliament of the Cape Colony resolves to commence the construction of, *iii* 163; on the 31st of March 1859 the first sod is turned by Sir George Grey of the line from Capetown to Wellington, *iii* 164; in May 1862 the line is opened from Capetown to Stellenbosch, *iv* 29; in March 1863 to Paarl, *ib.*; in November 1863 to Wellington, *ib.*; in December 1864 the line from Capetown to Wynberg is opened, *iv* 11 and 29; particulars concerning the line from Port Nolloth to Ookiep, *iv* 104; in January 1872 a line from Port Elizabeth to Uitenhage is commenced by a company, *iv* 132; in 1874 it is purchased by the government and completed, *ib.*; in January 1873 the line from Capetown to Wellington is purchased by the

government, *iv* 144; in 1873 extensions are authorised from Wellington to Worcester and from the Zwartkops to the Bushman's river, also a survey from East London to Queenstown, *ib.*; further particulars concerning lines in the Cape province, *iv* 11, 28, and 29; particulars concerning the first constructed in Natal, *iv* 162; particulars concerning the line from Lourenço Marques to the border of the South African Republic, *v* 152; general extension of, *ib.*; particulars concerning the line from Beira inland, *v* 161 and 162

**RAMANELA, NEPHEW AND SON-IN-LAW OF THE BASUTO CHIEF MOSHESH:**  
in November 1864 pillages some farms near Bethlehem, *iv* 223; on the 27th of December 1864 attacks a guard that has been stationed by President Brand on the border, but is driven back with a loss of one killed and five wounded, *iv* 225; in January 1865 in a plundering excursion severely wounds two burghers, *ib.*; in April 1865 pillages the farm of a widow in the Free State, and drives off thirty-five horses, *iv* 226; on the 25th of May 1865 is attacked by a burgher force, and falls back over the boundary with a design of drawing the commando into a trap, but is only pursued as far as the line, *iv* 227; on the 27th of June 1865 murders five burghers of the South African Republic travelling through the Free State, *iv* 236

**RAMANELA'S RAID INTO NATAL:**

on the 27th of June 1865 Ramanela and his followers make a raid into Natal, murder some people, and drive off a large number of cattle, *iv* 256; the Natal government sends all its available forces to the border, *iv* 257; Molapo for his father and himself promises redress, *ib.*; Sir Philip Wodehouse calls upon Moshesh to make good the damage, *ib.*; the great chief promises to do so, but does not keep his word, *ib.*; on the 26th of August the high commissioner makes a formal demand for ten thousand full-grown cattle, *iv* 259; in reply Moshesh offers to become a British subject, *ib.*; the high commissioner then sends Mr. John Burnet to Thaba Bosigo to try to get the cattle demanded, *ib.*; Mr. Burnet succeeds in obtaining rather over two thousand head, *iv* 261; after which there is some correspondence, but nothing more is ever paid, *ib.*

**RAMAPULANA, SON OF THE BAVENDA CHIEF MPOFU, IN THE DISTRICT OF ZOUTPANSBERG:**

takes advantage of the civil strife in the South African Republic to make himself practically independent, *iv* 478; in 1864 dies, *ib.*



**RATTLESNAKE, SLOOP OF WAR :**

on the 20th of September 1799 makes a gallant defence against a French frigate that attacks her in Algoa Bay, *i* 64

**RATTRAY, JAMES :**

in July 1822 becomes teacher of the high school at Tulbagh, *i* 371

**VON RAVEN, CAPTAIN :**

in August 1884 by order of the German emperor proclaims a German protectorate over the coast of Hereroland, *v* 125

**RAXOTI (AFTERWARDS CALLED MATANZIMA), TEMBU CHIEF :**

particulars concerning, *iv* 50

**RAWSON, RAWSON W. :**

on the 24th of May 1854 becomes secretary to government in the Cape Colony, *iii* 138

**RAWSTORNE, FLEETWOOD :**

in 1835 at the close of the sixth Kaffir war is appointed agent with some clans in the province of Queen Adelaide, *ii* 130; in February 1837 is appointed civil commissioner and resident magistrate of the new district of Colesberg, *ii* 164; on the 1st of July 1845 is directed to act as a special magistrate at Philippolis until the appointment of a British resident in the territory between the Orange and Modder rivers, *ii* 494

**READ, REV. JAMES, OF THE LONDON MISSIONARY SOCIETY :**

is one of the founders of the station Bethelsdorp, near Port Elizabeth, *i* 123; is the author of the charges against colonists that led to the so-called black circuit, *i* 260; in 1829 settles a missionary at the Kat river, *ii* 10; during the war of 1834-5 is prevented by the government from visiting the Hottentots of the Kat river settlement, *ii* 97; on the 8th of May 1852 dies, *iii* 101

**REBELLION OF THE GRIQUAS, KORANAS, AND BETSHUANA IN GRIQUALAND WEST IN 1878 :**

account of, *iv* 424 to 432

**RECORDER'S COURT OF NATAL :**

on the 16th of October 1845 is established, *ii* 461; constitution and powers of, *ib.*

**REDDERSBURG, VILLAGE IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE :**

in February 1861 is founded, *iv* 438

**REDUCTION OF THE GARRISON OF THE CAPE COLONY :**

particulars concerning, *iv* 87, 91, 92, and 148

REDWATER:

in 1871 causes great destruction of cattle in Natal, *iv* 164

VAN REENEN, JAN GYSBERT:

in 1805 has a large flock of woolled sheep and is the chief horse-breeder in the Cape Colony, *i* 167

VAN REENEN, SEBASTIAAN VALENTYN:

in 1803 receives the appointment of collector of land revenue, *i* 119

REEVE, CAPTAIN FREDERICK:

in 1855 is appointed magistrate with the Gunukwebe chief Kama, *iii* 190

REGIMENTS, BRITISH, THAT HAVE SERVED IN SOUTH AFRICA: ████  
Garrison

REGISTERED FARMS IN NATAL:

particulars concerning, *iii* 253 and 254

REHOBOTH, RHENISH MISSION STATION IN HEREROLAND:

in 1865 is plundered and destroyed, *v* 99

REID, JOSEPH:

in August 1823 becomes teacher of the high school at Paarl, *i* 372

REID, REV. THOMAS:

in March 1836 becomes the first resident clergyman of Colesberg, *i* 405

REITZ, FRANCIS WILLIAM:

on the 23rd of July 1850 is appointed ■ member of the legislative council of the Cape Colony, *iii* 122; on the 20th of September of the same year resigns his seat, *iii* 124

REITZ, JAN FREDERIK:

is the first permanently successful breeder of merino sheep in the Cape Colony, *ii* 38

RELIEF WORKS:

in 1864 are opened by Sir Philip Wodehouse at Tulbagh Kloof, *iv* 39

RELIGIOUS BODIES IN NATAL:

account of, *iii* 262

RELIGIOUS EQUALITY:

in 1804 is established for persons of all creeds in the Cape Colony, *i* 154

RELIGIOUS EXCITEMENT IN BASUTOLAND IN 1862-3:

particulars concerning, *iv* 206

REMOVAL OF THE SEAT OF GOVERNMENT OF THE CAPE COLONY FROM  
CAPETOWN TO GRAHAMSTOWN:

desire of the British settlers for, *iii* 118, 127, 130, 134, 135, and  
156; reasons of the executive council for opposing the measure,  
*iii* 120; efforts to bring it about, *iv* 9, 37, and 141

VAN RENSBURG, JAN:

is leader of a party of emigrants from the Cape Colony, *ii* 277;  
in May 1836 reaches the Zoutpansberg, *ib.*; in July attempts  
to proceed to Delagoa Bay, but encounters a Bantu tribe by  
whom all of his party are put to death, *ii* 278

VAN RENSBURG, W. C.:

in April 1862 is appointed by the volksraad acting president of  
the South African Republic, *iv* 446; retains the office until  
the 10th of May 1864, *iv* 452

REPLY TO THE FREE STATE PROTEST AGAINST THE ANNEXATION OF  
GRIQUALAND WEST TO THE BRITISH DOMINIONS, *iv* 387

REPRESENTATIVE GOVERNMENT IN NATAL:

petitions in favour of, *iii* 267; in July 1856 a charter is issued  
creating a legislative council of twelve elected and four official  
members, *iii* 268

REPRESENTATIVE LEGISLATIVE ASSEMBLY:

fruitless efforts of the Cape colonists to obtain, *ii* 46; petition  
for, *ii* 48; in 1853 is granted by the imperial authorities,  
*iii* 135 *et seq.*

REPRISAL FOR THEFTS BY XOSAS:

system as initiated by Lord Charles Somerset, *ii* 3; as modified  
by General Bourke, *ii* 4; as further modified by Sir Lowry  
Cole, *ii* 5; as still further modified by Sir Benjamin D'Urban,  
*ii* 49

RESIDENT MAGISTRATES:

on the 1st of January 1828 take the place of landdrosts in the  
Cape Colony, *i* 492; powers of, *ib.*; in 1834 the office is  
united with that of civil commissioner, *ii* 44

RESPONSIBLE PARLIAMENTARY GOVERNMENT:

proceedings in the Cape parliament concerning, *iii* 150, 155, 156,  
and *iv* 32 and 33; opinions concerning, *iii* 154; debate in  
1871 in the Cape parliament concerning the introduction of,  
*iv* 123 *et seq.*; in 1872 is introduced in the Cape Colony, *iv*  
146; see Constitution

## RETIEF, PIETER:

early life of, *ii* 304; is married to the widow of J. C. Greyling, who in December 1811 was murdered with Landdrost Stockenström by Xosas of the Imidange clan, *ii* 118; publishes a declaration of the causes of the great emigration, *ii* 266; he is leader of the fourth party of emigrant farmers from the Cape Colony, *ii* 304; in April 1837 arrives in the neighbourhood of Thaba Ntshu, *ib.*; on the 17th of April 1837 is elected administrative head of two large parties of the emigrants, but does not then assume office, *ii* 305; on the 6th of June is installed in office as governor and commandant-general of the largest section of the emigrant farmers, *ii* 306; arranges matters of administration, *ii* 308; offers peace to Moselekatse, who takes no notice of the proposal, *ii* 317; in July 1837 writes to Sir Benjamin D'Urban asking that the emigrants may be considered an independent people, to which no reply can then be given, *ii* 352; early in October with a party of emigrants sets out on a preliminary visit to Natal, *ii* 354; is warmly welcomed by the English residents at Durban, *ib.*; visits Dingana at Umkungunhlovu, *ii* 355; and receives a promise of a grant of land on condition of recovering some cattle that have been stolen from the Zulus by Sikonyela's Batlokua, *ib.*; in December returns to the Caledon and compels Sikonyela to surrender his spoil, *ii* 356; with sixty-six companions and some Hottentot servants proceeds to Dingana's residence with the recovered cattle, *ii* 358; and there, on the 6th of February 1838, all are murdered, *ii* 360

## REVENUE OF THE CAPE COLONY:

in 1796, *i* 29; 1797 to 1802, *i* 41; 1803 to 1806, *i* 134; 1806 to 1835, *ii* 31; particulars concerning the various taxes levied between 1836 and 1850, *ii* 202; average yearly receipts during quinquennial periods from 1836 to 1850, *ii* 206; revenue in 1854 and 1855, *iii* 141; from 1856 to 1861; *iii* 170; from 1862 to 1867, *iv* 36; from 1868 to 1872, *iv* 152

## REVENUE OF NATAL:

from 1846 to 1856, *iii* 263 and 264; in 1872, *iv* 175

## REVENUE OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:

in 1870, 1871, and 1872, *iv* 384

## REVENUE OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

sources of, according to the constitution of January 1857, *iii* 425

## REVENUE OF BRITISH KAFFRARIA:

in 1861, *iv* 18

REVENUE OF BASUTOLAND:

particulars concerning, *v* 68; revenue in the year ending 31st of May 1872, *v* 79

REVERSAL OF BRITISH POLICY IN SOUTH AFRICA REGARDING THE RESTRICTION OF TERRITORY:

particulars concerning, *iv* 302

REX, GEORGE:

builds a brig at the Knysna, *ii* 134

REX, JOHN:

at the close of 1836 and beginning of 1837 lands and ships goods at the mouth of the Buffalo river, *ii* 135

DE REZENDE, JOÃO, AGENT OF THE MOZAMBIQUE COMPANY AT ANDRADA:

mention of, *v* 155 and 158

RHENISH MISSIONARY SOCIETY:

in 1829 commences to labour in South Africa, *ii* 84; particulars concerning its work in Great Namaqualand and Hereroland, *v* 95 to 97, and 99

RHENIUS, JOHAN ISAAC:

on the 10th of October 1795 becomes receiver and treasurer-general of the Cape Colony, *i* 2

RHODES, CECIL JOHN:

mention of, *iv* 158

RIBEIRO, DIONISIO ANTONIO, CAPTAIN OF THE FORT AT LOURENÇO MARQUES:

in October 1833 is murdered by the Matshangana and his whole force perishes, *v* 138

RICE:

in 1805 is cultivated in the Cape Colony, *i* 170 and 171

RICE, RIGHT HON. J. SPRING:

from July to December 1834 is secretary of state for the colonies, *ii* 141

RICHARDSON, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL, OF THE 7TH DRAGOONS:

in 1845 is sent in command of a body of troops to assist Adam Kok against the emigrant farmers, *ii* 490; on the 30th of April 1846 acts in a very inglorious manner at the Beka, near Fort Peddie, *iii* 10

RICHMOND, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in March 1848 is created, *iii* 70



## RICHMOND, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT:

in October 1843 the first consistory is appointed, *ii* 246

## RICHMOND, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in April 1844 is founded, *ii* 246

## RICHMOND, VILLAGE IN NATAL:

in 1850 is founded, *iii* 263

## RIEBEEK EAST, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT:

on the 9th of March 1830 the civil commissioner of Albany is directed by the governor to nominate the first elders and deacons, who are installed in January 1831, *ii* 216; on the 22nd of April 1831 the presbytery of Graaff-Reinet appoints a consulent, *ib.*; on the 28th of November 1838 the governor appoints the reverend John Pears resident clergyman, *ib.*; and on the 2nd of April 1839 he commences duty, *ib.*

## RIEBEEK EAST, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in 1840 is founded, *ii* 216; in April 1846 is abandoned owing to the Xosa invasion, but is shortly afterwards reoccupied, *iii* 7

## VAN DER RIET, J. W.:

on the 10th of September 1819 is appointed landdrost of George in succession to Mr. Van Kervel, who retires; in January 1828 becomes civil commissioner of Uitenhage and George, *i* 492; in 1834 becomes civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Uitenhage, *ii* 44

## VAN DER RIET, RYNO JOHANNES:

in November 1795 becomes landdrost of Stellenbosch, *i* 4; in July 1812 is appointed sequestrator, *i* 271

## VAN DER RIET, REV. T. J.:

in May 1845 becomes the first resident clergyman of Mossel Bay, *ii* 249

## RIOTS AT THE DIAMOND-FIELDS:

account of, *iv* 397, 403, 416, and 417

## RITTER, JOHAN CHRISTIAN:

is the owner of the first printing press in the Cape Colony, *i* 117

## RIVERS, HARRY:

in December 1821 becomes landdrost of Albany, *i* 374; in January 1825 is transferred to Swellendam, *i* 391; in January 1828 becomes civil commissioner of Swellendam, *i* 492; in 1834 becomes civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Swellendam, *ii* 44; on the 7th of December 1841 becomes treasurer-general

of the Cape Colony, *ii* 215; when assisting in the preparation of the constitution is in favour of a nominated legislative council, *iii* 126

RIVERS OF NATAL:

description of, *iii* 259

RIVERSDALE, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in March 1848 is created, *iii* 70

RIVERSDALE, DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT:

in June 1839 the first consistory commences duty, *ii* 217

RIVERSDALE, VILLAGE OF:

in 1838 is founded, *ii* 217

ROAD BOARDS:

constitution of, *ii* 230; in November 1843 are first created in the Cape Colony, *ii* 231

ROBB, CAPTAIN, OF THE *LEDA*:

in 1834 commences to bring merino rams from New South Wales to the Cape Colony, *ii* 41; in 1835 and 1836 brings Angora goats to the Cape, *ib.*

ROBBERY, INDISCRIMINATE:

in 1857 is resorted to by some of the starving Xosas and Tembus, *iii* 206

ROBERTSON, CAPTAIN R. J. E.:

in 1855 is appointed magistrate with the Xosa chief Anta, *iii* 190

ROBERTSON, WILLIAM, LATER REV. DR.:

in July 1822 arrives from Scotland, and is appointed teacher of the high school at Graaff-Reinet, *i* 371; afterwards enters the ministry, and in November 1831 becomes the first resident clergyman of the Dutch reformed church at Clanwilliam, *i* 407; at the end of 1848 goes on a mission to the emigrants north of the Orange, *iii* 297; has an interview with the reverend Dr. Livingstone at Magalisberg, of which he gives an account, *iii* 393

ROBOSI: see Lewanika

RODRIGUEZ, ISLAND OF:

in July 1809 is taken possession of by British forces, *i* 241

ROGGEVELD, THE, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

description of, *i* 162 and 167; mode of living in 1805 of the white inhabitants of, *i* 162, 163, and 164

**ROLLAND, EMILE :**

in 1871 is appointed assistant magistrate of the district of Thaba Bosigo, *v* 71

**ROLLAND, REV. SAMUEL, OF THE PARIS EVANGELICAL SOCIETY :**

in 1829 endeavours to form a mission station with the Bahurutsi at Mosega, *i* 468 ; in 1830 is obliged by the advance of Moselekatse to abandon Mosega, and with his colleagues founds the station Motito, *ib.* ; in 1835 with a horde of refugees from the north founds the mission station Beersheba at Zevenfontein near the Caledon river, *ii* 297 ; see War of 1858

**ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH IN THE CAPE COLONY :**

particulars concerning, *i* 366, *ii* 224, *iii* 72, *iv* 266, *v* 80 and 166 ;  
■ mission of this church is established at Korokoro in Basutoland, *iv* 184

**ROMAN CATHOLIC WORSHIP :**

in 1805 is first publicly performed in the Cape Colony, *i* 156 ;  
in 1806 the clergymen are obliged to leave ; in January 1820 is again conducted in Capetown, *i* 367 ; ordinance of January 1830 concerning, *ib.*

**ROMAN-DUTCH LAW :**

is the fundamental law of the Cape Colony ; on the 27th of August 1845 is made the fundamental law of Natal, *ii* 461 ; is the fundamental law of the Orange Free State, *iii* 445 ; and of the South African Republic

**Roos, F. :**

in July 1838 is appointed landdrost of Port Natal, *ii* 377

**ROSS, HERCULES :**

on the 1st of October 1795 becomes acting secretary to government in the Cape Colony, *i* 2

**ROUX, REV. DR. :**

on the 10th of January 1842 becomes clergyman of the Dutch reformed congregation in Albany, and in September of the same year gives the church place the name Riebeeck East, *ii* 216

**ROUXVILLE, DISTRICT IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE :**

in May 1871 is established, *iv* 384

**ROUXVILLE, VILLAGE OF :**

in November 1863 is founded, *iv* 210

**ROYAL AFRICAN CORPS :**

in July 1817 arrives in South Africa, *i* 327 ; as there is ■ intention to disband this regiment, in June 1821 Sir Rufane Donkin attempts to form ■ settlement with it in the territory

between the Beka and Fish rivers, *i* 361; but the settlers are soon obliged to abandon that territory, *i* 375; the corps is partly disbanded in South Africa, and the remnant is sent to Sierra Leone, *i* 387

**RUSSELL, LORD JOHN :**

on the 3rd of September 1839 becomes secretary of state for the colonies, *ii* 183; on the 3rd of September 1841 is succeeded by Lord Stanley, *ii* 188; from the 15th of May to the 21st of July 1855 is again secretary of state for the colonies, *iii* 167

**RUSSELL, WILLIAM :**

terrible fate of a party of Scotch emigrants under the leadership of, *i* 358

**RUSTENBURG, VILLAGE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC :**

in 1851 is founded, *iii* 378

**VAN RYNEVELD, DANIEL JOHANNES :**

on the 21st of July 1814 is appointed landdrost of Stellenbosch; in January 1828 becomes civil commissioner of Stellenbosch, *i* 492; in 1834 becomes civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Stellenbosch, *ii* 44

**VAN RYNEVELD, JOHANNES :**

on the 25th of March 1825 is appointed deputy landdrost of Clanwilliam in succession to Captain Walter Synnot, who resigns; in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Clanwilliam, *i* 493; in 1834 becomes assistant civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Clanwilliam, *ii* 44

**VAN RYNEVELD, WILLEM CORNELIS :**

on the 17th of April 1818 is appointed deputy landdrost of Caledon; in January 1828 becomes civil commissioner of Graaff-Reinet and Beaufort, *i* 492; in 1834 becomes civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Graaff-Reinet, *ii* 44

**VAN RYNEVELD, WILLEM STEPHANUS :**

after the English conquest in 1795 retains the office of fiscal, *i* 2; in May 1804 is appointed president of the commission to carry out improvements in agriculture and stockbreeding, *i* 158; tour of in this duty, *i* 159 *et seq.*; on the 11th of January 1806 becomes fiscal again, *i* 202; in March 1809 becomes president of the high court of justice, *i* 259; in August 1812 dies, *i* 261

**SABINA, THE, SPANISH SHIP :**

on the 7th of August 1842 is wrecked on Cape Recife, *ii* 229

**SAILORS' HOME IN CAPETOWN:**

on the 18th of September 1860 the foundation stone is laid by Prince Alfred, *iv* 5; on the 25th of April 1862 it is opened for use, *ib*.

**SAINT GEORGE'S CATHEDRAL IN CAPETOWN:**

in December 1834 is opened for worship by the English episcopalians, *ii* 18

**SAINT GEORGE'S CHURCH IN SIMONSTOWN:**

in April 1814 is opened for use, *i* 245; in July 1822 is destroyed in a great storm, *i* 408

**SAINT HELENA, ISLAND OF:**

during the captivity of the emperor Napoleon provides an excellent market for Cape produce, *i* 372

**SAINT LUCIA BAY:**

on the 5th of October 1843 is ceded to the queen of England by the Zulu chief Panda, *ii* 455

**SAINT MUNGO, THE:**

on the 20th of September 1844 is wrecked on Cape Agulhas, *ii* 244

**SAINT PAUL'S CHURCH, ENGLISH EPISCOPAL, RONDEBOSCH:**

on the 16th of February 1834 is opened for use

**SALARIES OF CIVIL SERVANTS:**

from 1808 to 1828, *i* 288; in January 1828 are greatly reduced, *i* 495; and in 1834 are still further cut down, *ii* 44

**SALDANHA BAY:**

in 1796 ■ Dutch fleet surrenders to Admiral Elphinstone in, *i* 16

**SALEM, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in 1820 is founded by British settlers, *i* 360

**SALIS, LIEUTENANT, OF THE CAPE CORPS:**

on the 29th of August 1848 is badly wounded at Boomplaats, *iii* 288

**SAMUEL, SON OF MOROKO:**

is partly educated in England, *iv* 282; upon his return to South Africa endeavours to supplant Tsepinare, the recognised heir to the chieftainship of the Barolong clan at Thaba Ntshu, *iv* 283; invites a missionary of the church of England to settle at Thaba Ntshu, *iv* 282; and causes a division of the clan, *iv* 283

**SANDILE, SON OF THE GREAT WIFE OF THE XOSA CHIEF GAIKA:**

is a little child in 1829 at the time of Gaika's death, *ii* 51; during the war of 1834-5 is living with his mother Sutu in



professed friendship with the Cape Colony, *ii* 111; early in 1840 is circumcised, *ii* 185; on the 2nd of December 1840 enters into a treaty with Sir George Napier, *ii* 187; in June 1843 promises Colonel Hare to aid in punishing the robber captain Tola, but in reality assists Tola to escape, *ii* 190; in July 1844 shelters some robbers who have murdered a farmer named De Lange, *ii* 256; but pays fifty head of cattle to the murdered man's widow, *ii* 257; on the 21st of January in the following year enters into new treaty arrangements with Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; in November 1845 consents to the erection of a fort at Blockdrift, *ii* 260; in January 1846 personally assaults and robs a trader in his country, *ii* 262; and on being called upon for redress sets the governor at defiance and withdraws his consent to the erection of a fort at Blockdrift, *ib.*; at a meeting with Lieutenant-Governor Hare, however, he tones down his remarks, and the matter is allowed to pass by, *ii* 263; immediately after this he tries to induce the Ndlambes and Tembus to join him against the Cape Colony, *ii* 264; in March 1846 declines to surrender some criminals in accordance with treaty arrangements, *iii* 2; upon which an attempt to occupy his kraal is made by a military force, and the war of the axe commences, *iii* 5; on the 18th of November he professes to agree to terms of peace, and has a location assigned to him, *iii* 37; in June 1847 only partially complies with a demand for redress of an injury, *iii* 48; and when an attempt is made to arrest him his followers resist and fire upon the patrol, *ib.*; the governor then sends him an ultimatum, which he treats with disdain, so on the 27th of August he is proclaimed a rebel, and forces are set in motion to subdue him, *ib.*; on the 19th of October he surrenders, and is sent to Grahamstown a prisoner, *iii* 52; in December he is released by Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 57; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has land assigned to him in British Kaffraria, *iii* 61; in October 1850 refuses to meet the governor in King-Williamstown, *iii* 93; and in consequence is proclaimed deposed by Sir Harry Smith, *ib.*; he retires to a thicket at the Rabula, and on the 20th of December is outlawed by the governor, *iii* 94; on the 24th of December a patrol is sent to arrest him, but is resisted and meets with heavy loss, *ib.*; in February 1853 begs for peace for himself and the other Rarabe chiefs, *iii* 113; which is granted, and on the 9th of March 1853 the terms are finally settled, *iii* 114; in 1856 declines at first to kill his cattle at the bidding of Umhlakaza, *iii* 200; but after a time gives way and takes

part in the general delusion, *iii* 201; in 1860 at the invitation of the Cape government, with Tyala, Dukwana, Festiri, and seven of his counsellors, he accompanies Prince Alfred in the *Euryalus* from Port Elizabeth to Durban and from Durban to Capetown, but without being impressed in the slightest degree by anything except the respect paid to the prince, *iv* 5; further mention of, *iv* 52; career of from 1857 to his death, *iii* 209

SAND RIVER CONVENTION, BY WHICH THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE TRANS-VAAL FARMERS IS RECOGNISED:

particulars of, *iii* 326 and 377; on the 16th of March 1852 is ratified by the volksraad at Rustenburg, *iii* 375; and on the 13th of May by Sir George Cathcart for the British government, *iii* 379

SANTA CAROLINA, ISLAND OF:

is occupied by the Portuguese, *v* 141

SARGEAUNT, WILLIAM C.:

in June 1853 becomes colonial secretary of Natal, *iii* 269

SARILI: see Krelli

SATCHELL, REV. W., WESLEYAN MISSIONARY AT BUNTINGVILLE:

at the beginning of the sixth Kaffir war takes refuge at Clarkebury, where in April 1835 he is rescued by a military patrol, *ii* 111

SAUER, JOHN:

in 1833 has a narrow escape from the Matabele in Betshuanaland, *i* 477

SAVINGS BANKS:

in June 1831 are first established in the Cape Colony, *ii* 19

SCAB (DISEASE OF SHEEP AND GOATS):

mention of, *i* 162

SCANLEN, THOMAS C., LATER SIR THOMAS, PRIME MINISTER OF THE CAPE COLONY:

proceedings in parliament of, *iv* 137 and 141

SCEPTRE, BRITISH LINE OF BATTLE SHIP:

in May 1796 arrives for service on the Cape station, *i* 12; in November 1799 is wrecked in Table Bay, *i* 69

SCHEEL KOBUS, SON OF KAUSOP, A PETTY BUSHMAN CAPTAIN:

in 1850 with his father is provided by the Sovereignty government with a location along the southern bank of the Vaal river, *iii* 310; on the death of his father succeeds to the captaincy, *iii* 485; on the abandonment of the Sovereignty in 1854 is

left in an independent position, *iii* 442; in May 1858 makes ■ raid into the Free State, *iii* 485; on the 5th of July 1858 is killed in action, *iii* 488

SCHEME OF THE COMMISSIONERS OF INQUIRY, ADOPTED BY THE MINISTRY OF THE EARL OF LIVERPOOL, FOR DIVIDING THE CAPE COLONY INTO TWO PROVINCES NEARLY INDEPENDENT OF EACH OTHER, *i* 399;

the measure is abandoned by the ministry of Mr. Canning, *i* 400

SCHPEPPMANSDORP, RHENISH MISSION STATION NEAR WALFISH BAY:

in May 1868 is plundered by Hottentots, *v* 101

SCHERING, CAPTAIN:

on the 7th of August 1884 by order of the German emperor proclaims ■ German protectorate over the coast of Great Namaqualand, *v* 125

SCHMELEN, REV. MR.:

in 1814 founds the mission station Bethany in Great Namaqualand, *v* 95

SCHOEMAN, COMMANDANT STEPHANUS:

in August 1852 accompanies an expedition against the Bapedi tribe, *iii* 387; in which he performs good service, *iii* 388; upon the retirement of Mr. A. H. Potgieter assumes the chief command, and brings hostilities to a close, *iii* 389; upon the death of Mr. P. G. Potgieter in 1854 is appointed commandant-general of Zoutpansberg, *iii* 420; in January 1857 is appointed by the representative assembly sole commandant-general of the South African Republic, *iii* 426; but declines the office, *iii* 427; signs ■ manifesto disowning the constitution of the South African Republic adopted in January 1857 by the representative assembly, *ib.*; is pronounced a rebel by the government at Potchefstroom, *ib.*; in April 1857 offers to assist the Orange Free State against President Pretorius of the South African Republic, *iii* 432; in January 1858 comes to terms with the government at Potchefstroom, and becomes sole commandant-general of the South African Republic, *iii* 440; in 1860 is one of the staunchest adherents of Mr. Pretorius, *iv* 444; in November 1860 becomes acting president of the South African Republic, *ib.*; in April 1862 is dismissed by the volksraad, *iv* 446, but refuses to give up office, *ib.*; in October 1862 is driven from Pretoria by Paul Kruger, *ib.*; makes a stand at Potchefstroom, *ib.*; but is defeated in a sortie, and is obliged to retire to the Free State, *iv* 447; upon Kruger's leaving Potchefstroom takes possession of the village again, *ib.*; after an agreement of

peace returns to Pretoria, where he again gathers ■■ armed force, *iv* 448; but in January 1863 is compelled by Kruger's vigorous action to flee to the Free State, *ib.*; is sentenced by a court to banishment and confiscation of property, *iv* 449; in May 1863 is permitted to return to the South African Republic, *ib.*; after the abandonment of Schoemansdal in the Zoutpansberg war is appointed commandant of volunteers, and in October 1867 takes the field with fifty-three men, *iv* 486; but after ■ little skirmishing these are disbanded in December at Marabastad, *iv* 487; in July 1868 is appointed diplomatic agent in Zoutpansberg, *iv* 489; and by his efforts comparative tranquillity is restored, *ib.*

SCHOEMANSDAL, VILLAGE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

description of, *iv* 477; in June 1867 is abandoned, *iv* 485; and is shortly afterwards reduced to a heap of ruins by Katlakter's people, *ib.*

SCHOLTZ, REV. ERNEST, OF THE BERLIN MISSIONARY SOCIETY:

on the 29th of November 1845 is murdered by Xosas near Fort Peddie, *ii* 261

SCHOLTZ, DR. J. W. L.:

is the first resident clergyman of Piketberg, *ii* 217

SCHOLTZ, REV. J.:

arrives from Europe, and in February 1811 becomes clergyman of Zwartland's church, *i* 269

SCHOLTZ, COMMANDANT P. E.:

in August 1852 conducts a military expedition against the Bakwena chief Setsheli, *iii* 396; in September 1853 defends the emigrant farmers against charges brought before Sir George Clerk, *iii* 358

SCHÖNNBERG, VALENTINUS ALEXIUS:

on the 26th of March 1819 is appointed landdrost of Swellendam

SCHOOLS IN THE CAPE COLONY:

in 1804 an unsuccessful effort is made by the Batavian government to establish unsectarian schools, *i* 172 *et seq.*; during the government of Sir John Cradock the schools are increased in number and in efficiency, *i* 267; in 1822 high-class schools are established in the principal colonial villages, *i* 371; statistics of schools in 1825, *i* 410; particulars concerning, *i* 422; particulars concerning the system of public education in the Cape Colony before 1839 and improvements after that date, *ii* 208; statistics of schools in 1846, *ii* 250; particulars concerning schools in 1872, *iv* 149

SCHOOLS IN NATAL:

particulars concerning, *iv* 164

SCHOOL SYSTEM OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE IN 1864:

particulars concerning, *iv* 212

SCHOOLS IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

particulars concerning, *iv* 468

SCHREUDER, REV. H., OF THE NORWEGIAN MISSION:

in 1843 arrives and establishes a mission in Zululand

SCHUTZ, REV. JAN AUGUSTUS:

in September 1803 arrives in South Africa and becomes clergyman of Swellendam, *i* 155; in September 1813 is suspended from duty and removed from Swellendam, *i* 269

SCOTCH CHURCH IN CAPETOWN:

in May 1829 is opened for public worship, *ii* 16

SCOTT, JOHN, ESQRE.:

on the 5th of November 1856 assumes duty as lieutenant-governor of Natal, *iii* 228; on the 31st of December 1864 retires

SCULLY, REV. P.:

in January 1820 is stationed in Capetown ■ Roman catholic clergyman, *i* 367

SEA SNAKE:

on the 19th of September 1869 is wrecked in Algoa Bay, *iv* 105

SEASONS, RECORD OF GOOD AND BAD IN THE GRAIN PRODUCING DISTRICTS OF THE CAPE COLONY:

1795-6 and 1796-7, *i* 23; 1797-8, *i* 40; 1798 to 1800, *i* 77; 1801, *i* 78; 1803 and 1804, *i* 190; 1805, *i* 202; 1806, *i* 214

SEBETOANE, CHIEF OF THE MAKOLOLO:

career of, *i* 442, 445, 474, 485, *v* 82 to 87; obliges the people he has subdued to learn the language that he speaks, *v* 85 and 86; to protect himself from the Matabele settles among the swamps along the river Tshobe, *v* 86; where in 1851 he is visited by the reverend Dr. Livingstone, *v* 87; in 1851 dies, *ib.*

SECOND CONVENTION OF ALIWAL NORTH:

particulars concerning, *iv* 318 *et seq.*; in December 1869 is ratified by her Majesty's government, *iv* 330; and on the 3rd of May 1870 by the volksraad of the Orange Free State, *ib.*



## SEKELETU :

in 1852 becomes chief of the Makololo tribe, *v* 88; assists the reverend Dr. Livingstone to make his celebrated journeys from Linyanti to the western and then to the eastern coast of Africa, *v* 89; treats a mission party in a cruel manner, *v* 91; in 1863 is murdered, *v* 92

## SEKHOMI, SON OF KHARI :

on his father's death becomes chief of the Bamangwato tribe of Betshuana, *v* 84; is made a prisoner by the Makololo, but after a time escapes, and gathers the remnant of his tribe together at Shoshong, *v* 85; further account of, *v* 13 to 15

## SEKUKUNI :

on the death of his father Sekwati in September 1861 succeeds as chief of the Bapedi tribe in the South African Republic, *iv* 495

## SEKWATI, CHIEF OF THE BAPEDI :

mention of, *ii* 281; in 1846 is defeated by the emigrant farmers, *ii* 505; in 1852 is again involved in war with them, *iii* 387; and is very severely chastised, *iii* 389; in November 1857 has a location assigned to him by the republic of Lydenburg, *iii* 429

## SEKWATI, SON OF THE BASUTO CAPTAIN POSHULI :

particulars concerning, *iv* 315 and 316

## SELOUS, FREDERICK COURTENEY :

mention of, *v* 155

## SENA, PORTUGUESE VILLAGE ON THE SOUTHERN BANK OF THE LOWER ZAMBESI :

condition of, *v* 139; is taken by the Matshangana, *ib.*; but some of the inhabitants who fled are allowed to return on condition of making annual presents, *ib.*; condition of in 1899, *v* 163

## SENEKAL, FREDERIK :

in the war of 1858 is elected second commandant-general of the Free State forces, *iii* 479; on the 21st of February 1856 is killed in action with the Basuto, *iv* 268

## SENZANGAKONA, CHIEF OF THE ZULU TRIBE :

mention of, *i* 434

## SEPARATION OF THE EASTERN AND WESTERN PROVINCES OF THE CAPE COLONY :

in and after 1834 is desired by the British settlers, *ii* 84, *iii* 118, 127, 134, 135, and 156; efforts to bring it about, *iv* 7 to 9, 10, 27, 141, and 143; reasons of the executive council for opposing the measure, *iii* 120

SEPARATION LEAGUE :

particulars concerning, *iv* 7

SEPARATIST REFORMED CHURCH :

in 1858 is established in the South African Republic, *iv* 436 ;

in 1861 is established in the Orange Free State, *iv* 438 ; particulars concerning, *iv* 466

SEPHTON, HEZEKIAH :

in 1820 brings a party of British settlers to the Cape Colony, 351 ; particulars concerning, *i* 360

SEPOPA :

is the leader of the Barotsi in their war of independence against the Makololo, *v* 93 ; in 1877 he is murdered, *ib.*

SERRURIER, REV. JAN PIETER :

in June 1804 retires on a pension, *i* 155 ; on the 26th of September 1815 delivers his last public address on the occasion of the opening of the orphan asylum in Capetown, *i* 286

SERRURIER, J. P. :

in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Simonstown, *i* 493

SETSHELL, SON OF MOKWASELE :

is raised to the chieftainship of the Bakwena tribe of Betshuana by Sebetoane, *v* 84 ; after the flight of Moselekatse from the emigrant farmers collects the remnant of his people together and settles with them in the country occupied by their fathers, *iii* 390 ; in the winter of 1852 sets the government of the South African Republic at defiance, *iii* 395 ; gives protection to a offender named Moselele who has made his escape from the Marikwa district, *ib.* ; in consequence of which a military expedition is sent against him, *iii* 396 ; he is obliged to abandon his kraal near Kolobeng, *iii* 398 ; and otherwise suffers severely in the contest, *iii* 399 ; requests President Pretorius to obtain a missionary for him, *iii* 438 ; in 1857 a Hanoverian missionary goes to reside with him, *iii* 439 ; in September 1857 has a supply of ammunition for hunting purposes allowed him by the volksraad of the South African Republic, *ib.* ; in 1859 assists the Bamangwato to expel Matsheng, *v* 14 ; afterwards gives Matsheng shelter, *v* 15 ; in 1866 gives shelter to Sekhomi, the rival of Matsheng, *ib.* ; in 1872 assists Khama to expel Matsheng the second time, *ib.*

SETTLEMENT OF THE TERRITORY BETWEEN THE FISH AND KOONAP RIVERS :

particulars concerning, *i* 395

SEYMOUR, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL CHARLES:

is military secretary to Sir George Cathcart, *iii* 117

SEYMOUR, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

foundation of, *iii* 117

SHAND, REV. ROBERT:

in November 1835 becomes clergyman of Tulbagh, *ii* 220; is the cause of a division of the congregation, *ib.*

SHAW, REV. BARNABAS:

in April 1816 arrives in South Africa and founds a mission station at Kamiesberg in connection with the Wesleyan society, *i* 319

SHAW, REV. WILLIAM, OF THE WESLEYAN SOCIETY:

in 1820 comes to South Africa as a clergyman with a party of British settlers, *i* 351; in 1823 founds the station Wesleyville with the Gunukwebes, *i* 409; through his agency the Gunukwebes regain possession of the land between the Keiskama and Beka rivers, *ii* 5

SHEEP:

number of in 1865 in the Cape Colony, *iv* 43

SHEPSTONE, JOHN:

in April 1857 leads one of the parties sent against the rebel chief Sidoyi in Natal, *iii* 243; a few months later commands the force sent against the rebel chief Matyana, *iii* 245

SHEPSTONE, THEOPHILUS (LATER SIR THEOPHILUS):

shortly after the beginning of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 guides a party of volunteers to Wesleyville to rescue the white people who have taken refuge there, *ii* 99; after serving as an interpreter during the war is appointed clerk to the agent-general, *ii* 130; in December 1836 acts as interpreter for Lieutenant-Governor Stockenstrom when concluding treaties with the Xosa and Fingo chiefs, *ii* 152; in November 1838 accompanies a military force to Port Natal as Kaffir interpreter, *ii* 384; in February 1839 succeeds Mr. J. M. Bowker as diplomatic agent with the Fingos and Gunukwebes, *ii* 190; in June 1843 assists in an unsuccessful expedition against the robber captain Tola, *ii* 191; in October and November 1844 proceeds to Butterworth to obtain Kreli's mark to a treaty, *ii* 257; and to Pondoland to obtain Faku's mark to another, *ii* 457; in November 1845 ceases to be diplomatic agent at Fort Peddie, *ii* 261; as he is appointed agent for natives in Natal, *ii* 462; on the 30th of July 1853 becomes secretary for native affairs in Natal, *iii* 238; in 1854 proposes to create a great Bantu state in the

territory now called Griqualand East with himself as its head, *iii* 239; but Sir George Grey successfully opposes the scheme, *iii* 240; in 1861 visits Zululand as agent of the Natal government, and recognises Ketshwayo as lawful heir of Panda, *iv* 14

**SHEPSTONE, REV. WILLIAM, WESLEYAN MISSIONARY:**

assists in the negotiations by which the war with the Xosas in 1834-5 is brought to an end, *ii* 123; after the conclusion of peace occupies the mission station Wesleyville, *ii* 131

**SHEPSTONE, W. G. B.:**

from May 1860 to September 1861 is special magistrate at Idutywa, *iv* 45

**SHILOH MISSION STATION:**

in 1828 is founded by the Moravian society, *ii* 52; after the abandonment of Clarkebury in April 1835 is the only mission station left in any part of Kaffirland, *ii* 111; in February 1851 is abandoned by the missionaries, and is destroyed by rebels, *iii* 102

**SHIPPING ENTERING CAPE PORTS:**

statistics of in 1800, 1854, and 1855, *iii* 142

**SHIPS THAT PUT INTO TABLE BAY:**

from 1796 to 1799, *i* 41; from 1806 to 1835, *ii* 43

**SHIPS OF WAR ON THE CAPE STATION:**

particulars concerning, *i* 6, 12, 13, 24, 42, 46, 49, 72, 109, 217, 240, 242, 244, and 273

**SHIPWRECKS IN TABLE BAY:**

in November 1799 the British ship of war *Sceptre* is lost, when nearly three hundred men perish, *i* 69; at the same time a Danish man-of-war and several merchant ships are lost, *i* 70; in November 1805 three American ships and a French frigate are driven on shore in a violent gale, *i* 188; in July 1822 eight vessels are lost in a great storm, *i* 381; in July 1831 six ships are driven ashore in a gale, *ii* 18; for further disasters of the kind see *ii* 229, 230, and 253

**SHIPWRECKS ON THE COAST OF SOUTH AFRICA: see Wrecks**

**SICKNESS AMONG THE TROOPS ON THE FRONTIER IN 1846-7:**

causes of, *iii* 34

**SIDOYI, A PETTY CHIEF IN NATAL:**

in 1857 kills another petty chief named Umshukungubo, *iii* 242; and declines to appear at Maritzburg to answer for his conduct, *iii* 243; an armed force is therefore sent against him, when

he flees into Pondoland, *ib.*; he is then outlawed, and a new chief is set over the part of his clan that remains in Natal, *iii* 244

SIGCAWU, PETTY XOSA CAPTAIN:

expedition against and death of, *ii* 53 and 54

SIGCAWU, GREAT SON OF KRELI:

particulars concerning, *iv* 56; succeeds his father as head of the Xosa tribe, but has very little real power, *iii* 209

SIKONYELA, CHIEF OF THE BATLOKUA, SON OF THE CELEBRATED MA NTATISI:

in 1821 is circumcised when he is about sixteen or seventeen years of age, *i* 441; notifies that he has become a man by the murder of a Hlubi refugee named Motsholi, *ib.*; and by so doing draws an army of avengers into the country west of the Drakensberg, *ib.*; takes part in devastating the country along the Caledon, *i* 445; after the retirement of the invading hordes collects various fragments of mountain tribes together, who take the name Batlokua, and settle along the upper Caledon, *i* 463; makes an agreement of friendship with Pieter Retief, *ii* 308; in December 1837 is compelled by Pieter Retief to surrender some cattle which his people have stolen from Dingana, *ii* 356; in March 1846 agrees to submit his dispute with Moshesh to the judgment of a commission to be appointed by the governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 499; in 1847 renews hostilities with Moshesh, *ii* 501; with whose people he afterwards carries on an unceasing warfare, *iii* 299; in September 1850 comes in conflict with the government of the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 314; but makes his peace with Major Warden, and joins his forces with those of the British resident against the Basuto, *iii* 315; in May 1852 is reduced to such extremities by Moshesh that he is compelled to sue for peace, *iii* 331; in September 1853 is conquered by Moshesh and loses the whole of his territory, *iii* 354; retires to Bloemfontein and subsequently to the present district of Herschel, where in 1856 he dies in obscurity, *ib.*

SIKUNYANA, CHIEF OF THE NWANDWE:

manages to escape when his tribe is destroyed by Tshaka, *ii* 331

SILK:

experiments in the production of in the Cape Colony, *iv* 112

SIMON'S BAY:

after 1814 is the headquarters of the British squadron on the Cape station, *i* 273; in August 1860 a patent slip is opened for use, *iii* 169



**SIMONSTOWN, DISTRICT OF:**

in May 1814 is formed, *i* 306; in 1834 is joined to the Cape, *ii* 44; in March 1848 again becomes a separate district, *iii* 70

**SIMONSTOWN:**

on the 30th of July 1837 the new English church is opened for worship

**SIREN, THE:**

in August 1855 is the first ship to sail direct from Natal to England with colonial produce, *iii* 266

**SIR LOWRY'S PASS:**

in 1830 the road thus named over the Hottentots-Holland mountains is opened for use, *ii* 24

**SITAMBA, A XOSA:**

at the commencement of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 performs an act of great humanity, *ii* 91

**SIWANI, GREAT SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF DUSHANE:**

on his father's death in 1828 is left a minor, *ii* 51; during the war of 1834-5 lives with his mother Nonibe in professed friendship with the Cape Colony, *ii* 111; on the 2nd of January 1845 enters into a treaty with Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; in May 1846 takes part with the rest of the Xosa tribe against the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; in November surrenders, *iii* 37; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has a location assigned to him in British Kaffraria, *iii* 61; in the war of 1850-52 aids the Cape Colony, *iii* 100; in 1856 refuses to kill his cattle at the bidding of Umhlakaza, *iii* 200; further particulars concerning, *iii* 214

**SIYOLO, RIGHT HAND SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF DUSHANE:**

on his father's death in 1828 tries to gain as much power as possible during the minority of his brother Siwani, *ii* 51; allies himself with the Gaikas, *ii* 56; in December 1834 sends his followers to invade and lay waste the frontier districts of the Cape Colony, *ii* 90; continues the conflict until the 17th of September 1835, when he agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 125; on the 5th of March 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; in August 1837 attacks the Fingos at Fort Peddie and plunders them, *ii* 157; on the 31st of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 188; from May to November 1846 takes an active part in the war against the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; on the 7th of January

1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has a tract of land assigned to him in British Kaffraria, *iii* 61; in the war of 1850-52 takes part against the Cape Colony, *iii* 100; on the 9th of October 1852 surrenders to Colonel Maclean, *iii* 112; career of after 1852, *iii* 214

SLACHTER'S NEK REBELLION IN 1815:

account of, *i* 289 *et seq.*

SLANG RIVER SETTLEMENT IN TEMBULAND:

account of, *iv* 56

SLAVE INSURRECTION:

particulars of a petty insurrection in 1808 of slaves in the Cape district, *i* 222

SLAVE LODGE IN CAPETOWN:

after 1810 is gradually converted into public offices, *i* 221

SLAVERY AMONG THE BETSHUANA:

particulars concerning, *i* 188, 228, and 473

SLAVES:

particulars concerning the importation and treatment of in the Cape Colony, *i* 31, 40, 84, *ii* 61; particulars concerning the transfer of government slaves in 1803, *i* 112; last importation of, *i* 220; particulars concerning Sir John Cradock's enactment with regard to baptized slaves, *i* 268; slaves are not allowed to be employed by the British settlers in Albany, *i* 373; details of the various enactments after April 1816 concerning the relationship between masters and slaves, *ii* 63 *et seq.*; proposal by Lord Charles Somerset for the extinction of slavery, *ii* 66; proposals by the colonists for the extinction of slavery, *ii* 68; irritation caused by orders in council which cannot be carried out, *ii* 69; establishment of a society for aiding slaves to obtain their freedom, *ii* 73; particulars of the imperial emancipation act, under which on the 1st of December 1834 slavery ceased to exist in the British dominions everywhere, *ib.*; method of conducting the appraisalment of the slaves, *ii* 75; number and value of the slaves in the Cape Colony on the day of emancipation, *ib.*; number of the slaves in each division of the Cape Colony in November 1834, *ii* 271; slaves become free if their masters remove them beyond the colonial boundary, *ii* 275; manner in which the 1st of December 1834 was observed in the Cape Colony, *ii* 75; particulars concerning the treatment of the late slaves, now apprentices for four years, *ii* 76; widespread misery caused by the emancipation of the slaves without adequate compensation to the owners, *ii* 77; present condition of the descendants of the slaves, *ii* 78

SLAVE TRADE FROM PORTUGUESE SOUTH AFRICA :

particulars concerning, *v* 128, 132, 133, 141, 142, and 164

SMALL-POX :

mention of, *i* 161; in 1805 is prevalent in the country north of the Orange river, *i* 186; in 1807 there are three mild cases in Capetown, and from March to September 1812 there is an outbreak which causes great alarm, but which does not occasion very many deaths, *i* 258; in 1840 causes great loss of life in the Cape Colony, *ii* 192; in 1858 and 1859 it is again prevalent in the Cape Colony, *iii* 177

SMELLEKAMP, JOHAN ARNAUD :

on the 24th of March 1842 arrives at Port Natal as supercargo of the Dutch trading brig *Brazilia*, *ii* 419; is sent back to Holland by the volksraad of Natal to negotiate a treaty placing the republic under the protection of the king of the Netherlands and to procure clergymen and schoolmasters, *ii* 420; when passing through the Cape Colony with this object is arrested and confined for being without a pass, but is soon released and allowed to embark for Europe, *ib.*; receives no countenance from the government of Holland, *ii* 444; returns to South Africa as director of a trading company, but on arriving at Natal on the 8th of May 1843 is not permitted by the English authorities to land his goods or to communicate with the farmers, *ii* 445; proceeds to Delagoa Bay, where he remains some time, *ib.*; in December 1843 is visited at Lourenço Marques by some emigrant farmers through whom he sends advice to the great body of the emigrants to move to the northeast and open communication with the outer world through Delagoa Bay, *ii* 456; afterwards gives the same advice to Commandant Hendrik Potgieter, who acts upon it, *ib.*; then proceeds to Holland, but after a few years returns to South Africa, *ii* 457; in 1854 is fined for alleged slander and is banished from the South African Republic, *iii* 414; but by one of the clauses in the treaty of union between Lydenburg and the South African Republic in April 1860 these sentences are reversed, *iv* 442; in August 1855 becomes landdrost of Bloemfontein, *iii* 467; but in October 1856 retires from that office, *ib.*; and until his death in May 1866 practises as a law agent at Bloemfontein, *ib.*

SMIT, ERASMUS, AN OLD MISSIONARY TEACHER :

particulars concerning, *ii* 305; in 1837 is engaged by Pieter Retief to conduct public worship for the emigrant farmers, *ii* 308

SMITH, REV. ALEXANDER :

in July 1823 arrives from Scotland, and is appointed clergyman of Uitenhage, *i* 370

SMITH, DR. ANDREW :

in 1823 founds in Capetown a museum of specimens of South African animals, *i* 380; which falls into decay after he leaves the colony, *ib.*; in 1834 he visits the Zulu chief Dingan, *ii* 338; and is a witness of that despot's ferocity, *ib.*; in 1835 explores the territory along the upper Limpopo, *ii* 287; and has very friendly interviews with various chiefs and captains north of the Orange river, *ii* 297

SMITH, CHARLES ABERCROMBIE (LATER SIR CHARLES):

in 1871 is a member of the federation commission, *iv* 128; proceedings in the Cape parliament of, *iv* 138; in November 1872 becomes commissioner of crown lands and public works under responsible government, *iv* 147

SMITH, SIR HARRY :

as a lieutenant-colonel in the army in March 1829 becomes deputy-quartermaster-general at the Cape, *ii* 94; on the 1st of January 1835 leaves Capetown, and in less than six days rides on horseback to Grahamstown to organise measures of defence against Xosa invaders of the colony, *ib.*; levies large numbers of Hottentots to aid the soldiers and burghers, *ii* 95; on the 11th of February at the head of a division of the army crosses the Fish river to attack the Kaffirs, *ii* 101; after the arrival of Sir Benjamin D'Urban on the frontier is second in command of the forces, *ii* 102; in May is in command of a patrol when the paramount chief Hintsä is killed, *ii* 115; from the 11th of June to the conclusion of peace in September has direct command of the forces in the field, *ii* 121; is left in King-Williamstown with military control over the province of Queen Adelaide, *ii* 129; on the 13th of September 1836 lays down his charge in the province, *ii* 148; in January 1837 attains the rank of colonel in the army, *ii* 172; in June 1840 leaves South Africa to take up the appointment of adjutant general of the army in India, *iii* 54; on the 28th of January 1846 wins the victory of Aliwal against the Sikhs, *ib.*; shortly afterwards returns to England, and is then appointed governor of the Cape Colony, high commissioner, and commander-in-chief of the forces, *ib.*; on the 1st of December 1847 arrives in Capetown and takes the oaths of office, *iii* 55; eleven days later leaves for the frontier, *ib.*; on the 17th of December 1847 issues a proclamation greatly extending the boundary of the

Cape Colony, *iii* 56; on the 23rd of December proclaims the territory between the new colonial boundary and the river Kei a British province under the title of British Kaffraria, *iii* 57; on the same day receives the submission of the lately hostile chiefs, *ib.*; on the 7th of January 1848 holds a great meeting with the Xosa and Tembu chiefs at King-Williamstown, and announces the arrangements for the government of the province, *iii* 61; in January 1848 visits the country north of the Orange river, *iii* 270; on the 25th of this month obtains the signature of Adam Kok to a document which destroys the old treaties, *iii* 273; and on the 27th induces Moshesh to attach his mark to a document of the same tendency, *iii* 275; then proceeds to Natal, and in February 1848 at the foot of the Drakensberg has an interview with a body of emigrant farmers, *ib.*; finds them abandoning that territory in the greatest distress, *iii* 252; but makes arrangements in accordance with which many families settle there permanently, *ib.*; on the 3rd of February 1848 from their camp proclaims the queen's sovereignty over the territory between the Orange and Vaal rivers, *iii* 277; on the 29th of March publishes a manifesto against agitators in that country, *iii* 279; on the 22nd of July learns that Major Warden has been expelled from the Orange River Sovereignty by Commandant-General Pretorius, *iii* 283; at once sends forward all the troops available, and follows to take command in person, *ib.*; on the 26th of August musters his forces on the northern bank of the Orange, *iii* 284; on the 29th defeats the emigrant farmers at Boomplaats, *iii* 289; on the 2nd of September issues a proclamation confiscating the property of all who have been in arms against the queen's authority, *iii* 292; on the 7th at Winburg makes arrangements for the temporary government of the Sovereignty, *iii* 293; then returns to Cape-town, *iii* 295; on the 14th of March 1849 proclaims regulations for the permanent government of the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 298; on the 14th of January 1852 is recalled by Earl Grey, *iii* 107; on the 31st of March 1852 is succeeded as governor and high commissioner by Sir George Cathcart, *iii* 379; on the 7th of April bids the troops in Kaffraria farewell, *iii* 108; on the 17th of the same month embarks in the steam frigate *Gladiator*, and on the following morning sails for England, *ib.*; see also War of 1850-52

SMITH, CAPTAIN THOMAS CHARLTON, OF THE 27TH REGIMENT:

in January 1841 is sent in command of a military force to form a camp on the Umgazi river for the protection of the Pondo chief Faku, *ii* 412; in December of the same year is instructed



by Sir George Napier to move on and occupy Port Natal, *ii* 415; on the 1st of April 1842 leaves the Umgazi for that purpose, *ii* 418; and on the 4th of May forms a camp close to Durban, *ib.*; on the night of the 23rd of May marches from his camp to attack the farmers assembled at Kongela, but is beaten back with heavy loss, *ii* 423; on the 31st of May his camp is invested by the farmers under Commandant-General Pretorius, *ii* 425; he holds out until the 26th of June, when a relieving force under Colonel Cloete arrives from Cape-town, *ii* 429; upon Colonel Cloete's departure in July he is again left in command of the troops in Natal with the rank of major, *ii* 440; on the 31st of August 1843 occupies Maritzburg with troops, *ii* 452; in August 1845 is succeeded in command in Natal by Lieutenant-Colonel E. F. Boys, *ii* 461; is offered the situation of British resident in Adam Kok's country, but declines, *it*, *ii* 494; in November of this year is appointed agent-general and frontier commissioner, and is stationed at Fort Beaufort, *ii* 262; after the outbreak of war in 1846 the office is abolished, *iii* 36

**SMITHFIELD, VILLAGE IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

in November 1849 is founded, *iii* 294

**SMYTH, CAPTAIN J. CARMICHAEL:**

in January 1806 becomes acting secretary to the government of the Cape Colony, *i* 212

**SNYMAN, ESAIAS RYNIER:**

is acting president of the Orange Free State during the interval between the retirement of Mr. Boshof and the installation of Mr. Pretorius, *iv* 182

**SNYMAN, JACOBUS THEODORUS:**

in 1844 is head of a party of emigrant farmers in the valley of the Caledon river who are favourable to British rule, *ii* 487; and who profess to hold their lands from Moshesh, *ii* 491; in August 1848 he assists the British forces under Sir Harry Smith against the emigrant farmers under Commandant-General Pretorius, *iii* 285; in September of this year is appointed a member of the war tribute commission, *iii* 294; and in June 1849 becomes a member of the legislative council of the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 299

**SOFALA, THE FIRST SETTLEMENT OF THE PORTUGUESE IN SOUTH AFRICA:**

condition of in 1823, *v* 133; condition of in 1836, *v* 139; is destroyed by the Matshangana, *ib.*; condition of in 1899, *v* 163

SOGA, REV. TIYO:

■ a boy in 1846 goes to Scotland on the outbreak of the seventh Kaffir war, *iii* 8; and studies there for the ministry of the united presbyterian church; is stationed as a missionary in Sandile's location; accompanies Prince Alfred in the *Euryalus* from Durban to Capetown, *iv* 5

SOLOMON, SAUL:

proceedings in the Cape parliament of, *iv* 72, 82, 96, 108, 137, 145, 398, and 400

SOMERSET, LADY, FIRST WIFE OF LORD CHARLES SOMERSET:

in September 1815 dies in Capetown, and is buried under the pavement of the old Dutch church, *i* 280

SOMERSET, CAPTAIN HENRY, SON OF GOVERNOR LORD CHARLES SOMERSET:

in 1820 quarrels with Sir Rufane Donkin, *i* 368; on the 28th of December 1821 is appointed resident of Simonstown in succession to Mr. Jan Hendrik Brand, *i* 369; (major) in October 1823 succeeds to the command of the Cape regiment, *i* 386; (lieutenant-colonel) in December 1825 conducts an expedition into Kaffirland, *ii* 2; in 1828 with a mixed force of soldiers and burghers goes to the assistance of the Xosas and Tembus against the Amangwane, *i* 453; and on the 27th of August in an engagement utterly breaks the power of the marauding tribe, *i* 454; in May 1829 drives Makoma from the Kat river over the Tyumie, *ii* 8; in December 1834 demands and obtains redress from the chief Eno for an act of violence, *ii* 88; after the outbreak of the sixth Kaffir war drives the invaders out of the colony, *ii* 100; on the 11th of February 1835 attacks the Xosas in the thickets of the Fish river, *ii* 101; in March commands one of the four divisions of the army which enters Kaffirland, *ii* 102; in November 1835 reports upon the causes of disaffection among the farmers, *ii* 268; in April 1846 is sent with a military force to occupy Sandile's kraal at Burnshill, *iii* 5; but loses the greater part of his waggon train and is obliged to retreat, *iii* 6; in May with the Cape corps drives the Xosas out of the colony, *iii* 11; on the 1st of June succeeds in provisioning Fort Peddie, *iii* 14; on the 8th of June at the Gwanga inflicts a very severe blow upon the clans of Umhala and Siyolo, *iii* 15; in July and August commands the second division of the army of operations, *iii* 18; in September scours the country between the Keiskama and Gonubie rivers, *iii* 33; ■ the 7th of January 1847 is left by Sir

Peregrine Maitland in command of all the forces in the field, *iii* 39; upon the arrival of Sir George Berkeley transfers the chief command to him, but serves with distinction till the close of the war, *iii* 40; on the 29th of December 1850 fails in an attempt to relieve Fort Cox, *iii* 99; (major-general) on the 22nd of February 1851 recovers Fort Armstrong from the rebels, *iii* 104; in December 1851 commands one of the columns that invade Galekaland, *iii* 106; commands a column directed to scour the Kroome mountains, *iii* 110; and in September 1852 carries out that duty, *iii* 112

#### SOMERSET, LORD CHARLES:

on the 6th of April 1814 becomes governor of the Cape Colony, *i* 275; on the 13th of January 1820 sails for England on leave of absence, *i* 320; on the 30th of November 1821 reaches the colony again and resumes the government, *i* 368; by his arbitrary conduct gives rise to much discontent, *i* 410; burdens the colony with a very expensive establishment, *ib.*; after 1821 does not give such satisfaction to the secretary of state ■ before that time, *i* 411; his conduct occupies a good deal of attention in the house of commons, *i* 412; he is recalled to England by the secretary of state to give explanations concerning various matters, *i* 425; on the 5th of March 1826 leaves the colony, *ib.*; in April 1827 resigns his situation as governor, *i* 426; the charges of tyranny against him are therefore not pressed in the house of commons, *ib.*; on the 21st of February 1831 he dies at Brighton, *i* 427

#### SOMERSET EAST, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in March 1825 is created, *i* 394; in 1834 it is reduced to a sub-district for fiscal purposes, and is attached to Albany, *ii* 44; in July 1837 it is again separated from Albany, *ii* 165

#### SOMERSET EAST, VILLAGE OF:

in April 1825 is founded, *i* 394; in January 1826 is first provided with a clergyman, *i* 370; in February 1837 becomes ■ municipality, *ii* 167

#### SOMERSET FARM AT THE BOSCHBERG, THE SITE OF THE PRESENT VILLAGE OF SOMERSET EAST:

in 1814 is established, *i* 281; in 1817 it becomes a commissariat dépôt, *ib.*; in March 1825 the establishment is broken up, *i* 394

#### SOMERSET HOSPITAL, THE NEW:

in 1859 the building at Mouille Point is commenced, *iii* 170

SOMERSET WEST, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in 1822 is founded, *i* 316; and in the same year is provided with  
■ clergyman, *ib.*

SOMERVILLE, DR. WILLIAM:

in April 1800 is sent as assistant commissioner to the eastern frontier of the Cape Colony, *i* 72; in 1801 visits the Batlapin country, *i* 98 *et seq.*

SOMERVILLE, MRS. MARY, WIFE OF THE ABOVE:

reference to, *i* 99

SONTO, SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF ENO:

in May 1846 takes part in an invasion of the Cape Colony, *iii* 8;  
on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has ground assigned to him in British Kaffraria, *iii* 61

SOTSHANGANA, ALIAS MANIKUSA, CHIEF OF A HORDE OF BANTU CALLED AFTER HIM THE MATSHANGANA:

flee from Tshaka and after defeating the Angoni commits awful ravages among the tribes between Delagoa Bay and the Zambesi, *i* 439; in August 1828 compels a Zulu army to retire from the country he occupies, *ii* 335; in 1854 is master of the present Portuguese possessions south of the Zambesi, *iii* 411; where he is a cruel tyrant to the earlier inhabitants, *ib.*; further particulars of the career of, *i* 485, *v* 131, 138, 139, and 140; see Matshangana tribe

DE SOUSA, MANUEL ANTONIO: see Gouveia

SOUTH AFRICA:

condition of in 1859, *iii* 178

SOUTH AFRICAN BANK:

in 1838 is founded in Capetown, *ii* 226

SOUTH AFRICAN COLLEGE:

in October 1829 is established in Capetown, *ii* 20; particulars concerning its progress, *ii* 209

SOUTH AFRICAN DUTCH COLONISTS:

are of mixed European blood, *ii* 265; speak a dialect different in some respects from the language of Holland of the present day, *ib.*; characteristics of, *ii* 273

SOUTH AFRICAN FIRE AND LIFE ASSURANCE COMPANY:

in March 1831 is established in Capetown, *ii* 19

SOUTH AFRICAN GOLDFIELDS EXPLORATION COMPANY:

in 1868 is formed, *v* 11; in 1871 ceases operations, *v* 12

**SOUTH AFRICAN JOURNAL:**

on the 5th of March 1824 the first number of this magazine appears in Capetown, *i* 421; and on the 7th of May the second and last number, *ib.*

**SOUTH AFRICAN MISSIONARY SOCIETY:**

in 1799 is established, *i* 67

**SOUTH AFRICAN PUBLIC LIBRARY:** see Library**SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

on the 17th of January 1852 its independence is acknowledged by Great Britain, *iii* 377; condition of the European inhabitants at that time, *iii* 380; number of districts in 1853, *iii* 409; form of government at this time, *iii* 410; discord in, *iii* 414 and 420; in 1855 immigration of Europeans is invited under certain conditions by the volksraad, *iii* 415; coat of arms of, *iv* 436; ecclesiastical disputes, *ib.*; in April 1860 the republic of Lydenburg is united with it, *iv* 442; civil strife in, *iv* 444 to 453; in June 1865 issues a quantity of paper money, thus commencing a public debt, *iv* 471; before 1865 the large wild animals are almost exterminated, *ib.*; method of carrying on commerce in 1865, *ib.*; position of civil servants in 1865, *iv* 472; mineral wealth of as known in 1868, *v* 1; various views concerning the western boundary, *v* 16 to 21; revenue and expenditure in 1869, *iv* 500; public debt as represented by paper money, *ib.*; in July 1869 concludes a commercial treaty with Portugal, *v* 148; qualifications required for the president as fixed in December 1871, *v* 50; migration in 1873 of farmers from the republic to the western coast, and their settlement in Portuguese territory, *v* 105 and 106

**SOUTHERN MATABELELAND:**

condition of from 1826 to 1836, *i* 486

**SOUTHEY, RICHARD:**

in 1835 at the close of the sixth Kaffir war is appointed agent with some clans in the province of Queen Adelaide, *ii* 130; in December 1836 retires from the service; on the 20th of December 1847 becomes private secretary to Sir Harry Smith, *iii* 294; in September 1848 is entrusted with confidential duty of an important nature in the Orange River Sovereignty, *ib.*; attempts in vain to define a satisfactory boundary between the white people and the Basuto, *iii* 301; from the 1st of May 1852 to the 24th of May 1854 acts as secretary to the government of the Cape Colony, *iii* 138; in July 1864 succeeds Mr. Rawson as colonial secretary, *iv* 50; signs a memorandum in



antagonism to the introduction of responsible government in the Cape Colony, *iv* 118; declines to form a ministry under responsible government, *iv* 146; draws up a reply to the Free State protest against the annexation of Griqualand West to the British dominions, *iv* 387; in January 1873 becomes administrator of Griqualand West, *iv* 147 and 408; after July has the title of lieutenant-governor, *iv* 410; in August 1875 retires from office, *iv* 420

SPARKS, ENSIGN ROBERT MANNERS, OF THE CAPE MOUNTED RIFLES:

in December 1834 with a strong patrol is sent to obtain compensation from the Xosa chief Eno for stolen horses, *ii* 87; seizes forty head of cattle, with which he sets out to return to Fort Willshire, *ii* 88; is attacked on the way, but is rescued by the chief Stokwe, *ib.*; before reaching the fort receives a severe wound from a Kaffir who springs suddenly upon him, *ib.*

SPECIAL HEEMRADEN:

in September 1820 are appointed with considerable authority in the district of Albany, *i* 359

SPENCE, CAPTAIN JOHN:

acquires extensive concessions in Great Namaqualand, *v* 125

SPEKTAKEL COPPER MINE:

account of the, *iii* 87

SPONSZIEKTE IN CALVES:

mention of, *iii* 152

SPRIGG, JOHN GORDON (LATER SIR GORDON):

in 1864 is the leader of the party in British Kaffraria in favour of annexation to the Cape Colony, *iv* 70; proceedings in the Cape parliament of, *iv* 101, 137, 400, 423, and 432

SPRINGFONTEIN COPPER MINE:

account of the, *iii* 85 and 87

VAN DER SPUY, REV. MR.:

in November 1806 is transferred to Drakenstein, *i* 269; in March 1807 dies, *ib.*

SPYKER, REV. J.:

in June 1817 is transferred to Swellendam, *i* 316; in July 1822 becomes the first resident clergyman of Somerset West, *ib.*

STAMP DUTY:

modification of by the first British administration, *i* 3

STANFORD, CAPTAIN ROBERT (LATER SIR ROBERT):

assists the government of the Cape Colony at the time of the anti-convict agitation, *iii* 80

## STANGER, DR. WILLIAM :

on the 2nd of January 1845 is appointed surveyor-general of Natal, *ii* 461; on the 14th of March 1854 dies

## STANLEY, RIGHT HON. E. G. :

in April 1833 becomes secretary of state for the colonies, *ii* 28

## STANLEY, LORD :

on the 3rd of September 1841 becomes secretary of state for the colonies, *ii* 188; on the 25th of May 1844 announces the decision of the imperial authorities concerning the form of government of Natal as a British possession, *ii* 459; on the 23rd of December 1845 retires from office, *ii* 239; on the 26th of February 1858 again becomes secretary of state for the colonies, *iii* 220

## STATE CHURCH :

privileges of members of in the Cape Colony before 1804, *i* 154

## STATUE OF SIR GEORGE GREY IN CAPETOWN :

on the 10th of November 1864 is unveiled, *iv* 20

## STEAMSHIP :

in October 1825 the first that plied between England and India puts into Table Bay, *i* 395

## STEAMSHIP COMMUNICATION BETWEEN ENGLAND AND SOUTH AFRICA :

particulars concerning, *iii* 158

## STEELE, ENSIGN, OF THE CAPE CORPS :

on the 29th of August 1848 is mortally wounded in the battle of Boomplaats, *iii* 291

## STELLENBOSCH, VILLAGE OF :

in December 1803 is nearly destroyed by fire, *i* 176; on the 5th of June 1840 becomes a municipality

## STEPHANUS, A EUROPEAN MEMBER OF AFRIKANER'S GANG IN 1802 :

career in crime of, *i* 102

## STEYN, HERMANUS :

in November 1795 transfers to Mr. Faure the office of landdrost of Swellendam, *i* 5

## STOCKENSTROM, ANDRIES, SENIOR :

occupies various positions in the service of the Dutch East India Company, *i* 5; in March 1796 becomes secretary of Swellendam, *ib.*; on the 14th of February 1804 becomes landdrost of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 149; in December 1811 is murdered by Xosas of the Imidange clan, *i* 254

STOCKENSTROM, ANDRIES, JUNIOR (LATER SIR ANDRIES):

is an ensign in the Cape regiment, *i* 257; in July 1812 is appointed deputy landdrost of Graaff-Reinet, and is stationed at Cradock, *ib.*; in May 1815 becomes landdrost of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 290; in 1819 commands one of the divisions of the force that operates against Ndlambe, *i* 339; recommends the extension of the Cape Colony northward, *i* 392; with Lieutenant Bonamy in 1822 to 1824 marks off a new boundary of the Cape Colony on the north and the east, *i* 393; in January 1828 is appointed commissioner-general for the eastern province, *i* 492; and a member of the council of advice, *i* 494; in 1829 locates a large number of Hottentots in the upper valleys of the Kat river, *ii* 9; in March 1833 leaves South Africa to visit Europe, *ii* 84; and while there is obliged by the secretary of state to retire on a pension, *ib.*; in 1835 is a pensioner living in Europe, *ii* 138; gives most damaging evidence against the colonists before a committee of the house of commons, *ii* 139; is sent out as lieutenant-governor of the eastern districts of the Cape Colony with instructions to restore the province of Queen Adelaide to the Xosas, *ii* 144; on the 4th of July 1836 arrives in Table Bay, *ib.*; on the 25th of July 1836 takes the oaths of office in Capetown, *ib.*; on arriving in Grahamstown is challenged by a mass meeting to prove his assertions before the committee of the commons, *ii* 147; on the 13th of September has a conference with the Rarabe chiefs at King-Williamstown, *ii* 148; forms ■ new line of defence along the Fish and Kat rivers, *ii* 149; on the 5th of December renounces British authority over the province of Queen Adelaide and over the territory east of the Stormberg spruit, *ii* 150; restores to Krelî the land ceded by him, *ib.*; and concludes treaties with the Rarabe chiefs as independent powers, *ib.*; five days later enters into ■ similar treaty with the principal Fingo captains at Fort Peddie, *ii* 152; on the 18th of January 1837 concludes a similar treaty with the emigrant Tembu chief Mapasa, *ii* 153; is unable to protect the Fingos from the Xosas, *ii* 157; makes an abortive attempt to form Hottentot locations along the Fish river, *ii* 158; finds himself in altogether a false position, *ii* 159; brings an action for libel against Captain Campbell, civil commissioner of Albany, *ii* 162; and loses the case, *ii* 163; which causes great rejoicing throughout the eastern province, *ib.*; urges the occupation of Port Natal upon Lord Glenelg as a means of forcing the emigrant farmers to return to the Cape Colony, *ii* 384; by order of Lord Glenelg a serious charge against him is investigated by a commission consisting of Sir George Napier, Major

Charters, and Captain Dundas, *ii* 179; who find that he shot ■ Kaffir, but that it was a lawful military act, *ib.*; he then obtains leave of absence, and on the 9th of August 1838 embarks for England, *ii* 180; where he tenders his resignation to the secretary of state, but afterwards withdraws it, *ii* 181; on the 31st of August 1839 is deprived of office by Lord Normanby, *ii* 182; but receives from Lord John Russell ■ baronetcy and a pension of £700 a year, *ii* 183; on the 31st of May 1840 reaches South Africa again, *ib.*; on the 2nd of May 1846 is appointed commandant-general of the burgher forces of the eastern districts, *iii* 10; in July and August when clearing the Amatola fastnesses behaves with great energy and courage, *iii* 19; in the middle of August commands a division of the force sent against Kreli, *iii* 22; on the 21st of August has a conference with Kreli and makes provisional terms of peace, *iii* 23; which Sir Peregrine Maitland refuses to ratify, *iii* 27; after the return of the expedition quarrels with several military officers, *iii* 25; on the 25th of November tenders his resignation, which the governor immediately accepts, *iii* 26; on the 23rd of July 1850 is appointed a member of the legislative council of the Cape Colony, *iii* 122; on the 20th of September resigns his seat, *iii* 124; in March 1851 leaves for England to secure support for a particular draft constitution, *iii* 125

#### STOCKENSTROM *VERSUS* CAMPBELL:

particulars of an action for libel, *ii* 162

#### STOCKENSTROM, ADVOCATE:

in 1875 is appointed judge of the land court of Griqualand West, *iv* 419; is compelled to throw out grants made by Nicholas Waterboer, *iv* 420

#### STOCKENSTROM:

on the 15th of August 1844 the Hottentot settlement at the Kat river has this name given to it, *iii* 3; in March 1848 it is created a district, *iii* 70

#### STOFFELS, ANDRIES, A GONA HOTTENTOT:

in 1835-6 visits England with the reverend Dr. Philip, *ii* 137; gives evidence before a committee of the house of commons, *ii* 138; makes a tour through England, *ib.*; contracts consumption, and dies at Capetown when returning to his home, *ib.*

#### STOKWE, GREAT SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF ENO:

in December 1834 prevents the destruction of ■ military patrol, *ii* 88; on the 1st of April 1846 succeeds his father as chief of the Amambala clan, *iii* 7; six weeks later takes part in an

invasion of the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; on the 21st of August 1846 surrenders to Colonel Somerset, *iii* 30; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has a location assigned to him in British Kaffraria, *iii* 61; in the war of 1850-52 takes part against the colony, *iii* 100; on the 9th of March 1853 agrees to the terms of peace imposed upon him, *iii* 114; takes a leading part in the self-destruction of the Xosa tribe, *iii* 199; and after 1857 sinks into insignificance, *iii* 213

STOKWE, SON OF NDLELA, VASSAL TEMBU CHIEF:

particulars concerning, *iv* 54

STOLL, JOACHIM WILLEM:

on the 27th of August 1814 is appointed landdrost of the Cape district

STOPFORD, REAR-ADMIRAL ROBERT:

on the 5th of January 1811 assumes command on the Cape station, *i* 244; on the 7th of February 1813 transfers the command to Rear-Admiral Tyler, *i* 273

STORM IN JULY 1822:

causes great damage in the western districts of the Cape Colony, *i* 380

STORM:

account of very heavy rainfall at Durban, Natal, in April 1856, *iii* 258

STORMBERG SPRUIT:

in 1822 is made the eastern boundary of the Cape Colony, *i* 393

STRANGURY (CATTLE DISEASE):

mention of, *i* 159, 171, and *iii* 152

STRETCH, CAPTAIN CHARLES LENNOX:

at the close of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is appointed agent with the Gaika, Imidange, and Amambala clans, *ii* 130; is stationed at Fort Cox, *ib.*; in December 1836 is removed from Fort Cox to Blockdrift, and is directed to act as consular agent, *ii* 153; after the outbreak of war in 1846 his office is abolished, *iii* 36

STUART, C. U.:

in March 1849 is appointed civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Bloemfontein, *iii* 298; in December 1851 ■ dismissed, *iii* 325

STUART, JACOBUS:

draws up the draft constitution of the South African Republic, *iii* 422



## STUCKI, REV. MR. :

succeeds the reverend Daniel Lindley as clergyman of the Dutch reformed church at Maritzburg, *iii* 230

## STUD FARMS FOR SHEEP :

establishment in 1805 in the Roggeveld of, *i* 165 and 166

## STURT, REV. GEORGE :

in September 1819 becomes chaplain of the English episcopal church in Simonstown, *i* 317

## STUTTERHEIM, BARON VON :

is commander of the British German legion, *iii* 194

## STUURMAN, DAVID :

succeeds his brother Klaas as captain of a Hottentot clan, and in 1804 has a location on the Gamtoos river assigned to him, *i* 125; owing to his hostile conduct, in 1810 he is sentenced to imprisonment for life, and the location on the Gamtoos river is confiscated, *i* 237

## STUURMAN, A ROBBER CAPTAIN :

after 1830 has his stronghold on islands in the Orange river, *ii* 25; and ravages the country on all sides, *ii* 26; account of murders committed by his gang in the Cape Colony, *ii* 26 and 27

## SUCCESSION DUTY :

in 1864 is first imposed in the Cape Colony, *iv* 35

## LE SUEUR, JACOBUS JOHANNES :

in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of Worcester, *i* 493

## SUGAR PLANTING IN NATAL :

account of, *iii* 260 and *iv* 163

## SUPREME COURT OF THE CAPE COLONY :

in January 1828 is first established, *i* 491; in 1834 is constituted under a new charter of justice, *ii* 45; after August 1853 ceases to receive appeals from Natal, *iii* 263; in 1855 is enlarged to a chief justice and three puisne judges, *iii* 147

## SUPREME COURT OF NATAL :

constitution of, *iv* 165

## SUPREME COURT OF APPEAL OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE :

as constituted in September 1854, *iii* 467

## SURMON, INSPECTOR WILLIAM HENRY :

after Mr. Bowker's assuming command of the frontier armed and mounted police acts as his deputy as high commissioner's agent in Basutoland, *v* 62; in 1871 is appointed acting magistrate of the Berea district, *v* 71

**SUSA, XOSA CHIEFTAINNESS:**

dealings with, *ii* 2

**SUTHERLAND, DR., SURVEYOR-GENERAL OF NATAL:**

in March 1862 visits Nomansland to try to arrange a boundary with Sir Walter Currie, *iv* 67

**SUTHERLAND, REV. HENRY:**

on the 18th of September 1824 commences duty as first resident clergyman of Worcester, *i* 310

**SUTHERLAND, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

is named after the reverend Henry Sutherland, *i* 371

**SUTHERLAND, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in May 1857 is founded

**SUTTON, LIEUTENANT WILLIAM, OF THE 75TH REGIMENT:**

on the 10th of December 1834 is sent with a small patrol from Fort Beaufort to expel some intruding Xosas from colonial ground and to obtain compensation from them for stolen horses, *ii* 89; finds the intruders defiant, but manages to burn their huts and to seize some oxen, *ib.*; when returning to Fort Beaufort is attacked, and with great difficulty and some loss reaches the fort, *ib.*; in December 1845 becomes British resident in Adam Kok's territory, but in January 1846 resigns, *ii* 494; is subsequently raised to the rank of captain and is transferred to the Cape mounted rifles

**SUTTON, CAPTAIN:**

in 1836 visits Moselekatse, *ii* 288

**SUTU, GREAT WIDOW OF THE XOSA CHIEF GAIKA:**

at the beginning of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 gives protection to several missionaries and traders, *ii* 99; throughout the war professes friendship to the Cape Colony, *ii* 111; upon the death of Tyali on the 1st of May 1842 is accused by a witchfinder of having killed that chief, *ii* 189; is protected from maltreatment by the diplomatic agent Stretch and the missionaries of the Glasgow society, *ib.*

**SWAKOP RIVER, IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:**

description of, *v* 96 and 109

**SWALLOW, HER MAJESTY'S SHIP:**

in October 1879 examines the coast of Hereroland, ■ 118

**SWANGENDABA, CHIEF OF THE ANGONI HORDE:**

career of, *i* 439, and *v* 131 and 137

**SWAZI TRIBE :**

mention of, *i* 485; in 1855 cedes a tract of land to white people, *iv* 457; also a narrow strip of land along the Pongolo river to the South African Republic, *iv* 493; in 1864 assists the South African Republic against Mapok and Malewu, *iv* 456

**SWELLENDAM, DISTRICT OF :**

measures adopted by the British commanding officers in 1795 for the restoration of order in this district, *i* 4; in April 1811 the eastern portion is formed into a new district named George, *i* 225; but on the west it is enlarged by having a part of Stellenbosch added to it, *i* 226

**SWELLENDAM, VILLAGE OF :**

in 1798 is first provided with ■ clergyman, *i* 41; description of the village in 1803, *i* 121; on the 17th of May 1865 it is nearly destroyed by fire, *iv* 78

**SYKES, REV. MR. :**

in 1859 assists to found a mission among the Matabele, *v* 5

**SYNNOT, CAPTAIN WALTER :**

in 1820 brings a party of Irish settlers to the Cape Colony, *i* 352; who are located at Clanwilliam, *i* 354; subsequent movements of the party, *i* 355

**SYNOD OF THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH IN THE CAPE COLONY :**

in November 1824 meets for the first time in Capetown, *i* 404; particulars of the second meeting in November 1826, *i* 407; constitution of, *ii* 221; since 1862 no clergymen or elders from places beyond the boundary of the colony can take part in the proceedings, *iv* 438

**SYNOD OF THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE :**

on the 10th of May 1865 meets for the first time, *iv* 215

**TAAIBOSCH, GERT :**

succeeds Jan Hanto as captain of the Korana clan at Merumetsu, *i* 480; complains of the injustice done to him by the treaty of 1843 between Sir George Napier and the Basuto chief Moshesh, *ii* 483; in June 1845 has ■ conference with Sir Peregrine Maitland at Touwfontein, *ii* 492; but as he will not admit the authority of Moshesh no arrangement can be made with him in furtherance of a settlement between them, *ib.*; in August 1845 offers a tract of land for settlement by Europeans, *ii* 497; in March 1846 agrees to submit his dispute with Moshesh to the decision of ■ commission to be appointed by the

governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 499; in June of the same year assists Major Warden to disperse the adherents of Jan Kock, *ii* 500; in September 1853 is killed in battle with the Basuto, *iii* 354

TABANA, SON OF THE BAVENDA CHIEF RAMAPULANA, IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

after his father's death is driven from his kraals by his brother Magadu, *iv* 478; but is protected by João Albasini, *ib.*

TABLE BAY:

plan of Captain Robert Knox for the improvement of, *i* 427; particulars of the construction of harbour works in, *iii* 166; in 1882 a graving dock is opened for use, *iv* 143; see Breakwater and Dock

TABLE MOUNTAIN:

fall of masses of rock from, *i* 103

TAIT, PETER:

in 1818 and 1819 brings a few Scotch labourers ■ immigrants to the Cape Colony, *i* 347

TAMBOOKIE LOCATION WEST OF THE INDWE: see Glen Grey

TAMBUSA, ZULU INDUNA:

in May 1835 on behalf of Dingana enters into a treaty with Captain Allen Gardiner, *ii* 347; in January 1840 is sent by Dingana to negotiate with the emigrant farmers, and is put to death by them, *ii* 393

TAWANE, CHIEF OF A BAROLONG CLAN:

in 1841 moves from Thaba Ntshu over the Vaal, *ii* 466; and has ■ tract of land assigned to him by Commandant Potgieter, upon which he lives as a favoured subject of the emigrant farmers, *ib.*; in 1848 moves to Lotlakana, where his following rapidly increases, *iii* 381; at the end of 1849 dies, and is succeeded by his son Montsiwa, *iii* 382; see Barolong tribe

TAYLOR, REV. JOHN:

in 1818 leaves the service of the London missionary society and becomes the first clergyman of the Dutch reformed church at Beaufort West, *i* 308; in December 1823 is transferred to Cradock, *i* 370

TAYLOR, CAPTAIN RICHARD:

in 1853 is stationed at King-Williamstown as resident magistrate, *iii* 189

TEA:

excessive use of by the Roggeveld graziers, *i* 164

## TELEGRAPH, ELECTRIC :

since the 1st of October 1864 has been open between East London and Simonstown, *iv* 11; in 1873 this line is purchased by the government of the Cape Colony, and one from Fort Beaufort to the diamond-fields is commenced, *iv* 144 and 145

## TEMBULAND :

in July 1828 is invaded by a Zulu army, which does much damage, *ii* 333

## TEMBU TRIBE :

in 1809 is found by Colonel Collins living near the sea between the Bashee and Umtata rivers, except one small clan, under a captain named Tshatshu, that occupied a kraal east of the Tsomo, *i* 233; condition during the early years of the nineteenth century, *i* 449; genealogical table of the chiefs, *ib.*; in 1835 is governed by the regent Vadana, as the chief Umtirara is a minor, *ii* 104; has then little strength for warlike purposes, *ib.*; in 1835 is attacked by the Bacas under Neapayi and sustains much loss, *ii* 105; in 1834 and 1835 sends various offshoots into the territory along the Zwart Kei river, *ii* 107; in November 1836 is again attacked and plundered by Neapayi, *ii* 406; in 1838 is reduced to such misery by attacks of the Pondos and Bacas that it flees to the territory along the upper branches of the Kei, *ii* 407; further particulars concerning, *iv* 56; see Bawana, Gangelizwe, Mapasa, Nonesi, Umtirara, Vadana, and Vusani

## TENTE, INFERIOR SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF GAIKA :

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 professes friendship to the Cape Colony, *ii* 111

## TERRITORY BETWEEN THE KEI AND BASHEE RIVERS :

from 1858 to 1865 is held by the frontier armed and mounted police, and is kept almost unoccupied, *iii* 209 and 213; number of Bantu inhabitants at the close of 1859, *iii* 225

## TERRITORY BETWEEN THE RIVER KEI AND THE BORDER OF NATAL :

particulars concerning, *iv* 25 and 35; is abandoned by the British government, *iv* 44 *et seq.*

## TETE, PORTUGUESE VILLAGE ON THE SOUTHERN BANK OF THE ZAMBESI :

in 1853 is plundered and partly destroyed by the rebel Bonga, *v* 164; condition of in 1899, *v* 165 and 166

## TEUTSCH, REV. C. L., MORAVIAN MISSIONARY :

in 1848 attempts to found a station with Hottentots on the Beka, but is unsuccessful, *iii* 69



**THABA BOSIGO MISSION STATION :**

in 1837 is founded by agents of the Paris evangelical society in Basutoland, *ii* 502

**THABA NTSHU :**

in December 1833 becomes ■ Barolong settlement and a Wesleyan mission station, *i* 477

**THEATRE :**

during the first English occupation of the Cape Colony a theatre—now St. Stephen's church—is built in Capetown, *i* 105

**THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY OF THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH AT STELLENBOSCH :**

on the 1st of November 1859 is opened for use, *iv* 17

**THEOPOLIS, MISSION STATION OF THE LONDON SOCIETY :**

in 1814 is founded, *i* 271; in the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is twice unsuccessfully attacked, *i* 336; investigation of Dr. Philip's charge against the Cape government of taking land from, *i* 500; in 1851 the residents go into rebellion and the station is broken up, *iii* 102

**THIRTY-THREE ARTICLES :**

in 1844 the code of law so-called is drawn up by the volksraad at Potchefstroom, and in 1849 is adopted by all the parties north of the Vaal, *iii* 421

**THOM, REV. DR. GEORGE :**

in November 1818 leaves the service of the London missionary society, and is appointed clergyman of Caledon, *i* 317; in 1821 returns to Scotland on leave of absence, and is requested by Lord Charles Somerset to engage clergymen and schoolmasters for service in the colony, *i* 370; in which he is successful, *ib.*; on the 24th of August 1825 is appointed clergyman of the Dutch reformed church at Tulbagh, *ii* 220; a few years later becomes insane, and in 1835 is removed to an asylum, *ib.*

**THOMAS, REV. MR. :**

in 1859 assists to found ■ mission among the Matabele, *v* ■

**THOMPSON, FRANCIS :**

in July 1878 is murdered at Cornforth Hill in Griqualand West, *iv* 430

**THOMPSON, J. C. :**

in October 1871 is appointed public prosecutor of Griqualand West and ■ member of the executive committee, *iv* 373

**THOMSON, G. R. :**

on the 4th of November 1850 is appointed magistrate of the Umzinyati location in Natal, *iii* 234

**THOMSON, REV. WILLIAM RITCHIE :**

in November 1821 commences mission work in the Tyumie valley, *i* 370; in 1829 is stationed by the government as clergyman of the Dutch reformed church at the Kat river, *ii* 10; on the 4th of May 1891 dies, *i* 370

**THRELFALL, REV. MR. :**

gives an account of occurrences at Delagoa Bay in 1823, *v* 135

**THUNDERBOLT, THE FIRST STEAM SHIP-OF-WAR ON THE CAPE STATION :**  
on the 3rd of February 1847 strikes on Cape Recife and becomes a wreck, *iii* 45

**TIN :**

in 1837 is procurable at the Zoutpansberg, *ii* 280

**TINDE CLAN OF THE XOSA TRIBE :**

since the middle of the eighteenth century has been gradually becoming weaker, *ii* 98; see Tshatshu

**TOBACCO :**

cultivation of in the Cape Colony in 1805, *i* 171; cultivation of in Natal, *iii* 261; see Exports, *iii* 265

**TOLA, CHIEF OF A SECTION OF THE IMIDANGE CLAN OF THE XOSA TRIBE :**

is head of the most expert robber band on the border of the Cape Colony, *ii* 190; in June 1843 is attacked by a military force, but as he is assisted by the Gaikas he makes his escape, *ii* 191; on the 16th of March 1846 causes one of his followers to be released by force when a prisoner in the colony, *iii* 1; declines to surrender the rescued man when called upon to do so, *iii* 2; from April to November 1846 carries on war with the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has ground assigned to him in British Kaffraria, *iii* 61; in the war of 1850-52 takes part against the Cape Colony, *iii* 100; on the 9th of March 1853 agrees to the terms of peace imposed upon him, *iii* 114

**TOPNAARS, HOTTENTOT CLAN AT WALFISH BAY :**

account of, *v* 108 and 123

**TORTURE BY BANTU ON A CHARGE OF DEALING IN WITCHCRAFT :**

instance of, *iii* 245

**TOYISE, SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF GASELA :**

in March 1845 succeeds his father as chief of a clan, *ii* 264; in 1846 and 1847 carries on war against the Cape Colony,

iii 8; on the 7th of January 1848 takes ■■ oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has ground assigned to him in British Kaffraria, iii 61; further particulars concerning, iii 213

TRADE WITH THE ZULUS:

manner of conducting, ii 331

TRAINING SCHOOL FOR TEACHERS:

in 1868 is established by the Paris evangelical society at Morija in Basutoland, v 76

TRANSFER OF THE CAPE COLONY BY GREAT BRITAIN TO THE BATAVIAN REPUBLIC:

particulars concerning, i 109 *et seq.*

TRANSFER DUES IN THE CAPE COLONY:

in 1863 are raised to four per cent of the value of land sold, iv 32

TRANSVAAL GOLD MINING COMPANY:

in 1872 is formed, and soon afterwards commences work at Eersteling, v 12

TRAPPES, CAPTAIN CHARLES:

in April 1819 is second in command at Grahamstown, i 337; in May 1820 becomes provisional magistrate at Bathurst, i 357; in May 1821 is relieved of duty, but in January 1822 is appointed landdrost of Tulbagh, i 359; in January 1828 becomes civil commissioner of Worcester, i 492

TREATIES, PARTICULARS CONCERNING:

the treaty of Amiens between Great Britain and France, signed on the 27th of March 1802, its sixth article providing for the restoration of the Cape Colony to the Netherlands, i 105

the treaty of Paris between the great European powers, signed on the 30th of May 1814, i 276

between Sir Benjamin D'Urban and the Griqua captain Andries Waterboer, signed on the 11th of December 1834, ii 58

between Captain Allen Gardiner and the Zulu chief Dingana, signed in May 1835, ii 347

between Sir Benjamin D'Urban and the Matabele chief Moselekatse, signed on the 3rd of March 1836, ii 298

between Lieutenant-Governor Stockenstrom and the Rarabe chiefs of the Xosa tribe, signed on the 5th of December 1836, ii 150

between Lieutenant-Governor Stockenstrom and the Fingo captains Umhlambiso and Jokweni, signed on the 10th of December 1836, ii 152

- between Lieutenant-Governor Stockenstrom and the emigrant Tembu chief Mapasa, signed on the 18th of January 1837, *ii* 153
- between Sir George Napier and the captains of the Gunukwebe clans, signed on the 19th of June 1838, *ii* 176
- between Sir George Napier and the chiefs of the Gaika clans, signed on the 2nd of December 1840, *ii* 187
- between Sir George Napier and the Fingo captains, signed on the 29th of December 1840, *ii* 187
- between Sir George Napier and the captains of the Ndlambe clans, signed on the 31st of December 1840, *ii* 188
- between Sir George Napier and the emigrant Tembu chief Mapasa, signed on the 28th of January 1841, *ii* 188
- between Sir George Napier and Adam Kok, Griqua captain of Philippolis, and Moshesh, chief of the Basuto tribe, signed in November and December 1843, *ii* 482
- between Sir Peregrine Maitland and the Pondo chief Faku, signed on the 7th of October 1844, *ii* 457
- between Sir Peregrine Maitland and the Xosa chief Kreli, signed on the 4th of November 1844, *ii* 257
- between Sir Peregrine Maitland and the Rarabe and Fingo chiefs, signed in January 1845, *ii* 258
- between Sir Peregrine Maitland and the Griqua captain Adam Kok, signed in February 1846, *ii* 494
- of Smithfield, concluded in October 1855 between the government of the Orange Free State and the Basuto chief Moshesh, *iii* 458
- of Vaal River, concluded in June 1857 between the governments of the Orange Free State and the South African Republic, *iii* 433
- of Aliwal North (first) concluded in September 1858 between the government of the Orange Free State and the Basuto chief Moshesh, *iii* 393
- of Imparani, concluded in March 1866 between the government of the Orange Free State and the Basuto chief Molapo, *iv* 271
- of Thaba Bosigo, concluded in April 1866 between the government of the Orange Free State and the Basuto chief Moshesh, *iv* 273
- of Aliwal North (second) concluded in February 1869 between the governments of Great Britain and the Orange Free State, *iv* 318 *et seq.*
- between Portugal and the South African Republic, signed on the 29th of July 1869, *v* 22
- between Portugal and Great Britain, concerning the slave trade, *v* 134
- between Portugal and Great Britain, concerning commerce, *v* 142

between Portugal and the South African Republic, signed in December 1875, *v* 151

between Great Britain and Portugal, defining the boundary of Portuguese South Africa, *v* 160

**TREATIES, AGREEMENTS SUBVERSIVE OF:**

concluded by Sir Harry Smith on the 25th of January 1848 with the Griqua captain Adam Kok, *iii* 273; concluded by Sir Harry Smith on the 27th of January 1848 with the Basuto chief Moshesh, *iii* 275

**TRIEGARD, LOUIS:**

is leader of the pioneer party in the great emigration from the Cape Colony, *ii* 274; career of before crossing the Orange river, *ib.*; names of the members of the party under his leadership, *ii* 277; in May 1836 reaches the Zoutpansberg, *ib.*; life of the party at the Zoutpansberg, *ii* 279; in August 1837 leaves the Zoutpansberg to explore the country to Delagoa Bay, *ii* 281; meets with many disasters, but in April 1838 reaches the bay, *ii* 282; where all of his party perish except twenty-six individuals who in July 1839 are rescued and conveyed by sea to Natal, *ii* 284

**TRINITY CHURCH, KING-WILLIAMSTOWN:**

the foundation stone is laid on the 7th of October 1848, *iii* 66

**TRISTAN DA CUNHA:**

account of the island, *i* 303; on the 14th of August 1816 is formally taken possession of for Great Britain, *i* 304; from August 1816 to May 1817 a garrison is maintained there, *ib.*

**TROPSLUITERS AT FUNERAL PROCESSIONS:**

note concerning, *i* 280

**TRUTER, JAN ANDRIES:**

in October 1803 is appointed secretary to the council under the Batavian administration, *i* 181; on the 4th of March 1809 becomes fiscal, in August 1812 becomes chief justice, *i* 261; on the establishment of the supreme court on the 1st of January 1828 retires with a pension, but is appointed a member of the council of advice, *i* 494

**TRUTER, OLOF JOHANNES:**

in August 1870 is stationed as commissioner at the diamond-fields at Pniel, *iv* 349; in May 1871 is removed as landdrost to Dutoitspan, *iv* 352; is very popular with the diggers, *iv* 373; on the 16th of November 1871 a prisoner being rescued by the British officials from the Free State police, sends in a protest and retires to Bloemfontein, *iv* 376



TRUTER, PIETER JAN:

in 1801 visits the Batlapin country, *i* 98 *et seq.*

TRUTER, PIETER JAN (SON OF THE ABOVE):

in 1834 becomes civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Worcester, *ii* 44

TSEKELO, SON OF THE BASUTO CHIEF MOSHESH:

in February 1865 visits Bloemfontein as a messenger of his father, and when returning home drives off forty horses belonging to Free State farmers, *iv* 226; in 1869 accompanies Mr. Buchanan to England, *iv* 324; seditious conduct of in 1870, *v* 63

TSEPINARE, ADOPTED SON AND HEIR OF THE BAROLONG CHIEF MOROKO:

in the war of 1865-6 commands the Barolong contingent fighting for the Free State, *iv* 241

TSETSE FLY:

destruction of domestic animals by, *ii* 282; formerly infested parts of Zoutpansberg, but is no longer found there, *iv* 474

TSHAKA, SON OF SENZANGAKONA, CHIEF OF THE ZULU TRIBE, BY AN INFERIOR WIFE:

about the year 1783 is born, *i* 434; the Zulus are at the time vassals of the Abatetwa, *ib.*; he grows up to be a handsome and exceedingly agile youth, *ib.*; excites the jealousy of his father, and is obliged to flee for his life, *i* 435; takes refuge with Dingiswayo, chief of the Abatetwa, *ib.*; in whose army he becomes a soldier, and owing to his courage and address soon raises himself to a position of command, *i* 436; upon the death of his father Senzangakona he is appointed chief of the Zulus by Dingiswayo, *i* 437; and upon Dingiswayo's death is raised by the army to supreme power, *ib.*; he then conceives schemes of conquest on a vast scale, *ib.*; organises a great army, which he subjects to severe discipline, and as a weapon of offence substitutes for the assagai a short-handled, long-bladed spear formed to cut or to stab, *ib.*; brings the various regiments under the most perfect system of obedience, *i* 438; reintroduces a terribly formidable method of attack, *i* 437; then carries on a series of wars of extermination, and though he governs with ferocious cruelty gains the devoted attachment of his people through their pride of military fame, *i* 438; in July 1824 he is first visited by Europeans, *ii* 326; is badly wounded by a man who attempts to assassinate him, *ib.*; but rapidly recovers under the skilful treatment of Mr. Henry Fynn, *ii* 327; owing to which circumstance he becomes a friend of the Englishmen

living at Port Natal, *ib.*; on the 7th of August 1824 grants ■ large tract of land round the port to Mr. Farewell, *ib.*; permits the Europeans at Port Natal to collect some fugitive blacks together and to rule them as chiefs, *ii* 331; allows no trade with his Zulu subjects, *ib.*; grants to Mr. Henry Fynn a large tract of land, *ii* 332; in April 1828 sends an embassy to the Cape government, *ii* 333; which is not acknowledged by the colonial authorities, though the indunas are well treated, *ib.*; he next sends John Cane with a friendly greeting to the governor, *ib.*; in July 1828 sends an army to destroy the tribes between Natal and the Cape Colony, which marches to within eighteen miles of the Bashee, *i* 453; he accompanies the army himself as far as the Umzimkulu, where he fixes his headquarters, *i* 454; lays waste the Pondo country, then withdraws his army from Tembuland, and returns home, *ib.*; on the 23rd of September 1828 is assassinated by his brother Dingana and two others, *ii* 335; leaves no heir, all his children having been put to death as soon as born, *ii* 336

**TSHATSHU, CHIEF OF A TEMBU CLAN:**

in 1809 is found by Colonel Collins to have wandered away from the Tembu country proper, and to have settled with his people on the eastern bank of the Tsomo, *i* 233

**TSHATSHU, CHIEF OF THE TINDE CLAN OF THE XOSA TRIBE:**

during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 professes friendship to the Cape Colony, *ii* 111; but the greater part of his clan joins its enemies

**TSHATSHU, JAN, SON OF THE ABOVE AND LONG A RESIDENT AT BETHELS-DORP MISSION STATION:**

in 1835 and 1836 visits England with the reverend Dr. Philip, *ii* 137; appears there as a powerful Kaffir chief, *ii* 138; gives evidence before ■ committee of the house of commons, and makes a tour through England, *ib.*; becomes so conceited and fond of wine that he is utterly ruined, *ib.*; in the war of 1846-7 joins the Gaikas against the Europeans, and on the 28th of May 1846 takes part in the attack upon Fort Peddie, *iii* 14; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, *iii* 61; during the war of 1850-52 plays ■ suspicious part, *iii* 100; further particulars concerning, *iii* 213

**TSHILOANE, ISLAND OF:**

is occupied by the Portuguese, *v* 141

**TSHIVASA, CHIEF OF A BAVENDA CLAN:**

account of, *iv* 476

## TSHUPANGA, ON THE ZAMBESI:

description of, *v* 163

## TUCKER, JOHN SCOTT:

in January 1859 becomes civil engineer of the Cape Colony, *iii* 166

## TULBAGH, DISTRICT OF:

in July 1804 a portion of the district of Stellenbosch is cut off by proclamation of the commissioner-general De Mist, to which General Janssens gives the name Tulbagh, *i* 152; in August a landdrost is appointed to the new district, *ib.*; in September ■ farm adjoining Roodezand's church is fixed upon as the site of the new drostdy, *i* 153; in February 1808 a portion of Stellenbosch is cut off and added to it, *i* 224; in November 1822 it is renamed by Lord Charles Somerset the district of Worcester, and the landdrost is removed to the new village of that name, *i* 382; but in March 1848 a portion of the extensive area is constituted a district with the name Tulbagh, *iii* 70

## TULBAGH, VILLAGE OF:

description of in 1803, *i* 145

## TULU, CHIEF OF A BATAUNG CLAN, SON AND SUCCESSOR OF MAKWANA:

in 1845 is visited by the special commissioner Gideon Joubert, *ii* 496; in April 1853 is utterly despoiled by Gert Taaibosch and Sikonyela, *iii* 347; so that he is obliged to abandon his location and take refuge with his kinsman Molitsane at Mekuatleng, *iii* 348

## TWEED, ARTHUR:

in October 1871 is appointed registrar and master of the high court of Griqualand West, *iv* 373

## TYALA, COUNSELLOR OF THE XOSA CHIEF SANDILE:

pathetic manner of the death of, *iii* 210

## TYALI, LEFT-HAND SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF GAIKA:

about the year 1827 takes possession of the valley of the Mankazana, *ii* 5; in September 1833 on account of the depredations of his people is expelled by a military force from the valley of the Mankazana, when he settles on the banks of the Gaga, *ii* 54; as the depredations are continued, in November of the same year he is driven across the next higher tributary of the Tyumie, *ii* 55; during the year 1834 gives great annoyance to the frontier colonists, *ii* 87; on the 21st of December 1834 sends his followers to invade and lay waste the frontier districts of the Cape Colony, *ii* 90; attempts to entrap Colonel Somerset, *ib.*; after securing an immense booty proposes peace on condition of matters remaining as they are, *ii* 95; but his offer

is rejected by Colonel Somerset, *ib.*; he continues the conflict until the 17th of September 1835, when he agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 125; on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; on the 2nd of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 187; on the 1st of May 1842 dies of a chest complaint in the Tyumie valley, *ii* 189

*TYDSCHRIFT, HET NEDERDUITSCH ZUID-AFRIKAANSCH:*

in April 1824 the first number of this magazine appears, *i* 421

TYLER, REAR-ADMIRAL CHARLES:

on the 7th of February 1813 assumes command of the fleet on the Cape station, *i* 273; on the 15th of October 1815 is succeeded by Rear-Admiral Sir George Cockburn, *i* 302

UITENHAGE, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in February 1804 a portion of the old district of Graaff-Reinet is cut off by proclamation of Commissioner-General De Mist, *i* 150; in April the name Uitenhage is given by Governor Janssens to the tract of land thus cut off, and a landdrost is appointed to it, *i* 151; in October a portion of the old district of Swellendam is cut off and added to Uitenhage, *ib.* The landdrost's office was in Fort Frederick at Algoa Bay until October 1807, when it was removed to the village of Uitenhage

UITENHAGE, VILLAGE OF:

in 1804 is founded, *i* 152; in March 1817 is first provided with a resident clergyman, *i* 316

UITHAALDER, WILLEM, A DISCHARGED SOLDIER OF THE HOTTENTOT REGIMENT:

in 1851 is chosen as their leader by the rebel Hottentots, *iii* 103; assumes the title of general, *iii* 109; a reward of £500 is offered for his apprehension, *iii* 113; after the failure of his plans manages to conceal himself, and on the 8th of April 1865 commits suicide, *iii* 115

UKANE, CHIEF OF THE XOLAS:

in 1866 is made a British subject under the government of Natal, but gives some trouble before he submits, *iii* 232

UMBOPA, SERVANT OF THE ZULU CHIEF TSHAKA:

in September 1828 assists in putting his master to death, *ii* 335

**UMBULAZI, SON OF THE ZULU CHIEF PANDA:**

quarrels with his brother Ketshwayo, *iii* 240; on the 2nd of December 1856 is defeated by Ketshwayo in a great battle on the bank of the Tugela, and is afterwards captured and put to death, *iii* 241

**UMDITSHWA, CHIEF OF A CLAN OF THE PONDOMSI TRIBE:**

particulars concerning, *iv* 63

**UMDUNGAZWE: see Gungunyana****UMGENI FALLS IN NATAL:**

mention of, *iii* 259

**UMHALA, MINOR SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF NDLAMBE:**

upon his father's death in 1828 supplants his brother Umkayi, *ii* 50; allies himself with the Gaikas, *ii* 56; in December 1834 sends his followers to invade and lay waste the frontier districts of the Cape Colony, *ii* 90; continues the conflict until the 17th of September 1835, when he agrees to become a British subject, *ii* 125; on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; on the 31st of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 188; on the 2nd of January 1845 enters into a new treaty framed by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; in April 1846 joins in the seventh Kaffir war against the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; on the 8th of June 1846 loses many of his best warriors in the battle of the Gwanga, *iii* 15; in November surrenders to a British commissioner, *iii* 37; on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, and has a tract of land assigned to him in British Kaffraria, *iii* 61; during the war of 1850-52 plays a suspicious part, *iii* 100; in 1856 and 1857 takes a leading part in the self-destruction of the Xosa tribe, *iii* 199 and 201; career of from 1857 until his death on the 10th of April 1875, *iii* 212

**UMHLAKAZA, PROFESSED KAFFIR PROPHET:**

particulars concerning, *iii* 198 *et seq.*

**UMHLAMBISO, CHIEF OF A REMNANT OF THE HLUBI TRIBE:**

in April 1835 at Butterworth solicits Sir Benjamin D'Urban to give him protection against the Xosas, *ii* 110; his request is complied with, and he has land assigned to him between the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ii* 113; in December 1836 as an independent chief enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 152; in August 1837 is badly wounded in an attack



by Kaffirs upon his people, *ii* 157; on the 29th of December 1840 consents to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 187

UMHLONHLO, CHIEF OF A CLAN OF THE PONDOMSI TRIBE:

particulars concerning, *iv* 63; in January 1872 asks to be taken under the authority of the Cape Colony, *iv* 69

UMJUSA, SON OF THE XOSA SEER MAKANA:

particulars concerning, *i* 341 and *iii* 213; raid in 1866 on the kraal of, *iv* 79

UMKAYI, GREAT SON OF THE XOSA CHIEF NDLAMBE:

upon his father's death in 1828 is supplanted by his brother Umhala, *ii* 50; during the war of 1834-5 professes friendship to the Cape Colony, *ii* 111; becomes a British subject, but on the 5th of December 1836 is released from his allegiance and enters into a treaty with the British government, *ii* 150; in 1838 is in league with some mutineers of the Cape corps, *ii* 175; on the 31st of December 1840 agrees to certain modifications of the treaty proposed by Sir George Napier, *ii* 188; on the 2nd of January 1845 enters into a new treaty framed by Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 259; early in 1846 asks for leave to move into the Cape Colony, as he is sure there will shortly be war, *ii* 264; during the war of 1846-7 resides in Grahamstown, *iii* 8; in the war of 1850-52 aids the Cape Colony, *iii* 100

UMKUNGUNHLOVU, RESIDENCE OF THE ZULU CHIEF DINGANA:

description of, *ii* 337

UMKUNKU, SON OF THE ZULU CHIEF PANDA:

is a refugee living in Natal, *iv* 178

UMLANJENI, XOSA PRETENDED MIRACLE WORKER:

account of, *iii* 92 and 108; on the 28th of August 1853 dies, *iii* 115

UMLAZI LOCATION IN NATAL:

in 1846 is set apart for the use of the Bantu, *iii* 230

UMPANDE: see Panda

UMPANGAZITA, HLUBI CHIEF:

in 1821 when fleeing from his enemies crosses the Drakensberg, *i* 441; falls upon the Batlokua and disperses them, *ib.*; is killed in a battle with the Amangwane near Lishuane, *i* 452

UMQIKELA, GREAT SON OF FAKU:

on the 29th of October 1867 succeeds his father as nominal paramount chief of the Pondos, *iv* 69

UMSHUKUNGUBO, A PETTY CHIEF IN NATAL:

in 1857 is killed by another petty chief named Sidoyi, *iii* 242

UMSILIKAZI: see Moselekatse

UMSUTU, CHIEF OF A REMNANT OF THE ABASEKUNENE TRIBE:

in April 1835 at Butterworth solicits Sir Benjamin D'Urban to give him protection against the Xosas, *ii* 110; his request is complied with, and he has land assigned to him between the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ii* 113

UMTAMVUNA RIVER:

in 1865 becomes the southern boundary of Natal, *iv* 166

UMTASA, PRINCIPAL CHIEF IN THE DISTRICT OF MANIKA:

in September 1880 places himself under the protection of the British South Africa Company, *v* 155; particulars concerning, *v* 156, 157, and 159

UMTHLANGANA, SON OF THE ZULU CHIEF SENZENGAKONA:

in September 1828 assists his brother Dingana to assassinate Tshaka, *ii* 335; and is afterwards murdered by Dingana, *ii* 336

UMTHLELA, ZULU INDUNA:

in May 1835 on behalf of Dingana enters into a treaty with Captain Allen Gardiner, *ii* 347; on the 30th of January 1840 commands Dingana's army in the great battle with the rebel Zulus under Nongalaza, *ii* 395; and is killed in the hottest part of the field, *ib.*

UMTIRARA, SON AND HEIR OF VUSANI, PARAMOUNT CHIEF OF THE TEMBU TRIBE:

at the time of the Kaffir war of 1834-5 is a minor, *ii* 104; on the 25th of March 1845 enters into a treaty with Sir Peregrine Maitland, *ii* 260; in 1838 goes to live on the Zwart Kei, being driven from his own country by the Pondos and Bacas, *iii* 9; in 1846-7 professes to be neutral in the war between the Xosas and the Cape Colony, *iii* 8; is only paramount chief in name, as the emigrant Tembu clans are quite independent of his authority, *iii* 9; is at feud with Kreli, which prevents their union against the Cape Colony, *ib.*; sends to the governor of the Cape Colony to request that he may be declared a British subject, and the land from the colonial border to the Indwe be declared British territory, *iii* 31; his conduct, however, towards the colonists is exceedingly suspicious, *iii* 32; in August 1846 nearly the whole of his people are driven over the Indwe by the tribes with which he is at enmity, *ib.*; on the 3rd of December he has an interview with Sir Peregrine

Maitland at Blockdrift, and renews his request for British protection, *ib.*; which the governor recommends to the secretary of state, *ib.*; in January 1848 is promised protection by Sir Harry Smith if he chooses to live west of the Indwe, *iii* 63

UMTONGA, SON OF THE ZULU CHIEF PANDA:

in February 1861 flees into the district of Utrecht through fear of Ketshwayo, *iv* 459; see Ketshwayo

UMVOTI LOCATION IN NATAL:

in 1846 is set apart for the use of the Bantu, *iii* 230

UMZILA, SON OF MANIKUSA, CHIEF OF THE MATSHANGANA:

in 1858, on account of a quarrel with one of his brothers, is obliged to flee from his own country, *iv* 479; takes refuge in Zoutpansberg, where a location is assigned to him by João Albasini, *ib.*; in 1861 proceeds to Delagoa Bay, where he obtains assistance from the Portuguese authorities which enables him to defeat his brother, *ib.*; he then becomes chief of the Matshangana, but as a vassal of the Portuguese, *ib.*; in 1864 desires Albasini to surrender a refugee named Monene to him, *iv* 480; further particulars concerning, *v* 147 and 148

UMZIMVUBU RIVER, MOUTH OF:

see Port St. John's

UMZINYATI LOCATION IN NATAL:

in 1846 is set apart for the use of the Bantu, *iii* 230

UNANDI, MOTHER OF TSHAKA:

mention of, *i* 434

UNION BANK:

in 1847 is established in Capetown, *ii* 243; on the 31st of July 1890 is closed

UNION BETWEEN THE CAPE COLONY AND THE ORANGE FREE STATE:

efforts to bring about, *iv* 209 and 215

UNION BETWEEN THE ORANGE FREE STATE AND THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

efforts to bring about, *iii* 490; *iv* 186 to 188, 442, and *v* 51

UNION STEAMSHIP COMPANY:

in 1857 commences its connection with South Africa, *iii* 153; particulars concerning, *iv* 149

UPSET PRICE OF CROWN LAND IN NATAL:

■ fixed in 1847 by the secretary of state for the colonies, *iii* 255

**USUTU :**

is ■ name adopted by the adherents of Ketshwayo, *iii* 241

**UTRECHT, DISTRICT OF :**

in 1843 is settled by emigrants from Natal, who form an independent republic there; in September 1854 the ground is formally ceded by Panda to the farmers occupying it, *iv* 458; in May 1858 the district is united to the republic of Lydenburg, *iii* 428; and in April 1860 with Lydenburg becomes part of the South African Republic, *iv* 442

**UYS, DIRK CORNELIS, A YOUNG LAD :**

on the 11th of April 1838 while behaving in ■ most gallant manner is killed in battle with the Zulus, *ii* 372

**UYS, JACOBUS :**

in 1837 is leader of ■ party of emigrants from the Cape Colony, *ii* 309; is presented with a large bible by the people of Grahamstown as a mark of their regard, *ib.*; resolves to set up a government independent of the other parties somewhere in Natal, *ii* 318; in July 1838 dies in Natal, *ii* 375

**UYS, PIETER LAVRAS :**

in 1834 with ■ party of farmers from the Cape Colony inspects the territory of Natal, *ii* 343; in 1837 leaves the Cape Colony with a party under the leadership of his father, *ii* 309; particulars concerning, *ib.*; acts in absolute independence of all the other parties of emigrants, *ii* 316; on the 14th of August 1837 he and his party issue a declaration to this effect, *ib.*; on the 19th of October 1837 makes an agreement of friendship with Moroko, *ii* 318; in November of this year assists Commandant Potgieter to drive the Matabele from the Marikwa, *ib.*; in December 1837 visits the emigrant camp in Natal, but declines to acknowledge Mr. Retief's authority, *ii* 357; after the massacres in Natal hastens to the aid of his countrymen, *ii* 366; but declines to serve under Maritz, *ii* 369; in company with a body of men under Hendrik Potgieter proceeds to attack Dingana, *ii* 370; and on the 11th of April 1838 is killed in battle, *ii* 372

**UYS, MRS. PIETER LAVRAS :**

unjust prosecution of, *ii* 313

**VADANA :**

■ regent of the Tembu tribe during the minority of Umtirara, heir of Vusani, *ii* 104; during the Kaffir war of 1834-5 offers

protection to white people who can escape from the Xosa country, *ii* 105; in April 1835 assists a patrol under Captain Warden to capture cattle from one of Hintza's kraals, *ii* 112; in November 1836 is plundered by Ncapayi, and in vain seeks aid from Lieutenant-Governor Stockenstrom, *ii* 406; in 1856 and 1857 takes a leading part in the cattle killing delusion, *iii* 200; in 1857 becomes head of a robber band, but is captured and sent as a prisoner to Capetown, *iii* 215

VAGRANT ACT:

particulars concerning the unsuccessful effort in 1834 to pass an ordinance concerning vagrancy in the Cape Colony, *ii* 80 *et seq.*

VANDELEUR, BRIGADIER-GENERAL THOMAS:

in 1799 is in command of the troops that suppress the insurrection in Graaff-Reinet, *i* 54

VANDERKEMP, DR. JACOBUS THEODORUS:

in March 1799 arrives in South Africa as an agent of the London missionary society, *i* 67; attempts to form a station near the kraal of the Xosa chief Gaika, *i* 68; but not succeeding in this, he removes to Graaff-Reinet, *ib.*; towards the close of 1801 with a party of Hottentots he proceeds from Graaff-Reinet to a farm near Algoa Bay, where he is assisted by the government to form a temporary station, *i* 92; in 1803 a tract of land is selected for a mission station, which the government grants to the London society, and to which Dr. Vanderkemp gives the name Bethelsdorp, *i* 124; on the 15th of December 1811 he dies in Capetown

VATWAHS, BANTU FUGITIVES FROM ZULULAND:

description of, *v* 129 and 130

VAN VELDEN, REV. DIRK:

in January 1850 is appointed first resident clergyman of Winburg, *iii* 309

VENABLE, REV. MR., AMERICAN MISSIONARY:

in June 1836 with two associates goes to reside with the Matabele in the valley of Mosega, *ii* 302; in January 1837 retires with the emigrant farmers, *ii* 303; in July 1837 arrives in Natal and commences to labour there, *ii* 348; visits Dingana a few hours after the massacre of Pieter Retief and his party, *ii* 363; gives notice at the different stations, when all the missionaries retire to the port, *ib.*; in April 1838 leaves Natal, and does not return, *ii* 374



## VENTER, JACOBUS JOHANNES :

is chairman of a commission appointed in February 1855 to administer the government of the Orange Free State temporarily, *iii* 456; and makes a useless arrangement with Moshesh, *ib.*; acts as president between the retirement of Mr. M. W. Pretorius and the assumption of duty by Advocate J. H. Brand, *iv* 208

## VEREKER, LIEUTENANT :

in April 1817 is in command of a patrol sent into Kaffirland in search of stolen cattle, *i* 326

## VERULAM, VILLAGE IN NATAL :

in 1850 is founded, *iii* 263

## VETBERG LINE :

in October 1855 is laid down by Adam Kok, acting an arbitrator, between the districts belonging to Nicholas Waterboer and Cornelis Kok, *iii* 465; in 1869 is beaoned off by a Free State commission, *iv* 338

## VETCH, CAPTAIN JAMES :

submits an elaborate plan for an enclosed harbour in Table Bay, *iii* 167

## VICE-ADMIRALTY COURT: see Court

## VICTORIA EAST :

in December 1847 is constituted a division of the Cape Colony, *iii* 67

## VICTORIA WEST, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :

in November 1855 is created, *iii* 148

## VICTORIA WEST, VILLAGE OF :

in 1844 is founded, *ii* 248; in April 1844 the first consistory of the Dutch reformed church commences its duties, *ib.*; in February 1871 is greatly damaged by a sudden flood, when sixty-two lives are lost, *iv* 133

## VIERVOET, BATTLE OF :

on the 30th of June 1851 is fought between the Basuto of Moshesh and forces collected by Major Warden in the Orange River Sovereignty, when the latter are defeated, *iii* 320

VIEWS OF THE CAPE COLONISTS AND THE MISSIONARIES REGARDING SIR BENJAMIN D'URBAN'S SETTLEMENT OF THE PROVINCE OF QUEEN ADELAIDE, *ii* 135

## VIGNE, FREDERICK :

in 1855 is appointed magistrate with the Gunukwebe chief Pato, *iii* 190

**VILJOEN, JAN WILLEM :**

in December 1863 heads an insurrection against the existing government of the South African Republic, *iv* 450; on the 5th of January 1864 is defeated by forces commanded by Paul Kruger, *iv* 451

**VILLIERSDORP, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE :**

in 1841 is founded, *ii* 228

**DE VILLIERS, JOHN GEORGE :**

in February 1837 is appointed resident magistrate of the new district of Port Elizabeth, *ii* 164

**DE VILLIERS, J. H. (LATER LORD DE VILLIERS) :**

in 1871 is a member of the federation commission, *iv* 128; proceedings in parliament of, *iv* 137; in November 1872 becomes attorney-general of the Cape Colony under responsible government, *iv* 146

**VISAGIE, J. H. :**

is secretary to the Transvaal delegates when concluding the Sand River convention, *iii* 376

**VOLKSRAAD :**

on the 2nd of December 1836 the first is elected by the emigrant farmers, *ii* 296; on the 6th of June 1837 the second is elected, *ii* 306

**VOLKSRAAD OF NATAL :**

constitution and powers of, *ii* 378 and 400; in 1840 tries to induce the British government to acknowledge the independence of the republic, *ii* 402; but while correspondence on the subject is being carried on, sends a commando to punish the Baca chief Ncapayi for theft of cattle, *ii* 410; upon being apprised that Sir George Napier is sending troops to protect Faku, writes in justification of the attack upon Ncapayi, but fails to convince the governor, *ii* 413; in August 1841 resolves to locate all the Bantu refugees in Natal in the territory between the Umzimvubu and Umtamvuna rivers, *ii* 414; on the 11th of October 1841 writes to Sir George Napier asserting its independence and refusing to consent to a proposal made by him to station a body of troops at Durban, *ib.*; on being informed that British troops are being sent to occupy Durban, on the 21st of February 1842 announces a determination to resist, *ii* 416; in April 1842 sends Mr. J. A. Smellekamp to Holland to negotiate a treaty placing Natal under the protection of the king of the Netherlands, *ii* 420; on the 17th of May requires the English force to leave Natal within two days, and instructs Commandant-

General Pretorius to enforce the demand, ii 422; after the defeat of the emigrant farmers and the loss of Durban, on the 15th of July submits to the authority of the queen, ii 439; but continues its functions as before, ii 440; on the 8th of August 1843 consents to the conditions for the settlement of the country imposed by the secretary of state for the colonies, ii 451; on the 4th of September gives expression to its views concerning the future government of Natal, ii 452; in the last sessions, at the close of 1844 and beginning of 1845, shows itself very inimical to British authority, ii 460

#### **VOLKSRAAD OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

is the supreme authority of the republic, and consists of one member for each fieldcornetcy and one for each seat of magistracy. The members must be of European blood, over twenty-five years of age, resident at least one year in the state, possessed of unmortgaged landed property of the value of £200, and never convicted of crime. The members are elected for four years, half of them retiring every second year. The volksraad meets once a year in ordinary session, but may be called together in extraordinary session by the executive if need should arise. Twelve members form a quorum. The president and the state secretary have the right of debating, but not of voting in the volksraad. For provisions of constitution of 1854 see chapter lxi; and for amendments made in 1864 see chapter lxxii

#### **VOLKSRAAD OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

is the supreme authority of the state, and consists of three members for each of the districts of Potchefstroom, Lydenburg, Rustenburg, Zoutpansberg, Pretoria, Wakkerstroom, Utrecht, Middelburg, Heidelberg, Waterberg, Marico, and Bloemhof, and one member for each of the towns of Potchefstroom, Lydenburg, Rustenburg, and Pretoria. The members must be of European blood, over thirty years of age, possessed of landed property, members of a Protestant church, never convicted of crime, and voters in the republic of at least three years' standing. No member can be elected by fewer than forty votes in his favour. Father and son cannot have seats in the volksraad at the same time. Before 1873 the members were elected for two years. Half the members retire every second year. The volksraad meets once a year in ordinary session, but may be called together in extraordinary session by the executive if need should arise. Twelve members form a quorum. The president and members of the executive council have the right of debating

but not of voting in the volksraad. For provisions of the constitution of January 1857 see chapter lx

**VOLKSRAAD OF POTCHEFSTROOM:**

constitution and powers of, *ii* 402

**VOLONTAIRE, FRENCH FRIGATE:**

in March 1806 is captured in Table Bay, *i* 213

**VOLUNTARY PRINCIPLE IN THE MAINTENANCE OF PUBLIC WORSHIP:**

opinions in the Cape Colony regarding, *iii* 157; in 1875 an act depriving all churches of aid from the government is passed by both houses of parliament of the Cape Colony and becomes law, *iv* 145

**VOLUNTEERS IN THE CAPE COLONY:**

particulars concerning, *iii* 186

**VOORUITZIGT, FARM ON WHICH THE KIMBERLEY DIAMOND MINE ■  
SITUATED:**

is purchased by the government of the Cape Colony, *iv* 411

**VOS, REV. MICHIEL CHRISTIAAN:**

in April 1802 proceeds to Europe, *i* 93; returns from Europe, and in March 1810 is stationed at Zwartland's church, *i* 269; in April 1811 assumes duty as first clergyman of Caledon, *i* 227; in May 1818 retires on account of illness and old age, *i* 317

**VOWE, THOMAS WHALLEY:**

in September 1848 succeeds Mr. O'Reilly as civil commissioner and resident magistrate at Smithfield, *iii* 293

**VUSANI, PARAMOUNT CHIEF OF THE TEMBU TRIBE:**

in 1828 assists the Cape colonial forces and the warriors of Hintsá in destroying the Amangwane under Matiwane, who have invaded and taken possession of his country, *i* 454; further mention of, *i* 450

**WADE, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL THOMAS FRANCIS:**

from the 10th of August 1833 to the 16th of January 1834 acts as governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 29

**WAKKERSTROOM, DISTRICT IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:**

in 1859 is established, *iv* 440

**WALDENSIAN, THE:**

on the 13th of October 1862 is wrecked at Struys Point, *iv* 29

**WALFISH BAY, ON THE COAST OF GREAT NAMAQUALAND:**

description of, *v* 107; in December 1795 is taken possession of for Great Britain, *i* 25; note upon the name, *ib.*; in May 1868 all the buildings at this place are plundered and destroyed by Hottentots, *v* 101; in March 1878 it is proclaimed part of

the British dominions, *v* 116; and in August 1884 is formally annexed to the Cape Colony, *ib.*

VAN DER WALT, TJAART:

in February 1802 commands in the operations against Hottentot marauders in the eastern part of the Cape Colony, *i* 92; in an engagement on the 13th of February loses one of his sons, *ib.*; in June 1802 is commandant-general of the large force called out, *i* 95; but on the 8th of August is killed in battle, *i* 96

WAR OF 1799-1803 BETWEEN THE CAPE COLONY AND A SECTION OF THE XOSA TRIBE AND ITS HOTTENTOT ALLIES, KNOWN AS THE THIRD KAFFIR WAR:

in March 1799 the Xosa chief Ndlambe, who has been for some time a prisoner at Gaika's kraal, makes his escape, and with a large body of followers crosses the Fish river and invades the Cape Colony, *i* 57; he is joined by all the clans that since 1793 have been living in the Zuurveld, the Gunukwebe only excepted, *ib.*; the farmers flee before the invaders, some of them being obliged to abandon all their property, *ib.*; the Gunukwebe clan, without allying itself with Ndlambe, attacks a column of British troops on the march towards Algoa Bay, and afterwards attacks General Vandeleur's camp, but is repulsed with heavy loss, *i* 58; it cuts off and massacres a detachment under Lieutenant Chumney, *ib.*; the insurgent Hottentots under Klaas Stuurman and other leaders now join the Xosas, *i* 59; in June two large burgher commandos take the field, but become dispirited by being kept waiting while the authorities carry on long and fruitless negotiations with the invaders, *ib.*; the united Xosas and Hottentots now overrun and pillage nearly the whole district of Graaff-Reinet, *ib.*; in July a band ravages Longkloof and murders fifteen white people, *ib.*; in September an arrangement is made by the government with the Xosas and Hottentots, under which the Zuurveld is abandoned to the invaders, who promise not to trespass beyond it, *i* 62; after this arrangement the district of Graaff-Reinet remains in a very wretched state, *i* 86; the Hottentots continue to roam about and plunder such colonists as attempt to carry on farming, *i* 91; early in 1802 a commando is called out to punish them, but so few men appear that the operations undertaken are not successful, *i* 92; in May a much larger number of burghers are called out, *i* 94; very favourable terms are offered to Klaas Stuurman, but he declines them, *i* 95; he and his Xosa allies are then attacked by a burgher force under Commandant Tjaart van der Walt, and for several weeks success attends the colonists,



*ib.*; on the 8th of August, however, Commandant Van der Walt is killed in battle, and immediately afterwards the burghers disperse in great confusion, *i* 96; General Dundas then proceeds to the frontier, taking Mr. Honoratus Maynier with him, *ib.*; a few petty Hottentot captains are induced by Mr. Maynier to lay down their arms, but most of the marauders remain defiant, *ib.*; the combined Xosas and Hottentots ravage the country as far west as Kaaiman's River, near the present village of George, *i* 97; in January 1803 a large burgher force takes the field, but the Hottentots and Xosas are quarrelling about a division of the spoil, they now profess to desire peace with the white people, *ib.*; and on the 20th of February a general cessation of hostilities is agreed to, *i* 98

WAR OF 1811-12 BETWEEN THE CAPE COLONY AND A SECTION OF THE XOSA TRIBE, KNOWN AS THE FOURTH KAFFIR WAR:

every possible effort having been made to conciliate the Xosas in the Zuurveld, without their depredations ceasing, in October 1811 a burgher force is called out to expel them from the Cape Colony, *i* 252; Lieutenant-Colonel Graham is appointed commandant-general, and is directed to employ the burghers and the Hottentot regiment in the duty, *ib.*; the Xosas refuse to remove peaceably, and the chief Ndlambe announces his intention to keep possession of the Zuurveld, *i* 253; before military operations commence, Landdrost Stockenstrom and eight farmers are murdered by a division of the Imidange clan, *i* 254; in January 1812 the Gunukwebe clan is driven from its stronghold, with the loss of its chief Cungwa and twelve or fourteen men, *i* 255; Ndlambe and Pato—Cungwa's son and successor—then abandon the contest and retire across the Fish river, *ib.*; early in February the Zuurveld is thoroughly scoured, and by the 24th of this month there is hardly a Xosa within the colonial border, *i* 256; the prisoners, sufficient corn for seed, and the cattle that have been captured, are then restored to the expelled clans, who are informed that they will not be molested as long as they remain in their own country, *ib.*

WAR OF 1818-19 BETWEEN THE CAPE COLONY AND A SECTION OF THE XOSA TRIBE, KNOWN AS THE FIFTH KAFFIR WAR:

in the winter of 1818 Gaika, having been defeated by his rival Ndlambe in a great battle, requests aid from the white people, *i* 334; it being the policy of the colonial government of that time to support him, Lieutenant-Colonel Brereton with a small force of soldiers and mounted burghers is sent to his aid, *i* 335; Ndlambe's followers retire to dense thickets, but some of

their kraals are destroyed, and twenty-three thousand head of cattle are captured, *ib.*; as the followers of Gaika are unwilling to show mercy to their opponents, the commando is soon withdrawn and the burghers are disbanded, *ib.*; Ndlambe then pours his followers into the colony, and they devastate the Zuurveld and kill a number of people, *i* 336; on the 22nd of April 1819, under the leadership of a seer named Makana, they attack Grahamstown, *i* 337; but after sustaining great loss of life are repulsed, *i* 338; in July 1819 a strong European force in three divisions enters Kaffirland and inflicts very heavy loss upon the adherents of Ndlambe, who are utterly broken, *i* 339; on the 15th of August 1819 Makana surrenders, *ib.*; hostilities then cease, though the European forces are kept in the field, *i* 341; on the 15th of October Lord Charles Somerset has a conference at the Gwanga with Gaika and other chiefs, *ib.*; when it is arranged that the tract of land between the Fish and Keiskama rivers shall be kept without other inhabitants than soldiers, *i* 343

**WAR OF 1834-5 BETWEEN THE CAPE COLONY AND THE XOSA TRIBE, KNOWN AS THE SIXTH KAFFIR WAR:**

in the evening of the 21st of December 1834 a great horde of Xosas begins to cross the boundary and lay waste the frontier colonial districts, *ii* 90; in ten or twelve days the whole of the open country as far west as the village of Uitenhage is ravaged, twenty-two white men are murdered, four hundred and fifty-six houses are burned, and an immense number of horses, horned cattle, sheep, and goats are driven off, *ii* 91; fortunately most of the colonists receive warning in time to take refuge in the towns and villages, *ii* 92; all the trading stations in Kaffirland are pillaged, and ten of the traders are murdered, *ib.*; the three military posts farthest in advance are of necessity abandoned, *ib.*; Lieutenant-Colonel Smith and all the troops that can be spared from the Cape peninsula are sent to the scene of hostilities as rapidly as possible, *ii* 94; the burgher forces of the colony are called out, and a number of Hottentots are levied, *ii* 95; on the 10th of January 1835 a patrol under Major Cox leaves Grahamstown and commences operations against the Xosas, *ii* 96; on the 20th of January Sir Benjamin D'Urban arrives in Grahamstown and takes command of the assembled forces, *ii* 97; the missionaries and surviving traders in Kaffirland are brought out by patrols sent to rescue them, *ii* 99; early in February the Xosas are driven out of the colony, but take possession of the thickets along the Fish river, *ii* 100; where they are attacked on the 12th of February, and on the

15th are obliged to retire, *ii* 101; on the 19th of February they make a sudden raid into the Kat river settlement, but are beaten back, *ib.*; they manage, however, to recover the fastnesses of the Fish river, from which it is with difficulty that they are again expelled, *ii* 102; they then retire to the forests along the Amatola mountains, *ib.*; on the 31st of March the colonial forces cross the Keiskama to attack them there, *ii* 106; between the 2nd and the 10th of April a good many cattle are recovered and the Xosas are driven out of the fastnesses of the Amatola, *ii* 107; on the 15th of April a division of the army under Sir Benjamin D'Urban crosses the Kei into the territory of Hintsá, paramount chief of the tribe, who has been aiding the Rarabe clans in the war, *ii* 108; on the 17th this force encamps at Butterworth, *ii* 109; when certain Fingo captains apply to the governor for protection, whereupon Sir Benjamin D'Urban adopts a plan of settlement which involves the removal of them and their people to the territory between the Fish and Keiskama rivers, *ii* 110; as Hintsá does not give satisfaction for his hostile conduct, on the 24th of April war is declared against him, *ii* 112; the forces then commence to scour the Galeka country, and succeed in capturing some cattle, which causes Hintsá to come to the camp on the 29th of April to ask for peace, and on the following day terms are agreed upon, *ib.*; on the 2nd of May the troops begin to move towards the colony, *ib.*; on the 4th of May terms of peace are offered to the Rarabe chiefs, which they refuse to accept, *ii* 114; Hintsá does not fulfil his agreement, and is killed while attempting to escape from a patrol sent out on his proposal to collect cattle, *ii* 116; on the 19th of May peace is concluded with his son Kreli, *ii* 117; the Rarabes are encouraged to continue the war by the language of their European sympathisers, *ii* 118; on the 23rd of May the farmers are disbanded that they may get seed grain in the ground, and the Hottentots who are kept under arms have pay assigned to them, *ii* 120; the forces in the field continue to harass the Rarabes as much as possible, *ii* 121; as soon as the seed is in the ground the farmers are called to arms again, *ii* 122; but negotiations are now opened with the Rarabe chiefs through the medium of some Wesleyan missionaries, and on the 15th of August a suspension of hostilities is arranged, *ii* 123; on the 11th of September Sir Benjamin D'Urban has a conference at Fort Willshire with the Rarabe chiefs, and on the 17th peace is finally concluded by the chiefs consenting to become British subjects and to have locations assigned to them in the province of Queen Adelaide, *ii* 125

WAR OF 1846-7 BETWEEN THE CAPE COLONY AND THE XOSA TRIBE  
ASSISTED BY THE EMIGRANT TEMBUS, KNOWN AS THE SEVENTH  
KAFFIR WAR, ALSO AS THE WAR OF THE AXE:

on the 16th of March 1846 a Xosa detected in theft at Fort Beaufort is being sent as a prisoner to Grahamstown for trial, when he is rescued on colonial ground by his friends, and a constable is killed, *iii* 1; the lieutenant-governor demands the rescued man and the murderer of the constable from the chiefs Tola, Botumane, and Sandile, all of whom decline to surrender them, *iii* 2; he then, 11th of April, sends a military force to occupy Sandile's kraal at Burnshill, *iii* 4; the force meets with resistance, loses the greater part of its stores, and is obliged to retreat to Blockdrift, *iii* 6; the Xosas now pour into the colony and lay waste the border districts, *ib.*; nearly the whole tribe is united against the Europeans, and is aided by the emigrant Tembus under Mapasa, *iii* 8; on the 30th of April the Xosas are greatly elated by the retreat of a military force sent to the Beka to attack them, *iii* 10; during the following month, however, they are driven out of the colony, *iii* 11; on the 21st of May a train of forty-three waggons laden with supplies for Fort Peddie is captured by them in the jungle of the Fish river, *iii* 13; on the 28th of May they make an unsuccessful attempt to get possession of Fort Peddie, *ib.*; on the 1st of June much-needed supplies reach that fort, *iii* 14; on the 8th the warriors of Umhala and Siyolo sustain a crushing defeat at the Gwanga, *iii* 15; in the third week of July Pato is pursued across the Kei and some cattle are recovered from him, *iii* 18; at the end of July the Amatola fastnesses are scoured, but the Xosas manage to escape, *iii* 19; an expedition is then sent against Kreli, but it does nothing to chastise him, *iii* 22; though when returning it inflicts some injury upon the Tembus of Mapasa, *iii* 24; owing to long drought and the scarcity of provisions away from the sea the bulk of the regular forces now moves to a camp at Waterloo Bay, and on the 16th of September the burghers are disbanded, *iii* 27; parties of Xosa raiders continue to devastate the districts of Albany and Somerset and to murder unprotected people, *iii* 29; after the fall of rain in September the Gaika and Imidange chiefs, who want to plant maize and millet, express a desire for peace, *iii* 30; and on the 30th of that month a conference takes place between them and Lieutenant-Colonel Johnstone, when they reject without hesitation the terms offered by the governor, *iii* 31; shortly after this the emigrant Tembus are reduced to such straits that they are unable to take part again in the war,



iii 32; the clan of Umhala is also severely punished, iii 33; the Xosas now adopt a system of passive resistance, *ib.*; in October Makoma surrenders, iii 34; on the 18th of November Sandile professes to agree to terms of peace, iii 37; after which every Xosa who chooses to surrender a musket or six assagais is registered as a British subject and permitted to set about cultivating the land, *ib.*; by the beginning of December the only chiefs west of the Kei openly in arms against the colony are Pato, Kobe, and Toyise, but many followers of the others are with these, *ib.*; towards the close of this month a strong force endeavours to surround Pato and his associates between the Gonubie and the Kei, but fails in its object, iii 38; on the 1st of January 1847 this force proceeds to Butterworth to attack Kreli, and succeeds in capturing a good many cattle, with which it returns to King-Williamstown, iii 39; on the 13th of January Sir Peregrine Maitland, believing the war to be nearly over, abolishes martial law in the colony, though Pato is still in arms, iii 40; in April a line of posts is formed along the western bank of the Buffalo river, iii 45; as soon as his crops are gathered Sandile again assumes a hostile attitude, iii 46; in June, owing to his conduct, an attempt is made to arrest him, when his followers fire upon the patrol, iii 48; Governor Sir Henry Pottinger then sends him an ultimatum, which he treats with disdain, so on the 27th of August he is declared a rebel and forces are set in motion to subdue him, iii 49; on the 19th of September three strong patrols enter the Amatola fastnesses and keep constantly moving from place to place to prevent the hostile Xosas from settling anywhere, iii 51; so that on the 19th of October Sandile and Anta surrender, iii 52; the troops then move to the Kei to attack Kreli and Pato, *ib.*; with the result that on the 19th of December Pato is obliged to surrender, iii 53; on the 23rd of December Governor Sir Harry Smith proclaims the country between the colonial boundary and the Kei a British province, which, with the exception of small areas round forts and mission stations, is to be preserved for the exclusive use of Bantu, iii 57; on the 7th of January 1848 the Rarabe and emigrant Tembu chiefs take an oath of allegiance to the queen of England, Kreli and Buku agree to the terms offered to them, and peace is proclaimed, iii 61

WAR OF 1850-53 BETWEEN THE CAPE COLONY AND THE XOSA TRIBE  
AIDED BY THE EMIGRANT TEMBUS AND REBEL HOTTENTOTS,  
KNOWN AS THE EIGHTH KAFFIR WAR:

on the 24th of December 1850 a patrol sent to arrest Sandile is



attacked in the Boomah pass, and suffers heavy loss, *iii* 95; on the same day fifteen soldiers are murdered at Debe Nek, *ib.*; on Christmas day the military villages in the Tyumie valley are destroyed, and their male occupants are murdered, *iii* 96; the governor is at Fort Cox, which is at once besieged by a large force of Xosas, and an attempt to relieve his Excellency by a patrol from Fort Hare fails, but on the 30th at the head of two hundred and fifty Cape mounted riflemen he makes a dash through the enemy and escapes, *iii* 99; the Kaffir police then desert and go over to the enemy, and a destructive raid into the colony is made, *ib.*; a large number of Hottentots join the Xosas, *iii* 101; and with them many Cape mounted riflemen, *iii* 102; on the 7th of January 1851 Fort Beaufort is attacked by a mixed horde under the leadership of Hermanus Matroos, but the assailants are beaten off and Hermanus is killed, *iii* 103; on the 22nd of February 1851 Fort Armstrong is recovered, but for some months afterwards nothing of importance can be done to oppose the enemy, *iii* 104; a second destructive raid into the colony is made, *ib.*; Whittlesea is repeatedly attacked by the Tembus, but always unsuccessfully, *ib.*; the Zulu chief Panda offers to assist the English, but his proposal is declined with thanks, *iii* 105; in December 1851 Galekaland is invaded, and much damage is done to the enemy, *ib.*; on Christmas day the Tembus suffer a severe defeat, *iii* 106; soon afterwards Kreli invades the colony, but is beaten back by a burgher force under Captain Tylden, *iii* 109; large reinforcements of troops arrive from England, *iii* 110; in August 1852 Galekaland is again invaded, and Kreli is brought to desire peace, *iii* 112; in September the Kroome and Amatola ranges are cleared of the enemy, and forts are built in such positions that the Xosas cannot return to these fastnesses, *ib.*; on the 9th of October Siyolo surrenders, and his example is followed by the Tembu chiefs, *ib.*; as well as by most of the Hottentot rebels, *iii* 113; ■ settlement of the Tembus is then effected by those people being located at Glen Grey under charge of Mr. J. C. Warner, *ib.*; in February 1853 peace is formally concluded with Kreli, *ib.*; and on the 9th of March with the Rarabe chiefs, who ■■ deprived for ever of the Amatola fastnesses, *iii* 114

WAR OF 1858 BETWEEN THE ORANGE FREE STATE AND THE BASUTO TRIBE UNDER THE CHIEF MOSHESH:

on the 19th of March 1858 is proclaimed at Bloemfontein, *iii* 473; Mr. J. Sauer, landdrost of Smithfield, is directed with a commando to disarm the Basuto at Beersheba, *iii* 476; he stations a guard at the ford of the Caledon, which is attacked, and a skirmish

takes place, *ib.*; the Basuto at Beersheba decline to give up their arms, and are consequently fired upon, *ib.*; on the 28th of March a commando under Hendrik Weber defeats Nehemiah and Poshuli at Vechtkop, and destroys Poshuli's villages, *iii* 478; on the 30th it loses sixteen men in an ambush at Mohali's Hoek, *ib.*; on the 25th of March a commando under W. J. Pretorius defeats Moperi and Molitsane at Koranaberg, *ib.*; two commandos, under F. Senekal and W. J. Pretorius, fight their way through a dense mass of Basuto at Cathcart's drift, *iii* 479; and on the 25th of April effect a junction with Weber at Jammerberg drift, *ib.*; the united force attacks Letsie at Morija, defeats him, and takes his kraal, *ib.*; marches from Morija to Thaba Bosigo, arriving there on the 6th of May, but at once recognises the impossibility of taking the stronghold, *iii* 480; the burghers now learn that while they have been engaged in Basutoland swarms of light horsemen have been ravaging the districts of Winburg and Smithfield, *ib.*; in consequence of these tidings and the hopelessness of their position the burghers disperse to their homes, *iii* 481; in the mean time President Boshof has applied to the South African Republic for aid, *ib.*; and the volksraad of the northern state has directed President Pretorius and Commandant-General Schoeman to proceed to Bloemfontein and endeavour to restore peace, under the assurance that if Moshesh should refuse reasonable terms the united countries will deal with him, *ib.*; the president has also requested Sir George Grey to mediate, *ib.*; and with the approval of the parliament of the Cape Colony that governor has consented to do so, *iii* 482; before a reply is received from either Potchefstroom or Capetown, the Free State force has dispersed, and President Boshof is compelled to ask Moshesh to suspend hostilities, *iii* 483; Moshesh replies in a haughty tone, but consents to receive a deputation to arrange a truce, and on the 1st of June an armistice is signed to last until the arrival of Sir George Grey, *ib.*; Governor Sir George Grey frames a treaty of peace which gives to the Basuto a large strip of country, but transfers the Beersheba lands to the Free State, *iii* 494; on the 29th of September this treaty is signed by the representatives of both parties, and on the 15th of October by Moshesh himself, *iii* 495

**WAR OF 1858 BETWEEN THE ORANGE FREE STATE AND THE BUSHMEN, KORANAS, AND BATLAPIN:**

in May and June 1858 Scheel Kobus, Goliath Yzerbek, and Gasibone, seeing the Free State forces occupied with the Basuto, make several unprovoked raids into the territory of the republic,

plundering the country and murdering several of the inhabitants, *iii* 485; a commando under Hendrik Venter is sent against them, which attacks the robbers' stronghold on the 5th of July, and captures it, *iii* 487; forty-three men and fifty women and children are made prisoners, *iii* 488; the men are sent under escort of a Fingo guard to the prison at Bloemfontein, but are met on the way by a party of burghers and shot down, *ib.*

WAR OF 1858 BETWEEN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC AND THE BATLAPIN TRIBE OF BETSHUANA:

as the Batlapin captains Gasibone and Matlabane had taken advantage of the confusion caused by the Basuto war to plunder some farms and murder a burgher north of the Vaal, a commando under Paul Kruger is sent against them, *iii* 489; Gasibone flees to Mahura, who gives him shelter and declines to surrender him when called upon to do so, *ib.*; in consequence the Batlapin are attacked, and on the 13th of August Gasibone is killed in battle, *ib.*; as soon as this is known Mahura asks for peace, and on the 18th terms are signed, in which Mahura agrees to surrender all captured property and within three months pay the costs of the campaign, *ib.*

WAR OF 1865-69 BETWEEN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC AND THE BAVENDA TRIBE IN THE DISTRICT OF ZOUTPANSBERG:

is commenced in April 1865 by commandos of Europeans and Knobnoses attacking some clans who are giving shelter to a fugitive from justice, *iv* 481; the white inhabitants of the northern part of the district of Zoutpansberg retire into lagers, *ib.*; much property is destroyed by the insurgents, *iv* 482; a strong commando is called out by the government, but the burghers decline to obey the call, *ib.*; in June 1866 a small commando under the president takes the field, but effects nothing, *iv* 483; the clans now begin to quarrel among themselves, but early in 1867 suspend their dissensions and attack the Europeans again, *ib.*; in May 1867 Commandant-General Paul Kruger with five hundred men, ill supplied with munitions of war, attacks Katlakter, but does not succeed in capturing that chief's stronghold, *iv* 484; in June 1867 the commandant-general finds it necessary to abandon Schoemansdal and permit the burghers to return to their homes, *iv* 485; after the commando is disbanded, the president endeavours to raise a force of volunteers, but succeeds in obtaining only fifty-three men, *iv* 486; these take the field under Commandant Stephanus Schoeman, but can effect nothing, *ib.*; in February 1868 only two hundred and sixty men assemble out of a thousand called

out, so that Kruger can do nothing but disband them, *iv* 487; the people in the lagers are by this time reduced to extreme poverty, *iv* 488; in May 1868 between eight and nine hundred men assemble, and attack Mapela, who has joined the other insurgents, *ib.*; they inflict heavy losses upon him, *ib.*; the principal insurgents are now quarrelling with each other, *iv* 489; in July 1868 a kind of peace is concluded by President Pretorius and Mr. S. Schoeman with the Baramapulana, *ib.*; and in February 1869 a formal peace is made with Mapela and Matshem, *iv* 490; the clans then fight with each other, and in October 1869 ■ Swazi army nearly annihilates the most powerful of them, *ib.*

WAR OF 1865-6 BETWEEN THE ORANGE FREE STATE AND THE BASUTO TRIBE :

every effort to induce Moshesh to fulfil his engagements having failed, and various acts of violence having been committed by Basuto chiefs on Free State soil, on the 9th of June 1865 war is proclaimed by President Brand, *iv* 227; on the 13th of June the Free State army under Commandant-General Fick forms ■ camp a short distance from Mabilela, the residence of the chief Moperi, *iv* 230; on the 14th eight hundred and fifty men leave the camp to attack Mabilela, *ib.*; but are opposed on the march by an overwhelming force of Basuto, *iv* 231; at the same time a strong detachment of the Basuto army, under the chief Lerothodi, advances to attack the camp, *ib.*; upon ascertaining this, the commando falls back and repels Lerothodi, thus failing in the design of taking Mabilela, but saving the camp, *ib.*; on the 20th and 21st of June ■ column of Basuto under Poshuli and Morosi makes a destructive raid into the district of Smithfield, *iv* 232; on the 27th and 28th of June another party under Masupha and Moperi makes a raid into the Bloemfontein district, and murders fifty-four halfbreeds and a number of Europeans, *iv* 234; but on the 29th is encountered at Verkeerde Vlei by a party of burghers, and is defeated with heavy loss, *iv* 235; ■ third raiding party ravages the country to within two hours' ride of the village of Kroonstad, *ib.*; on the 14th of July Vechtkop is taken by the division of the Free State forces under Commandant Wepener, invading Basutoland from the south, *iv* 239; and on the 31st of July Letsie's kraal Matsieng is occupied by the same commando, *iv* 240; when Commandant Wepener issues a proclamation declaring the country up to ■ line from Bamboesplaats to Thaba Tele and thence north by compass to the Caledon annexed to the Free State, *ib.*; Commandant-General Fick advances from the north, and



on the 20th of July crosses the Caledon, when he proclaims the territory north and west of that river part of the Free State, *ib.*; on the 25th of July he takes the Berea mountain by storm, *iv* 240 and 241; and forms his camp on the site of Masupha's kraal, *iv* 241; on the 3rd of August Wepener joins Fick before Thaba Bosigo, where the whole Free State force is concentrated, *iv* 242; on the 8th of August an unsuccessful attempt is made to take Thaba Bosigo by storm, *ib.*; and again on the 15th of August another unsuccessful attempt to scale the mountain is made, *iv* 245; on the 23rd of August Moshesh proposes to President Brand to invite the high commissioner to arrange terms of peace, and asks for an armistice, *iv* 246; on the 25th the president informs Moshesh of the terms on which he is prepared to make peace, *iv* 247; which terms are rejected by the great chief, *iv* 250; on the 24th of August the council of war resolves to blockade Thaba Bosigo, and scour the surrounding country, *iv* 246; during the blockade many thousands of oxen perish on Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 247; on the 25th of September, owing to the return home of most of the burghers, the siege of Thaba Bosigo is raised, *iv* 251; on the 27th of June five burghers of the South African Republic travelling through the Free State are murdered by Ramanela's people, and their property is seized, *iv* 236; on the 7th of August President Pretorius demands from Moshesh the murderers and the value of the property, *iv* 249; as Moshesh does not comply with the demand, a force of nine hundred and seventy men is sent under Commandant-General Kruger to punish him, *iv* 252; on the morning of the 29th of September this force is attacked at Naauwpoort by Molapo's followers, but quickly puts them to flight, *ib.*; on the 6th of October the forces under Kruger and Fick unite at Molapo's kraal Leribe, *ib.*; when Fick proclaims the district between the Caledon and the Putiatsana Free State territory, *ib.*; on the 23rd of October the combined forces defeat a great Basuto army at Cathcart's drift, *ib.*; on the 30th of October Kruger's commando leaves for home without making peace with the Basuto, *iv* 253; on the 1st of November Commandant Pieter Wessels defeats Morosi, *ib.*; President Brand commissions Messrs. Webster and Tainton to raise bodies of European and coloured volunteers, *iv* 255; Sir Philip Wodehouse objects to this, and threatens if it is carried out to prevent supplies of ammunition passing through the British colonies, *ib.*; on the 1st of December General Fick takes Leribe, when Molapo retreats to Thaba Patsoa, *ib.*; in December Lebenya with his clan crosses the Orange river into the Witte-



bergen reserve, and claims British protection, *iv* 256; on the 8th of January 1866 Molitsane attacks the village of Winburg, and causes some damage, *iv* 262; on the 22nd of the same month Molapo attacks the village of Bethlehem, but is beaten back with heavy loss, *ib.*; in the beginning of February the burghers again take the field in force, *iv* 263; on the 19th of February Molapo and Ramanela are defeated, *iv* 268; on the 22nd of February the volksraad declines an offer which Sir Philip Wodehouse has made to act as mediator, *iv* 266 and 267; from the 23rd of February to the 2nd of March the Drakensberg is scoured by a large commando, and ■ good many cattle are captured, *iv* 268; which causes Molapo to ask for peace *iv* 269; an armistice is agreed to with him, and afterwards with Moshesh and Letsie, *iv* 270; on the 26th of March peace is concluded with Molapo, and the treaty of Imparani is signed, by which that chief becomes a vassal of the Free State, *iv* 272; ■ Moshesh and Letsie decline to make peace on the president's terms, on the 22nd of March war is renewed with them, *iv* 271; on the 31st of March at an assembly of chiefs at Thaba Bosigo it is resolved to profess to agree to peace in order to save the crops then ready to be gathered, *iv* 272; Moshesh writes to the president asking for peace, and offering to cede the territory which Messrs. Fick and Wepener have proclaimed part of the Free State, *iv* 273; on the 3rd of April terms are agreed to on both sides, and peace is concluded by the signing of the treaty of Thaba Bosigo, *ib.*; in November Moshesh makes overtures to President Pretorius, of the South African Republic, for ■ general treaty of peace, *iv* 492; ■ deputation is sent from Pretoria to Thaba Bosigo, and in February 1867 an agreement of peace and friendship is signed, *ib.*

**WAR OF 1867-8 BETWEEN THE ORANGE FREE STATE AND THE BASUTO TRIBE :**

on the 16th of July 1867 President Brand calls the burghers to arms to compel Moshesh to observe the treaty of Thaba Bosigo, and on the 5th of August two strong brigades enter the disturbed territory, *iv* 290; on the 25th of September Makwai's mountain is taken by Chief-Commandant Pansegrouw's division, *iv* 291; Chief-Commandant G. J. Joubert destroys extensive fortifications in the ceded district north of Basutoland, *iv* 297; on the 28th of January 1868 Tandjesberg is captured by Chief-Commandant Pansegrouw, *iv* 298; on the 22nd of February 1868 the Kieme is taken by Chief-Commandant Pansegrouw, *iv* 300; on receipt of this intelligence Sir Philip Wodehouse, to preserve the Basuto tribe intact, proclaims Moshesh's people

British subjects and their country British territory, *iv* 301; on the 26th of March Sir Walter Currie and a force of police arrive at Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 304; President Brand then issues orders to the Free State forces not to cross the boundary fixed by the treaty of Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 305; the volksraad resolves to send a deputation to England to protest to the imperial authorities, *iv* 306; the reverend Mr. Van de Waal and Mr. C. J. de Villiers are sent to England, *iv* 313; but are informed at the colonial office that her Majesty's government will not withdraw the negotiations from the high commissioner, *ib.*; and the matter is left entirely in Sir Philip Wodehouse's hands, *ib.*; meantime a fruitless correspondence is carried on between the high commissioner and the Free State government, *ib.*; owing to no settlement being effected, the Basuto generally become dissatisfied, and the country is in a state of lawlessness, *iv* 316; the Natal government desires the annexation of Basutoland to that colony, *iv* 317; the Free State, having no alternative, consents to negotiate, and on the 4th of February 1869 its deputies meet the high commissioner at Aliwal North, *iv* 318; where on the 12th of February 1869 the second treaty of Aliwal North is signed, by which a portion of the territory ceded by the treaty of Thaba Bosigo is restored to the Basuto, *iv* 319

**WARDEN, CAPTAIN HENRY DOUGLAS, OF THE CAPE MOUNTED RIFLES:**

in April 1835, during the sixth Kaffir war, is sent with a patrol to rescue the missionaries and traders who have taken shelter at Clarkebury, *ii* 111; a few days later, with the assistance of the Tembu chief Vadana, takes four thousand head of cattle from one of Hintsa's kraals, *ii* 112; assists in the conferences by which the war is brought to an end, *ii* 124; in January 1841 accompanies a military force sent to form a camp on the Umgazi river for the protection of the Pondo chief Faku, *ii* 412; in 1845 accompanies a military force sent from the Cape Colony to assist the Griquas of Adam Kok against the emigrant farmers, *ii* 490; in July is left at Philippolis in command of a small garrison, *ii* 494; in January 1846 becomes British resident in Adam Kok's territory, *ib.*; in March holds a conference with the chiefs and captains in the country between the Orange and Vaal rivers, and induces them to consent to refer their disputes to a commission to be appointed by the governor of the Cape Colony, *ii* 499; is promoted to the rank of major; in June with the assistance of some blacks and half-breeds disperses Jan Kock's adherents at Winburg, *ii* 500; on the 17th of July 1848 is obliged to capitulate to Commandant-

General Pretorius, *iii* 282; retires with his adherents to the left bank of the Orange river near Colesberg, *iii* 283; after the defeat of the emigrant farmers at Boomplaats returns to Bloemfontein ■ British resident, *iii* 294; endeavours in vain to promote peace between the Basuto and the Batlokua, *iii* 300; in October 1849 lays down a boundary for the territory to which the Basuto of Moshesh are restricted, *iii* 306; towards the close of this year defines reserves for all the Bantu and other clans in the Sovereignty, *iii* 307; on the 21st of September 1850 punishes Molitsane for plundering a mission station, and by doing so brings on a war with the Basuto tribe, *iii* 315; collects all the force at his disposal for the purpose of punishing the Basuto, *iii* 318; on the 30th of June 1851 is defeated in the battle of Viervoet, *iii* 320; carries on a correspondence with Mr. A. W. J. Pretorius, which leads to the Sand River convention, *iii* 371; on the 23rd of July 1852 is succeeded ■ British resident in the Orange River Sovereignty by Mr. Henry Green, *iii* 331

WARM BOKKEVELD, TRACT OF LAND IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:  
description of, *i* 161

WARNER, E. J.:

in 1865 is stationed at Southeyville with the title of Tembu agent,  
*iv* 54 and 57

WARNER, J. C.:

in 1852 is placed at Glen Grey to represent the Cape government,  
*iii* 113; transactions of in connection with the removal of the Emigrant Tembus, *iv* 45, 46, 50, and 51; in 1865 is stationed at Idutywa with the title of British resident, *iv* 54; in October 1869 is withdrawn, when the office is abolished, *ib.*

WARREN, COLONEL (LATER SIR CHARLES):

commands the volunteers in the suppression of the Griqualand West rebellion, *iv* 426, 428, 429, and 431

WATERBERG, DISTRICT ■ THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

in March 1866 is formed out of parts of Zoutpansberg and Rustenburg, *iv* 499

WATERBOER, ANDRIES:

upon the removal of the captains Barends and Kok from Griquatown in 1820 is elected head of the station, *ii* 57; he is ■ firm supporter of the missionaries, who in turn do all they can to strengthen him, *ib.*; in June 1823 assists to defeat the Mantati horde, *i* 444; obliges the Barolong chief Sifunelo to

pay six hundred oxen for ■ theft committed by Molitsane's Bataung, *i* 473; but under pressure from the government of the Cape Colony restores the cattle to their owners, *ib.*; in 1832 assists a commando under Mr. W. C. van Ryneveld, civil commissioner of Graaff-Reinet, against the robber captain Stuurman; towards the close of 1834 visits Capetown with the reverend Peter Wright, *ii* 57; and on the 11th of December of that year enters into ■ treaty with the British authorities in South Africa, *ii* 58; in February 1837 through the efforts of the missionaries enters into close alliance with Abraham Kok, *ii* 476; but from September of that year until the beginning of 1841 assists Adam Kok III in war against his brother Abraham, *ii* 477; in November 1838 enters into a treaty with Adam Kok III, in which they divide on paper an immense region between them, *ib.*; in 1848 assists the British forces under Sir Harry Smith against the emigrant farmers in the Orange River Sovereignty, *iii* 285; in 1850 claims the territory between the Modder and Orange rivers westward to Adam Kok's reserve, but his right is not recognised by Major Warden, *iii* 312; on the 13th of December 1852 dies, *ib.*

**WATERBOER, NICHOLAS, SON OF THE ABOVE:**

on the 23rd of December 1852 is elected captain of Griquatown, *iii* 312; is recognised as such by the British government, but the treaty with his father is declared to have been a personal one and therefore no longer in force, *iii* 313; in 1854 has his claim to ground above the junction of the Orange and Vaal rivers recognised by the government of the Orange Free State, *iii* 447; in October 1855 submits his dispute concerning territory with Cornelis Kok to the arbitration of Adam Kok, and is awarded the land south of the Vetberg line, *iii* 465; after October 1855 is recognised by the Free State government as possessing sovereign as well as proprietary rights in the district between the Orange river and the Vetberg line, *iii* 466; further particulars concerning, *iv* 418, 420, and 425; see Arnot and Griqualand

**WATERLOO, THE, CONVICT SHIP:**

on the 28th of August 1842 is wrecked in Table Bay, *ii* 229

**WATERLOO BAY:**

in July 1846 is first used as a convenient place for landing stores for the troops in the field, *iii* 17

**WATERMEYER, ADVOCATE EGIDIUS BENEDICTUS:**

on the 13th of November 1857 is appointed third puisne judge in the supreme court of the Cape Colony, *iii* 148



**WATER SUPPLY OF CAPETOWN:**

particulars concerning the, *i* 245

**WEBER, HENDRIK:**

in the war of 1858 is the first commandant-general of the Free State forces, *iii* 478

**WEENEN, VILLAGE IN NATAL:**

in 1840 is founded, *ii* 398

**WEIGHTS AND MEASURES:** see English

**WEIR, JAMES, MISSIONARY OF THE GLASGOW SOCIETY AT THE TYUMIE:**

in December 1834 is required by the chief Tyali to act as his messenger to Colonel Somerset, *ii* 95; on the 20th of January 1835 is rescued by a military patrol, *ii* 99; at the close of the war returns to his station at the Tyumie, *ii* 131

**WELLINGTON, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in 1838 is founded, *ii* 219; in July 1840 the first consistory of the Dutch reformed church commences duty here, *ib.*

**WENTZEL, WILLEM ADRIAAN:**

in January 1828 is appointed resident magistrate of George, *i* 493

**WEPENER, LOURENS JACOBUS:**

removes from the Cape Colony to the Orange Free State, and at the commencement of the war of 1865-6 with the Basuto is elected commandant of the district of Bethulie, *iv* 231; on the 15th of June 1865 offers to call for volunteers to attempt to take Mabolela by storm, but the council of war rejects the proposal, *iv* 232; on the 14th of July takes Vechtkop by storm, *iv* 239; on the 31st of July takes Matsieng, *iv* 240; on the 3rd of August joins General Fick before Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 242; on the 15th of August is killed while leading a party of volunteers in an attempt to take Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 245

**WEPENER, VILLAGE IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

in October 1867 is founded, *iv* 307

**WESLEYAN CHAPEL IN CAPETOWN:**

in June 1822 the first is opened, *i* 408

**WESLEYAN SOCIETY:**

in April 1816 commences mission work in South Africa, *i* 319; particulars concerning its missions, *i* 318, 408, 472, 475, 477, 478, and 479, *ii* 6, 17, 52, 132, and 405, *iii* 192, 224, and 233, *iv* 216 and 466, *v* 95; in 1866 it is treated by the Free State government in exactly the same manner as the French evangelical society, *iv* 282; after this date has only the station of Thaba Ntshu between the Orange and the Vaal, *ib.*



## WESLEYVILLE MISSION STATION:

in December 1823 is founded with the Gunukwebe clans by the reverend William Shaw, *i* 409

## WESTERN BOUNDARY OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC:

various views concerning, *v* 16 to 21

## WEST, MARTIN THOMAS:

on the 21st of August 1838 becomes civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Albany, *ii* 182; on the 13th of November 1845 is appointed lieutenant-governor of Natal, *ii* 462; on the 1st of August 1849 dies, *iii* 228

## WESTERN PROVINCE BANK:

in 1847 is established at Paarl, *ii* 243

## DE WET, OLOF GODLIEB:

from 1797 to 1803 is president of the high court of justice of the Cape Colony, *i* 73; loses office on the restoration of the colony to the Batavian Republic, *i* 114; in 1806 again becomes president of the high court of justice, *i* 212; in March 1809 retires on account of ill health, *i* 259

## WHALE FISHING ON THE SOUTH AFRICAN COAST:

in 1795 is extensively carried on, *i* 25; in 1817 is commenced by the Portuguese at Delagoa Bay, *v* 128

## WHALING ESTABLISHMENT AT ROBBEN ISLAND:

note concerning, *i* 340

## WHEAT:

exportation from the Cape Colony of, *i* 23; price of in 1800, *i* 77; and in 1806, *i* 213; in 1820 the growing crop is attacked by blight, and completely fails, *i* 359; in 1821 it is again destroyed by blight, *i* 372

## WHEAT GROWING IN NATAL:

particulars concerning, *iv* 164

## WHINDUS, CAPTAIN E. J.:

in January 1882 is sent from Capetown with a party of volunteers to Walfish Bay to protect the stores there, *v* 123

## WHITE, DR. HENRY:

in November 1872 becomes treasurer of the Cape Colony under responsible government, *iv* 146

## WHITE, LIEUTENANT THOMAS:

in 1820 brings a party of settlers to the Cape Colony, and is located on the river Zonder End, *i* 353; subsequent movements

of the party, *i* 355; he is one of the early breeders of merino sheep in the district of Albany, *ii* 41; in May 1835 is killed by the Xosas near the Bashee river, *ii* 116

WHITTLE, A TRADER:

in 1832 explores the country along the upper Limpopo, *ii* 287

WHITTLESEA, VILLAGE IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:

in 1851 is repeatedly attacked by the Tembus, but always unsuccessfully, *iii* 104

WILLIAM CHRISTIAN, CAPTAIN OF THE BONDELZWARTS CLAN OF HOTTENTOTS IN GREAT NAMAQUALAND:

mention of, *v* 112

WILLIAM PITT, INDIAMAN:

during the night of the 13th of December 1813 is lost on a shoal about nine English miles to the eastward of Cape Recife, when all on board perish. The disaster became known through a box of letters and some of the passengers' trunks with other wreckage washing ashore

WILLIAMS, JANE:

is living with the family of the reverend Mr. Owen at Umkungenhlovu, and on the 6th of February 1838 witnesses the massacre of Pieter Retief and his party, of which she afterwards publishes an account, *ii* 363

WILLIAMS, JOSEPH, LAY EVANGELIST:

in June 1816 forms a mission station on the Kat river in connection with the London society, *i* 325; in August 1818 dies there, *i* 318

WILLSHIRE, LIEUTENANT-COLONEL:

in February 1819 succeeds Lieutenant-Colonel Brereton as commandant of the forces acting against the Xosa chief Ndlambe, *i* 337

WILLSON, THOMAS:

in 1820 brings a party of settlers to the Cape Colony, *i* 351; subsequent career of, *i* 360

WILSON, DR., AMERICAN MISSIONARY:

in June 1836 with two associates goes to reside with the Matabele in the valley of Mosega, *ii* 302; in January 1837 retires with the emigrant farmers, *ii* 303; in July 1837 arrives in Natal and commences to labour there, *ii* 348; in April 1838 leaves Natal, and does not return, *ii* 374

**WINBURG, DISTRICT OF:**

boundaries in 1840, *ii* 402

**WINBURG, VILLAGE IN THE ORANGE FREE STATE:**

in 1837 is founded by the emigrant farmers under Commandant Hendrik Potgieter, *ii* 303

**WINDVOGELBERG:**

is named after its last Bushman occupant, *iv* 3

**WINE:**

encouragement given by the British government in 1800 to the production of, *i* 74; efforts to improve the quality of, *i* 172; inducements held out between 1806 and 1835 to improve the quality and increase the quantity of, *ii* 36; in 1834 the trade is in a state of rapid decline, *ii* 83; which is further hastened by the emancipation of the slaves, *ii* 192

**WITCHCRAFT:**

Bantu belief concerning, *iii* 92

**WITHUIS KLOOF:**

action of the 9th of June 1878 at, *iv* 428

**WITSI, CHIEF OF A ROBBER CLAN CALLED THE BAKOLOKWE:**

account of, *iii* 348 and 450; plunders the farmers in the district of Harrismith, *iii* 461; in May 1855 is punished by a commando, but not humbled, *ib.*; in 1856 is driven from his place of residence, still known as Witsi's Hoek, by a commando under Landdrost Joseph M. Orpen, *iii* 462; retires to Basutoland, and becomes a subject of Moshesh, *ib.*

**WOBURN, MILITARY VILLAGE IN THE TYUMIE VALLEY:**

in January 1848 is founded, *iii* 68; on the 25th of December 1850 is destroyed by the Xosas of Oba's clan, and its occupants are murdered, *iii* 96

**WODEHOUSE, DISTRICT IN THE CAPE PROVINCE:**

in 1871 is formed, *iv* 131; in 1872 is constituted an electoral division, *iv* 141

**WODEHOUSE, LADY:**

on the 6th of October 1866 dies in Capetown, *iv* 83

**WODEHOUSE, SIR PHILIP EDMOND:**

in January 1862 arrives in South Africa as governor of the Cape Colony and her Majesty's high commissioner, *iv* 200; on the 15th of that month takes the oaths of office, *iv* 20; positions previously held by, *iv* 21; twelve days after his arrival addresses a very unfriendly letter to the president of the Orange

Free State, *iv* 200; in 1862 visits British Kaffraria, *iv* 24; from February to November 1864 resides in the eastern province, *iv* 34; is in conflict with the Cape parliament, *iv* 100; is urgently requested by the Free State government to point out to Moshesh the boundary between whites and blacks defined by the British authorities in the time of the Sovereignty, as the Basuto are trespassing far beyond it, *iv* 204; in October 1864 visits the Free State for that purpose, *iv* 219; inspects the country along the Warden line, *iv* 220; and on the 28th of October 1864 gives a written award in favour of the boundary claimed by the Free State, *ib.*; is deceived by Moshesh's professions of desire to act in good faith, *iv* 223; on the 27th of June 1865, war having broken out between the Orange Free State and the Basuto tribe, issues a proclamation of neutrality, *iv* 237; on the 13th of January 1866 proposes to the secretary of state for the colonies to take over the Basuto as British subjects, *iv* 263; objects to the conditions of the treaties of Imperani and Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 278; in May 1867 expresses dissatisfaction with the reception by the Free State of many Basuto chiefs and clans as subjects, *iv* 287; in September 1867 again recommends the reception of the Basuto as British subjects, *iv* 295; on the 9th of December 1867 the secretary of state for the colonies gives his consent to the annexation of Basutoland to Natal, *iv* 296; upon receipt of a despatch to that effect, Sir Philip Wodehouse proposes a cessation of hostilities, *iv* 297; and as the Free State government does not consent, he prohibits the removal of ammunition from colonial ports to the republic, *iv* 299; on the 12th of March 1868 proclaims the Basuto British subjects and their country British territory, *iv* 301; on the 27th of March proposes to President Brand a settlement a belt of three hundred farms behind the border of 1864, *iv* 306; to which the president does not agree, *iv* 307; on the 14th of April he writes to President Brand proposing a temporary boundary and no molestation from either side pending negotiations, *iv* 308; the president declines to agree to any other boundary than the one fixed by the treaty of Thaba Bosigo, *ib.*; on the 15th of April Sir Philip Wodehouse meets the Basuto chiefs at Thaba Bosigo, *iv* 310; they express a desire that the country shall not be annexed to Natal, *iv* 311; a few days later they request that Basutoland may be declared a reserve independent of both colonies, *ib.*; on the 12th of February 1869 Sir Philip Wodehouse concludes a treaty with the Free State, by which a portion of the territory ceded by the treaty of Thaba Bosigo is restored to the Basuto tribe,

*iv* 319; on the 22nd of February 1869 he meets the Basuto chiefs at Korokoro, *iv* 320; in March visits Nomansland, and assigns locations to various Bantu clans there, *iv* 322; in May 1870 draws up a series of regulations for the government of the Basuto tribe, *v* 61; objects to the boundaries of the South African Republic as defined in President Pretorius's proclamation of the 29th of April 1868, *v* 16; on the 20th of May 1870 leaves South Africa, *iv* 109; subsequent career of, *ib.*

WOOD, WILLIAM:

in August 1831 arrives in Natal, *ii* 342; resides for several months at Umkungunhlovu as interpreter to Dingana, *ii* 363; on the 6th of February 1836 witnesses the massacre of Pieter Retief and his party, *ib.*; a few days later leaves Zululand, *ib.*; publishes instances of Dingana's ferocity, *ii* 338

WOODS, SAMUEL:

on the 21st of November 1843 is appointed first collector of customs at Durban, Natal, *ii* 456

WOOL, SHEEP'S:

unsuccessful efforts to produce in the Cape Colony, *i* 76, 157 *et seq.*, and 246; account of the efforts which proved successful in the production of, *ii* 38; after the emancipation of the slaves is produced in rapidly increasing quantities, *ii* 193; quantity produced in 1865 in the Cape Colony, *iv* 43

WOOLLED SHEEP:

objections of the flockmasters in the Cape Colony in 1805 to the introduction of, *i* 164, 165, 166, and 168; introduction of into Natal, *iii* 261

WORCESTER, DISTRICT OF:

in November 1822 the district of Tulbagh is thus renamed, *i* 382; in March 1824 a small portion is cut off and added to the district of the Cape, *i* 382

WORCESTER, TOWN OF:

in October 1819 a deputy landdrost is stationed at this place, *i* 309; in February 1820 the first building allotments are sold, *ib.*; in October 1822 it is made the residence of the landdrost of the district, *i* 381; in September 1824 it is first provided with a clergyman, *i* 370

WOYER, JAN PIETER:

in 1795 and 1796 is one of the chief opponents of British rule in Graaff-Reinet, *i* 8; the government endeavours to have him arrested, but fails, *i* 10; he proceeds to Batavia in a Danish ship that puts into Algoa Bay, and procures assistance for the nationals of Graaff-Reinet, *i* 19



WRECKS OF SHIPS ON THE SOUTH AFRICAN COAST, ACCOUNT OF THOSE NOT ALREADY MENTIONED IN THIS INDEX:

of the *Waldensian* in October 1862, *iv* 29; of a number of ships in a great gale in Table Bay on the 17th of May 1865, *iv* 76 to 78; of the *Eastern Province* in June 1865, *iv* 38; of the *Dane* in December 1865, *iv* 78; of the *Bosphorus* in October 1867, *iv* 95; of ships in Algoa Bay in October 1859 and September 1869, *iv* 105; of seven vessels at East London in May 1872, *iv* 150; of the *Jane Davis* near East London on the 26th of May 1872, *iv* 150; of four vessels at Natal in July 1872, *iv* 174

WRIGHT, REV. WILLIAM:

on the 10th of January 1828 is appointed chaplain at Bathurst

VAN WYK, HERMANUS:

mention of, *v* 104

VAN WYK, COMMANDANT STEPHANUS:

in February and again in March 1835 by the governor's orders calls upon Hintsä to cease assisting the enemies of the Cape Colony, *ii* 103; commands one of the four divisions of the army which in March 1835 enters Kaffirland, *iv* 102

WYLDE, SIR JOHN:

on the 1st of January 1828 becomes chief justice in the newly established supreme court of the Cape Colony, *i* 491; favours a partly elected legislative council for the Cape Colony, *iii* 120; on the 13th of December 1859 dies, *iii* 148

WYNBERG, NEAR CAPETOWN:

in January 1839 is created a magisterial district, *ii* 227

WYNBERG RAILWAY COMPANY:

particulars concerning, *iv* 11

WYNYARD, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL ROBERT HENRY:

on the 20th of May 1859 succeeds Sir James Jackson as lieutenant-governor, and on the 20th of August takes over the administration of the Cape Colony from Sir George Grey, which he retains until the 4th of July 1860, *iii* 66; from the 15th of August 1861 to the 15th of January 1862 is again acting administrator, *iv* 1

XANTHIUM SPINOSUM (BURRWEED):

in 1859 begins to spread in the Cape Colony, *iii* 176

**XAVIER, MAJOR CARDAS :**

in May 1891 commands the Portuguese volunteers at Andrada,  
v 159

**XAYIMPI, A CAPTAIN UNDER THE XOSA CHIEF OBA :**

leads the party that on the 25th of December 1850 destroys  
the military village of Auckland in the Tyumie valley, iii 97;  
further particulars concerning, iii 98

**XESIBE TRIBE :**

account of, iii 231 and iv 63; in 1886 is received under the  
government of the Cape Colony, iii 231

**XOLO TRIBE :**

account of the, ii 331, and iii 232

**XOSA TRIBE :**

particulars concerning, i 36, 37, 133, 185, 233, 250, 321, iii 65;  
particulars concerning its self-destruction in 1856 and 1857,  
iii 198 *et seq.*; see Anta, Botumane, Buku, Casa, Eno, Gasela,  
Hintsa, Jalusa, Kama, Kobe, Kona, Kreli, Makoma, Matwa,  
Nonibe, Pato, Sandile, Siwani, Siyolo, Sonto, Stokwe, Sutu,  
Tente, Tola, Toyise, Tshatshu, Tyali, Umhala, Umkayi, and  
Xoxo; see also the several paragraphs under the heading War

**XOXO, XOSA CAPTAIN, SON OF GAIKA :**

in December 1834, just before the outbreak of war, is slightly  
wounded in attacking a military patrol, ii 89; upon the death  
of Tyali on the 1st of May 1842 is chosen regent of that chief's  
clan during the minority of Oba and Fini, ii 189; from April  
to November 1846 is in arms against the Cape Colony, iii 8;  
on the 7th of January 1848 takes an oath of allegiance to the  
queen of England, iii 61

**YONGE, SIR GEORGE :**

on the 10th of December 1799 becomes governor of the Cape  
Colony, i 71; is greatly disliked by all classes of the inhabi-  
tants, i 79; complaints of his misgovernment and corruption  
are sent to England, *ib.*; in April 1801 he is dismissed and is  
required to return to England, *ib.*; a commission is appointed  
to enquire into his conduct, i 80; and a mass of evidence  
of a scandalous nature is collected, i 81 *et seq.*; measures that  
may be placed to his credit, i 85; on the 25th of September  
1812 he dies at Hampton Court, *ib.*

**YORKE, MAJOR-GENERAL :**

is appointed second in command of the troops in the Cape Colony, *iii* 107; on the 24th of March 1852 arrives in Capetown, *iii* 108; commands a column directed to scour the Amatola range, *iii* 110; and in September and October 1852 carries out this service, *iii* 112

**YOUNG, SIR HENRY EDWARD FOX :**

on the 9th of April 1847 arrives in South Africa as lieutenant-governor of the eastern province, *ii* 241; collects a mass of evidence upon the question of a separate government for that province, *ib.*; makes regulations for locations of coloured people within the boundaries of municipalities, *ib.*; is appointed lieutenant-governor of South Australia, and on the 4th of November 1847 leaves Grahamstown, *ii* 242

**ZEERUST, VILLAGE IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC :**

in 1868 is founded, *iv* 499

**ZEVENFONTEIN, TRACT OF LAND ON THE RIGHT BANK OF THE CALEDON RIVER :**

in 1833 is occupied by a party of farmers from the Cape Colony, *i* 483; it afterwards becomes Beersheba mission station, which see

**ZIBI, CHIEF OF A PETTY HLUBI CLAN :**

in 1869 has a location in Nomansland assigned to him by Sir Philip Wodehouse, *iv* 68; in January 1872 asks to be taken under the authority of the Cape Colony, *iv* 69

**ZIERVOGEL, J. F. :**

in 1834 becomes assistant civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Somerset, *ii* 44

**ZONNEBLOEM INSTITUTION, AT WOODSTOCK, ADJOINING CAPETOWN :**

foundation of, *iii* 71

**ZOUTPANSBERG :**

description of the district, *iv* 473; in January 1857 separates from the South African Republic, *iii* 427; but in January 1858 is again united to it, *iii* 440; in 1864 contains many lawless Europeans, *iv* 476; from 1865 to 1868 is the theatre of constant wars and disturbances

**ZUID AFRIKAAN NEWSPAPER :**

on the 9th of April 1830 is first issued in Capetown, *ii* 16

**ZULU TRIBE :** see Dingana, Mawa, Nongalaza, Panda, Tambusa, Tshaka, Umbopa, Umthlangana, and Umthlela

ZUMBO, FARTHEST INTERIOR SETTLEMENT OF EUROPEANS ON THE ZAMBESI RIVER:

after long abandonment in 1862 is reoccupied by the Portuguese,  
v 143

ZUURVELD, TRACT OF LAND ALONG THE LOWER TERRACES BETWEEN THE BUSHMAN'S AND FISH RIVERS:

description of by Lord Charles Somerset, i 348; attempt by Sir John Cradock to settle a population in, i 323; similar attempt by Lord Charles Somerset, *ib.*; in 1820 is occupied by a large number of British settlers, i 352 *et seq.*

ZWARTBERG BATHS, IN THE VILLAGE OF CALEDON:

account of, i 227

ZWARTBOOI, ABRAHAM, CAPTAIN OF A SECTION OF THE RED NATION ■  
GREAT NAMAQUALAND:

assists the Hereros in their war of independence, v 97; further mention of, v 110, 111, 122, and 123

ZWARTKOPJES:

account of the skirmish on the 2nd of May 1845 between British troops and emigrant farmers, ii 490

ZWARTKOPS LOCATION IN NATAL:

in 1846 is set apart for the use of the Bantu, iii 230

ZWIDE, CHIEF OF THE NDWANDWE TRIBE IN ZULULAND:

notable career of, ii 330

*Printed in Great Britain by*

UNWIN BROTHERS, LIMITED

WOKING AND LONDON







## Date Due

My 5—

[illegible]



3 1927 00129164 7

T34

AUTHOR

V.5

TITLE

rica from 1795-1872.

DATE DUE

BORROWER'S NAME

Mv 5 - 41

~~Reverend St. Theodosius~~

T34

v. 5



